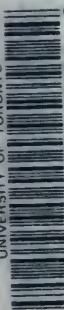


UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO



3 1761 01060578 0

907



Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2008 with funding from  
Microsoft Corporation







B796p

D. G. W.  
F. A. G.

24

THE

# PUBLIC SCHOOL

# ELEMENTARY FRENCH GRAMMAR

## PART I.—ACCIDENCE

By AUGUSTE BRACHET

Adapted for the use of English Schools and Persons engaged in  
Elementary Teaching

BY

THE REV. P. H. E. BRETTE, B.D.

HEAD-MASTER OF THE FRENCH SCHOOL, CHRIST'S HOSPITAL,

AND

GUSTAVE MASSON, B.A.

ASSISTANT MASTER AND LIBRARIAN, HARROW SCHOOL,

EXAMINERS IN THE UNIVERSITY OF LONDON



Toronto:

JAMES CAMPBELL & SON.

1878.

[All rights reserved.]

113  
-----  
14/3/1893 20

---

Entered according to the Act of the Parliament of Canada, in the year one thousand eight hundred and seventy-eight, by JAMES CAMPBELL & SON, in the office of the Minister of Agriculture.

---

PC  
2111  
B753  
1878



## PREFACE TO THE FIRST EDITION.

---

THE adapted translation of M. Brachet's "Nouvelle Grammaire Française," published by us at the beginning of the year, and which has been received with such signal success, was intended to meet the wants of pupils belonging to our ordinary Grammar Schools. On the present occasion, we address ourselves to those with whom philological details, and discussions of etymological or scientific problems would be completely out of place.

M. Brachet's "Petite Grammaire" simply gives the various rules both of accidence and of syntax, without attempting to enter into explanations which beginners nine or ten years old could not possibly understand. We have adopted the same method, but introduced into the work all modifications necessary for making our "ELEMENTARY FRENCH GRAMMAR" a practical and useful book for English class-rooms. Each section is followed by a set of questions and by exercises which should be written out and committed to memory after they have been corrected.

In many instances the Accidence alone is required for examination purposes; accordingly we have thought it best to print the Grammar in two distinct parts, containing, respectively, the Accidence and the Syntax, each part being followed by

a complete English-French and French-English Vocabulary. As the translation of the "Nouvelle Grammaire Française" is now adopted in most of our English Grammar and Preparatory Schools, so the "Petite Grammaire," by its cheapness and completeness, will commend itself to School Boards and Persons engaged in elementary teaching.

It gives us much pleasure to acknowledge the valuable assistance which Mr. E. JANAU, French Master at Blackheath Proprietary School, has given us in preparing the present volume.

---

### PREFACE TO THE SECOND EDITION.

---

THE sale of several thousand copies of this little work in less than six months is a sufficient proof that it has met a want felt by the persons for whom it was chiefly designed. The present edition, thoroughly revised and corrected, is accompanied by a very complete French-English and English-French Vocabulary, arranged by Mr. A. DUPUIS, B.A., First French Master at King's College School, to whom we have to tender our thanks for his kind assistance; beginners will thus be spared the necessity of referring to separate dictionaries.

We take the opportunity of reminding our friends that a supplementary set of Exercises on the Accidence and the Syntax will be ready very shortly.

P. H. ERNEST BRETTE,  
GUSTAVE MASSON.

# TABLE OF CONTENTS.

## INTRODUCTION.

PAGE.

Preliminary Remarks on the History and Geography of the French Language ... ..	1
Object and Definition of Grammar ... ..	6

## BOOK I.—STUDY OF LETTERS.

### CHAPTER I.

Of the French Alphabet ... ..	7
SECTION I.—Of the Vowels ... ..	9
SECTION II.—Of the Consonants ... ..	11

### CHAPTER II.

Of Syllables.—Orthographic Signs ... ..	14
---	----

## BOOK II.—STUDY OF WORDS.

### CHAPTER I.

Of the Noun or Substantive ... ..	18
SECTION I.—Of Gender in Nouns ... ..	19
SECTION II.—Of Number in Nouns ... ..	20
SECTION III.—Formation of Substantives ... ..	23

### CHAPTER II.

Of the Article ... ..	22
-----------------------	----

### CHAPTER III.

Of the Adjective ... ..	34
SECTION I.—Formation of the Feminine of Adjectives ... ..	35
SECTION II.—Formation of the Plural of Adjectives ... ..	39

SECTION III.—Of the Degrees of Signification in Adjectives	40
SECTION IV.—Formation of Adjectives	42
SECTION V.—Agreement of the Adjective with the Substantive	45
SECTION VI.—Determinative Adjectives	45
I. Numeral Adjectives	45
Comparative Table of the Numeral Adjectives...	47
II. Demonstrative Adjectives	49
III. Possessive Adjectives	50
SECTION VII.—Indefinite Adjectives	52

## CHAPTER IV.

Of the Pronoun	53
SECTION I.—Personal Pronouns	54
SECTION II.—Demonstrative Pronouns	58
SECTION III.—Possessive Pronouns	59
SECTION IV.—Relative Pronouns	61
SECTION V.—Indefinite Pronouns	63

## CHAPTER V.

Of the Verb	66
1. Stem.—2. Termination	67
3. Numbers	67
4. Persons	67
5. Moods	67
6. Tenses	63
Auxiliary Verbs...	69
Conjugation	70
SECTION I.—Auxiliary Verbs	71
I. Conjugation of the Auxiliary Verb <b>avoir</b> (=to have)	71
II. Conjugation of the Auxiliary Verb <b>être</b> (=to be)	75
SECTION II.—Active Verbs	79
I. First Conjugation.—Verb <b>aimer</b> (=to love)	79
II. Second Conjugation.—Verb <b>finir</b> (=to finish)	83
III. Third Conjugation.—Verb <b>recevoir</b> (=to receive)	86
IV. Fourth Conjugation.—Verb <b>rompre</b> (=to break)	89
SECTION III.—Conjugation of Verbs.—1. Interrogatively ;	
2. Negatively ; 3. Interrogatively with a negative	92
SECTION IV.—Remarks on the Formation of the Tenses	96
SECTION V.—Passive Verbs	98
Conjugation of the Passive Verb <b>être aimé</b> (=to be loved)	99

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

vii

SECTION VI.—Neuter Verbs ... ..	101
Conjugation of the Verb <b>tomber</b> (=to fall) ... ..	107
SECTION VII.—Reflexive Verbs ... ..	104
Conjugation of the Reflexive Verb <b>se reposer</b> (=to rest) ... ..	105
SECTION VIII.—Impersonal Verbs ... ..	109
Conjugation of the Impersonal Verb <b>neiger</b> (=to snow) ... ..	109
SECTION IX.—Irregular and Defective Verbs ... ..	110
1. First Conjugation: <b>er</b> ... ..	111
2. Second Conjugation in <b>ir</b> with Imperfect in <b>issais</b> ... ..	112
3. Second (direct) Conjugation in <b>ir</b> ... ..	113
4. Third Conjugation: <b>oir</b> ... ..	119
5. Fourth Conjugation: <b>re</b> ... ..	124
SECTION X.—Formation of the Verbs... ..	139
SECTION XI.—Rules for the Agreement of the Verb with its Subject... ..	141

CHAPTER VI.

Of the Participle ... ..	142
--------------------------	-----

CHAPTER VII.

Of the Adverb ... ..	143
----------------------	-----

CHAPTER VIII.

Of the Preposition ... ..	148
SECTION I.—Formation of the Simple Prepositions... ..	149
SECTION II.—Formation of Prepositive Locutions ... ..	150
SECTION III.—Government of Prepositions ... ..	150

CHAPTER IX.

Of the Conjunction ... ..	152
---------------------------	-----

CHAPTER X.

Of the Interjection ... ..	154
----------------------------	-----

---

Conjugation of the auxiliary verb <b>avoir</b> (=to have) negatively, interrogatively, and interrogatively with a negation ... ..	156
---	-----

Conjugation of the auxiliary verb <b>être</b> (=to be) negatively, interrogatively, and interrogatively with a negation . . .	160
Models of reflexive verbs conjugated negatively, interroga- tively, and interrogatively with a negation . . . . .	164
Index . . . . .	169
French-English Vocabulary . . . . .	173
English-French Vocabulary . . . . .	193

# INTRODUCTION

---

## PRELIMINARY REMARKS ON THE HISTORY AND GEOGRAPHY OF THE FRENCH LANGUAGE.

**Geography.**—The French language extends over the whole of France, with the exception of one single province, Brittany, where, out of a population of 1,800,000, one million of individuals speak a language known by the name of **Bas-Breton**, and which is Celtic in its origin. To this important exception three small groups can be further added: the department of the North, where 200,000 inhabitants out of 1,200,000 speak the **Flemish language**, an offshoot from the German; the department of Lower-Pyrenees, where 120,000 persons speak the **Basque**, a very ancient idiom, the origin of which is unknown; finally, the department of Eastern Pyrenees (formerly the province of Roussillon), where 130,000 inhabitants speak the **Catalonian language**, derived from the Latin.

If the domains of the French language do not correspond exactly with the present territory of France, they include, on the other hand, several important districts outside the limits of that country, which represent an aggregate of a little more than 3,600,000 inhabitants, distributed as follows:—Belgium, 1,600,000; Germany, 1,000,000; French Switzerland, 400,000; finally, the Channel Islands, 60,000.

To these numbers we must add, out of Europe, the English colonies of Canada and Mauritius, which have retained the use of the French language, to say nothing of the French settlements (Algeria, Guiana, Senegal, etc.); we find thus 1,500,000 inhabitants more to be placed to the account of the French linguistic wealth.

With reference to the language, France is divided into two regions, **North** and **South**, the limits of which can be marked by tracing on the map a line extending from La Rochelle to Grenoble.

**North** of this line all cultivated people speak French; the peasants understand French, but make use of *patois* closely connected with it. These *patois* are four in number: 1. The **Norman**, spoken in the western district; 2. The **Picard**, in the north-western; 3. The **Lorrain**, in the eastern; 4. The **Burgundian**,

in the central and south-eastern. The analogy which these *patois* present with the French language has caused them to be collectively designated as *French patois*.

South of the line, linguistic circumstances are entirely different. Cultivated people, indeed, understand and write French; but in the relations they hold with each other they have recourse by preference (even in the large towns) to their own *patois*, which is an idiom as different from French as is Italian or Spanish. The inhabitants of the rural districts, notwithstanding the efforts made by the teachers of elementary schools, seldom speak anything but these *patois*, which are likewise four in number:—1. The **Gascon**, 2. The **Limousin**; 3. The **Languédocien**; and 4. The **Provençal**; the names sufficiently point out the provinces where these idioms are respectively used; they are called collectively *Provençal patois*, in opposition to the *French patois* spoken north of the line mentioned above.

**History.**—Everyone knows that the earliest inhabitants of Gaul, so far as we are aware, at least, were the *Galli*, who spoke a language belonging to the *Celtic* family, that is to say, akin to the idioms used in France by the natives of Lower Brittany, and, in the British Isles, by the Scotch Highlanders, the Irish, and the Welsh.

In the course of the first century, B.C., the legions led by Cæsar conquered Gaul, and reduced it to the position of a Roman province. Far superior to the *Galli*, in point both of science and of civilisation, the Romans forced upon them the Latin language together with the yoke, in the same way as the French have forced their language upon the Arabs of Algeria.

At Rome, however, just as in the France of the nineteenth century, there were two languages co-existing: that of the people and of the peasants, the **popular Latin**, in a word; and that of the learned and the *litterati*, which is known as **classical** or **literary Latin**—the former was less fettered, the latter was more refined; but both often employed different words to express the same idea. Thus, whilst the classical *Latin* had the substantive *equus* as an equivalent for *horse*, the colloquial Latin said *caballus*; whence the French *cheval*.

It is the **colloquial Latin**, naturally, which the Roman soldiers introduced amongst the peasants of Gaul; these, in their turn, transformed it into French, by dint of altering the pronunciation. If we notice how the English, who speak the French language, all modify the pronunciation of the French in the same manner, we shall easily understand how Latin uttered by the *Galli* was altered



according to one uniform system; it is precisely this altered Latin which is called *French*. The colloquial Latin thus changed through the Celtic pronunciation, began to make its appearance about the fifth century, at the downfall of the Roman empire, as a distinct language, which the *savants* of the day contemptuously called *lingua Romana rustica* (the Latin of the peasants); hence the designation **Romance language**. The invasion of the barbarians was then destroying the empire; in the storm, everything bearing the Roman stamp disappeared—administration, schools, justice, aristocracy, literature; the *literary* Latin shared the same fate—that idiom which had been both the organ and the result of intellectual activity.

As colloquial Latin produced **French** in Gaul, so it became **Italian** in Italy, and **Spanish** in Spain. In France the *Romance language* was subdivided into two great varieties corresponding with the rival races of the north and south. North of the Loire we find the *Langue d'oïl*, or French, properly so called; south of the Loire, we have the *Langue d'oc*, or Provençal; these curious names result from the custom, frequently resorted to during the Middle Ages, of designating languages by the sign of affirmation *oui* (yes); *oui* was *oïl* in the north, and *oc* in the south.

The northern language, the *Langue d'oïl*, was in its turn divided, during the eleventh century, into four principal dialects: the **Norman**, the **Picard**, the **Burgundian**, and, finally, the **French** dialect, which was originally the one spoken in the province called *Ile-de-France*. (In the Middle Ages the name *Français* was given specially to the inhabitants of *Ile-de-France*.) These four dialects were equal in power and in influence, because there did not exist then, as there does to-day, one single centre, one capital of the kingdom, capable of setting to the whole country the model of elegant speaking. The Dukes, whether of Normandy or of Burgundy, the equals of the Dukes of France (we mean, of *Ile-de-France*), employed respectively in their official acts the language of their province, Norman or Burgundian.

How is it that these four languages were subsequently reduced to one? Why is it that the dialect of *Ile-de-France* was adopted subsequently as the common language, rather than the Burgundian or the Norman? As long as the Capetian monarchs, humble lords of *Ile-de-France* and of *Orléanais*, remained destitute of all influence beyond the limits of their royal domain (that is to say, from the tenth to the twelfth century), the French dialect enjoyed no notoriety out of these two provinces. But with the beginning of the twelfth century, the petty Kings of France began to extend

their possessions at their neighbours' expense; they annexed successively Berry (1101), Picardy (1200), Touraine (1203), Normandy (1204), Champagne (1361), and carried with them into these newly-acquired provinces the dialect of Ile-de-France, the *French*, which took, in each of them, the place of the native dialect; and being the *language of the king*, it was soon adopted as the type of fashionable parlance. Resisting this invasion, the people alone, in each province, retained their old dialect, and refused to accept the French. As they ceased then to be used in writing, the idioms of Picardy, Burgundy, and Normandy fell immediately from the rank of *dialects* (that is to say, of *literary* languages both written and spoken) to the humble position of *patois* (we mean of idioms not written, but only spoken). This date (the fourteenth century), when the provincial dialects became patois, whilst the dialect of Ile-de-France assumed the place of the common language of the kingdom, marked the death of the *Langue d'oïl* and the historical birth of the *French language*.

The *patois*, which we find at the present day in the rural districts of Picardy, Normandy, and Burgundy, are not therefore, as is commonly believed, the *literary French corrupted on the lips of the peasants*; they are the *débris* of the old provincial dialects reduced by political events from the rank of written languages to that of *patois*.

The *Langue d'oïl* had disappeared to make room for the French, south of the Loire, the *Langue d'oc* likewise vanished away. The terrible rivalry between the inhabitants of the south and those of the north was ended by the Crusade against the Albigenses, and the defeat of the Southerners struck the death-blow at the *Langue d'oc*. In 1272, Languedoc was annexed to France, and the introduction of the French language speedily followed as a matter of course. The *Langue d'oc* ceased to be used as a medium for writing; it fell from the rank of a literary language to that of a patois, and the *Limousin*, *Gascon*, *Languedocian*, and *Provençal* patois, which still persist at the present day in the rural districts of southern France, are merely the *débris* of that *Langue d'oc* which shone with so brilliant a lustre in the times of the troubadours.

To sum up: we see that French is by no means formed from the corrupted *débris* of the Celtic language, as some grammarians still persist in saying; and its history may be concisely stated thus: the *popular Latin*, transferred into Gaul by the soldiers of Cæsar, quickly suppressed the native language, the *Celtic*, and, through a series of slow and imperceptible transformations, gave

birth to a new idiom, the **Romance language**, to which the barbarians added a certain number of German words (such as *fief*, *fief*, *sénéchal*, seneschal, *baron*, baron, *échevin*, alderman, sheriff, etc.) relating to the feudal system, to war, and hunting. Towards the eighth century, this *Romance language* was divided into two branches: the *Langue d'oc*, south of the Loire, and the *Langue d'oïl*, north of that river. One of the four dialects of the *Langue d'oïl*, that of Ile-de-France, gradually supplanted all the others, and became, in the fourteenth century, the *French language*.

To the old stock of the language, which may be called **popular French**, two categories of new words have become superadded, from the fourteenth century to the nineteenth.

1st. **Foreign words**, imported as the result of several political circumstances, the principal of which are, in the thirteenth century, the Crusades and the commercial relations with the East; in the sixteenth, the Italian wars, and the influence of the Renaissance; in the seventeenth, the influence exercised by Spain over the court of Louis XIII., and the wars of Germany with France; finally, in the present century, the commercial, industrial, and social relations which the French are carrying on with England, and which are daily increasing.

To the first of these causes is due the introduction of a small quantity of Arabic or Oriental words (*sultan*, sultan, *caravane*, caravan, *derviche*, dervis, *alcool*, alcohol, *sequin*, sequin, etc.); to the second, the French language is indebted for more than five hundred words of Italian origin (especially terms of war and of the fine arts—*spalassin*, fighter or hired assassin, *brave*, brave, *gabion*, gabion, *parapet*, parapet;—*costume*, dress, *fresque*, fresco, *aquarelle*, water-colour, *galbe*, entasis, *torse*, torso, etc.); the third has contributed a few Spanish words (*mantille*, mantilla, *duègne*, duenna, *matamore*, bully, *hâbler*, to boast, etc.), and a certain number of special German military expressions (*vaguemestre*, baggage-master, *schlague*, military flogging, *bivouac*, bivouac, *blockhaus*, block-house, etc.); finally, the invasion of English words is still going on very steadily (*whist*, *turf*, *spleen*, *tunnel*, *wagon*, *rail*, *coke*, *express*, *fashionable*, *budget*, *jury*, etc.). \*

2nd. In addition to the *popular French*, which is the work of the people, and to the *foreign words* imported into France as the result of political circumstances, we must distinguish a third series of expressions created by learned men since the eleventh century, and ever on the increase. This **learned French** con-

\* For the etymology of all these words, see Brachet's "*Dictionnaire étymologique*."

sists of words borrowed directly by the *savants*, either from the Greek (*autopsie, aristocratie, microscope, cosmographie*), or from the Latin (as *relation, proportion, préméditation, précession, coordination*, etc.).

As a conclusion to these short historical remarks, let us show by a few numbers in what proportions the three elements—**popular** French, words of **foreign origin**, and **learned** or **artificial** words—have combined to form the French language. We shall take as the basis of our calculation the *Dictionnaire de l'Académie française*, which contains about 27,000 words: out of these we find 600 whose origin is entirely unknown; 1000 are words of foreign extraction, borrowed from the modern languages (English, Italian, Spanish, etc.); whilst 14,000 are of *learned origin*, having been made up by scholars with the help of Greek and Latin. We thus obtain a total of 15,600 words, leaving us rather less than 12,000 constituting what we may designate as *popular French*. Of these 12,000 words, about 8000, such as *pauv-ette* (=poor creature), *faibl-ir* (=to grow weak), *maigr-ir* (=to get lean, or thin), are immediately created by the French with the help of the simple words *pauvre* (=poor), *faible* (=weak), *maigre* (=lean), etc. The simple words, which constitute the real substratum of the language, are therefore reducible to about 4200, of which 3800 are of Latin origin, whilst the remaining 400 are German words introduced by the Teutonic conquerors at the time of the invasion (fifth century).

#### OBJECT AND DEFINITION OF GRAMMAR.

We express ourselves by means of **phrases**, which are composed of **words**; words, in their turn, are composed of **letters**.

The French grammar is the series of rules to be observed in the French language for the assemblage of *letters* into words, and the combination of *words* into *sentences*. Hence three divisions in the grammar: the study of **letters**, the study of **words**, and the study of **sentences**.

# BOOK I.

---

## STUDY OF LETTERS.

---

### CHAPTER I.

#### OF THE FRENCH ALPHABET.

1. We express our thoughts by means of *words*, which are composed of one or several *sounds*, represented in writing by signs called *letters*.

2. The collection of all the letters used in a language is called its *Alphabet*.

The French alphabet is composed of twenty-six letters, as follows :— \*

A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J, K, L, M, N, O, P, Q,  
R, S, T, U, V, W, † X, Y, Z.

These twenty-six letters do not express all the sounds of the French language; there are some other simple sounds which are expressed by joining together two letters of the alphabet, thus forming a new group. *Ch*, for instance, is a simple sound represented by two letters.

Why does the French alphabet follow this curious order in which consonants and vowels are jumbled together indiscriminately? Because it is derived from the Latin, whose alphabet was already arranged in this order. The Latins borrowed their alphabet from the Greeks, and the Greeks took theirs from the Phœnicians.

3. All the sounds of the French language are divided into two classes, viz. **vowels** and **consonants**.

\* We do not attempt any equivalent pronunciation of the French Alphabet; the pupil must learn from the master how the letters are pronounced.

† W is used in words taken from English and German, and in their French derivatives.

## SECTION I.

## OF THE VOWELS.

2. The sound produced by a simple emission of the voice (*a, o, u*), is called a *vowel*. There are seven vowels in French—

**a, e, i (or y), o, u, eu, ou.**

All the vowels can be pronounced by themselves without the help of any other sound.

5. All the vowels can be either **short** or **long**, according as they are pronounced **quickly** or **slowly**: thus *a* is short in *patte* (=paw, foot), because it is pronounced rapidly; whilst it is long in *pâte* (=dough), because we lay a stress on the *â*. In the same way—

<i>e</i>	is long in	<i>bête</i> (=beast),	and short in	<i>jette</i> (=he or she throws).
<i>i</i>	"	<i>gîte</i> (=lodging),	"	<i>petite</i> (=small).
<i>o</i>	"	<i>côte</i> (=coast),	"	<i>dévoté</i> (=devout).
<i>u</i>	"	<i>flûte</i> (=flute),	"	<i>butte</i> (=butt, mound).
<i>eu</i>	"	<i>heure</i> (=hour),	"	<i>jeune</i> (=young).
<i>eu</i>	"	<i>jeûne</i> (=fast),	"	<i>creuser</i> (=to dig).
<i>ou</i>	"	<i>voûte</i> (=vault),	"	<i>toute</i> (=all).

Out of the seven vowels *a, e, i, o, u, eu, ou*, the first five are represented in French by a single letter; the last two are expressed by the junction of two letters, namely *e* and *u*, *o* and *u*. Although appearing to the eye compound vowels, they give to the ear only one sound, *eu, ou*, as simple as that of *a* or *o*.

6. No remarks are needed about *a* and *i*; but *e, o,* and *eu* require some observations to be made—

The letter *e* is used in French to express **three sounds**, which in reality ought to be considered as three distinct vowels:—

1. A very *dull* sound, called **e muet** (mute), as in *homme* (=man), *venir*, (=to come).

2. An *acute* sound, called **e fermé** (close), as in *aimé* (=loved), *bonté* (=goodness). This *e* is generally denoted by the sign ( ' ), called **acute accent** (*accent aigu*).

The *e* is likewise close in words ending by the letter *r* when the *r* is not pronounced. Thus *verger* (=an orchard), *rocher* (=a rock), *aimer* (=to love).

3. A very open sound, which is heard in *terre* (= earth, land), *mer* (= sea), *enfer* (= hell), *succès* (= success), *procès* (= lawsuit), and uttered by opening the mouth wide. This *e* is called **ouvert** (open), and is generally marked by the little sign (´), called **grave accent** (*accent grave*). No accent is used when the open *e* is followed by two consonants, as in *peste* (= plague), *reste* (= remainder), *fresque* (= fresco), or when it is followed by a sounded *r* at the end of a word, as in :—

<i>amer</i> (= bitter)	<i>fer</i> (= iron)
<i>cancer</i> (= cancer)	<i>hier</i> (= yesterday)
<i>cher</i> (= dear)	<i>hiver</i> (= winter)
<i>enfer</i> (= hell)	<i>ver</i> (= worm).

This sound of the open *e* is also rendered either by *ai*, as in :—

<i>aire</i> (= threshing floor), pronounced ère.	
<i>chair</i> (= flesh),	„ chère.
<i>clair</i> (= clear),	„ clère.
<i>éclair</i> (= lightning),	„ élère.
<i>pair</i> (= equal),	„ père.

Or by *ei*, as in :—

<i>peine</i> (= trouble), pronounced pène.	
<i>Seine</i> (= Seine),	„ scène.
<i>veine</i> (= vein),	„ vène.

7. The sound *eu* is represented in French in three different ways, viz. :—

<i>eu</i> , as in <i>heure</i> (= hour),	
<i>œu</i> , „ <i>bœuf</i> (= ox), <i>œuf</i> (= egg), <i>sœur</i> (= sister).	
<i>œ</i> and <i>ue</i> , „ <i>œil</i> (= eye), <i>accueille</i> (= greet [thou]), <i>cueille</i> (= pluck [thou]), <i>orgueil</i> (= pride),	

which are pronounced as if written :—

accœuille, œuille, orgœuil.

8. The vowel *y* between two consonants is pronounced *i*, as in *analyse* (= analysis, parsing), *martyr* (= martyr), *presbytère* (= parsonage); but between two vowels it is sounded like two *i*'s, that is to say, that the first *i* is joined to the preceding vowel, as in *aboyer* (= to bark), pronounce *aboi-ier*, and not *aboi-er*; and in *pays* (= country), pronounce *pai-is*, and not *pa-is*.

9. A **diphthong** is the combination of two simple vowels pronounced by a single emission of the voice, as *ui* in *huileux* (=oily). *Ui*, being a compound of the two vowels *u* and *i*, is a diphthong.

*Diphthong* comes from the Latin *diphthongus* which, itself, was borrowed from the Greek, and means two sounds.

10. In French, diphthongs are formed with the four vowels *i*, *o*, *u*, *ou*, followed by some other vowel of the alphabet.

Thus <i>i</i> forms:	<b>ia</b> , as in <i>piano</i> (=piano)
	<b>ie</b> , ,, <i>piéd</i> (=foot)
	<b>io</b> , ,, <i>piocher</i> (=to dig);
<i>o</i> forms:	<b>oa</b> , as in <i>moabite</i> (=moabite)
	<b>oe</b> , ,, <i>moëlle</i> (=marrow)
	<b>oi</b> , ,, <i>roi</i> (=king);
<i>u</i> forms:	<b>ue</b> , as in <i>écuelle</i> (=bowl)
	<b>ui</b> , ,, <i>huile</i> (=oil)
	,, ,, <i>suif</i> (=tallow);
<i>ou</i> forms:	<b>oua</b> , as in <i>douanier</i> (=custom-house officer)
	<b>oue</b> , ,, <i>fouetter</i> (=to whip)
	<b>oui</b> , ,, <i>oui</i> (=eyes)
	,, ,, <i>louis</i> (=louis)

### Exercise 1.

Write out the following words in French and in English.

A. Underlining with one dash the **short**, and with two dashes the **long vowels** [see § 5]:—

pâté	petite	cru	fleur	pôle
thé	chute	crû	malheur	file
âge	fête	du	pêcheur	jeûne
sage	épître	dû	pêcheur	jeune
cravate	sucre	mot	mur	tache
fourehette	apôtre	août	mûr	tâche
joûte	châsse	louvé	sur	bûche
croûte	chasse	succès	sûr	feu
route				

B. Underlining the **e mute** (a); the **e close** (b); and the **open e** or its equivalents (c) [see § 6]:—

(a) pureté	tenir	somme	élever	sentence
mener	bijouterie	Rome	batelier	féroce
(b) aimé	méchanceté	beauté	sobriété	présent
dîner	légèreté	boucher	boulangier	péril
(c) excès	élève	hiver	pair	haine
arrêt	presque	chaise	chair	reine



**U.** *Underlining the eu or its equivalents [see § 7]:—*

beurre	fauteuil	deuil	noëud	œuf
cœur	écureuil	cueille	vœu	neuf
chœur	orgueil	écueil	demeure	œuvre

**D.** *Arranging under two heads those where the y stands for i, and those where the y stands for ii [see § 8]:—*

croyant	fondroyant	fuyard	cyprès	presbytère
bruyant	rayon	syllabe	style	martyr
payan	citoyen	symbole	analyse	acolyte

**E.** *Underlining the diphthongs [see §§ 9 and 10]:—*

diable	huile	médiocre	étoile	écuelle
acier	tuile	ennui	poire	queue
cahier	guide	cuir	roue	équestre
période	liquide	louage	Louis	quille

## SECTION II.

### OF THE CONSONANTS.

**11.** In the French alphabet there are twenty consonants:—

B, C, D, F, G, H, J, K, L, M, N, P, Q, R, S,  
T, V, W, X, Z,

to which CH should be added.

Several of these consonants express the same sound, thus *s, k, q* have the sound of *c hard*, e.g., *cavalier* (=horseman), *kakatoës* (=cockatoo), *qualifier* (=to qualify).

*S* and *c* are sounded alike in *servir* (=to serve), and *cervelle* (=brains);

*J* and *g* in *j'ai* (=I have), and *gai* (=joy), *joli* (=pretty), and *geôlier* (=jailer);

*Z* and *s* in *zéro* (=zero, nought), and *déserteur* (=deserter), which is pronounced *dézerteur*.

These letters are called **CONSONANTS**, from the Latin word *consona* (that which is pronounced with, by the help of), because the old grammarians believed that a consonant could never be pronounced without the help of a vowel.

**12.** The consonants are produced by three different parts of the vocal mechanism: the *throat*, the *teeth*, and the *lips*. The six consonants, **c, k, q, g, j, ch**, which are produced by the *throat*. are for that reason, called

**gutturals** (from the Latin *guttur*, throat); two of them, **c** and **g**, have a double sound, viz., *hard* before the vowels *a*, *o*, *u*, as in *camarade* (=comrade), *gamin* (=street Arab), *corridor* (=passage), *gobelet* (=goblet); *cumuler* (=to accumulate), *guttural* (=guttural); and *soft* before the vowels *e* and *i*, as in *cerveau* (=brains), *germer* (=to sprout); *cirer* (=to black, to polish), *gibier* (=game).

**13. T, d, s, z**, which are produced by the *teeth*, are, for that reason, called **dentals** (from Lat. *dens*, *dentis*, tooth).

**s** placed between two vowels is sounded like **z**:—  
*cloison* (=partition) pronounce *cloizon*  
*poison* (=poison) „ *poizon*.

**14.** The consonants produced by the help of the *lips*, and for that reason called **labials** (from the Latin *labia*, lips), are **p, b, f, v**.

**15.** The two consonants **l** and **r** are called **liquids** (from the Latin *liquidus*, liquid, flowing), because these two letters are easily joined to other consonants, such as *p, b, c*, to form groups of letters quite liquid (*easy to pronounce*), such as *bl* in *blanc* (=white), *pl* in *plaine* (=field), *cl* in *clameur* (=clamour, outcry), *gl* in *gloire* (=glory), or *pr* in *premier* (=first), *cr* in *croire* (=to believe), *br* in *bruit* (=noise), *gr* in *grandir* (=to grow).

**16.** The two consonants **m** and **n** are called **nasal** (from the Latin *nasus*, nose), because they give to the vowels a peculiar sound proceeding from the *nose*, as *an* in *manger* (=to eat), *vanter* (=to praise).

The liquid *l* and the nasal *n* become liquid in some cases, that is to say, they are pronounced as if followed by a very weak *i*, audible, for instance, in *campagnard* (=countryman), and *travailler* (=to work).

**17. x** is a double consonant, pronounced sometimes like *cs* (*luxueux*=luxurious), sometimes like *gs* (*exact*=exact).

**13.** **H** is the weakest of all the consonants, just as *e silent* or *mute* is the weakest vowel. There are two kinds of *h*'s:—

1. *H silent* (or *mute*), which does not represent any sound, and over which leaps the elision of the article *le* or *la*, exactly as if the article was coming into contact with the vowel itself. Examples:—

*L'homme* (=the man), *l'habitude* (=the habit);

Exactly as in—

*L'abaissement* (=the abasement), *l'obéissance* (=the obedience).

2. *H aspirate*, which in French is not more heard than *h silent*, but which differs from it by preventing the elision:—

*Le héros* (=the hero), *la houlette* (=the shepherd's crook).

Care must be taken not to sound *les-zhéros*, *les-zhou'ettes*.

### QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. How are <i>words</i> formed?   | 10. What is to be noticed with reference to the letter <i>y</i> ?  |
| 2. How are <i>sounds</i> represented?                                   | 11. What is a <i>diphthong</i> ?   |
| 3. What is the <i>alphabet</i> ?  | 12. Name the principal diphthongs.   |
| 4. How many letters are there in the French alphabet?                   | 13. How many <i>consonants</i> are there in French?  |
| 5. What is the origin of the French alphabet?                           | 14. Name the <i>gutturals</i> —the <i>dentals</i> —the <i>labials</i> —the <i>liquids</i> —the <i>nasals</i> . |
| 6. What are <i>rowels</i> ?   | 15. When do the consonants <i>r</i> and <i>n</i> become liquid?  |
| 7. Give a list of the French vowels.                                    | 16. When is <i>h</i> a mute letter?—When does it become aspirate?  |
| 8. What is a short vowel?—a long vowel?                                 |  |
| 9. What is the <i>e mute</i> ?—the <i>e close</i> ?—the <i>e open</i> ? |  |

### Exercise 2.

Write out the following words in French and in English.

A. Underlining the guttural consonant (see § 12):—

crystal	jumeau	kilomètre	question	goût
camp	joyeux	requête	chaleur	dégât

B. Underlining with one dash the **c** and **g** hard, and with two dashes the **c** and **g** soft:—

cascade	garçon	courte	céleste	golfe
cervelas	géant	gibier	cible	guêtre

C. *Underlining the dentals (a); the labials (b); and the liquids (c) [see §§ 13—15]:—*

(a)	teindre	attentif	dimanche	seigneur	zéro
	tempête	danser	savoir	sucré	zone
(b)	poulet	boucle	figure	perte	revers
	peuple	faiblesse	verbe	vertu	bible
(c)	blé	grand	bruit	plateau	plume
	croisée	blanc	prairie	trouble	prune

D. *Underlining the nasal (a), and the liquid l and n (b) [see § 16]:—*

(a)	menton	mensonge	un	fonction	festin
	tenture	leçon	puissance	prompt	vilain
(b)	mouille	campagne	pille	vermeil	gouvernail
	oreille	règne	aiguille	sommeil	Gascogne

E. *Underlining with one dash the x employed instead of cs, and with two dashes the x employed instead of gz. (see § 17):—*

luxe	texte	exhaler	exprès	exposé
exemple	exigu	vexer	anxieux	exigeant

F. *Underlining with one dash the h mute, and with two dashes the h aspirate (see § 18):—*

habile	hagard	hache	hasard	héritier
hâle	habit	habitation	herbage	hibou

## CHAPTER II.

### OF SYLLABLES.—ORTHOGRAPHIC SIGNS.

19. A **syllable** is one or several sounds which are pronounced without interruption, and by a single emission of the voice. Thus *ôté* (=taken away, past participle of *ôter*), is formed of two syllables, the first of which is composed of only one vowel (*ô*), and the second of a consonant (*t*) and a vowel (*é*).

When a syllable ends with an *e* silent (or mute), as *me*, in *j'aime*. (=I love), it is called **silent** (or **mute**).

**20.** The name of **orthographic signs** is given to certain signs used in writing, either to indicate the changes of the same vowel, as *o* and *ô*, *é* and *è*, *ai* and *ai*; or the suppression of a letter, as in *l'épée* for *la épée* (=the sword); or lastly, the joining of two or three words into one, as *arc-en-ciel* (=rainbow), *pied-à-terre* (=temporary lodging, resting-place).

There are five kinds of *orthographic signs*, viz., the *accents*, the *cedilla*, the *diæresis*, the *apostrophe*, and the *hyphen*.

The **accents** are three in number: the *acute* (´), the *grave* (`), and the *circumflex* (^).

The *acute* accent is placed over *close é*: *bonté* (=kindness), *santé* (=health).

The *grave* accent is placed over *open è*: *procès* (=lawsuit), *succès* (=success). It is also placed over *à* (=to), *là* (=there), *où* (=where), *dès* (=as soon as), to prevent the confusion with *a* (= [he or she] has), *la* (=the, *fem. article*, or *her, pers. pronoun*), *ou* (=or), *des* (=of the, *defin. art.*, or *some, indefin. art.*).

The *circumflex* accent is placed over long vowels: *côte* (=coast, shore, rib), *gîte* (=dwelling).

The *circumflex* accent usually shows that a letter has been suppressed. Thus, the words *tête* (=head), *fête* (=festival), *bête* (=beast), were originally spelt *teste*, *feste*, *beste*, and they preserved that spelling till the middle of the eighteenth century. It was only in 1740 that the *Académie Française* replaced the consonant *s* by a circumflex accent in the above words and similar ones.

**21.** In order to show, when two vowels following each other are to be pronounced separately, the sign (¨) called **tréma** (diæresis) is placed over the second: thus *uë* in *ciguë* (=hemlock). Without the diæresis this word would be pronounced *cig*, because *ue* would be mute as in *figue* (=fig), *ligue* (=league).

The **apostrophe** (') denotes the suppression of the vowels *a*, *e*, *i*, in *le*, *la*, *je*, *me*, *te*, *se*, *de*, *que*, *si*, and a few

other words before another word beginning with a *vowel* or *h* silent, as in :—

<i>L'épée</i> (=the sword)	instead of <i>la-épée</i>
<i>J'arrive</i> (=I arrive)	” <i>je-arrive</i>
<i>S'il vient</i> (=if he comes)	” <i>si-il vient</i>
<i>L'honneur</i> (=the honour)	” <i>le-honneur</i>

**22.** The **cedilla** is a sign (,) placed under the *c* before *a*, *o*, *u*, when it has a soft sound, as in *façade* (=frontage, façade), *façon* (=form, shape), *rinçure* (=rinsings), instead of its regular hard sound before the same vowels, as in *camarade* (=comrade), *colombe* (=dove), *curieux* (=inquisitive).

**23.** The **hyphen**, called in French **trait d'union**, joins together either the different parts of a compound word, as *arc-en-ciel* (=rainbow), *chef-lieu* (=chief or county town), *vis-à-vis* (=opposite);—or the verb with its subject (in the interrogative conjugation), as in *irai-je* (=shall I go)? *viendrez-vous* (=will you come)?—or with its object, as in *croyez-moi* (=believe me), *venez-y-voir* (=come hither and see).

All these signs were introduced into the French language by the grammarians of the sixteenth century. The accents are borrowed from the Greek language, in which, however, they were used for a very different purpose. *Trema* is a Greek word which means “point, dot,” or, more properly, “hole.” *Apostrophe*, likewise borrowed from the Greek, means “that which wards off,” the suppression of the vowel preventing, or *warding off*, the hiatus which would be caused by the discordant meeting of two vowels. The *cedilla* was borrowed from the Italian printers, who called *zediglia* a little crotchet like a *z* placed under *c*, when it was to be pronounced *z* instead of *k*. The Italian word comes from *zeta* (*z*), and means properly “small *z*.”

**24.** The three accents just described must not be mistaken for the *tonic accent* (from the L. *tonus*, a tone).

The raising of the voice on a particular syllable in every word is called the **tonic accent**, and the syllable on which falls that accent is called the **accented** or **tonic syllable**.

In French the accented syllable is always the last of the word, as *mouton* (=sheep), *cheval* (=horse), *il*

**aima** (=he loved), except when the word ends in *e* mute, as **table** (=table), **aimable** (=amiable), **lisible** (=legible), in which case the tonic accent is carried back to the penultimate: **table**, **aimable**, **lisible**.

It results from this that, when two mute syllables would otherwise come together at the end of a word, as in the feminine of adjectives, and in verbs (**muet-e** = dumb; **complet-e** = complete; **appeler** = to call, **j'appelle** = I call; **acheter** = to buy, **j'achete** = I buy; **mener** = to lead, **je mène** = I lead), the sound of the *e* in the last syllable but one is increased either by putting a grave accent over it (**complète**, **je mène**, **j'achète**), or by doubling the following consonant (**j'appelle**, **muet-te**).

### QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <p>1. What is a <i>syllable</i>?—How many syllables are there in <i>résidence</i>?</p> <p>2. What is a <i>mute</i> syllable?</p> <p>3. What is meant by <i>orthographic signs</i>?</p> <p>4. Enumerate the orthographic signs used in French.</p> <p>5. Where is the <i>acute</i> accent placed?—What are the various uses of the <i>grave</i> accent?—What does the <i>circumflex</i> accent generally show?</p> | <p>6. Where is the <i>tréma</i> placed?</p> <p>7. Explain the use of the <i>apostrophe</i>, the <i>hæphen</i>, the <i>cedilla</i>.</p> <p>8. State the origin of the various orthographic signs.</p> <p>9. What do you mean by the <i>tonic accent</i>?</p> <p>10. Which is the <i>accented syllable</i> in French words?</p> |
|---|---|

### Exercise 3.

Write out the following words in French and in English:

A. Underlining the **tonic** syllable (see § 24):—

aimant	président	souvent	président (verbe)	veille
aiment	expédient	trouvent	expédient (verbe)	veillent

B. Underlining with one dash the **tonic** syllable, and with two dashes the **atonic** one (see § 24):—

édifice	toniffe	froment	plancher	soulèvement
forêt	avoine	charrue	assiette	foulement

# BOOK II.

---

## STUDY OF WORDS.

**25.** There are ten classes of words used in the French language, viz. :

- |                                  |   |
|----------------------------------|---|
| 1. <b>Le nom</b> (noun)          | 6. <b>Le participe</b> (participle)       |
| 2. <b>L'article</b> (article)    | 7. <b>La préposition</b> (preposition)    |
| 3. <b>L'adjectif</b> (adjective) | 8. <b>L'adverbe</b> (adverb)              |
| 4. <b>Le pronom</b> (pronoun)    | 9. <b>La conjonction</b> (conjunction)    |
| 5. <b>Le verbe</b> (verb)        | 10. <b>L'interjection</b> (interjection). |

These ten kinds of different words, which by their combination form the French language, may be compared to the different parts of the human body, and for that reason have been called by grammarians **parts of speech**—that is to say, *the parts of the language*.

All these parts of speech (with the exception of the article unknown to the Romans) passed from Latin into French.

### CHAPTER I.

#### OF THE NOUN OR SUBSTANTIVE.

**26.** The **noun** or **substantive** is a word used to name persons, animals, or things.

There are two kinds of nouns : **proper** nouns and **common** nouns.

The **proper** noun applies either to one *person* only, as *Pierre* (= Peter), *Paul* (= Paul), *Louis* (= Louis), or to one *thing* only, as *le Rhône* (= river Rhone), *la Loire* (= river Loire).

REMARK.—Proper nouns begin always with a capital letter.



The **common** noun designates either all the *persons* of the same nature, as *enfant* (=child), *marchant* (=merchant), *soldat* (=soldier); or *things* of the same kind, as *cour* (=court, yard), *jardin* (=garden), *maison* (=house).

**27. Collective** nouns are those which express a collection of persons or things, as *foule* (=crowd), *troupe* (=troop), *multitude* (=multitude).

**Compound** nouns are those which, although formed of two or three words, designate one single person or thing, as *chou-fleur* (=cauliflower), *arc-en-ciel* (=rainbow).

**28.** In nouns two things are to be studied and examined—*gender* and *number*.

## SECTION I.

### OF GENDER IN NOUNS.

**29. Gender** is the difference or distinction which is made between male and female beings.

In French there are two genders :—the **masculine**, and the **feminine**.

Men and males of animals, as *le père* (=the father), *le lion* (=the lion), are of the masculine gender. Women and females of animals, as *la mère* (=the mother), *la lionne* (=the lioness), are of the feminine gender.

Moreover, names of things which belong to neither sex have been made, by imitation, masculine or feminine. Thus *le bois* (=the wood), *le château* (=the castle), *le pays* (=the country), are masculine; whilst *la cour* (=the court, yard), *la grille* (=the grate, railing), *la lune* (=the moon) are feminine.

**30.** Feminine nouns are generally formed by adding an **e mute** to the masculine—

*marquis* (=marquis)  
*ours* (=bear)

*marquise* (=marchioness)  
*ourse* (=she-bear)

When the masculine noun ends with **en** or **on**, the **n** is doubled in the feminine—

<i>baron</i> (=baron)	<i>baronne</i> (=baroness)
<i>chrétien</i> (=Christian)	<i>chrétienne</i> (=Christian)
<i>lion</i> (=lion)	<i>lionne</i> (=lioness)

When the masculine ends in **er**, the feminine takes a grave accent ( ` ) over the **e** : *portier* (=door-keeper), *portière*.

EXCEPTIONS.—About twenty substantives form their feminine by changing **e** final into **esse**, as—*nègre* (=negro), *négresse* (=negress); *tigre* (=tiger), *tigresse* (=tigress); *prophète* (=prophet), *prophétesse* (=prophetess); *hôte* (=host), *hôtesse* (=hostess), etc.

*Chasseur* (=hunter), *pécheur* (=sinner), weaken, besides, the diphthong *eu* into *e* mute, thus making *chasseresse*, *pécheresse* (and not *chasseuresse*, *pécheuresse*).

A few masculine substantives ending in **eur** form their feminine in **ice**, such as *acteur* (=actor), *ambassadeur* (=ambassador), etc., which make *actrice*, *ambassadrice*, etc. *Chanteur* (=singer), *voyageur* (=traveller), etc., have for their corresponding feminine: *chanteuse*, *voyageuse*, etc.

Many nouns, denoting professions generally followed by men, have no feminine: *imprimeur* (=printer), *graveur* (=engraver).

#### Exercise 4.

Write out the feminine of the following substantives, and give the meaning of each:—

(a)	<i>marquis</i>	<i>ouvrier</i>	<i>chien</i>	<i>gardien</i>	<i>Louis</i>
	<i>cousin</i>	<i>lion</i>	<i>comédien</i>	<i>mercier</i>	<i>écolier</i>
	<i>orphelin</i>	<i>paysan</i>	<i>magicien</i>	<i>portier</i>	<i>ours</i>
	<i>châtelain</i>	<i>Européen</i>	<i>jardinier</i>	<i>Anglais</i>	<i>Italien</i>
	<i>filleul</i>	<i>Français</i>	<i>Romain</i>	<i>berger</i>	<i>Gascon</i>
(b)	<i>pair</i>	<i>chasseur</i>	<i>maître</i>	<i>Suisse</i>	<i>traître</i>
	<i>prophète</i>	<i>tigre</i>	<i>défendeur</i>	<i>prince</i>	<i>couste</i>
	<i>nègre</i>	<i>chanoine</i>	<i>hôte</i>	<i>pécheur</i>	<i>enchanteur</i>
(c)	<i>baigneur</i>	<i>nageur</i>	<i>pécheur</i>	<i>sauteur</i>	<i>chanteur</i>
	<i>voyageur</i>	<i>joueur</i>	<i>travailleur</i>	<i>voleur</i>	<i>fancheur</i>
	<i>acheteur</i>	<i>laveur</i>	<i>polisseur</i>	<i>flatteur</i>	<i>danseur</i>
(d)	<i>délateur</i>	<i>bienfaiteur</i>	<i>fondateur</i>	<i>conducteur</i>	<i>directeur</i>
	<i>acteur</i>	<i>moteur</i>	<i>admirateur</i>	<i>adorateur</i>	<i>instituteur</i>

## SECTION II.

### OF NUMBER IN NOUNS.

31. The **number** is the difference or distinction which is made between one single thing and several things collected together.

In French, as in English, there are two numbers—the **singular**, to denote one person or one thing, as *le lion* (=the lion), *le livre* (=the book); and the **plural**, to denote several persons or things, as *les lions* (=the lions), *les livres* (=the books).

**32. GENERAL RULE.**—The plural of nouns is formed by adding **s** to the singular: *L'homme* (=man), *les hommes* (=men); *le livre* (=the book), *les livres* (=the books).

The reason why the French forms its plural in **s**, in preference to **m** or **b**, or any other letter, may be briefly stated thus: the French language has borrowed from the Latin accusative both its singular and its plural; and the letter **s** was generally the sign of the accusative plural in Latin.

**33.** When a noun in the singular already ends in **s**, **x**, or **z**, it does not change in the plural—

*le fils* (=the son)

*les fils* (=the sons)

*la voix* (=the voice)

*les voix* (=the voices)

*le nez* (=the nose)

*les nez* (=the noses).

**34. EXCEPTIONS.**—Nouns whose singular ends in **au** or **eu** take **x** in the plural—

*un bateau* (=a boat)

*des bateaux* (=some boats)

*le château* (=the castle)

*les châteaux* (=the castles);

as well as the seven following nouns ending in **ou**:

*le bijou* (=the jewel)

*les bijoux* (=the jewels)

*un caillou* (=a pebble)

*des cailloux* (=some pebbles)

*un chou* (=a cabbage)

*des choux* (=some cabbages)

*le genou* (=the knee)

*les genoux* (=the knees)

*le hibou* (=the owl)

*les hiboux* (=the owls)

*un joujou* (=a toy)

*des joujoux* (=some toys)

*un pou* (=a louse)

*des poux* (=lice).

**N.B.**—All the other nouns ending in **ou** follow the general rule, and take **s** in the plural—

*un clou* (=a nail)

*des clous* (=some nails)

*un verrou* (=a bolt)

*des verrous* (=some bolts).

This irregularity is one of the remains of the old language. The French **s** in the plural is always silent: roses, fleurs, and in the Middle Ages, we find it spelt either **x** or **z**, in *nes* for *nez*, *vois* or *voiz* for *voix*, for instance.

That license has remained in the words *bijou*, *genou*, etc., which are still written *bijoux*, *genoux*, whilst the plural of *clou* and *verrou* is spelt *clous*, *verrous*.

**35.** Nouns in *al* change *al* into *aux* in the plural—

<i>le cheval</i> (=the horse)	<i>les chev<b>aux</b></i> (=the horses)
<i>un mal</i> (=an evil)	<i>des ma<b>ux</b></i> (=evils)
EXCEPT :— <i>bal</i> (=ball [to dance at])	<i>chacal</i> (=jackal)
<i>carnaval</i> (=carnival)	<i>rég<b>al</b></i> (=regale, feast, treat)

which take **s** in the plural :—*des bal**s*** (=balls)

Seven substantives ending in *ail* follow the same rule—

<i>un bail</i> (=a lease)	<i>des ba<b>ux</b></i> (=leases)
<i>le corail</i> (=coral)	<i>les cor<b>aux</b></i> (=the corals)
<i>l'émail</i> (=the enamel)	<i>les éma<b>ux</b></i> (=the enamels)
<i>un soupirail</i> (=an air-hole)	<i>des soupir<b>aux</b></i> (=air-holes)
<i>le travail</i> (=work)	<i>les trava<b>ux</b></i> (=the works)
<i>le vantail</i> (=the leaf of a door)	<i>les vanta<b>ux</b></i> (=the leaves of doors)
<i>un vitrail</i> (=a stained glass window)	<i>des vitra<b>ux</b></i> (=stained glass windows).

N.B.—The word *bestiaux* is used as the plural of *bétail* (=cattle).

But all the other substantives ending in *ail* follow the general rule, as—

<i>un gouvernail</i> (=a helm)	<i>des gouvern<b>ails</b></i> (=helm <b>s</b> ), etc.
--------------------------------	---

At the birth of the French language—that is, in the time of Hugh Capet—*al* became *als* in the plural: *un cheval*, *des chevaux*, *un mal*, *des ma**ls***; but in the thirteenth century (about the time of St. Louis) *al* was softened, and became *au* before a consonant. Traces of this alteration are found in the expressions: *cheval-léger* (=a light dragoon), and *Vaugirard*, still used instead of *cheval-léger*, *Val Girard* (*le vallon de Girard*=the vale of Girard): *cheva**ls*** then became *cheva**us***, and, subsequently, *cheva**ux***. (See § 34.)

**36.** The following nouns have two plural forms, one regular, the other irregular. The irregular generally leaves to the noun the same meaning it has in the singular, whilst the regular gives it a peculiar signification :—

IRREGULAR.

<i>l'aïeul*</i> (=the grandfather)	<i>les aïe<b>ux</b></i> (=the ancestors)
<i>le ciel</i> (=sky, heaven)	<i>les cie<b>ux</b></i> (=the heavens)
<i>l'œil</i> (=the eye)	<i>les yeu<b>x</b></i> (=the eyes)
<i>le travail</i> (=the work)	<i>les trava<b>ux</b></i> (=the works).

REGULAR.

<i>les aïeul<b>s</b></i> (=the grandfathers)
<i>des ciel<b>s</b></i> (=skies in pictures, bed-testers)
<i>les œil<b>s</b></i> , in compound nouns, as <i>œil<b>s</b>-de-bœuf</i> (=oval windows)
<i>des travaill<b>s</b></i> (=a minister's reports, or brakes for shoeing vicious horses).

\* *Aïeul* keeps its original meaning in the regular plural.

## QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

1. How many kinds of words are there in French?
2. What is the meaning of the expression: *parts of speech*?
3. What is a *common* substantive?—a *proper* one?
4. What is a *collective* noun?—a *compound* one?
5. What are the two points to be studied in connection with nouns?
6. What is meant by the *gender* of a noun?—How many genders are there in French?
7. What is the general rule for the formation of the feminine in French nouns?
8. Give the feminine of the following nouns: *chien*—*traître*—*lecteur*—*chanteur*—*pêcheur*.
9. What is meant by the *number* of a noun?—How many numbers are there in French?
10. How do you form the *plural* of French nouns?
11. How do you account for *s* being the sign of the plural in French?
12. How do you form the plural of nouns ending, 1. in *s, x, z*; 2. in *au* or *eu*; 3. in *ou*?
13. How do you explain the irregularity in the case of nouns ending in *ou*?
14. How do you form the plural of nouns ending, 1. in *al*; 2. in *aïl*?—What are the exceptions?
15. What is the origin of the plural in *aux*?
16. Give the plural of *aïeul*, *ciel*, *aïl*.

## Exercise 5.

Write out the plural of the following substantives, giving the meaning of each:—

- |     |          |         |            |          |            |
|-----|----------|---------|------------|----------|------------|
| (a) | vaisseau | homme   | maître     | excès    | château    |
|     | richesse | mer     | siècle     | bambou   | hameau     |
|     | pois     | trou    | élève      | tableau  | caillou    |
|     | vice     | ami     | navigateur | vertu    | acajou     |
|     | verrou   | oiseau  | perdrix    | noix     |            |
| (b) | maréchal | canal   | régal      | camail   | gouvernail |
|     | cheval   | arsenal | bal        | détail   | rail       |
|     | bocal    | cristal | carnaval   | éventail | vitrail    |
|     | signal   | végétal | chacal     | bail     | travail    |
|     | amiral   | vassal  | soupirail  | corail   | général    |
|     | mal      | journal | attirail   | émail    | capital    |

## SECTION III.

## FORMATION OF SUBSTANTIVES.

37. New substantives are formed by joining together, either:

1. **two nouns**: un *chat-tigre* (=a tiger-cat),
2. **a noun and an adjective**: une *basse-taille* (=a bass voice),
3. **a noun and a verb**: un *tire-bouchon* (=a cork-screw),
4. **a noun and a preposition**: un *sous-officier* (=a non-commissioned officer),
5. **a verb and an adverb**: un *passe-partout* (=a master-key),
6. **two nouns joined by a preposition**: un *arc-en-ciel* (=a rainbow).

**38.** From a simple substantive, as *boutique* (=shop), two new words can be derived in French :

(a) A **derivative**, with a new termination called **suffix** (from the Latin *suffixus*=*affixed to or after*) placed *after* the word, as *ier* in *boutiquier* (=shopkeeper). The part of the simple word which remains unaltered, and to which the suffix is added, is termed *root* or *stem*.

(b) A **compound**, with the help of a new word called **prefix** (from the Latin *præfixus*=*affixed before*), which is placed *before* the simple word, as **arrière-boutique** (=back-shop).

#### PREFIXES.

**39.** The prefixes used in French to form new substantives are—

<b>après,</b>	as in	une <i>après-midi</i> (=an afternoon)
<b>avant,</b>	„	un <i>avant-coureur</i> (=a forerunner, precursor)
<b>arrière,</b>	„	une <i>arrière-boutique</i> (=a back-shop)
<b>contre,</b>	„	un <i>contre-ordre</i> (=a counter-order)
<b>entre,</b>	„	une <i>entre-côte</i> (=a rib of beef)
<b>non,</b>	„	un <i>non-sens</i> (=a nonsense)
<b>sans,</b>	„	un <i>sans-façon</i> (an off-handed manner)
<b>sous,</b>	„	un <i>sous-officier</i> (=a non-commissioned officer)

The three particles, *bis*, *mi*, *vice*, are also used to form compound nouns—

<b>bis</b>	(=twice), as	<i>bisaïeul</i> (=great-grandfather); <i>biscuit</i> (=biscuit, <i>lit.</i> twice baked)
<b>mi</b>	(=half), as	la <i>mi-carême</i> (=mid-Lent); la <i>mi-juillet</i> (=the middle of July); <i>minuit</i> (=midnight)
<b>vice</b>	(=instead of, in the place of), as	<i>vice-roi</i> (=viceroy), <i>vice-amiral</i> (=vice-admiral).

#### SUFFIXES.

**40.** Derivative substantives are formed in French by adding to substantives already existing, to adjectives, or to verbs *cleren* suffixes: **ade, age, ain, arâ, at, é, ée, er (ier), ic (erie), esse, iste.**

## 1. Substantives formed from substantives already existing.

From <i>colonne</i> (=a column), we get	<i>colonnade</i> , i.e. a collection of columns.
<i>plume</i> (=a feather) „	<i>plumage</i> , i.e. a collection of feathers (=plumage).
<i>chappelle</i> (=a chapel) „	<i>chapelain</i> (=a chaplain).
<i>bille</i> (=a ball) „	<i>billard</i> (=a billiard table).
<i>marquis</i> (=a marquis) „	<i>marquisat</i> (=a marquise).
<i>comte</i> (=a count or earl) „	<i>comté</i> (=a county or earldom).
<i>bouche</i> (=a mouth) „	<i>bouchée</i> (=a mouthful).
<i>horloge</i> (=a clock) „	<i>horloger</i> (=a clockmaker).
<i>pomme</i> (=an apple) „	<i>pommier</i> , (=an apple-tree).
<i>boucher</i> (=a butcher) „	<i>boncherie</i> (=a butcher's shop, butchery).
<i>âne</i> (=an ass) „	<i>ânesse</i> (=a she-ass).
<i>journal</i> (=a journal or newspaper) „	<i>journaliste</i> (=a journalist).

21. There is a particular class of suffixes which indicating *diminution*, are used to form derivatives, whose meaning is less than that of the simple word. For this reason they are called *diminutive suffixes*. Such are, for instance, *illon* in *négrillon* = *petit nègre* (=little negro); *eau* in *chevreau* = *petite chèvre* (=kid).

Some of these suffixes, whilst lessening the signification of the simple word, give to it, at the same time, a meaning of depreciation and contempt, as *aille* in—

*la ferr-aille* (=old iron), from *fer* (=iron)

*la valet-aille* (=flunkeys), „ *valet* (=valet, footman), &c. &c.

22. The diminutive suffixes are six in number—

1. **aille**: *valet* (=valet), *valetaille* (=flunkeys);

2. **as**: *plâtre* (=plaster), *plâtras* (=rubbish of plaster); (*in the feminine, asse*); *paille* (=straw), *paillasse* (=straw-mattress).

3. **et**: *livre* (=book), *livret* (=small-book); (*in the feminine, ette*); *chanson* (=song), *chansonnette* (=little song, ditty), hence the compound **elette**: *goutte* (=drop), *goutelette* (=small drop).

4. **on**: *âne* (=ass), *ânon* (=foal of an ass); hence the compounds *illon* and *eron*: *carpe* (=carp), *carpillon* (=small carp); *mouche* (=fly); *moucheron* (=gnat).

5. **eau**: *prune* (=plum), *pruneau* (=small plum); (*in the feminine, elle*), *prunelle* (=sloe).

The suffix **eau** makes *elle* in the feminine, because the old French language had the masculine termination *el* instead of *eau*; thus, *chapel*, the old form of *chapeau* (=hat), subsists still in *chape'ier* (=hatter).

6. **ot**: *île* (=island), *flot* (=small island).

2. *Substantives derived from Adjectives.*

**43.** New substantives are formed by adding to adjectives the five following suffixes: **esse, ise, ie, té, ure.** All these nouns, thus derived from adjectives, are feminine—

<i>la faiblesse</i> (=weakness)	from	<i>faible</i> (=weak)
<i>la sottise</i> (=foolishness)	„	<i>sotte</i> f. of <i>sot</i> (=foolish)
<i>la maladie</i> (=illness)	„	<i>malade</i> (=ill)
<i>la pauvreté</i> (=poverty)	„	<i>pauvre</i> (=poor)
<i>la courbure</i> (=bending)	„	<i>courbe</i> (=curved).

3. *Substantives derived from Verbs.*

**44.** New substantives are formed from the verbs in three different ways, either—

(1) by using as substantives the **infinitive**, the **present participle**, and the **past participle**, as *le manger* (=eating), which is the infinitive of *manger* (=to eat); *le tranchant* (=the edge), from *tranchant* (=cutting), present participle of *trancher* (=to cut); *le reçu* (=the receipt), past participle of the verb *recevoir* (=to receive);

Or, (2) by striking off the termination *er* from verbs belonging to the first conjugation; thus, from *replier* (=to fold back) we get *repli* (=fold); from *débuter* (=to begin) we get *debut* (=outset); from *appeler* (=to call), we get *appel* (=call, appeal);

Or (3) by adding to the root of the verb the suffixes **ade, age, ance, eur** (or **isseur**), **is, ment** (or **ement**), **oir, on, aison** (or **ison**), **ure.**

Thus from—

<i>promen-er</i> (=to walk)	comes	<i>promenade</i> (=walk)
<i>lav-er</i> (=to wash)	„	<i>lavage</i> (=washing)
<i>surveill-er</i> (=superintending)	„	<i>surveillance</i> (=superintendence)
<i>chass-er</i> (=to hunt)	„	<i>chasseur</i> (=hunter)
<i>rég-ir</i> (=to rule)	„	<i>régisseur</i> (=steward, bailiff)
<i>hâch-er</i> (=to chop, to mince)	„	<i>hachis</i> (=hash, minced meat)
<i>hurl-er</i> (=to howl)	„	<i>hurlement</i> (=howling)
<i>parl-er</i> (=to speak)	„	<i>parloir</i> (=parlour)
<i>jur-er</i> (=to swear)	„	<i>juron</i> (=oath)
<i>li-er</i> (=to connect)	„	<i>liaison</i> (=connection)
<i>guér-ir</i> (=to cure)	„	<i>guérison</i> (=curing, healing)
<i>bless-er</i> (=to wound)	„	<i>blessure</i> (=wound).



## QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

1. How are new substantives formed in French?
2. Define a *prefix*;—a *suffix*.
3. Form a few substantives with the prefixes *contre*, *sous*, *sans*.
4. What is the meaning of *ni*, *bis*, *vice*?
5. Form a few substantives with the suffixes *ul*, *on*, *uille*, *as*, *er*, *iste*.
6. What is meant by a *diminutive suffix*?
7. Form substantives with the suffixes *on*, *eau*, *ot*, *as*.
8. How are new substantives formed from adjectives?
9. What parts of the verbs are sometimes used as substantives?
10. What suffixes are used to form fresh substantives from verbs?—Give a list of substantives formed from the verbs *nettoyer*, *abréger*, *épancher*, *frémir*, *sentir*.

## Exercise 6.

Write a list of the following substantives with the PREFIX indicated, and give the meaning of both the simple and the compound substantives.

- (a) prefix **après**: coup, midi, demain, diner  
 (b) „ **arrière**: garde, saison, boutique, neveu, pensée  
 (c) „ **avant**: poste, coureur, garde, goût, propos  
 (d) „ **contre**: coup, sens, marque, amiral, nuitie  
 (e) „ **entre**: côte, mets, sol, pont  
 (f) „ **non**: sens, valeur, paiement  
 (g) „ **sans**: façon, gêne, dent  
 (h) „ **sous**: officier, préfet, maître, intendant, sol  
 (i) „ **vice**: roi, président, amiral  
 (j) „ **mi**: nuit, jambe, juillet, partie  
 (k) „ **bis**: aïeul, sac.

## Exercise 7.

Write a list of compound substantives, by adding to the following one of the SUFFIXES given below, and give the meaning of both the simple and the compound words.

- (a) suffix **ade** (*fem.*):

aube	limon	colonne	poivre	arc
peuple	face	galop	recul	bourg
balustre	rodomont	orange	bourre	cil

- (b) suffix **at** (*masc.*):

solde	consul	assassin	syndic
externe	interne	Auvergne	forme
tribun	cardinal	marquis	économe

- (c) suffix **age** (*masc.*):

herbe	esclave	bande	jardin	feuille
bord	branche	brigand	corde	ermite
langue	magasin	échafaud	vagabond	ligne
pèlerin	grille	mari	moule	plume
jaube	ferme	coquille	Loume	aucré

(d) *suffix ain (fem. aine)* :

<i>Masc.</i>	{	monde	république *	Rome	proche
		public	Afrique *	terre	Amérique *
		Toulouse	Maroc	quatre	diocèse
<i>Fem.</i>	{	Dix †	huit	quarante	cinquante
		soixante	cent	trente	vingt
		douze	quinze		

(e) *suffix ard (fem. arde)* :

<i>Masc.</i> :	campagne	montagne	bille
<i>Fem.</i> :	poule	bombe	moût

(f) *suffix é* :

<i>Masc.</i> :	comte	doigt
<i>Fem.</i> :	parent	prévôt

(g) *suffix ée (fem.)* :

assiette	soir	rang	matin	niche
écuelle	jatte	table	cuiller	plume
pâte	boucho	train		

(h) *suffix ier [or er after ch, g, or ill (masc.)]* :

cerise	amande	gomme	grenade	pomme
poire	châtaigne	groseille	rose	orange
pêche	ferme	douane	barbe	botte
plomb	guerre	bourse	vache	cloche
carrosse	tapis	cheval	école	cuisine
serrure	porte	horloge	couteau	salade
colombe	cendre	sucre	( <i>O.F.coutel</i> )	oreille
encre	huile	moutarde	sable	houille

(i) *suffix erie [or ie when the substantive already ends in er] (fem.)* :

acier	berger	boulangier	horlogier	pirate
boucher	argent	bois	corde	fruit
ébéniste	gendarme	lait	singe	marbre

(j) *suffix iste (masc. or fem.)* :

dent	monarchie	copie	art	journal
mode	auberge	capital	chimie	fleur
morale	ébène	latin	paysage	machine

(k) *suffix diminutive aille (fem.)* :

roc	pierre	fût	mur
-----	--------	-----	-----

(l) *suffix diminutive as (fem. asse)* :

papier †	fil	terre	(these are fem.)
----------	-----	-------	------------------

\* *Que* is changed into *c*. † The *x* is changed into *z*. ‡ See § 24, and § 34 Note on *eur*.

(m) *suffix et (fem. ette)*:

Masc.	{	croc *	couple	coussin	livre
		cabine	poule	jardin	vers
		sac *	feuille	coffre	boule
Fem.	{	broche	fourche	chèvre	poule
		bûche	langue	boule	table
		cache	mie	épaule	chaîne

(n) *suffix et (fem. ette) preceded by el*:

Masc.:	bras	cerveau	château	marteau	manteau
Fem.:	bande	côte	goutte	tarte	

(o) *suffix on (masc.)*:

1.

jambe	dinde	ceinture	jupe	âne
corde	guide	aiguille	aigle	glace
caisse	carraie	rejet	médaille	lard

2. *preceded by ill (masc.)*:

croix	cotte †	nègre	carpe
-------	---------	-------	-------

3. *preceded by er (masc.)*:

aile	vigne	bûche	mouche	chape
------	-------	-------	--------	-------

(p) *suffix eau (fem. elle)*:

Masc.	{	chèvre	orme	prune	cave
		tombe	barre	écrit	table
		corde	pomme	plat	tonne
Fem.	{	canne	prune	tour	ombre
		citron	tonne	dent	rue

(q) *suffix ot (masc.)*:

balle	île	bille	maille	Charles
-------	-----	-------	--------	---------

**Exercise 8.**

Write a list of the substantives formed by adding to the following adjectives the SUFFIXES indicated, and give the meaning of both the adjective and the compound noun.

(a) *suffix esse (fem.)*:

rude	sage	molle	haute	petito
hardie	faible	tendre	juste	triste

(b) *suffix ise (fem.)*:

franche	gourmand	marchand	sotte	fainçant
---------	----------	----------	-------	----------

(c) *suffix ie (fem.)*:

félon	perfidé	monotone	barbare	jalous
-------	---------	----------	---------	--------

\* These take *h* before *et*.† The derivative takes only one *t*.

(d) *suffix erie (fem.)*:

coquette	drôle	espïgle	fourbe	infirm
----------	-------	---------	--------	--------

(e) *suffix té (fem.)*:

âcre	âpre	varié	immense	trivial
honnête	chrétien	avide *	intime	facile
pauvre	dure	acide	sincère	absurde
ferme	nette	banal	timide	agile
ancienne	sûre	docile	tranquille	crédule

**Exercise 9.**

*Write a list of the substantives formed from the following verbs, giving the meaning of both substantive and verb.*

(a) *by taking the infinitive as a substantive*:

souvenir	sourire	souper	savoir	goûter
manger	déjeuner	devoir	avoir	toucher
rire	dîner	pouvoir	boire	dire

(b) *by putting the verb in the present participle*:

pencher	mendier	débit	assister	commander
protester	combattre	stimuler	commercer	habiter
assiéger	trancher	passer	conquérir	émigrer

(c) *by putting the verb in the past participle*:

Masc.	{	pendre	apercevoir	devoir	contenir
		procéder	réduire	précipiter	élire
Fem.	{	enjamber	bouffer	voler	gorger
		armer	revoir	ranger	couver
		conduire	aller	étendre	entrer
		venir	trancher	arriver	échapper
		fumer	monter	renommer	pousser

(d) *by taking off the termination r to form feminine, and er or tre to form masculine nouns*:

Masc.	{	arrêter	oublier	soupirer	plier
		galoper	crier	désirer	débuter
		siéger †	soucier	souhaiter	débattre
		appeler	rebute	combattre	rabattre
Fem.		scier	rallonger	râper	vendanger

(e) *by adding the suffix ade to the root*:

griller	rouler	embrasser	parer
enfiler	fusiller	glisser	ruer

\* All the following adjectives change the final e into i before the addition of te.

† Siéger keeps the e.

FORMATION OF SUBSTANTIVES.

(f) with suffix **age** (*masc.*):

laver	ouvrir	raffiner	pillar	trier
témoigner	tirer	plier	savonner	châner

(g) with suffix **ance** (*fem.*):

dépendre	confier	délivrer	suffire	médire
tempérer	croire	espérer	obliger	prévoir
venger	ressembler	reconnaître	répugner	remonter
assister	souffrir	convenir	naitre	obéir

(h) with suffix **eur** (*masc.*):

pêcher	pécher	relier	tricher	venger
rire	taillier	compter	ramer	diviser
vaincre	flâner	fournir	enchérir	polir
régir	blanchir	acheter	acquérir	nager

(i) with suffix **is** (*masc.*):

hacher	loger	rouler	gâcher	semer
tailler	colorer	cliqueter	laver	croquer

(j) with suffix **ment** or **ement** (*masc.*):

affaïsser	abattre	agencer	amuser	baïller
abonner	accabler	accomplir	appauvrir	agrandir
applaudir	amollir	établir	éclaircir	rugir

(k) with suffix **oir** (*fem.* **oire**):

Fem.:	Masc.:	cracher	saler	repousser	moucher
		peigner	fermer	réserver	percher
		promener	mirer	abreuver	parler
		nager	mâcher	manger	balancer

(l) with suffix **on** (*masc.*):

jurer	plonger		brouïller
boucher	grogner	baïller	couper

(m) with suffix **aison** (*fem.*):

combiner	conjuguer	terminer
comparer	lier	décliner

(n) with suffix **ison** (*fem.*):

garnir	guérir	trahir
--------	--------	--------

(o) with suffix **ure** (*fem.*):

aller	border	ferrer	parer	blessar
chausser	user	voiler	couper	flétrir
noïsir	meurtrir	polir	élargir	bouffir

**Exercise 10.**

Write all the derivatives of the following words with the meaning of each.

orange	dent	plume	ébène
rang	barbe	table	bonche
limon	médaille	jardin	corde
bûche	balle	poivre	face

## CHAPTER II.

## OF THE ARTICLE.

**45.** The **article** is a word generally placed before the substantive, and agreeing with it in gender and in number.

There are two kinds of articles: 1. the **definite** article, placed before substantives the meaning of which is clearly determined, as **le cheval** in the following sentence: **le cheval de mon père est noir** (= my father's horse is black). The words *de mon père*, which accompany the substantive *cheval*, serve to determine it.

2. The **indefinite** article, placed before substantives the meaning of which is indeterminate, that is to say, vague, not precise, as **un cheval** in the following sentence: **un cheval s'est abattu** (= a horse has fallen down).

**46.** The definite article has both genders and numbers:

## SINGULAR.

<b>le</b> (for the masc.)	<b>le</b> père (=the father)
<b>la</b> (for the fem.)	<b>la</b> mère (=the mother).

## PLURAL.

<b>les</b> (for both genders)	{ <b>les</b> pères (=the fathers)
	{ <b>les</b> mères (=the mothers).

**47.** There are two remarks to make with reference to the definite article:—

1. When *le* or *la* comes before a substantive beginning with a vowel or *h* mute, the vowel (*e* or *a*) is cut off and replaced by an apostrophe. Thus—

<i>le</i> -amour (=the love)	must be written	<i>l'</i> amour
<i>la</i> -envie (=the envy)	„	<i>l'</i> envie
<i>le</i> -honneur(=the honour)	„	<i>l'</i> honneur.
<i>de le</i> -amour (=of the love)	„	<i>de l'</i> amour
<i>de la</i> -envie (=of the envy)	„	<i>de l'</i> envie
<i>à le</i> -honneur (=to the honour „	„	<i>à l'</i> honneur, etc.

This suppression of the vowel is called **elision**.

The word *elision* (=elision) is derived from the Latin acc. *elisionem*, which means “a striking out or forcing out.”

2. When the masculine definite article, preceded by the prepositions *de* (=of, from), or *à* (=to), is placed before a substantive beginning with a consonant or *h* aspirate, both the article and the preposition are blended into one word. Thus—

<b>de le</b>	becomes	<b>du</b> :	<b>du père</b> (=of the father)
			: <b>du héros</b> (=of the hero)
<b>à le</b>	"	<b>au</b> :	<b>au père</b> (=to the father)
			: <b>au héros</b> (=to the hero).

Before all plural substantives, *de les* is changed into *des*, and *à les* into *aux* :—

<b>des pères</b>	(=of the fathers),	instead of	<b>de les pères</b>
<b>des héros</b>	(=of the heroes),	"	<b>de les héros</b>
<b>des mères</b>	(=of the mothers),	"	<b>de les mères</b>
<b>aux pères</b>	(=to the fathers),	"	<b>à les pères</b>
<b>aux héros</b>	(=to the heroes),	"	<b>à les héros</b>
<b>aux mères</b>	(=to the mothers),	"	<b>à les mères.</b>

This blending of the definite article with the two prepositions *de* and *à* is called **contraction**.

23. The **indefinite article** in French is—

**un** = a or an, before masculine substantives,  
**une** = a or an, before feminine substantives,  
**des** = some, before substantives of both genders;

as—

<b>un homme</b> (=a man),	<b>des hommes</b> (=some men)
<b>une femme</b> (=a woman),	<b>des femmes</b> (=some women).

N.B.—1. *Some* or *any*, which is frequently omitted in English, must be expressed in French, and repeated before every substantive: *Il a de l'argent* (=he has money); *j'ai des pommes et des poires* (=I have apples and pears).

2. If an adjective precedes the substantive, or if the sentence is negative, **de** only is used: *J'ai de bonnes pommes* (=I have good apples), *je n'ai pas de pommes* (=I have no apples).

3. The possessive case is expressed in two ways in English: My father's horse, and the horse of my father, but in French only one way (the latter) is used: *le cheval de mon père*.

The same construction must be used for expressions like: a gold watch, *i.e.* a watch made of gold, *une montre d'or*.

## Exercise 11.

1. Le pain, du pain, de bon pain. 2. Le père a du pain. 3. Les bateaux sont sur l'eau. 4. Les joujoux des enfants. 5. Les fleurs des champs. 6. Les oiseaux ont des ailes. 7. Le marin est sur le rivage. 8. Donnez-moi des noisettes. 9. J'ai de bonne viande. 10. L'arbre a des branches. 11. Les bijoux de la mère. 12. Le maître de l'enfant. 13. L'encrier de porcelaine.

<sup>1</sup> livre (m.), <sup>2</sup> nous avons, <sup>3</sup> jeu (m.), <sup>4</sup> reine (f.), <sup>5</sup> racine (f.), <sup>6</sup> tronc (m.), <sup>7</sup> feuille (f.), <sup>8</sup> aile (f.), <sup>9</sup> herbe (f.), <sup>10</sup> rivage (m.), <sup>11</sup> discours (m.), <sup>12</sup> général (m.), <sup>13</sup> ville (f.), <sup>14</sup> chat (m.), <sup>15</sup> souris (f.), <sup>16</sup> mariu (m.), <sup>17</sup> raine (f.), <sup>18</sup> voiture (f.), <sup>19</sup> princesse (f.), <sup>20</sup> école (f.), <sup>21</sup> maître d'école (m.), <sup>22</sup> splendeur (f.), <sup>23</sup> roi (m.), <sup>24</sup> verre (m.).

1. The father has a book.<sup>1</sup> 2. We have<sup>2</sup> some horses. 3. The sports<sup>3</sup> of the children. 4. The queen<sup>4</sup> has some jewels. 5. A tree has roots<sup>5</sup>; a trunk<sup>6</sup> has branches and leaves.<sup>7</sup> 6. The wings<sup>8</sup> of the birds. 7. The grass<sup>9</sup> of the fields. 8. From the boats to the shore.<sup>10</sup> 9. The speeches<sup>11</sup> of the generals.<sup>12</sup> 10. From a village (m.) to a town.<sup>13</sup> 11. A cat<sup>14</sup> and a mouse.<sup>15</sup> 12. A collection (f.) of fans. 13. The sailor's<sup>16</sup> oars.<sup>17</sup> 14. To the carriage<sup>18</sup> of a princess.<sup>19</sup> 15. Some bread, some meat, and some nuts. 16. The owls of the castles. 17. To a school<sup>20</sup> and to a schoolmaster.<sup>21</sup> 18. The eyes of the grandfathers. 19. To the splendour<sup>22</sup> of the heavens. 20. The ancestors of the king.<sup>23</sup> 21. A glass<sup>24</sup> inkstand.

## QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATIONS.

- |  |  |   |
|--|--|---|
| 1. What is the <i>article</i> ?                  |  | 6. When is the <i>article contracted</i> ?                  |
| 2. How many kinds of <i>articles</i> are there ? |  | 7. What is the <i>indefinite article</i> ?                  |
| 3. What is the <i>definite article</i> ?         |  | 8. How do you translate <i>some</i> or <i>any</i> ?         |
| 4. When is the <i>article elided</i> ?           |  | 9. When do you use <i>des</i> and when <i>de</i> ?          |
| 5. Define the word <i>elision</i> ?              |  | 10. How is the <i>possessive case</i> expressed in French ? |

## CHAPTER III.

## OF THE ADJECTIVE.

**49.** The **adjective** is a word added to the substantive to express the quality of the person or thing—that is to say, to indicate “what is” that person or thing. Thus, when we say, *L'homme est mortel* (=man is mortal), or, *Le cheval est noir* (=the horse is black), *mortel* makes us know that man is *mortal*; and *noir*, that the horse is *black*. *Mortel* and *noir* are adjectives.

The word *adjective* comes from the Latin *adjectivus*, and means “ad-led to.”



50. There are three different sorts of adjectives :—

1. *Qualifying.*
2. *Determinative.*
3. *Indefinite.*

(1.) **Qualifying** adjectives express only the quality, as “*les grands hommes*” = the *great* (celebrated) men.

(2.) **Determinative** adjectives show precisely the object designated by the substantive to which they refer, as “*mon chapeau*” = *my* hat; “*ce cheval*” = *this* horse.

(3.) **Indefinite** adjectives mark that the substantive is used in a vague and general manner, as “*Chaque pays a ses coutumes*” = every country has its customs; “*plusieurs hommes sont venus*” = several men have come.

51. Adjectives take the mark of **both genders and numbers.** (See §§ 74-77.)

## SECTION I.

### FORMATION OF THE FEMININE OF ADJECTIVES.

52. GENERAL RULE.—The feminine of adjectives is formed by adding an **e mute** to the masculine:

*méchant* (=wicked)    *méchant-e*  
*saint* (=holy)        *saint-e*

53. The masculine and feminine of adjectives ending in **e mute** are the same, as—

*un chapeau large* = a broad-brimmed hat  
*la rivière est large* = the river is wide  
*un homme maigre* = a thin man  
*une femme maigre* = a thin woman  
*un homme sage* = a wise man  
*une politique sage* = a wise policy.

54. To form the feminine of the adjectives ending in **eil, el, en, et, and on**—the final *l, n, or t* must be doubled before the final **e mute** is added—

MASC.		FEM.
<i>cruel</i>	=cruel	<i>cruelle</i>
<i>pareil</i>	=alike	<i>pareille</i>
<i>ancien</i>	=ancient	<i>ancienne</i>
<i>européen</i>	=European	<i>européenne</i>
<i>bon</i>	=good	<i>bonne</i>
<i>muet</i>	=dumb	<i>muette</i>

**55. A.** Adjectives ending in **ier**, **er**, and the six adjectives *complet*, *concret*, *discret*, *inquiet*, *replet*, *secret*, instead of doubling the final consonant, take a grave accent on the *e* which precedes the *r* or the *t*.

MASC.	FEM.
<i>complet</i> =complete	<i>complète</i>
<i>concret</i> =concrete	<i>concrète</i>
<i>discret</i> =discreet	<i>discrète</i>
<i>inquiet</i> =uneasy	<i>inquiète</i>
<i>replet</i> =replete	<i>replète</i>
<i>secret</i> =secret	<i>secrète</i>
<i>altier</i> =haughty	<i>altière</i>
<i>étranger</i> =foreign	<i>étrangère</i>

(See § 24.)

**56. B.**

<i>beau</i> =beautiful, becomes <i>belle</i> in the feminine	
<i>jumeau</i> =twin,	„ <i>jumelle</i> „
<i>nouveau</i> =new,	„ <i>nouvelle</i> „
<i>fou</i> =foolish, mad,	„ <i>folle</i> „
<i>mou</i> =soft,	„ <i>molle</i> „
<i>vieux</i> =old	„ <i>vieille</i> „

Those adjectives were formerly spelt in the masculine *bel*, *jumel*, *nouvel*, *fol*, *mol*, *vieil*; hence the feminine in *elle* (*belle*, *jumelle*, etc.). The masculine forms *bel*, *nouvel*, *fol*, *mol*, *vieil* are still used before nouns which begin with a vowel or an *h* mute; thus we say:—

un <i>bel</i> homme =a fine man,	instead of un <i>beau</i> homme
le <i>nouvel</i> an =the new year,	„ le <i>nouveau</i> an
le <i>fol</i> enfant =the mad, wild boy,	„ le <i>fou</i> enfant
le <i>mol</i> édredon =the soft eider-down,	„ le <i>mou</i> édredon
un <i>vieil</i> ami =an old friend,	„ un <i>vieux</i> ami.

**57.** To form the feminine of adjectives ending in **x**, change **x** into **s**, and add *e* mute, as—

MASC.	FEM.
<i>jaloux</i> =jealous	<i>jalouse</i>
<i>heureux</i> =happy	<i>heureuse</i> .

Some adjectives even double that **s**, as—

MASC.	FEM.
<i>faux</i> =false	<i>fausse</i>
<i>roux</i> =sandy (of the hair)	<i>rousse</i> .

(Exception--

<i>doux</i> =sweet	<i>douce</i> .
--------------------	----------------

Formerly *faux*, *roux* were spelt *faus*, *rous*, the feminine form being *fausse*, *rousse*, just as the feminine of *gras* is *grasse*, and that of *gros* is *grosse*.

**58.** The masculine adjectives ending in **f** form their feminine by changing the final **f** into **v**, and adding *e* mute:

MASC.		FEM.
<i>bref</i>	=short	<i>brève</i>
<i>crainitif</i>	=fearful, timid	<i>crainitive</i>
<i>neuf</i>	=new	<i>neuve</i>

**59.** **Blanc** (=white), **franc** (=frank), **sec** (=dry), **frais** (=fresh, cool), have for their feminine, respectively, *blanche*, *franche*, *sèche*, *fraîche*.

But some adjectives ending in *c* hard (sounded as *k*), form their feminine by changing **c** into **que**, as—

MASC.		FEM.
<i>caduc</i>	=decayed	<i>caduque</i>
<i>public</i>	=public	<i>publique</i>
<i>turc</i>	=turkish	<i>turque</i>

N.B. The adjective **Grec** (=Greek), keeps the final **c** before the last syllable **que**—*i.e.* = *Grecque*.

The feminine of **long** is *longue*, and that of **oblong**, *oblongue*. If *e* mute only had been added to *caduc*, *public*, *turc*, we should have had the forms *caduce*, *publice*, *turce*, in which the *c* would have lost its hard sound. In order to preserve it in the feminine form, it was necessary to replace *c* by its equivalent *qu*; for the same reason *long* (=long) makes *longue*, and not *longe* (which is a substantive feminine—*e.g.*, “*longe de veau*”=a loin of veal.)

**60.** Adjectives ending in **eur** generally form their feminine by changing *eur* into *euse*; *trompeur* (=deceptive), *trompeuse*; *menteur* (=lying), *menteuse*.

Except *meilleur* (=better), *majeur* (=major), *mineur* (=minor), and a few others ending in **érieur**, **intérieur** (=interior), **inférieur** (=inferior), which follow the general rule, and form their feminine by adding an *e* mute to the masculine; *meilleure*, *majeure*, *mineure*, etc.

*Accusateur* (=accusing), *débiteur* (=owing), *protecteur* (=protecting), and a few others, make *accusatrice*, *débitrice*, *protectrice*, etc.

*Pêcheur* (=sinful), *enchanteur* (=charming), *vengeur* (=avenging), make *pêcheresse*, *enchanteresse*, *vengeresse*. We have already seen (§ 30), that *cresse* is only the softening of *euressa*.

<b>61.</b>	The feminine of <i>bénin</i> (= good-natured)	is <i>bénigne</i>
	„ <i>malin</i> (= malicious)	„ <i>maligne</i>
	„ <i>favori</i> (= favourite)	„ <i>favorite</i>
	„ <i>coi</i> (= quiet, tranquil)	„ <i>coite</i>
	„ <i>dissous</i> (= dissolved)	„ <i>dissoute</i>
	„ <i>tiers</i> (= third)	„ <i>tierce</i>
	„ <i>bellot</i> (= pretty)	„ <i>bellotte</i>
	„ <i>pâlot</i> (= palish)	„ <i>pâlote</i>
	„ <i>sot</i> (= foolish)	„ <i>sotte</i>
	„ <i>vicillot</i> (= oldish)	„ <i>vieillotte</i>
	„ <i>bas</i> (= low)	„ <i>basse</i>
	„ <i>gras</i> (= fat)	„ <i>grasse</i>
	„ <i>las</i> (= tired)	„ <i>lasse</i>
	„ <i>épais</i> (= thick)	„ <i>épaisse</i>
	„ <i>exprès</i> (= express, positive)	„ <i>expresse</i>
	„ <i>gros</i> (= big, large)	„ <i>grosse</i>
	„ <i>nul</i> (= nul)	„ <i>nulle</i>
	„ <i>gentil</i> (= pretty, amiable)	„ <i>gentille</i>
	„ <i>hébreu</i> (= Hebrew)	„ <i>hébraïque</i>
	„ <i>traître</i> (= treacherous)	„ <i>traïtesse</i>

(see § 30).

Notice also that a diæresis is placed over the final *e* in the feminine of adjectives when the masculine ends in *gu*, in order to keep the sound of the *u*: *aigu* (= acute), *contigu* (= contiguous), *aiguë*, *contiguë*; otherwise the *gue* would be pronounced as in *figue* (= fig).

### Exercise 12.

1. Ma tante est riche. 2. L'histoire ancienne est intéressante. 3. La nature du tigre est cruelle. 4. La couleur du vin est vermeille. 5. Cette poire est bonne. 6. Vous êtes trop prudente pour ne pas être discrète. 7. Votre fille est jalouse. 8. La température est douce. 9. Sa chevelure est rousse. 10. Craignez la foudre vengeresse. 11. Cette robe est vieille. 12. Cette paysanne est grecque. 13. La viande est trop fraîche. 14. J'ai rencontré votre sœur favorite chez (at the house of) mon oncle. 16. Sa lettre est très-flatteuse.

<sup>1</sup> dame, <sup>2</sup> L'Espagne, <sup>3</sup> dernièrement, <sup>4</sup> bienfaiteur, <sup>5</sup> des pauvres, <sup>6</sup> je n'aime pas, <sup>7</sup> voix (*f.*), <sup>8</sup> main (*f.*), <sup>9</sup> punit, <sup>10</sup> coupable, <sup>11</sup> je la regarde comme, <sup>12</sup> affligé, <sup>13</sup> flotte (*f.*), <sup>14</sup> armée (*f.*), <sup>15</sup> nouvelle (*f.*).

1. My favourite sister. 2. Your letter is too flattering. 3. This lady<sup>1</sup> is discreet and prudent. 4. Spain<sup>2</sup> is rich in fruits. 5. Have you met this countrywoman lately.<sup>3</sup> 6. The queen is the benefactress<sup>4</sup> of the poor.<sup>5</sup> 7. I do not like<sup>6</sup> (a) red (head of) hair. 8. He has a cruel disposition. 9. Her voice<sup>7</sup> is sweet. 10. The avenging hand<sup>8</sup> of (the) justice punished<sup>9</sup> the guilty.<sup>10</sup> 11. Your aunt is very kind; I consider her as<sup>11</sup> the consoler of the afflicted.<sup>12</sup> 12. The Turkish fleet<sup>13</sup> and the Greek army.<sup>14</sup> 13. The news<sup>15</sup> is false. 14. That child's face is ruddy.

## SECTION II.

## FORMATION OF THE PLURAL OF ADJECTIVES.

**62. GENERAL RULE.**—The plural of adjectives is formed like that of substantives, *i.e.*, by adding **s** to the singular:

MASC. SING.	MASC. PL.	FEM. PL.
<i>grand</i> = great, tall	<b>grands</b>	<b>grandes</b>
<i>saint</i> = holy	<b>saints</b>	<b>saintes</b>

**63.** When the adjective, in the singular, ends already in **s** or **x** there is no change in the plural masculine.

MASC. SING.	MASC. PL.
<i>gros</i> = big	<b>gros</b>
<i>épais</i> = thick	<b>épais</b>
<i>glorieux</i> = glorious	<b>glorieux</b>

Examples: *des hommes gros* (=big men); *des murs épais* (=thick walls); *des souvenirs glorieux* (=glorious remembrances).

**64. EXCEPTIONS.**—I. Adjectives ending in **al** change that termination into **aux**, in the masculine plural, as—

MASC. SING.	MASC. PLUR.
<i>égal</i> = equal	<b>égaux</b>
<i>légal</i> = legal	<b>légaux</b>
<i>loyal</i> = faithful	<b>loyaux</b>

The adjectives *fatal* (=fatal), *glacial* (=icy), *final* (=final), *naval* (=naval), and a few others to be learned by use, form their masculine plural by adding **s** to the singular (*fatals*, *glacials*, etc.)

II. Adjectives ending in **eau** take **x** in the plural masculine.

MASC. SING.	MASC. PL.
<i>beau</i> = beautiful	<b>beaux</b>
<i>nouveau</i> = new	<b>nouveaux</b>

**NOTE ON THE POSITION OF ADJECTIVES.**—Adjectives are generally placed after the substantive to which they relate; past participles used as adjectives *always* follow the substantive. *Beau* = fine, *bon* = good, *grand* = great, tall, *joli* = pretty, *petit* = little, *meilleur* = better, *tout* = all, *mauvais* = bad, usually precede the noun.

## Exercise 13.

1. Les généraux sont vieux. 2. Les chapeaux sont neufs. 3. Les fils sont bons. 4. Les souliers sont grands. 5. Les hommes sont égaux. 6. Ces accidents sont fatals. 7. Les palais sont beaux. 8. Les sujets sont loyaux. 9. Les livres sont épais.

<sup>1</sup> élève, <sup>2</sup> église, <sup>3</sup> étaient arrivés, <sup>4</sup> école (*f.*) communale, <sup>5</sup> spacieux, <sup>6</sup> salle (*f.*), <sup>7</sup> bail (*m.*), pl. baux, <sup>8</sup> difficulté (*f.*)

1. The hats are old. 2. These pupils<sup>1</sup> are equal. 3. These books are thick. 4. These men are loyal. 5. The churches<sup>2</sup> are old. 6. The royal palaces are beautiful. 7. The fatal days had come.<sup>3</sup> 8. The parish school<sup>4</sup> has very spacious<sup>5</sup> rooms.<sup>6</sup> 9. These leases<sup>7</sup> are new. 10. Legal difficulties.<sup>8</sup> 11. These books are moral.

## QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. What is an <i>adjective</i>?</li> <li>2. How many kinds of adjectives are there?</li> <li>3. Define the adjective <i>qualifying, determinative, indefinite.</i></li> <li>4. How is the feminine of adjectives generally formed?</li> <li>5. Give the feminine of <i>cruel, pareil, bon</i>, etc.; also of <i>complet, concert</i>, etc., explain the peculiar formation of the feminine of <i>beau, nouveau</i>, etc.</li> <li>6. Account for the formation of the feminine of adjectives in <i>x</i>.</li> </ol> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>7. What is the feminine of adjectives ending in <i>f</i>?</li> <li>8. Give the feminine of <i>blanc, turc, grec, long, trompeur, prolecteur, meilleur, vengeur, bénin, favori.</i></li> <li>9. How is the plural of adjectives formed?</li> <li>10. Give the plural masculine of <i>beau</i>.</li> <li>11. How do you form the plural masculine of adjectives ending in <i>al</i>? State some exceptions.</li> <li>12. Where is the qualifying adjective placed in French?</li> </ol> |
|---|--|

## SECTION III.

## OF THE DEGREES OF SIGNIFICATION IN ADJECTIVES.

**65.** There are three degrees of signification in adjectives: the *positive*, the *comparative*, and the *superlative*.

The **positive** is the adjective itself: *mon cheval est noir*=my horse is black; (*noir*=black, which expresses simply a quality, is the *positive*). \*

**66.** The adjective is in the **comparative** when it expresses the quality with an idea of *comparison*.

The **comparative** may either express—

(*a.*) *superiority*, in which case the adverb **plus**(=more), is placed before the adjective, and **que**(=than), after it, as—

*mon cheval est plus noir que le vôtre*=my horse is blacker than yours.

or, (b.) *inferiority*, in which case the adverb **moins** (=less), is placed before the adjective, and **que** (=than), after it—

*mon cheval est moins noir que le vôtre* = my horse is less black than yours (not so black as yours).

or, (c.) *equality*, in which case the adverb **aussi** (=as) precedes the adjective, and **que** (=as) follows it—

*mon cheval est aussi noir que le vôtre* = my horse is as black as yours.

In a negative sentence **si** is often used instead of **aussi** :—

*mon cheval n'est pas si noir que le vôtre* = my horse is not so black as yours.

There are, therefore, three comparatives : (a) of *superiority*; (b) of *inferiority*; (c) of *equality*.

**67. Exceptions.**—The three adjectives *petit* (=little or small), *bon* (=good), *mauvais* (=bad), form their comparative irregularly :—

**Petit**, comparative *moindre*; **bon**, comparative *mieux*; **mauvais**, comparative *pire*. (*Petit* and *mauvais*, however, have also a regular comparative—*plus petit*, *plus mauvais*).

Do not mistake them for the adverbs **peu**, **bien**, **mal**, which become *moins*, *mieux*, *plus mal*, or *pis* in the comparative.

**68.** The adjective is in the *superlative* when it expresses—

(A.) A quality in the highest degree *without any comparison*, as *mon cheval est très-noir* = my horse is very black, *i.e.*, my horse is *quite* black. This is called the **superlative absolute**, and is expressed by *très*, *fort*, *bien*, *extrêmement*, etc., all meaning *very*.

(B.) A quality in the highest degree either—

(a.) *superior*, but as compared with other persons or objects of the same kind, as *mon cheval est le plus noir de tous les chevaux de la ville* = my horse is the blackest of all the horses in the town.

or (b.) *inferior*, as *ma sœur est la moins forte de nous tous*=my sister is the weakest (*lit.* the least strong) of us all.

These are called **superlatives relative**, and are formed by placing the article or a possessive adjective before the comparative.

The superlatives of **bon** are *très-bon* (absolute)=very good, and *le meilleur* (relative)=the best; **petit** makes *très-petit* (absolute)=very small, and *le moindre* (relative)=the least; **mauvais** makes *très-mauvais* (absolute)=very bad, and *le pire* (relative)=the worst.

Remember that in French **plus, moins, &c.**, are generally repeated before each adjective; also that *very much* must not in any case be translated by *très-beaucoup*, but by **beaucoup** only.

#### Exercise 14.

1. La rose est la plus belle des fleurs. 2. Le meilleur livre de ma bibliothèque. 3. Il est moins aimable que son frère. 4. Vous êtes plus âgé que moi. 5. Il n'est pas si avancé que votre ami. 6. Le moindre mal. 7. Il va mieux. 8. Ce qui est pis, c'est que la bataille est perdue. 9. Ce livre est très-intéressant.

<sup>1</sup> Beau, <sup>2</sup> doux, <sup>3</sup> avancé, <sup>4</sup> cux, <sup>5</sup> santé (f.), <sup>6</sup> jeune, <sup>7</sup> mort (f.), <sup>8</sup> perte (f.), bataille (f.), <sup>10</sup> ceci, <sup>11</sup> cela.

1. Fine,<sup>1</sup> finer, finest. 2. Gentle,<sup>2</sup> less gentle, the least gentle. 3. Small, smaller, smallest. 4. A good book, a better book. 5. He is as forward<sup>3</sup> as they.<sup>4</sup> 6. His health<sup>5</sup> is better. 7. I am not so young<sup>6</sup> as your sister. 8. The death<sup>7</sup> of the general is less fatal than the loss<sup>8</sup> of the battle.<sup>9</sup> 9. This<sup>10</sup> is well, that<sup>11</sup> is better. 10. My sister is much better.

#### QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <p>1. What are the three degrees of signification in adjectives?</p> <p>2. How many different comparatives are there? How are they formed?</p> | <p>3. Give the comparatives of <i>bon, petit, mauvais</i>.</p> <p>4. How is the superlative formed?</p> <p>5. State what are the different kinds of superlative.</p> |
|--|--|

### SECTION IV.

#### FORMATION OF ADJECTIVES.

**69.** French adjectives are formed in the same way as nouns—that is to say, by *composition* and by *derivation*:



Adjectives formed by *composition*:— (a.) either two simple adjectives are joined together, such as *aigre* (=sour) and *doux* (=sweet), to form a compound adjective: *aigre-doux*=sourish; or (b.) a prefix is placed before simple adjectives (*see* § 38 [b.]), for the purpose of giving them a new meaning; as *bien-heureux* (=happy, blessed); *mal-heureux* (=unhappy), *in-constant* (=variable); *sous-marin* (=submarine); *sur-humain* (=superhuman). The prefixes most often used are: **archi**, **anti**, **bien**, **demi**, **in**, **mal**, **sous**, **sur**. **ultra**.

**70.** New adjectives are formed by *derivation* with the help of substantives, adjectives, and verbs *already existing in French*:—

- (a.) **Substantives** (*pierreux*=stony, from *pierre*=stone);
- (b.) **Adjectives** (*noirâtre*=blackish, from *noir*=black);
- (c.) **Verbs** (*trompeur*=deceptive, from *tromper*=to deceive).

**71.** New adjectives are formed from substantives by adding to the substantives the terminations **eux**, **ain**, **in**, **é**, **er**, **u**. Thus: *courage* (=courage), *courageux* (=courageous); *monde* (=world), *mondain* (=worldly); *enfant* (=child), *enfantin* (=childish); *aile* (=wing), *ailé* (=winged); *mensonge* (=lie), *mensonger* (=untrue, lying); *barbe* (=beard), *barbu* (=bearded).

**72.** New adjectives are formed from existing adjectives with the help of the four terminations—**âtre**, **et** (and **elet**), **ot** and **aud**. These are called *diminutive suffixes*.

Ex.: *gris* (=grey), *grisâtre* (=greyish); *aigre* (=sour), *aigret* and *aigrelet* (=sourish); *vieux* (=old), *vieillot* (=oldish); *lourd* (=heavy), *lourdaud* (=clumsy).

**73.** The French language makes new adjectives from verbs, either by taking the **participles** (*present* or *past*) of the verb, or by adding to the stem of the verb the three suffixes **able**, **a-d**, **if**. Thus *charmer*

(=to charm) gives *charmant* (charming); *polir* (=to polish), *poli* (=polished); *compar-er* (=to compare), *comparable* (comparable); *pill-er* (=to plunder), *pillard* (=plundering); *pens-er* (=to think), *pensif* (=pensive).

### Exercise 15.

Write a list of compound adjectives by adding to the following one of the **prefixes** enumerated below; give the feminine of each, and also the meaning of the compound words:—

- (a.) prefix *archi*, ducal, diaconal, épiscopal, fou.  
 (b.) „ *anti*, social, fébrile, religieux, monarchique.  
 (c.) „ *bien*, heureux, séant, aimé, faisant.  
 (d.) „ *demi*, nu, fin, mort, fermé.  
 (e.) „ *in*, constant, suffisant, différent, variable.  
 (f.) „ *mal*, formé, sain, habile, heureux, intentionné.  
 (g.) „ *sous*, marin, jacent, terrain, axillaire.  
 (h.) „ *ultra*, libéral, mondain, royaliste, zodiacal.

Write in the same manner a list of derived adjectives:—

a.) From substantives with the suffix :

- eur* : pierre, rabot, joie, brume, heur.  
*ain* : monde, Rome, château, proche.  
*in* : enfant, mal.  
*é* : aile, bât, sangle, laite.  
*er* : message, mensonge, passage, potage.  
*u* : pointe, barbe, branche, bosse.

(b.) From verbs with the suffix :

- able* : comparer, séparer, voler, punir.  
*ard* : piller, bayer, vanter, brouiller.  
*if* : penser, pousser.

(c.) From adjectives with the diminutive suffix :

- âtre* : noir, bel, (beau), rouge, doux.  
*et(clet)* : aigre, rond, mou, fou.  
*ot* : vieil (vieux), pâle.  
*aud* : noir, sale, rouge, fin.

### QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <p>1. How do the French form new adjectives from adjectives already existing?</p> <p>2. What are the parts of the verb which are used in the formation of adjectives?</p> | <p>3. Give a list of adjectives formed with the prefixes <i>bien</i>, <i>sous</i>; and with the suffixes <i>âtre</i>, <i>if</i>, <i>able</i>, etc.</p> <p>4. How are adjectives formed from substantives?</p> <p>5. What suffixes are added to the stem of the verb?</p> |
|---|--|

## SECTION V.

AGREEMENT OF THE ADJECTIVE WITH THE  
SUBSTANTIVE.

**74.** The adjective takes the same gender and number as the substantive which it qualifies. Thus: *Dieu est clément* (=God is clement); *ma mère est bonne* (=my mother is good); *les hommes sont mortels* (=men are mortal).

**75.** When an adjective qualifies several substantives in the singular, it is put in the plural. Thus: *le riche et le pauvre sont égaux devant Dieu* (=the rich and the poor are equal in the sight of God).

**76.** If the substantives are of different genders, the adjective is put in the masculine plural. Thus: *le roi et la reine sont prudents* (=the king and the queen are prudent).

## SECTION VI.

## DETERMINATIVE ADJECTIVES.

**77.** There are three sorts of determinative adjectives:

*Numeral adjectives,*  
*Demonstrative adjectives,*  
*Possessive adjectives.*

## NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

**78.** Numeral adjectives are those which denote number, order, or rank.

There are two kinds of numeral adjectives: the cardinal, and the ordinal.

**79.** Numeral adjectives indicating the number or quantity of objects, as *trois* (=three), *quatre* (=four), *cinq* (=five), are called cardinal.

With the exception of *zéro*, which comes from the Arab, all the numeral adjectives are of Latin origin; for the French number as the Romans did, and have admitted their terms of numeration.

*Septante, octante, and nonante*, were formerly used as synonyms of *soixante-dix, quatre-vingts, and quatre-vingt-dix*, respectively. During the Middle Ages the *even decades* (60, 80, 120, 140, etc.) stood thus—

<i>trois-vingts</i> for 60	<i>six-vingts</i> for 120
<i>quatre-vingts</i> for 80	<i>sept-vingts</i> for 140;

—that is to say, three times twenty, four times twenty, etc. Traces of this ancient usage remain even in our day (to say nothing of *quatre-vingts*=80), as in the hospital “des *Quinze-Vingts*” ( $15 \times 20 = 300$ ), founded by St. Louis to support 300 crusaders, whose eyes had been put out by the infidels; so also Bossuet and Voltaire have made use of the expression *six-vingts ans* for 120 *ans* (=120 years).

Million (=million), and milliard (=a thousand millions), are derived from *mille* with the suffixes *on* and *ard*.

NOTE.—Care must be taken not to confound *un* (= a or an) indefinite article, with *un* (=one), numeral adjective.

**80.** Ordinal numeral adjectives point out the *rank* or *place* occupied by the object. They are formed, with the exception of *premier* (=first), and *second* (=second), by adding the termination **-ième** to the cardinal adjectives, as—

<i>trois</i> = three	<i>trois-ième</i> = third
<i>six</i> = six	<i>six-ième</i> = sixth
<i>sept</i> = seven	<i>sept-ième</i> = seventh
<i>vingt</i> = twenty	<i>vingt-ième</i> = twentieth, etc.

When the cardinal adjective ends in *e* mute, that *e* is cut off, as—

<i>quatre</i> = four	<i>quatr-ième</i> = fourth
<i>onze</i> = eleven	<i>onz-ième</i> = eleventh
<i>douze</i> = twelve	<i>douz-ième</i> = twelfth.

☞ *Neuf* (=nine), changes *f* into *v* :

<i>neuf</i> = nine	<i>neu-v-ième</i> = ninth.
--------------------	----------------------------

☞ *Cinq* (=five), adds *u* before the termination **-ième** :

<i>cinq</i> = five	<i>cinq-u-ième</i> = fifth.
--------------------	-----------------------------

Formerly *prime, tiers, quint* were used in French as well as *premier, troisième, cinquième*. Traces of these old forms remain in some few locutions, as *de prime-abord* (=at first sight); *de primo saut* (=spontaneously); *le tiers état* (=the third estate, the Commons); *Charles-Quint* (=Charles the Fifth, Emperor of Germany and King of Spain, the great rival of Francis the First, King of France); *Sixte Quint* (=Pope Sixtus Quintus, the fifth).

**N.B.**—The cardinal number is used instead of the ordinal in the following cases: (a.) after the names of Sovereigns: *Henri quatre* (= Henry IV.); (b.) in speaking of the days of the month: *le trois mars* (=the third of March.)

But *Premier* (=first) is an exception to this rule: *François premier* (=Francis I.); *le premier mars* (=the first of March). In compound numbers, *first* is to be translated by *un*: *Le pape Jean vingt et un* (= Pope John XXI.); *le vingt et un juin* (=the twenty-first of June).

**§1.** Nouns of number which indicate a certain quantity (as *une dizaine*\* = a collection of ten, *une centaine* = a hundred), are connected with the numeral adjectives, as are also the nouns which denote the different parts of a whole (*le quart* = the fourth; *la moitié* = the half), and those which are used for multiplication (*le double* = the double; *le triple* = the treble, threefold; *le centuple* = centuple, a hundredfold).

**A Comparative Table of the Numeral Adjectives.**

CARDINAL NUMBERS.

ORDINAL NUMBERS.

**N.B.**—*Un* is the only cardinal which takes the mark of the feminine: *une*.

**N.B.**—*Premier* and *second* are the only ordinals which are variable: *première, seconde*.

1. un, une
2. deux
3. trois
4. quatre
5. cinq
6. six
7. sept
8. huit
9. neuf
10. dix
11. onze
12. douze
13. treize
14. quatorze
15. quinze
16. seize
17. dix-sept
18. dix-huit

- 1st. premier, première
- 2nd. second, —e, or deuxième
- 3rd. troisième
- 4th. quatrième
- 5th. cinquième
- 6th. sixième
- 7th. septième
- 8th. huitième
- 9th. neuvième
- 10th. dixième
- 11th. onzième
- 12th. douzième
- 13th. treizième
- 14th. quatorzième
- 15th. quinzième
- 16th. seizième
- 17th. dix-septième
- 18th. dix-huitième

\* The article *a* which precedes these collectives in English, in sentences like the following, is expressed in French by *la*: *combien la douzaine* (=how much a dozen?).

CARDINAL NUMBERS—*continued.*

19. dix-neuf  
 20. vingt  
 21. vingt et un  
 22. vingt-deux  
 23. vingt-trois  
 24. vingt quatre  
 25. vingt-cinq  
 26. vingt-six  
 27. vingt-sept  
 28. vingt-huit  
 29. vingt-neuf  
 30. trente  
 31. trente et un, etc.  
 40. quarante  
 41. quarante et un, etc.  
 50. cinquante  
 51. cinquante et un, etc.  
 60. soixante  
 61. soixante et un, etc.  
 70. soixante-dix  
 71. soixante et onze  
 72. soixante-douze  
 73. soixante-treize  
 74. soixante-quatorze  
 75. soixante-quinze  
 76. soixante-seize  
 77. soixante-dix-sept  
 78. soixante-dix-huit  
 79. soixante-dix-neuf  
 80. quatre-vingts\*  
 81. quatre-vingt-un, etc.  
 90. quatre-vingt-dix  
 91. quatre-vingt-onze  
 92. quatre-vingt-douze  
 93. quatre-vingt-treize  
 94. quatre-vingt-quatorze  
 95. quatre-vingt-quinze  
 96. quatre-vingt-seize  
 97. quatre-vingt-dix-sept  
 98. quatre-vingt-dix-huit  
 99. quatre-vingt-dix-neuf  
 100. cent  
 101. cent un  
 102. cent deux  
 103. cent trois  
 200. deux cents\*  
 300. trois cents\*, etc.

} sounded

} mute

ORDINAL NUMBERS—*continued.*

- 19th. dix-neuvième  
 20th. vingtième  
 21st. vingt et unième  
 22nd. vingt-deuxième  
 23rd. vingt-troisième  
 24th. vingt-quatrième  
 25th. vingt-cinquième  
 26th. vingt-sixième  
 27th. vingt-septième  
 28th. vingt-huitième  
 29th. vingt-neuvième  
 30th. trentième  
 31st. trente et unième  
 40th. quarantième  
 41st. quarante et unième.  
 50th. cinquantième  
 51st. cinquante et unième  
 60th. soixantième  
 61st. soixante et unième, etc.  
 70th. soixante-dixième  
 71st. soixante et onzième  
 72nd. soixante-douzième  
 73rd. soixante-treizième  
 74th. soixante-quatorzième  
 75th. soixante-quinzième  
 76th. soixante-seizième  
 77th. soixante-dix-septième  
 78th. soixante-dix-huitième  
 79th. soixante-dix-neuvième  
 80th. quatre-vingtième  
 81st. quatre-vingt-unième, etc.  
 90th. quatre-vingt-dizième  
 91st. quatre-vingt-onzième  
 92nd. quatre-vingt-douzième  
 93rd. quatre-vingt-treizième  
 94th. quatre-vingt-quatorzième  
 95th. quatre-vingt-quinzième  
 96th. quatre-vingt-seizième  
 97th. quatre-vingt-dix-septième  
 98th. quatre-vingt-dix huitième  
 99th. quatre-vingt-dix neuvième  
 100th. centième  
 101st. cent-unième  
 102nd. cent-deuxième  
 103rd. cent-troisième  
 200th. deux-centième  
 300th. trois-centième, etc.

\* See Syntax, Chapter III. Vingt and cent take s when multiplied by a number and not followed by another, so deux cent un (i. e. 201) has no s.

CARDINAL NUMBERS ( <i>continued</i> ).	ORDINAL NUMBERS ( <i>continued</i> ).
1000. mille*	1000 <sup>th</sup> . millième
5000. cinq mille	5000 <sup>th</sup> . cinq millièm'e
10,000. dix mille	10,000 <sup>th</sup> . dix millième
1,000,000. million	1,000,000 <sup>th</sup> . millionième.

N.B.—The words *one, and*, in expressions like *cent-deux* = *one hundred and two*, are suppressed. *Million* and numbers above are substantives, and must be followed by *de*.

### Exercise 16.

1. Soixante-treize; Charles Quint; Louis quatorze. 2. J'ai six mille volumes dans ma bibliothèque. 3. Le premier janvier. 4. L'an mil huit cent soixante. 5. Cette armée se compose de vingt mille hommes. 6. Il a perdu deux cents francs, et sa sœur en a gagné deux cent cinquante. 7. Une douzaine de chemises. 8. Il a mangé le tiers de sa fortune. 9. J'ai dépensé un millier de francs pendant mon voyage. 10. Il est une heure un quart. 11. Il est deux heures moins dix.

<sup>1</sup>Pape Pie, <sup>2</sup>furent massacrés à, <sup>3</sup>perdu, <sup>4</sup>combien, <sup>5</sup>argent, <sup>6</sup>gagné, <sup>7</sup>coûtent  
<sup>8</sup>Peuvez-vous manger, <sup>9</sup>gâteau (*m.*), <sup>10</sup>dépensé, <sup>11</sup>un millier (*m.*), <sup>12</sup>livre (*l.*)  
<sup>13</sup>dîners.

1. 99; 2,846,578. 2. (The) Pope Pius<sup>1</sup> the Fifth. 3. The Protestants were murdered in<sup>2</sup> Paris in 1572. 4. The twenty-first of January. 5. Your brother has lost<sup>3</sup> 375 francs. 6. How much<sup>4</sup> (of) money<sup>5</sup> have you gained<sup>6</sup>? 25,000 francs. 7. These shirts cost<sup>7</sup> 36 shillings a dozen. 8. Four is the third of twelve. 9. Can you eat<sup>8</sup> thirteen cakes<sup>9</sup>? 10. He has spent<sup>10</sup> about a thousand<sup>11</sup> (of) pounds.<sup>12</sup> 11. It was ten minutes to four. 12. We dine<sup>13</sup> at a quarter past seven.

## II.—DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVES.

**82. Demonstrative adjectives** are used to point out the person or thing spoken of:—

*ce château* = this castle      *ce héros* = this hero.

The demonstrative adjectives are:—

<i>ce</i>	for the masculine singular :	<i>ce lion</i>	= this lion
<i>cette</i>	for the feminine singular :	<i>cette femme</i>	= this woman
<i>ces</i>	{ for the plural of both } genders.	<i>ces garçons</i>	= these boys
		<i>ces filles</i>	= these girls.

\* Mille, in dates of the Christian era, is spelt mil.

**cet** is placed before masculine substantives beginning with a vowel or *h* mute, instead of **ce** :—

**cet homme** = this man, not **ce homme**  
**cet enfant** = this child, „ **ce enfant**.

☞ In order to show whether the person or thing we speak of is **near** or **far** from us the adverbs **-ci** (=here) and **-là** (=there) are joined to the substantive by a hyphen, as :—

**cet enfant-ci** est brun = this child (*i.e.* close to me) is dark  
**cet enfant-là** est blond = that child (*i.e.* far from me) is fair.  
**-ci** is the abridgment of *ici*, adverb of place.

### Exercise 17:

1. Cette gravure est très-belle.
2. Cet enfant a un vilain caractère.
3. J'aime ce cheval-ci, mais ce cheval-là est trop vieux pour moi.
4. Ces jardins-ci sont la propriété de mon père.
5. Cette dame est très-aimable.
6. Pourquoi battez-vous ces enfants-là?
7. Que dites-vous de ces jeunes personnes?
8. Ces raisins sont excellents.
9. Ce dictionnaire-ci n'est pas complet.
10. Ces souliers-là sont trop étroits.

Soulier (*m.*), blessent, <sup>2</sup>jeune demoiselle, <sup>3</sup>dites que, <sup>4</sup>décubité, <sup>5</sup>aimable vieillard, <sup>6</sup>maire (*m.*), <sup>7</sup>prenez, <sup>8</sup>mûr, <sup>9</sup>vu, <sup>10</sup>large, <sup>11</sup>propriété (*f.*), <sup>12</sup>caractère (*m.*), <sup>13</sup>battez, <sup>14</sup>habit (*m.*) à m.

1. This child.
2. These generals.
3. I do not like these old horses.
4. This garden belongs to my father.
5. Those shoes hurt<sup>1</sup> that young lady.<sup>2</sup>
6. You say that<sup>3</sup> this engraving is torn.<sup>4</sup>
7. That amiable old man<sup>5</sup> is the mayor<sup>6</sup> of the town.
8. Take<sup>7</sup> these grapes; they are ripe.<sup>8</sup>
9. Have you seen<sup>9</sup> that dictionary?
10. These hats are too wide.<sup>10</sup>
11. This lady has a fine estate.<sup>11</sup>
12. The temper<sup>12</sup> of that child is abominable.
13. Dust<sup>13</sup> this coat.<sup>14</sup>

### III.—POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES.

**83. Possessive adjectives** are placed before the noun to point out *to whom the object belongs* :—

**mon** cheval = my horse—*i.e.* the horse which belongs to me  
**ton** chapeau = thy hat—*i.e.* the hat „ „ thee  
**son** bâton = his stick—*i.e.* the stick „ „ him.



The possessive adjectives are :—

A. When the object belongs to one person only (**mon chien** = *my dog*) :—

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
MASC.	FEM.	(FOR BOTH GENDERS.)
<i>mon</i>	<i>ma</i>	<i>mes</i> = my
<i>ton</i>	<i>ta</i>	<i>tes</i> = thy
<i>son</i>	<i>sa</i>	<i>ses</i> = his, her, its.

B. When the object belongs to several persons at the same time (**notre chien** = *our dog*; **nos chevaux** = *our horses*) :—

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
(FOR BOTH GENDERS.)	(FOR BOTH GENDERS.)
<i>notre</i>	<i>nos</i> = OUR
<i>vosre</i>	<i>vos</i> = YOUR
<i>leur</i>	<i>leurs</i> = THEIR

The masculine forms *mon*, *ton*, *son* are placed before feminine nouns beginning with a vowel or *h* mute, instead of the feminine *ma*, *ta*, *sa*, in order to prevent the hiatus which the meeting of two vowels would produce; thus we must say :—

<b>mon</b> âme	= my soul,	instead of <i>ma-âme</i>
<b>ton</b> épée	= thy sword,	„ <i>ta-épée</i>
<b>son</b> humeur	= his or her temper,	„ <i>sa-humeur</i> .

In Old French *mon* was strictly kept for masculine, and *ma* for feminine nouns. Whenever *ma*, *ta*, *sa* came before a word beginning with a vowel, the *a* was elided, as it is now for the feminine definite article *la*, and people then said *m'âme*, *t'épée*, *s'amie*, just as we now say *l'âme*, *l'épée*, *l'amie*. Towards the fourteenth century the use of the masculine forms *mon*, *ton*, *son* superseded this elision, which has, however, survived in the term of endearment *m'amie*, *ma amie* (= my love), which later on became, by corruption, *ma mie*; hence came the expressions *ta mie*, *sa mie* = thy, his lady-love, etc.

NOTE that in French, the possessive adjective agrees with the thing possessed, not with the possessor; also, that it must be repeated before each noun: **son** père, **son** frère et **sa** sœur (= his, or her father, brother and sister).

### Exercise 13.

1. Où est votre plume, et où sont mes livres? 2. Notre maison est grande. 3. Je parlerai de vous à mon père. 4. Vos craintes

sont ridicules. 5. Ma montre avance. 6. Ton habit est taché. 7. Je vous montrerai ses gravures. 8. Ma mère est à la campagne. 9. Son cheval est boiteux. 10. J'aime beaucoup nos cousins; ils sont très-aimables.

<sup>1</sup> Amitié (*f.*) pour, <sup>2</sup> sincère, <sup>3</sup> loi (*f.*), <sup>4</sup> suprême, <sup>5</sup> livre (*m.*), <sup>6</sup> mère (*f.*), <sup>7</sup> à la campagne (*f.*), <sup>8</sup> vous montrerai-je, <sup>9</sup> sur la table, <sup>10</sup> gant (*m.*), <sup>11</sup> canne (*f.*), <sup>12</sup> quand, <sup>13</sup> maison (*f.*), <sup>14</sup> brûlé, <sup>15</sup> parlerai, <sup>16</sup> rapporté, <sup>17</sup> chaque pays, <sup>18</sup> coutume (*f.*)

1. Your engravings are good. 2. My friendship for<sup>1</sup> you is sincere.<sup>2</sup> 3. His laws<sup>3</sup> are supreme.<sup>4</sup> 4. These books<sup>5</sup> belong to my mother.<sup>6</sup> 5. Our cousins (*m.*) are in the country.<sup>7</sup> 6. I have lost my watch. 7. Shall I show you<sup>8</sup> his horses? 8. My pens are on the table.<sup>9</sup> 9. Give me my coat, my gloves,<sup>10</sup> and my walking-stick.<sup>11</sup> 10. When<sup>12</sup> have you seen your cousin? 11. His house<sup>13</sup> is burnt.<sup>14</sup> 12. I shall speak<sup>15</sup> to your officer. 13. Her friend has brought back<sup>16</sup> his book. 14. Each country<sup>17</sup> has its own laws and customs.<sup>18</sup>

## SECTION VII.

## INDEFINITE ADJECTIVES.

**84.** Indefinite adjectives denote that the noun is used in a vague and general manner, as: **aucune lettre n'est arrivée** (=no letter has arrived); **quelque malheur nous menace** (=some misfortune threatens us).

These adjectives are twelve in number:

1. **aucun** (*fem. aucune*)=any, no, none; 2. **autre**=other, another; 3. **certain** (*fem. certaine*)=some, some one, a certain; 4. **chaque**=each; 5. **maint** (*fem. mainte*)=many; 6. **même**=same; 7. **nul** (*fem. nulle*)=no, none; 8. **plusieurs**=several; 9. **quelconque**\* =whatever, whatsoever; 10. **quelque**=some; 11. **tel** (*fem. telle*)=such; 12. **tout** (*plur. masc. tous, fem. sing. toute*)=all, every.

N.B.—**Certain** is an indefinite adjective when it means *un, quelque*=one, some, as: *certain homme* (=a man, some man). But when it means *sûr* (=sure), it is a qualificative adjective, as: *j'en suis certain* (=I am sure of it).

\* *quelconque* always follows the noun.

**Aucun** and **nul** are accompanied by *ne*: *Je ne connais aucun de ses frères* (=I don't know any of his brothers).

### Exercise 19.

1. Je n'ai aucune envie de punir un autre élève. 2. Certain renard gascon; d'autres disent normand. 3. Chaque jour amène avec lui son travail. 4. Maint écrivassier se croit poète. 5. J'ai rencontré plusieurs soldats dans la rue. 6. Il n'a nulle pitié. 7. Tel maître, telle maison. 8. Tous les matins je lis un livre quelconque. 9. Tel qui rit vendredi, dimanche pleurera. 10. Plusieurs de vos amis sont ici.

<sup>1</sup> élève (*m.*), <sup>2</sup> ne sortira vendredi, <sup>3</sup> semaine (*f.*), <sup>4</sup> écrivassier (*m.*), <sup>5</sup> voiture (*f.*), <sup>6</sup> ferait plus de, <sup>7</sup> vu, <sup>8</sup> personne (*f.*), <sup>9</sup> sentiment (*m.*), <sup>10</sup> vais, <sup>11</sup> rebelle (*m.*), <sup>12</sup> renard (*m.*).

1. Have you (of) such pupils? <sup>1</sup> 2. None of these soldiers shall go out on Friday. <sup>2</sup> 3. Every week <sup>3</sup> my father brings with him many a scribbler. <sup>4</sup> 4. Like master, like man. 5. Your friend has several horses. 6. Are you of another opinion (*f.*)? 7. I have seen several fine carriages. <sup>5</sup> 8. Another poet would do more <sup>6</sup> work every day. 9. Have you seen <sup>7</sup> the same persons? <sup>8</sup> 10. Every child likes (the) cakes. 11. He has no sense <sup>9</sup> of envy. 12. I am going <sup>10</sup> to punish several rebels. <sup>11</sup> 13. I have met no fox <sup>12</sup> in the street.

### QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATIONS.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <p>1. Give a list of the <i>determinative adjectives</i>.</p> <p>2. What are the <i>numeral adjectives</i>?</p> <p>3. Give a list of the cardinal numbers.</p> <p>4. What is the difference between <i>un</i> indefinite article, and <i>un</i> numeral?</p> <p>5. How do you form the French <i>ordinal</i> numbers?</p> <p>6. What are the numerals which serve to <i>multiply</i>?</p> | <p>7. Write down the <i>demonstrative adjectives</i>.</p> <p>8. Remark on the demonstrative adjective <i>ce</i>.</p> <p>9. Give a list of the <i>possessive adjectives</i>.</p> <p>10. State the peculiarities which affect the words <i>mon, ton, son</i>.</p> <p>11. What are the <i>indefinite adjectives</i>?</p> <p>12. Remark on the adjective <i>certain</i>.</p> |
|---|--|

## CHAPTER IV.

### OF THE PRONOUN.

**85.** The **pronoun** is a word which takes the place of the noun. In the sentence *Henri est espiègle, mais il deviendra raisonnable* (=Henry is frolicsome, but he

will grow steady), the word **il**, being put there instead of **Henri**, is a pronoun.

*Pronoun* is the Latin *pronomem* (*pro*=instead of, *nomen*=noun).

**86.** The pronoun takes the gender and number of the noun instead of which it is used. *Les hirondelles partent; elles vont dans les pays chauds* (=the swallows are on the wing; they go to warm countries). **Elles** is feminine plural, because **hirondelles** is feminine plural. *Votre maison est grande; la mienne est plus petite* (=your house is large; mine is smaller). **La mienne** is feminine singular to agree with **maison**.

**87.** There are five kinds of pronouns:—

1. *The personal.*
2. *The demonstrative.*
3. *The possessive.*
4. *The relative.*
5. *The indefinite.*

## SECTION I.

### PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

**83.** **Personal pronouns** are those which point out the persons, and indicate the part they play in the speech.

In the sentence *je devine que tu viens de chez lui* (=I guess you come from his house), we distinguish at once three different persons, *je, tu, lui*, as being the actors in this little drama. These actors have different parts, which are indicated here by three distinct words: the *first* part (**je**=I) is that of the actor *who speaks*; the *second* (**tu**=thou), that of the actor *spoken to*; and the *third* (**lui**=him), that of the actor *spoken of*.

These three *characters*, or rather *parts*, are called **personnes**=persons (from the Latin [*dramatis*] *persona*), and represented by the **personal pronouns**, which point out beings *by the part they act in* that short piece called a *sentence*.

**89.** The personal pronouns are divided into *conjunctive, disjunctive, and reflective*.

The **conjunctive personal pronouns**, or pronouns immediately connected with the verb, are:—

*Singular.*

**Je = I; tu = thou; il, elle = he, she, it.**

Nom. <b>Je = I.</b>	<b>tu = thou.</b>	<b>il, elle = he, she, it.</b>
Gen.		<b>en = of him, her, it.</b>
Dat. <b>me = to me.</b>	<b>te = to thee.</b>	<b>lui, y (of things) = to it, to them.</b>
Acc. <b>me = me.</b>	<b>te = thee.</b>	<b>le, la = him, her, it.</b>

*Plural.*

**Nous = we; vous = you; ils, elles = they.**

Nom. <b>Nous = we.</b>	<b>vous = you.</b>	<b>ils, elles = they.</b>
Gen.		<b>en = of them.</b>
Dat. <b>nous = to us.</b>	<b>vous = to you.</b>	<b>leur = to them.</b>
Acc. <b>nous = us.</b>	<b>vous = you.</b>	<b>les = them.</b>

**90.** All conjunctive pronouns, used as subject, are placed *before* the verb, except when the sentence is interrogative: **il vient** (=he comes); **vient-il?** (=does he come?).

**91.** When used as object, all the conjunctive pronouns are placed immediately *before* the verb, unless the verb is in the imperative and used affirmatively: **Je le connais** (=I know him); **ne le fais pas** (=do not do it); **fais-le** (=do it).

**92.** When a verb governs two conjunctive pronouns, both are placed before the verb, the dative being put first, and the accusative next: **Je te le donne** (=I give it to you); **te le donne-t-il?** (=does he give it to you?).

However, **lui, leur** are to be put after **le, la, les**: **Je le lui donne** (=I give it to him).

N.B.—1. All these pronouns are used for both genders, with the exception of:—

**il, le, ils, eux**, which are reserved for the masculine; and **elle, la, elles**, which are reserved for the feminine.

2. **Vous** is used for politeness' sake instead of **tu**, and the adjective remains in the singular: **Paul, vous êtes triste** (=Paul, you are sad).

3. The pronouns **le, la, les** must not be mistaken for the definite article **le, la, les**, the former always

accompany a verb, the latter a substantive: *Voici le livre que je vous ai promis, prenez-le* (=here is the book I promised you; take it).

4. **Leur** is a personal pronoun when it means *à eux, à elles* (=to them), and accompanies a verb. In that case it never takes the mark of the plural, as: *Je leur ai donné un livre* (=I have given them a book). It is a possessive adjective when it signifies *d'eux, d'elles* (=of them), and is placed before a substantive. It must then take the mark of the plural, as: *Ces enfants ont perdu leurs livres* (=these children have lost their books). **Leur**, possessive adjective, never takes the mark of the feminine: **Leur** fille (=their daughter), **leurs** filles (=their daughters).

5. **En** is a pronoun when it is used instead of *de lui* (=of him); *d'elle* (=of her); *d'eux, d'elles* (=of them): *J'aime cet enfant et j'en suis aimé* (=I love this child, and I am loved by him). Otherwise it is either an adverb, *j'en viens* (=I come from thence), or a preposition, *je suis en France* (=I am in France).

6. **Y** is a pronoun when it means *à cette chose* (=to this thing), *à ces choses* (=to these things), *à cela* (=to that): *L'affaire est importante, j'y donnerai tous mes soins* (=the affair is important; I shall bestow all my care upon it). Otherwise it is an adverb: *Tu y cours* (=thou runnest there.)

93. The **disjunctive personal pronouns**, or pronouns used apart from the verb, are:—

*Singular.*

**Moi** = I; **toi** = thou; **lui, elle** = he, she.

Nom.	<b>Moi</b> =I.	<b>toi</b> =thou.	<b>lui, elle</b> =he, she.
Gen.	<b>de moi.</b>	<b>de toi.</b>	<b>de lui, d'elle.</b>
Dat.	<b>à moi.</b>	<b>à toi.</b>	<b>à lui, à elle.</b>
Acc.	<b>moi.</b>	<b>toi.</b>	<b>lui, elle.</b>

*Plural.*

**Nous** = we; **vous** = you; **eux, elles** = they.

Nom.	<b>Nous</b> =we.	<b>vous</b> =you.	<b>eux, elles</b> =they.
Gen.	<b>de nous.</b>	<b>de vous.</b>	<b>d'eux, d'elles.</b>
Dat.	<b>à nous.</b>	<b>à vous.</b>	<b>à eux, à elles.</b>
Acc.	<b>nous.</b>	<b>vous.</b>	<b>eux, elles.</b>

94. The disjunctive pronouns are always the same, whether used as subject or as object of a verb. They are used as subject only when it is necessary to establish a distinction between two persons or things, or for emphasis: **Lui** m'a donné de l'argent, **eux** m'ont donné à manger (=he gave me money, they gave me to eat); **moi**, je vous le dis (=I tell you so).

95. These pronouns are used in French after the verb **être**, after a preposition or conjunction, and also in answer to questions: C'est **moi** (=it is I); c'était **lui** (=it was he); ce livre est à **moi** (=this book is mine, belongs to me); il parle contre **toi** (=he speaks against you); il est plus grand que **moi** (=he is taller than I); qui vient là? **Moi** (=who comes there? I).

In order to give still greater force to the expression, the adjective *même* is joined by a hyphen to these pronouns, as:—

Singular.	Plural.
<b>moi-même</b> = myself	<b>nous-mêmes</b> = ourselves
<b>toi-même</b> = thyself	<b>vous-mêmes</b> = yourselves
<b>lui-même</b> = himself	<b>eux-mêmes</b> } themselves.
<b>elle-même</b> = herself	<b>elles-mêmes</b> }
<b>soi-même</b> = oneself, himself, herself, etc.	

96. The **reflective personal pronoun** (conjunctive, *se*; disjunctive, *soi*) is used only for the third person, and for both genders and both numbers. The first and second persons are formed with the pronouns given above.

N.B.—In modern French, *soi* is only used when the subject of the verb is *on*, *tout le monde*, *chacun*, etc., or after an impersonal verb.

### Exercise 20.

1. Il travaille avec soin. 2. C'est moi qui irai le voir. 3. Je crois que c'est à toi qu'il parle. 4. Adressez-vous à lui. 5. Elle lui parlera de votre affaire. 6. Je le vois d'ici. 7. Elle est si bonne que je veux la récompenser. 8. Ces fleurs me plaisent.

beaucoup. 9. Croyez-moi, consentez-y. 10. J'ai lu votre livre, et j'en parlerai dans la revue.

<sup>1</sup> marche, <sup>2</sup> vois, <sup>3</sup> voyons, <sup>4</sup> pensez, <sup>5</sup> jouent, <sup>6</sup> dansent, <sup>7</sup> donnerai, <sup>8</sup> qui plaisent, <sup>9</sup> croyez, <sup>10</sup> récompenser, <sup>11</sup> consens, <sup>12</sup> parle, <sup>13</sup> venons, <sup>14</sup> en, <sup>15</sup> montrerai, <sup>16</sup> c'était, <sup>17</sup> parlez, <sup>18</sup> souvenez-vous de, <sup>19</sup> loin, <sup>20</sup> allez, <sup>21</sup> allons, <sup>22</sup> font tout, <sup>23</sup> on ne doit jamais parler, <sup>24</sup> flattent, <sup>25</sup> sais.

**Conjunctive pronouns:** 1. I walk;<sup>1</sup> thou seest<sup>2</sup> these flowers; he has read your book; your sisters are very good. 2. She works with much (of) care; we see,<sup>3</sup> you think,<sup>4</sup> they (*masc.*) play,<sup>5</sup> they (*fem.*) dance.<sup>6</sup> 3. I shall give<sup>7</sup> him these flowers which please<sup>8</sup> (to) him. 4. Go *and* (to) see him. 5. You believe<sup>9</sup> that I wish to recompense<sup>10</sup> her. 6. We have read the review of your book. 7. I consent<sup>11</sup> to it; I speak<sup>12</sup> of him; he has some of them; we come<sup>13</sup> from that place.<sup>14</sup> 8. I will show<sup>15</sup> it to you; don't show it to her.

**Disjunctive pronouns.** 1. It is he; it was<sup>16</sup> I; speak<sup>17</sup> to them (*masc.*); remember<sup>18</sup> them (*fem.*) 2. Far<sup>19</sup> from thee; go<sup>20</sup> with them; let us go<sup>21</sup> there ourselves; they do everything<sup>22</sup> themselves (*fem.*). 3. One should never speak<sup>23</sup> of one's self. 4. They flatter<sup>24</sup> themselves. 5. I who was there (*I*) know<sup>25</sup> it better than he.

## SECTION II.

### DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

**97. Demonstrative pronouns** are used to point out the person or thing spoken of: *Mon cheval est plus grand que celui-ci* (=my horse is higher than this one).

**98.** The demonstrative pronouns are the following:

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<b>Ce, celui, celle</b> (=this, that, it).	<b>ceux, celles</b> (=these, those.)

**99.** We have seen (§ 82) that the adverb **ci** is added to the demonstrative adjective to point out an object *close to* us, and the adverb **là** to indicate another object *far from* us. Those two adverbs are also, and for the same purpose, joined to the demonstrative pronouns **ce** (but without a hyphen): **ceci** (=this); **cela** (=that); **celui** (with a hyphen) = **celui-ci, celle-ci, celui-là, celle là; ceux-ci, ceux-là**, etc.



**100. Ce is a pronoun—**

1. When it accompanies a verb: **Ce doit être son frère** (=it must be his brother); **est-ce lui?** (=is it he?).
2. When it is placed before the pronouns *qui* (=who), *que* (=whom), *quoi* (=what), *dont* (=whose): *J'irai voir ce qui est arrivé* (=I will go and see what has happened); *je ferai ce que vous me demandez* (=I will do what you ask me).

But placed before a noun **ce** is an adjective: **Ce livre** (=this book); **ce chapeau** (=that hat).

*Celui qui* = he who, the one who; *celui que* = he whom, the one whom.

**Exercise 21.**

1. Mon livre et celui de mon frère. 2. Ma chaise et celle de ma cousine. 3. Ses crayons et ceux de Guillaume. 4. Vos offres et celles de votre ami. 5. Préférez-vous ce couteau-ci ou celui-là? 6. Gardez ces bottes-là; je choisis celles-ci. 7. Ceci mérite attention. 8. Cela ne vaut rien. 9. Quel est ce monsieur? Ce doit être son colonel. 10. Est-ce bien lui?

<sup>1</sup> préfère, <sup>2</sup> qui faites, <sup>3</sup> commode, <sup>4</sup> mais, <sup>5</sup> ne vaut rien, <sup>6</sup> paire (*f.*), <sup>7</sup> choisis, <sup>8</sup> parce que ce doit être, <sup>9</sup> ouvrage (*m.*), <sup>10</sup> récompense (*f.*).

1. I prefer<sup>1</sup> these boots to those. 2. Is it you who make<sup>2</sup> these offers? 3. Give me this or that. 4. Your chairs are not so comfortable<sup>3</sup> as those of your friend. 5. These knives are excellent, but<sup>4</sup> this one is good for nothing.<sup>5</sup> 6. Of several pairs<sup>6</sup> of boots, this one or that one? these or those? 7. I choose<sup>7</sup> this book, because it must be<sup>8</sup> an excellent work.<sup>9</sup> 8. Your brother's attention deserves a reward.<sup>10</sup> 9. I do not like that. 10. The one that I show you.

**SECTION III.****POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.**

**101. Possessive pronouns** take the place of the noun, and at the same time denote possession: *Mon chapeau est meilleur que le vôtre* (=my hat is better

than yours); *ton cheval est plus noir que le sien* (=thy horse is blacker than his). **Le vôtre, le sien** are possessive pronouns—*pronouns*, because they are used to avoid the repetition of the noun which represents the object, and *possessive*, because they indicate, at the same time, to whom the object belongs.

When one object possessed by **only one** person is spoken of (as *mon chapeau est meilleur que le tien*), the possessive pronouns are:

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	
1 <sup>ST</sup> PERSON	{ MASC. <b>le mien</b> ... FEM. <b>la mienne</b> ...	{ <b>les miens</b> ... <b>les miennes</b> ...	} mine
2 <sup>ND</sup> PERSON	{ MASC. <b>le tien</b> ... FEM. <b>la tienne</b> ...	{ <b>les tiens</b> ... <b>les tiennes</b> ...	} thine
3 <sup>RD</sup> PERSON	{ MASC. <b>le sien</b> ... FEM. <b>la sienne</b> ...	{ <b>les siens</b> ... <b>les siennes</b> ...	} his, its hers, its.

*Mien, tien, sien* are softened forms of *mon, ton, son*. In the Middle-Ages the pronouns *mien, tien, sien* could be used as adjectives, that is to say, placed between the article and the name of the possessed object; people said indiscriminately either *mon frère* (=my brother), *ton vassal* (=thy vassal), or *le mien frère, le tien vassal*, etc. This rule soon disappeared, but some remains of it are still found in the modern expressions: *un mien cousin* (=a cousin of mine), *le tien propre* (=thine own), *une sienne tante* (=an aunt of his), etc.

When an object possessed by **several** persons at the same time is spoken of (as *leur cheval est moins beau que le nôtre* =their horse is not so fine as ours), the possessive pronouns are:

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1 <sup>ST</sup> PERSON	{ MASC. <b>le nôtre</b> ... FEM. <b>la nôtre</b> ...	{ ... ... } <b>les nôtres</b> =ours
2 <sup>ND</sup> PERSON	{ MASC. <b>le vôtre</b> ... FEM. <b>la vôtre</b> ...	{ ... ... } <b>les vôtres</b> =yours
3 <sup>RD</sup> PERSON	{ MASC. <b>le leur</b> ... FEM. <b>la leur</b> ...	{ ... ... } <b>les leurs</b> =theirs.

### Exercise 22.

1. Votre fusil est plus lourd que le mien. 2. J'aime votre maison, mais je n'aime pas la leur. 3. Est-il à ma place ou à la sienne? 4. Voici mes patins; montrez-moi les vôtres. 5. Donne-moi un morceau de ton gâteau, le mien n'est pas encore arrivé.

6. Quels jolis enfants! Sont-ce les vôtres? 7. Le domestique m'a apporté mes lettres et les leurs. 8. Il a parlé à mon colonel et au sien. 9. Je vois souvent vos amis et les siens. 10. Je trouve mon pays meilleur que le vôtre.

\* domestique (m.), \* n'est pas encore arrivé, \* canif (m.), \* pays (m.), \* Angle terre (f.), \* confiance (f.), \* joli, \* étang (m.).

1. Your servant<sup>1</sup> is here, but mine has not arrived yet.<sup>2</sup> 2. My colonel's gun is heavier than yours. 3. Is that your pen-knife<sup>3</sup>? No; it is his. 4. (The) France is my country<sup>4</sup>; (the) England<sup>5</sup> is yours. 5. My friend deserves your confidence<sup>6</sup> and theirs. 6. His skates and thine. 7. He speaks to your pretty<sup>7</sup> children and to mine. 8. Your gloves and hers. 9. This pond<sup>8</sup> is smaller than ours. 10. I have read your book and his.

## SECTION IV.

## RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

**102.** Relative pronouns are those which connect the noun or pronoun they stand for with the part of the sentence which follows them: *Le chêne qui ombre notre cour est très-vieux* (=the oak which overshadows our yard is very old); *le livre que vous m'avez prêté est intéressant* (=the book [which] you have lent me is interesting).

**103.** The word represented by the relative pronoun is called the **antecedent**. In the above examples *chêne* and *livre* are the antecedents of *qui* and of *que*.

The French word *antécédent* comes from the Latin *antecedentem* (= preceding), because it is placed before the relative pronoun.

**104.** The relative pronouns are—

1. **qui** = who, which (applied to persons and things);  
     **de qui** = whose, of or from whom } applied to  
     **à qui** = to whom } persons only;
2. **que**<sup>2</sup> = whom, which, what (persons and things);
3. **quoi** = what (things only) in exclamation and after prepositions;
4. **dont** = whose, of or from whom or which (persons and things);
5. **lequel** = who, which, what (persons and things).

<sup>2</sup> *Que* is: spelled *qu'* before a vowel; *qui* is never shortened.

The relative pronouns *qui*, *que*, *quoi*, *dont* are **invariable**, but *lequel* is **variable**:—

## SINGULAR.

MASC.	FEM.
<i>lequel</i>	<i>laquelle</i> = who, which, what
<i>duquel</i>	<i>de laquelle</i> = of or from whom, which, what
<i>auquel</i>	<i>à laquelle</i> = to whom, which, what.

## PLURAL.

<i>lesquels</i>	<i>lesquelles</i> = who, which, what
<i>desquels</i>	<i>desquelles</i> = of whom, which, what
<i>auxquels</i>	<i>auxquelles</i> = to whom, which, what.

**105.** REMARK.—**Que**, pronoun, must not be mistaken for *que* adverb or *que* conjunction. *Que* is a pronoun when *lequel*, *laquelle*, *lesquels*, *lesquelles* can be used in its place, as: *la rose que j'ai cueillie ce matin est fanée* (= the rose I gathered this morning is faded) = **laquelle j'ai cueillie**.—*Que* is an adverb when it means *how many*, as: **que de belles roses j'ai cueillies!** (= how many beautiful roses I have plucked!) And, lastly, *que* is a conjunction when it means neither *lequel* nor *combien*, as: *J'espère que vous réussirez dans votre entreprise* (= I hope [that] you will succeed in your undertaking).

NOTE that the relative pronouns are often understood in English, but must always be expressed in French.

**106.** The relative pronouns are also used in interrogative sentences, in which case they are called **interrogative pronouns**: **Qui** êtes-vous? (= who are you?) **que** demandez-vous? (= what do you ask for?) **à quoi** cela est-il bon? (= what is the use of that?) **voici deux accusés, lequel** est coupable? (= here are two accused persons, which is the guilty one?).

REMARK.—Interrogative pronouns *have no antecedent*.

**Dont** is never used as an interrogative pronoun: **De qui** (not *dont*) parlez-vous? (= whom are you speaking of?).

**107.** Besides the interrogative pronouns proper, there is the **interrogative adjective** *quel*, which

precedes a noun or pronoun: **Quel âge avez-vous?** (= what is your age, or how old are you?) **quelle heure est-il?** (= what o'clock is it?) **j'ai des nouvelles à vous apprendre.**—**Quelles sont-elles?** (= I have some news to tell you.—What is it?).

### 103. Quel is variable:—

masc. sing.	<i>quel</i>	masc. plur.	<i>quels</i>
fem. sing.	<i>quelle</i>	fem. plur.	<i>quelles</i>

### Exercise 23.

1. La personne qui vous connaît. 2. Le marchand que vous avez vu. 3. La bataille dont je parle. 4. En quoi vous ai-je trompé? 5. L'affaire à laquelle il a donné ses soins. 6. Quel âge a cet enfant? 7. De qui vous a-t-il parlé? 8. A quoi vous occupez-vous? 9. La rose que j'ai cueillie. 10. La loi qui est votée.

<sup>1</sup> marchand, <sup>2</sup> parlais hier, <sup>3</sup> failli, <sup>4</sup> s'applique-t-il, <sup>5</sup> cassé, <sup>6</sup> vaisseau (m.), <sup>7</sup> acheté part demain, <sup>8</sup> poème (m.), <sup>9</sup> tout le monde, <sup>10</sup> ministre (m.), <sup>11</sup> bonté, <sup>12</sup> doit, <sup>13</sup> tigre (m.), <sup>14</sup> habitent, <sup>15</sup> dessin, <sup>16</sup> consacre, <sup>17</sup> traité (m.), <sup>18</sup> lisez, <sup>19</sup> plein, <sup>20</sup> idée (f.)

1. Have you seen the merchant<sup>1</sup> of whom I spoke yesterday?<sup>2</sup> 2. In what have you failed?<sup>3</sup> 3. To what does he apply himself?<sup>4</sup> 4. Which of my fans has he broken?<sup>5</sup> 5. The ship<sup>6</sup> (which) he has bought sails to-morrow.<sup>7</sup> 6. The poem<sup>8</sup> of which everybody<sup>9</sup> speaks is by Victor Hugo. 7. The minister<sup>10</sup> to whose kindness<sup>11</sup> he owes<sup>12</sup> his place (f.) 8. The lions (m.) and tigers<sup>13</sup> which inhabit<sup>14</sup> the desert (m.) 9. (The) drawing<sup>15</sup> is an art (m.) to which I devote<sup>16</sup> myself. 10. The treatise<sup>17</sup> you are reading<sup>18</sup> is full<sup>19</sup> of original ideas.<sup>20</sup>

## SECTION V.

### INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

**109. Indefinite pronouns** denote persons or things in a general, vague, and indeterminate manner: **Quelqu'un est venu** (= somebody came); **on nous l'a dit** (= some one told us so); **ne faites pas de mal à autrui** (= do no harm to others).

The indefinite pronouns are—

<b>autrui</b>	= other people, others	<b>quelqu'un</b>	= somebody
<b>chacun</b>	= every one,	<b>rien</b>	= something
<b>on</b> (or <b>l'on</b> )	= people, one, they	<b>rien ne</b>	= nothing
<b>personne</b>	= somebody	<b>l'un l'autre</b>	= one another
<b>personne ne</b>	= nobody	<b>l'un et l'autre</b>	= both
<b>quiconque</b>	= whoever	<b>l'un ou l'autre</b>	= either
		<b>ni l'un ni l'autre</b>	= neither

**110.** **Personne** (from Latin *persona*) is a **pronoun** (and of the *masculine* gender) when it is not accompanied by an article or adjective, as : **Personne n'est venu** (= no one came); **personne a-t-il jamais parlé comme vous?** (= has any one ever spoken like you?). In all other cases **personne** is a *feminine substantive* : **Cette personne est très-obligeante** (= this person [either man or woman] is very obliging).

**2. Rien** is a **pronoun** when not accompanied by an article or an adjective : **Je n'ai rien vu** (= I have not seen anything). Otherwise, it is a *masculine noun* : **Un songe, un rien, tout lui fait peur** (= a dream, a trifle, everything frightens him). (LA FONTAINE, *Fables*, viii. 11.)

**111.** Some **indefinite adjectives** may be used by themselves, *i.e.* without being placed before a substantive, and are therefore considered as **indefinite pronouns**. Such are **nul, plusieurs, tout** : **Nul n'est irréprochable** (= no one is blameless); **plusieurs ont pleuré** (= several shed tears); **tout est perdu** (= all [everything] is lost), etc.

The following adjectives may be used as pronouns : **autre, certains, nul, plusieurs, tel, tout**.

REMARK.—**Certain** is an **indefinite pronoun** in the plural when it means *quelques-uns* (= some persons), as : **Certains l'affirment** (= some persons affirm this).

In answers, **rien** and **personne** do not require the *ne* : **Qu'avez-vous vu? rien** (= what have you seen? nothing).

## Exercise 24.

1. Quelqu'un est venu vous voir. 2. Ne dites jamais du mal d'autrui. 3. Chacun pense que la guerre sera déclarée. 4. Quiconque ouvrira cette porte, sera puni. 5. On dit qu'un incendie a détruit le palais du roi. 6. Ils se sont mordus l'un l'autre. 7. Je n'ai rien entendu. 8. Voici deux bons fouets, prenez l'un ou l'autre. 9. J'aime l'un et l'autre. 10. Chacun a fait son devoir.

<sup>1</sup> bonheur (m.), <sup>2</sup> rend, <sup>3</sup> heureux, <sup>4</sup> toujours gal, <sup>5</sup> société (f.), <sup>6</sup> se calomnie, <sup>7</sup> porte (f.), <sup>8</sup> fermé, <sup>9</sup> plaît, <sup>10</sup> coûté plusieurs, <sup>11</sup> mordu, <sup>12</sup> pauvre, <sup>13</sup> sévèrement, <sup>14</sup> erreur (f.), <sup>15</sup> il y avait, <sup>16</sup> qu'y avait-il.

1. The happiness<sup>1</sup> of others makes<sup>2</sup> me happy.<sup>3</sup> 2. One is always merry<sup>4</sup> in your society.<sup>5</sup> 3. They calumniate<sup>6</sup> one another. 4. Either of these doors<sup>7</sup> shall be closed.<sup>8</sup> 5. Neither of these whips pleases<sup>9</sup> me. 6. Each one of these palaces has cost several<sup>10</sup> millions. 7. Whoever has bitten<sup>11</sup> that poor<sup>12</sup> child shall be severely<sup>13</sup> punished. 8. I have seen nothing of the fire. 9. Each one has his opinion. 10. No one is exempt from error.<sup>14</sup> 11. There was<sup>15</sup> nobody; what was there?<sup>16</sup> Nothing; there was nothing.

## QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Define a <i>pronoun</i>.</li> <li>2. What is the rule for the agreement of pronouns?</li> <li>3. How many kinds of pronouns are there?</li> <li>4. Define a <i>personal pronoun</i>.</li> <li>5. Give a list of the personal pronouns, and say where you place the conjunctive; and where the disjunctive?</li> <li>6. When is <i>vous</i> used instead of <i>tu</i>?</li> <li>7. State the difference between, <i>le, la, les</i>, articles, and <i>le, la, les</i>, pronouns;—between <i>leur</i>, adjective, and <i>leur</i>, pronoun;—between <i>en</i>, pronoun, and <i>en</i>, adverb;—between <i>y</i>, pronoun, and <i>y</i>, adverb.</li> <li>8. Mention a <i>compound pronoun</i>.</li> </ol> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>9. Give a table of the demonstrative pronouns.</li> <li>10. When is <i>ce</i> a pronoun?—When is it an adjective?</li> <li>11. Give a list of the <i>possessive pronouns</i>.</li> <li>12. What is meant by a <i>relative pronoun</i>?</li> <li>13. What is an <i>antecedent</i>?</li> <li>14. Remark on the word <i>que</i>.</li> <li>15. What are the <i>interrogative pronouns</i>?—What is <i>quel</i>?</li> <li>16. What is the difference between <i>qui</i> and <i>que</i>, 1<sup>o</sup> as relative, 2<sup>o</sup> as interrogative pronouns?</li> <li>17. Write a table of the <i>indefinite pronouns</i>.</li> <li>18. Remark on <i>personne</i>;—on <i>rien</i>.</li> <li>19. Name the <i>indefinite adjectives</i> used as pronouns.</li> </ol> |
|---|---|

## CHAPTER V.

## OF THE VERB.

**112.** The **verb** is a word which expresses the idea of an *action* or of a *state* which can be ascribed to a person or to a thing: *Le cheval est docile* (=the horse is docile); *le loup mange l'agneau* (=the wolf eats the lamb).

**113.** When we say, *le loup mange l'agneau*, the word *mange* (=eats), which indicates the action performed by the wolf, is called the **verb**; the word *loup* (=wolf), indicating the animal which performs the action, is called the **subject**; the word *agneau* (=lamb), pointing out the animal eaten by the wolf, is called the **complement** (or **object**).

**114.** The word *agneau* (=lamb) is called the **complement** (or **object**) because it *completes* the idea which the verb *mange* (=eats) commences, by indicating what animal the wolf is eating. There are two kinds of complements: the **direct** and the **indirect**.

**115.** The **direct complement** is that which completes the meaning of the verb in a *direct* manner, that is to say, without the aid of any other word: *il aime son père* (=he loves his father). *Son père* is a direct complement.

**116.** The **indirect complement** is that which completes *indirectly* the meaning of the verb, that is to say, with the aid of certain words, such as *à*, *de*, etc. (=to, of, etc.), which are called **prepositions**: *il obéit à son père*, *il dépend de son père* (=he obeys his father, he depends on his father), *à son père*, *de son père* are indirect complements.

There is only one verb properly so called, namely the verb *être*, which expresses existence, and is designated as *substantive verb*; all the other verbs are called *adjective verbs*, because, in addition to the idea of existence, they also describe a *quality*, a manner of being of the subject: thus, *je dors* (=I sleep) is the same as *je suis* (=I am, denoting existence) *dormant* (=sleeping, denoting the quality, the manner of being).



**117.** In studying verbs, we must examine *the stem, the termination, the number, the person, the mood, the tense.*

### 1. Stem.—2. Termination.

**118.** The verb is always formed of two distinct parts: 1st. A part which does not change, called the **stem** (or **root**) of the verb. 2nd. A changeable and variable part, which is called the **termination**. Thus in *je marche, nous marchons, vous marcherez* (=I walk, we walk, you will walk), the stem *march* expresses the action of walking; and the syllables **e, ons, er ez**, which follow the stem and mark the different shades of the meaning, are the terminations.

### 3. Numbers.

**119.** Verbs, like nouns, have two **numbers**: the singular, relating to one person and thing alone: **je marche, tu lis, il mange** (=I walk, thou readest, he eats); the plural, when several are alluded to: **nous lisons, vous marchez, ils finissent** (=we read, you walk, they finish).

### 4. Persons.

**120.** The action expressed by the verb can be performed by the person who speaks: **je marche, nous mangeons** (=I walk, we eat); by the person to whom we speak: **tu marches, vous mangez** (=thou walkest, you eat), or by the person of whom we speak: **il lit, ils marchent** (=he reads, they walk). The French language marks these changes of persons, both in the singular and in the plural, by adding for each of them a new termination (**e, ons, ez**, etc.) to the stem of the verb. These different terminations are called in grammar the **persons** of the verb.

### 5. Moods.

**121.** The *mood* is the *manner* in which the verb presents the state or action which it expresses.

*Mode* (= mood) is from the Latin *modus* (*manière*=manner). |

There are in French five *moods*: the **indicative**, the **imperative**, the **conditional**, the **subjunctive**, and the **infinitive**.

1. The **indicative** mood merely *indicates* that the action takes place: *je marche, tu lis* (=I walk, thou readest).

2. The **imperative** mood expresses *command*: *marchez, lisons* (=walk, let us read).

3. The **conditional** mood shows that the action would take place, if a certain condition were fulfilled: *je sortirais, s'il faisait beau* (=I should go out, if the weather were fine).

4. The **subjunctive** mood presents the action in a doubtful and uncertain manner, because it always depends upon another action: *je veux que tu viennes* (=I wish you to come). *Que tu viennes* is governed by the verb *je veux*, and depends on it.

5. The **infinitive** mood presents the action simply in a vague, *indefinite* manner, without any distinction of number or person: *lire, faire, remplir* (=to read, to do, to fill).

REMARK.—The *infinitive mood*, which takes no notice of persons, is called the *impersonal mood*; the other moods, which indicate the persons, are called *personal moods*.

## 6. Tenses.

**122.** The *tense* is the form assumed by the verb to show at what *time*, at what *moment* the action alluded to takes place.

There are three principal tenses: the **past**, the **present**, the **future**.

**123.** The **present** shows that the action occurs at the time when we are speaking (as, *je lis*=I read); the **past** shows that the action is already performed at the time when we are speaking (as, *j'ai marché*=I have walked); the **future** shows that the action will be performed at some future time (as, *je marcherai*=I shall walk).

**124.** There is only one *present*, but there are several *past* and several *future* tenses, because every action can be more or less past, more or less future.

**125.** There are five kinds of *past* or *perfect* tenses: the *imperfect*, the *preterite* or *past definite*, the *past indefinite*, the *past anterior*, and the *pluperfect*.

1. The **imperfect** expresses an action actually performed, but which was not so, when another action took place: *il lisait lorsque j'entrai* (=he was reading when I came in).

It is also used when speaking of a state or action which was habitual or characteristic: *il venait tous les jours* (=he came [used to come] every day).

2. The **preterite** or **past definite** shows that a thing has been done at a *definite*, determined epoch, which has completely passed at the time when we are speaking: *je chantai hier toute la soirée* (=I sang all last evening).

3. The **past indefinite** expresses an action which has taken place at a vague, indefinite epoch: *j'ai lu ce livre autrefois* (=I have read that book formerly).

4. The **pluperfect** (*j'avais lu quand vous êtes entré* = I had read when you entered) is thus called because it doubly expresses the past, by marking that a certain thing was done before another one took place in a past time.

5. The **preterite anterior** marks that the circumstance occurred immediately *before* another one which took place in a past time: *quand j'eus lu ce journal, je sortis* (=as soon as I had read that newspaper, I went out).

**126.** There are two kinds of *future*: the *future simple*, and the *future anterior*.

1. The **future simple** indicates that the thing in question shall be, or shall take place: *je chanterai demain* (=I shall sing to-morrow).

2. The **future anterior** indicates that the thing in question will take place before another one: *quand j'aurai lu ce journal, je sortirai* (=when I have read that newspaper, I shall go out).

#### AUXILIARY VERBS.

**127.** The verbs *avoir* and *être* are called **auxiliary** verbs, because they help in the conjugation of others: *je suis venu* (=I have come), *j'ai dormi* (=I have slept),

**128. Simple tenses** are those which are conjugated without the auxiliary *avoir* or *être*: *j'aime*, *j'aimais*, *que j'aime* (=I love, I loved, that I may love).

The simple tenses are formed by merely adding a termination to the stem.

**129. Compound tenses** are those which are conjugated with the auxiliary *avoir* or *être*: *j'ai aimé*, *j'aurai aimé*, *que j'eusse aimé* (=I have loved, I shall have loved, that I might have loved).

### Conjugation.

**130.** The union of all the tenses of the same verb, with all their numbers and all their persons, is called its **conjugation**.

**131.** There are in French **four** conjugations, which are distinguished by the termination of the infinitive.

The infinitive of the **first** conjugation ends in **-er**, as *aimer* (=to love).

The **second** conjugation has **-ir** for the termination of the infinitive, as *finir* (=to finish); and the imperfect of the indicative ends in **iss-ais**, *je fin-iss-ais* (=I finished).

The verbs in **ir** really include two conjugations: the one, as *finir*, the imperfect of which ends in *issais*, as *je finissais*: the other, as *sentir* (=to feel), the imperfect of which ends in *-ais*, as *je sentais*. We give here the first of these conjugations, which includes more than *three hundred* French verbs, reserving for the chapter on irregular verbs the notice of the second conjugation in **-ir**, which includes only *twenty-eight* verbs.

The **third** conjugation terminates in the infinitive in **-oir**, as *recevoir* (=to receive).

The **fourth** conjugation has for the ending of the infinitive **-re**, as *rompre* (=to break).

The French language includes (if we take the *Dictionnaire de l'Académie* as an authority) about 4000 simple verbs (leaving out the compound ones); of these, 3000 end in **-er**; 330 in **-ir** (with the imperfect in *-issais*): 28 in **-ir** (with the imperfect in *-ais*); 10 verbs in **-oir**; and 50 verbs in **-re**. We thus see that the first conjugation in **-er** includes in itself nine-tenths of the French verbs.

As we shall see (Section 10) the French language creates new verbs with the help of substantives and adjectives, by adding to the former the termination **-er**: *fête, fêter*; *gant, ganter*; *lard, larder*; *camp, camper* (=holiday, to make holiday; glove, to put gloves on; bacon, to lard; camp, to camp); and to the latter the termination **-ir**: *maigre, maigrir*; *cher, chérir*; *bleu, bleuir*; *pâle, pâlir* (=thin, to become thin; dear, to cherish; blue, to make blue; pale, to become pale).

The first conjugation, in **-er**, forms new verbs with *substantives*; the second conjugation, in **-ir**, with *adjectives*. We may, then, designate them as *living* conjugations (*des conjugaisons vivantes*), inasmuch as they are constantly used for the purpose of new formations.

The conjugations in **-oir**, **-re** (and the second in **-ir**) are, on the contrary, incapable of being used to form new verbs, and since the origin of their language, the French have not added one *single verb* in **-oir** or in **-re** to the small number of those bequeathed by the Latin language. These conjugations, which have remained, so to say, barren, can with good reason be called *dead* conjugations (*des conjugaisons mortes*).

This simple distinction of the conjugations into *dead* and *living* shows us at once why 3900 French verbs (out of 4000) are in **-er** and in **-ir**, whilst the three other conjugations put together only include about 90 verbs.

## SECTION I.

### AUXILIARY VERBS.

**132. Avoir** and **être** are auxiliaries only when they serve to conjugate another verb, that is to say, when they are followed by a past participle; they have no claim to that designation when they are conjugated by themselves, as: *j'ai un cheval* (=I have a horse); *je suis roi* (=I am king).

#### I. Conjugation of the Auxiliary Verb **AVOIR** (=to have).

##### INDICATIVE.

###### PRESENT.

(I have)

J'ai  
tu as  
il or elle a  
nous avons  
vous avez  
ils or elles ont

###### PERFECT.

(I have had)

J'ai eu  
tu as eu  
il or elle a eu  
nous avons eu  
vous avez eu  
ils or elles ont eu.

## IMPERFECT.

*(I had)*

J'avais  
tu avais  
il or elle avait  
nous avions  
vous aviez  
! ils or elles avaient

## PLUPERFECT.

*(I had had)*

J'avais eu  
tu avais eu  
il or elle avait eu  
nous avions eu  
vous aviez eu  
ils or elles avaient eu.

## PAST DEFINITE.

*(I had)*

J'eus  
tu eus  
il or elle eut  
nous eûmes  
vous eûtes  
ils or elles eurent

## PAST ANTERIOR.

*(I had had)*

J'eus eu  
tu eus eu  
il or elle eut eu  
nous eûmes eu  
vous eûtes eu  
ils or elles eurent eu.

## FUTURE.

*(I shall have)*

J'aurai  
tu auras  
il or elle aura  
nous aurons  
vous aurez  
ils or elles auront

## FUTURE ANTERIOR.

*(I shall have had)*

J'aurai eu  
tu auras eu  
il or elle aura eu  
nous aurons eu  
vous aurez eu  
ils or elles auront eu.

## CONDITIONAL.

## PRESENT.

*(I should have)*

J'aurais  
tu aurais  
il or elle aurait  
nous aurions  
vous auriez  
ils or elles auraient

## ANTERIOR.

*(I should have had)*

J'aurais eu  
tu aurais eu  
il or elle aurait eu  
nous aurions eu  
vous auriez eu  
ils or elles auraient eu.

## IMPERATIVE.

## PRESENT.

*(Have [thou])*

• • • • •  
Aie  
• • • • •  
ayons  
ayez  
• • • • •

## PERFECT.

*(Have [thou] had)*

• • • • •  
Aie eu  
• • • • •  
ayons eu  
ayez eu  
• • • • •

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

(That I may have)

Que j'aie  
que tu aies  
qu'il or qu'elle ait  
que nous ayons  
que vous ayez  
qu'ils or qu'elles aient

PERFECT.

(That I may have had)

Que j'aie eu  
que tu aies eu  
qu'il or qu'elle ait eu  
que nous ayons eu  
que vous ayez eu  
qu'ils or qu'elles aient eu.

IMPERFECT.

(That I might have)

Que j'eusse  
que tu eusses  
qu'il or qu'elle eût  
que nous eussions  
que vous eussiez  
qu'ils or qu'elles eussent

PLUPERFECT.

(That I might have had)

Que j'eusse eu  
que tu eusses eu  
qu'il or qu'elle eût eu  
que nous eussions eu  
que vous eussiez eu  
qu'ils or qu'elles eussent eu.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.

Avoir (to have)

PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

Ayant (having)

PERFECT.

Avoir eu (to have had).

PERFECT.

Ayant eu (having had).

PAST (VARIABLE).

Eu, fem. eue.

Exercise 25.

*Indicatif présent.*—J'ai un chapeau neuf. Tu as une robe neuve. Nous avons une grande maison. Vous avez de l'ambition. Ils ont un cheval noir.

*Imparfait.*—J'avais un bon maître. Tu avais une belle bibliothèque. Elle avait une voiture élégante. Nous avions des chagrins. Vous aviez perdu votre temps. Elles avaient des tiroirs pleins de jouets.

*Passé défini.*—J'eus un grand jardin. Il eut un morceau de pain. Nous eûmes une récompense. Ils eurent de la joie.

*Futur.*—J'aurai six paires de bas. Tu auras des raisins. Nous aurons des poires délicieuses. Vous aurez trop de plaisir.

*Conditionnel présent.*—J'aurais un billet pour le convoi de Paris. Elle aurait une robe et un chapeau neuf. Nous aurions un habile jardinier. Ils auraient une récompense.

*Impératif.*—Aie du courage. Ayons un peu de patience. Ayez plus de persévérance.

*Subjonctif présent.*—Que j'aie mon déjeuner. Que tu aies tes lettres. Que vous ayez votre fusil chargé.

*Imparfait.*—Que j'eusse mon épée et mes pistolets. Que tu eusses un grand pouvoir. Qu'elle eût une nombreuse famille. Que nous eussions des embarras. Que vous eussiez des billets de banque. Qu'elles eussent une chambre petite mais propre.

*Temps composés.*—Mon frère a eu une bonne place. Elle avait eu des oiseaux. J'eus eu des fleurs. J'aurai eu mon argent. Nous aurions eu un été magnifique. Que tu aies eu de la prudence. Qu'elles eussent eu une bouteille de vin.

*Infinitif.*—Avoir de l'esprit. Ayant eu du succès.

<sup>1</sup> persévérance (*f.*), <sup>2</sup> place (*f.*), <sup>3</sup> cour (*f.*), <sup>4</sup> poire (*f.*), <sup>5</sup> chapeau (*m.*), <sup>6</sup> comédie (*f.*), <sup>7</sup> choix (*m.*), <sup>8</sup> main (*f.*), <sup>9</sup> laborieux, <sup>10</sup> congé (*m.*), <sup>11</sup> éperon (*m.*), <sup>12</sup> aiguille (*f.*), <sup>13</sup> boîte (*f.*) à ouvrage, <sup>14</sup> loisir (*m.*), <sup>15</sup> lorgnon (*m.*), <sup>16</sup> consentement (*m.*), <sup>17</sup> tasse (*f.*), <sup>18</sup> théière (*f.*), <sup>19</sup> rideau (*m.*), <sup>20</sup> chandelier (*m.*), <sup>21</sup> rhume (*m.*), <sup>22</sup> citron (*m.*), <sup>23</sup> malheur (*m.*), <sup>24</sup> dîner (*m.*), <sup>25</sup> verger (*m.*), <sup>26</sup> inquiétude (*f.*), <sup>27</sup> manteau (*m.*), <sup>28</sup> bonheur (*m.*), <sup>29</sup> écharpe (*f.*), <sup>30</sup> argent, <sup>31</sup> nourriture (*f.*), <sup>32</sup> couronne (*f.*).

*Indicative present.*—I have a sword and (some) pistols. Thou hast very little (of) patience (*f.*). She has prudence (*f.*). We have more (of) perseverance.<sup>1</sup>

*Imperfect.*—I had two large gardens. Thou hadst a bottle of wine. He had a good situation<sup>2</sup> at (the) court.<sup>3</sup> We had some delicious pears.<sup>4</sup> They had new bonnets.<sup>5</sup>

*Perfect.*—She had a pair of stockings. We had a ticket for the play.<sup>6</sup> My gardener, who was in the train, had an accident (*m.*).

*Future.*—I shall have lost my time. You will have an elegant carriage. They will have their reward.

*Conditionāl present.*—I should have my choice.<sup>7</sup> Thou wouldst have a small room. He would have some bank-notes. We should have some difficulty. You would have some new skates. They would have a quire<sup>8</sup> of paper.

*Imperative.*—Have (thou) a more industrious<sup>9</sup> pupil. Let us have our holidays.<sup>10</sup> Have (ye) some melons (*m.*).

*Subjunctive present.*—That I may have a pair of spurs.<sup>11</sup> That thou may'st have some needles.<sup>12</sup> That she may have a work-box.<sup>13</sup> That we may have leisure.<sup>14</sup> That you may have more (of) confidence. That they may have eye-glasses.<sup>15</sup>

*Imperfect.*—That I might have your consent.<sup>16</sup> That thou mightest have a cup<sup>17</sup> and a tea-pot.<sup>18</sup> That he might have jewels. That she might have curtains<sup>19</sup> in her room. That we might have a candlestick.<sup>20</sup> That you might have a cold.<sup>21</sup> That they might have lemons.<sup>22</sup>



*Compound tenses.*—I have had a misfortune.<sup>23</sup> Thou hadst had a good dinner.<sup>24</sup> She had had a large orchard.<sup>25</sup> We shall have had much (of) anxiety.<sup>26</sup> You would have had a cloak.<sup>27</sup> That this merchant may have had luck.<sup>28</sup> That she might have had a scarf.<sup>29</sup>

*Infinitive.*—To have money<sup>30</sup> is not always to be happy. Having food.<sup>31</sup> Having had a crown.<sup>32</sup>

## II. Conjugation of the Auxiliary Verb ÊTRE (= to be).

### INDICATIVE.

#### PRESENT.

(I am)

Je suis  
tu es  
il or elle est  
nous sommes  
vous êtes  
ils or elles sont

#### PERFECT.

(I have been)

J'ai été  
tu as été  
il or elle a été  
nous avons été  
vous avez été  
ils or elles ont été.

#### IMPERFECT.

(I was)

J'étais  
tu étais  
il or elle était  
nous étions  
vous étiez  
ils or elles étaient

#### PLUPERFECT.

(I had been)

J'avais été  
tu avais été  
il or elle avait été  
nous avions été  
vous aviez été  
ils or elles avaient été.

#### PAST DEFINITE.

(I was)

Je fus  
tu fus  
il or elle fut  
nous fûmes  
vous fûtes  
ils or elles furent

#### PAST ANTERIOR.

(I had been)

J'eus été  
tu eus été  
il or elle eut été  
nous eûmes été  
vous eûtes été  
ils or elles eurent été.

#### FUTURE.

(I shall be)

Je serai  
tu seras  
il or elle sera  
nous serons  
vous serez  
ils or elles seront

#### FUTURE ANTERIOR.

(I shall have been)

J'aurai été  
tu auras été  
il or elle aura été  
nous aurons été  
vous aurez été  
ils or elles auront été.

## CONDITIONAL.

## PRESENT.

*(I should be)*

Je serais  
tu serais  
il or elle serait  
nous serions  
vous seriez  
ils or elles seraient

## ANTERIOR.

*(I should have been)*

J'aurais été  
tu aurais été  
il or elle aurait été  
nous aurions été  
vous auriez été  
ils or elles auraient été.

## IMPERATIVE.

## PRESENT.

*(Be [thou])*

Sois . . . . .  
soyons . . . . .  
soyez . . . . .

## PERFECT.

*(Have [thou] been)*

Aie été . . . . .  
Ayons été . . . . .  
Ayez été . . . . .

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

*(That I may be)*

Que je sois  
que tu sois  
qu'il or qu'elle soit  
que nous soyons  
que vous soyez  
qu'ils or qu'elles soient

## PERFECT.

*(That I may have been)*

Que j'aie été  
que tu aies été  
qu'il or qu'elle ait été  
que nous ayons été  
que vous ayez été  
qu'ils or qu'elles aient été.

## IMPERFECT.

*(That I might be)*

Que je fusse  
que tu fusses  
qu'il or qu'elle fût  
que nous fussions  
que vous fussiez  
qu'ils or qu'elles fussent

## PLUPERFECT.

*(That I might have been)*

Que j'eusse été  
que tu eusses été  
qu'il or qu'elle eût été  
que nous eussions été  
que vous eussiez été  
qu'ils or qu'elles eussent été.

## INFINITIVE.

## PRESENT.

Être *(to be)*

## PERFECT.

Avoir été *(to have been)*.

## PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

Étant *(being)*

## PERFECT.

Ayant été *(having been)*.

## PAST (INVARIABLE).

Été *(been)*.

## Exercise 26.

*Indicatif présent.*—Je suis malade. Tu es savant. Il est malheureux. Elle est joyeuse. Nous sommes laborieux. Vous êtes modestes. Ils sont oisifs. Elles sont oisives.

*Imparfait.*—J'étais prudent. Tu étais timide. Il était honteux. Elle était honteuse. Nous étions discrètes. Vous étiez studieux. Ils étaient jaloux. Vos sœurs étaient jalouses.

*Passé défini.*—Je fus son ami intime. Tu fus mon plus grand ennemi. Elle fut excellente musicienne. Nous fûmes généreux. Vous fûtes ingrats. Elles furent cruelles.

*Futur.*—Je serai général en chef. Il sera mis à mort. Elle sera estimée. Nous serons fidèles à notre pays. Vous serez dans des craintes continuelles. Ils seront inquiets.

*Conditionnel présent.*—Je serais prêt. Tu serais turbulent. Il serait déshant. Elle serait fière. Nous serions fermes. Vous seriez frivoles. Ils seraient entêtés. Elles seraient soigneuses.

*Impératif.*—Sois tranquille. Soyez charitables. Soyons amis. Soyez obéissants. Soyons libres. Soyez gaies.

*Subjonctif présent.*—Que je sois moins impatient. Que tu sois un bon citoyen. Qu'il soit toujours puissant. Qu'elle soit soumise à ses parents. Que nous soyons sobres. Que vous soyez crédules. Qu'ils soient opiniâtres.

*Imparfait.*—Que je fusse ferme et courageux. Que tu fusses économe. Qu'il fût modéré. Que nous fussions hospitaliers. Que vous fussiez trompés. Qu'elles fussent satisfaites.

*Temps composés.*—Tu as été trop prompt. Elle avait été prise. Nous eûmes été invités. Vous aurez été moqueurs. Ils auraient été plus généreux. Que j'aie été volé. Qu'elles eussent été précoces.

*Infinitif.*—Pour être heureux il faut avoir la conscience tranquille. Étant battu, je me retire.

⚡ The pupil must be careful to observe here the rules for the place of adjectives ; see § 64, Note.

<sup>1</sup> indiscret, <sup>2</sup> obstiné, <sup>3</sup> ridicule, <sup>4</sup> capricieux, <sup>5</sup> reconnaissant, <sup>6</sup> emporté, <sup>7</sup> appliqué, <sup>8</sup> moqueur, <sup>9</sup> sage, <sup>10</sup> humain, <sup>11</sup> malhonnête, <sup>12</sup> infirme, <sup>13</sup> content, <sup>14</sup> compatissant, <sup>15</sup> bienveillant, <sup>16</sup> timide, <sup>17</sup> suffisant, <sup>18</sup> découragé, <sup>19</sup> faible, <sup>20</sup> pose, <sup>21</sup> battu, <sup>22</sup> prudent à l'avenir, <sup>23</sup> ennuyeux, <sup>24</sup> soupçonné, <sup>25</sup> conquis, <sup>26</sup> trompé, <sup>27</sup> taé, <sup>28</sup> chagrin, <sup>29</sup> commande, <sup>30</sup> devint, <sup>31</sup> réservé.

*Indicative present.*—I am obedient. Thou art ready. He is charitable. She is impatient. We are moderate. You are in continual fears. They are inconsiderate.<sup>1</sup>

*Imperfect.*—I was a distrustful man. Thou wast obstinate.<sup>4</sup> She was firm. We were ridiculous.<sup>8</sup> You were whimsical.<sup>4</sup> These soldiers were brave.

*Past definite.*—I was jealous. Thou wast grateful.<sup>5</sup> He was studious. We were hasty.<sup>6</sup> You were attentive. My sisters were diligent.<sup>7</sup>

*Future.*—I shall be sarcastic.<sup>8</sup> Thou wilt be a rich man. She will be a wise<sup>9</sup> woman. We shall be humane.<sup>10</sup> You will be unpolite.<sup>11</sup> They will be ridiculous.

*Conditional present.*—I should be firm. Thou wouldst be cruel. She would be infirm.<sup>12</sup> We should be pleased.<sup>13</sup> You would be discreet. They would be kind.

*Imperative.*—Be indulgent. Let us be compassionate.<sup>14</sup> Let us be benevolent.<sup>15</sup>

*Subjunctive present.*—That I may be very timid.<sup>16</sup> That thou may'st be too conceited.<sup>17</sup> That she may be discouraged.<sup>18</sup> That we may be weak.<sup>19</sup> That you may be steady.<sup>20</sup> That they may be dumb.

*Imperfect.*—That I might be beaten.<sup>21</sup> That he might be respectable. That he might be cautious for the future.<sup>22</sup> That they might be tedious.<sup>23</sup>

*Compound tenses.*—I have been absent. Thou hadst been suspected.<sup>24</sup> She had been quiet. We shall have been conquered.<sup>25</sup> You would have been deceived.<sup>26</sup> That I may have been happy. That he might have been killed.<sup>27</sup>

*Infinitive.*—To be sorrowful.<sup>28</sup> Being the master, I order<sup>29</sup> here. Having been deceived, he became<sup>30</sup> more reserved.<sup>31</sup>

### QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Define the <i>verb</i>, the <i>subject</i>, the <i>direct complement</i> or <i>object</i>, the <i>indirect complement</i> or <i>object</i>.</li> <li>2. What is the <i>substantive verb</i>? What is meant by an <i>adjective verb</i>?</li> <li>3. What is the <i>stem</i>? the <i>termination</i>?</li> <li>4. When is the verb put in the singular? when in the plural?</li> <li>5. How many persons are there? how many moods?</li> <li>6. Explain the force of every one of the moods?</li> <li>7. What is meant by a <i>personal mood</i>?</li> </ol> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>8. What is an <i>impersonal mood</i>?</li> <li>9. How many kinds of <i>perfect</i> are there? What is expressed by the <i>imperfect</i>, the <i>past definite</i>, etc.?</li> <li>10. How many kinds of <i>future</i> are there?</li> <li>11. Define a <i>simple tense</i>;—a <i>compound tense</i>.</li> <li>12. Give a list of the French conjugations, and explain how they are distinguished from each other.</li> <li>13. When are <i>avoir</i> and <i>être</i> auxiliary verbs?</li> </ol> |
|---|---|

## SECTION II.

## ACTIVE VERBS.

**133.** There are in French five kinds of verbs: the active verb, the neuter verb, the passive verb, the reflective verb, and the impersonal verb.

**134.** The **active** verb expresses the action performed by the subject, and is followed by a direct object: *J'aime votre frère* (=I love your brother).

The active verb is also called *transitive* (from the Latin *transire* =to pass over from one place to another), because the action is *transmitted* from the subject to the object: *Le loup mange l'agneau* (=the wolf eats the lamb), *je récompense cet enfant* (=I reward this child).

**135.** We now give a model of the four conjugations of French verbs, taking care to point out, by different types, the stem from the termination.

I. First Conjugation.—Verb **AIMER** (=to love).

Stem, **aim** ; termination, **er**.

## INDICATIVE.

## PRESENT.

(*I love*)

J'aime  
tu aimes  
il or elle aime  
nous aimons  
vous aimez  
ils or elles aiment.

## PAST INDEFINITE.

(*I have loved*)

J'ai aimé  
tu as aimé  
il or elle a aimé  
nous avons aimé  
vous avez aimé  
ils or elles ont aimé.

## IMPERFECT.

(*I was loving*)

J'aimais  
tu aimais  
il or elle aimait  
nous aimions  
vous aimiez  
ils or elles aimaient.

## PLUPERFECT.

(*I had loved*)

J'avais aimé  
tu avais aimé  
il or elle avait aimé  
nous avions aimé  
vous aviez aimé  
ils or elles avaient aimé.

## PAST DEFINITE.

*(I loved)*

J'aimai  
 tu aimas  
 il or elle aimâ  
 nous aimâmes  
 vous aimâtes  
 ils or elles aimèrent.

## FUTURE.

*(I shall love)*

J'aimerai  
 tu aimeras  
 il or elle aimera  
 nous aimerons  
 vous aimerez  
 ils or elles aimeront.

## PRESENT.

*(I should love)*

J'aimerais  
 tu aimerais  
 il or elle aimerait  
 nous aimerions  
 vous aimeriez  
 ils or elles aimeraient.

## PRESENT.

*(Love thou)*

Aime  
 aimons  
 aimez

## PRESENT.

*(That I may love)*

Que j'aime  
 que tu aimes  
 qu'il or qu'elle aime  
 que nous aimions  
 que vous aimiez  
 qu'ils or qu'elles aiment.

## PAST ANTERIOR.

*(I had loved)*

J'eus aimé  
 tu eus aimé  
 il or elle eut aimé  
 nous eûmes aimé  
 vous eûtes aimé  
 ils or elles eurent aimé.

## FUTURE ANTERIOR.

*(I shall have loved)*

J'aurai aimé  
 tu auras aimé  
 il or elle aura aimé  
 nous aurons aimé  
 vous aurez aimé  
 ils or elles auront aimé.

## ANTERIOR.

*(I should have loved)*

J'aurais or j'eusse aimé  
 tu aurais or tu eusses aimé  
 il or elle aurait or eût aimé  
 nous aurions or eussions aimé  
 vous auriez or eussiez aimé  
 ils or elles auraient or eussent aimé.

## IMPERATIVE.

## PERFECT.

*(Have [thou] loved)*

Aie aimé  
 ayons aimé  
 ayez aimé

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PERFECT.

*(That I may have loved)*

Que j'aie aimé  
 que tu aies aimé  
 qu'il or qu'elle ait aimé  
 que nous ayons aimé  
 que vous ayez aimé  
 qu'ils or qu'elles aient aimé.

## IMPERFECT.

*(That I might love)*

Que j'aimasse  
 que tu aimasses  
 qu'il or qu'elle aimât  
 que nous aimassions  
 que vous aimassiez  
 qu'ils or qu'elles aimassent

## PLUPERFECT.

*(That I might have loved)*

Que j'eusse aimé  
 que tu eusses aimé  
 qu'il or qu'elle eût aimé  
 que nous eussions aimé  
 que vous eussiez aimé  
 qu'ils or qu'elles eussent aimé.

## INFINITIVE.

## PRESENT.

Aimer *(to love)*

## PERFECT.

Avoir aimé *(to have loved)*.

## PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

Aimant *(loving)*

## PERFECT.

Ayant aimé *(having loved)*.

## PAST (VARIABLE).

Aimé, fem. aimée *(loved)*.

## Exercise 27.

*Indicatif présent.*—J'aime mon père. Tu adores Dieu. Il alarme le pays. Elle danse très-bien. Nous apportons de bonnes nouvelles. Vous arrosez le jardin. Ils attaquent l'ennemi.

*Imparfait.*—Je balayais l'école. Il bassinait le lit. Elle brodait sa robe. Nous cachetions la lettre. Vous trouviez votre thème. Ils condamnaient ma conduite.

*Passé défini.*—Je récompensai le domestique. Tu donnas ta parole. Il disputa la question. Elle consola sa mère. Nous contentâmes notre maître. Vous remarquâtes les fautes. Ils décachetèrent la lettre.

*Futur.*—Je déciderai la question. Tu tueras un canard. Il déclarera la guerre. Elle déjeûnera avec vous. Nous aimerons les bons. Vous détromperez ma sœur. Ils différeront la punition.

*Conditionnel présent.*—Je fréquenterais la bonne compagnie. Tu dévoilerais le complot. Il graverait ce tableau. Elle humilierait votre orgueil. Nous imprimerions une grammaire. Vous oublieriez mes torts envers vous. Ils réformeraient leurs lois.

*Impératif.*—Sacrifie ton intérêt au bien public. Débrouillez cette affaire. Terminons ce livre. Apaisez sa colère. Evitons le danger.

*Subjonctif présent.*—Que je donne ce joujou à votre fils. Que tu blâmes sa conduite. Qu'il propose un avis salutaire. Que nous admirions la beauté de ce paysage. Que vous pensiez à mes malheurs. Qu'ils oublient une circonstance essentielle.

*Imparfait.*—Que je surmontasse les obstacles. Que tu consolasses les pauvres. Qu'il renforçât le parti. Que nous fermassions

les volets. Que vous racontassiez cette charmante histoire. Qu'ils surveillassent ce méchant homme.

*Infinitif*.—Trop parler nuit. Il faut avoir traversé le désert.

*Participes*.—En patinant hier, il s'est cassé la jambe.

*Temps composés*.—J'ai chanté deux airs. Tu avais montré trop de talent. Il eut fermé la porte. Nous avons dépensé trois mille francs. Vous auriez passé la journée chez des amis. Que j'aie hésité à vous défendre. Que tu eusses manqué à tous tes devoirs.

<sup>1</sup> troure, <sup>2</sup> fortifier, <sup>3</sup> débronniller, <sup>4</sup> offense (*f.*), <sup>5</sup> punition (*f.*), <sup>6</sup> un avis salutaire, <sup>7</sup> dévoiler, <sup>8</sup> complot (*m.*), <sup>9</sup> vertueux, <sup>10</sup> proposer, <sup>11</sup> planche (*f.*), <sup>12</sup> de <sup>13</sup> musée (*m.*), <sup>14</sup> oie (*f.*), <sup>15</sup> armer, <sup>16</sup> les pauvres, <sup>17</sup> trop, <sup>18</sup> voler, <sup>19</sup> juste, <sup>20</sup> moyen d'être, <sup>21</sup> glace (*f.*), <sup>22</sup> à travers, <sup>23</sup> col (*m.*), <sup>24</sup> surveiller, <sup>25</sup> départ (*m.*).

*Indicative present*.—I speak (the) French. Thou skatest very well. He shows much (of) talent. Our troops <sup>1</sup> strengthen <sup>2</sup> your party (*m.*). We print a grammar. You unravel <sup>3</sup> my affairs (*f.*)

*Imperfect*.—I thought of your misfortunes. Thou wast crossing the wilderness. He related a charming history. We were shutting the shutters (*m.*). You were mending your conduct. He was discussing the question (*f.*).

*Past definite*.—Your sister sang yesterday. I forgot all your offenses.<sup>4</sup> Thou avoidedst a great danger. We spent more (of) money than you. You forgot your punishment.<sup>5</sup>

*Future*.—I shall give you some sound advice.<sup>6</sup> Thou wilt undeceive my sister. He will expose <sup>7</sup> the plot.<sup>8</sup> You will frequent the company of (the) virtuous<sup>9</sup> men. They will propose <sup>10</sup> three questions.

*Conditional present*.—I would sweep the school. Thou shouldst alarm the camp (*m.*). He would give these toys to my children. We would water their flower-beds <sup>11</sup> in the garden. You should love your parents. He should engrave the best pictures in <sup>12</sup> the museum.<sup>13</sup>

*Imperative*.—Worship God. Let us notice the mistakes in this exercise. Shut your books.

*Subjunctive present*.—That I may kill a goose.<sup>14</sup> That thou may'st warm the bed. That she may think of us when she is in France. That we may breakfast this morning with our friends. That you may arm <sup>15</sup> all the troops. That you may visit the poor.<sup>16</sup>

*Imperfect*.—That I might condemn her conduct. That thou mightest satisfy thy kind mother. That she might scold her servants. That we might spend too much.<sup>17</sup> That you might steal <sup>18</sup> my letter. That they might weep.



*Infinitive.*—To sing in tune<sup>19</sup> is an essential quality. To have confessed one's faults is the best means of being<sup>20</sup> pardoned.

*Participles.*—I have seen you breaking the ice<sup>21</sup> in the garden. Passing through<sup>22</sup> the camp.

*Compound tenses.*—I have avoided this wicked man. Thou hadst embroidered my collar.<sup>23</sup> He had watched over<sup>24</sup> that child. We shall have dined. You would have postponed your departure.<sup>25</sup> That they may have observed all the circumstances. That I might have admired the landscape.

## II. Second Conjugation.—Verb FINIR (=to finish).

Stem, *fin*; termination, *ir*.

### INDICATIVE.

#### PRESENT.

(*I finish*)

Je **finis**  
tu **finis**  
il or elle **finit**  
nous **finiss** **ors**  
vous **finiss** **ez**  
ils or elles **finiss** **ent**

#### IMPERFECT.

(*I was finishing*)

Je **finiss** **ais**  
tu **finiss** **ais**  
il or elle **finiss** **ait**  
nous **finiss** **ions**  
vous **finiss** **iez**  
ils or elles **finiss** **aient**.

#### PAST DEFINITE.

(*I finished*)

Je **finis**  
tu **finis**  
il or elle **finit**  
nous **finimes**  
vous **finites**  
ils or elles **finirent**

#### FUTURE.

(*I shall finish*)

Je **finir** **ai**  
tu **finir** **as**  
il or elle **finir** **a**  
nous **finir** **ons**  
vous **finir** **ez**  
ils or elles **finir** **ont**

#### PAST INDEFINITE.

(*I have finished*)

J'**ai** **fini**  
tu **as** **fini**  
il or elle **a** **fini**  
nous **avons** **fini**  
vous **avez** **fini**  
ils or elles **ont** **fini**.

#### PLUPERFECT.

(*I had finished*)

J'**avais** **fini**  
tu **avais** **fini**  
il or elle **avait** **fini**  
nous **avions** **fini**  
vous **aviez** **fini**  
ils or elles **avaient** **fini**.

#### PAST ANTERIOR.

(*I had finished*)

J'**eus** **fini**  
tu **eus** **fini**  
il or elle **eut** **fini**  
nous **eûmes** **fini**  
vous **eûtes** **fini**  
ils or elles **eurent** **fini**.

#### FUTURE ANTERIOR.

(*I shall have finished*)

J'**aurai** **fini**  
tu **auras** **fini**  
il or elle **aura** **fini**  
nous **aurons** **fini**  
vous  **aurez** **fini**  
ils or elles **auront** **fini**.

## CONDITIONAL.

## PRESENT.

*(I should finish)*

Je fin *ir* ais  
 tu fin *ir* ais  
 il or elle fin *ir* ait  
 nous fin *ir* ions  
 vous fin *ir* iez  
 ils or elles fin *ir* aient

## ANTERIOR.

*(I should have finished)*

J'aurais or j'eusse fini  
 tu aurais or tu eusses fini  
 il or elle aurait or eût fini  
 nous aurions or eussions fini  
 vous auriez or eussiez fini  
 ils or elles auraient or eussent fini

## IMPERATIVE.

## PRESENT.

*(Finish [thou])*

Finis . . . .  
 finissons . . . .  
 finissez . . . .  
 . . . . .

## PERFECT.

*(Have [thou] finished)*

Aie fini . . . .  
 ayons fini . . . .  
 ayez fini . . . .  
 . . . . .

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

*(That I may finish)*

Que je finisse  
 que tu finisses  
 qu'il or qu'elle finisse  
 que nous finissions  
 que vous finissiez  
 qu'ils or qu'elles finissent

## PERFECT.

*(That I may have finished)*

Que j'aie fini  
 que tu aies fini  
 qu'il or qu'elle ait fini  
 que nous ayons fini  
 que vous ayez fini  
 qu'ils or qu'elles aient fini.

## IMPERFECT.

*(That I might finish)*

Que je finisse  
 que tu finisses  
 qu'il or qu'elle finît  
 que nous finissions  
 que vous finissiez  
 qu'ils or qu'elles finissent

## PLUPERFECT.

*(That I might have finished)*

Que j'eusse fini  
 que tu eusses fini  
 qu'il or qu'elle eût fini  
 que nous eussions fini  
 que vous eussiez fini  
 qu'ils or qu'elles eussent fini.

## INFINITIVE.

## PRESENT.

Finir *(to finish)*

## PERFECT.

Avoir fini *(to have finished)*.

## PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

Finissant *(finishing)*

## PERFECT.

Ayant fini *(having finished)*.

## PAST (VARIABLE).

Fini, fem. finie *(finished)*.

## Exercise 28.

*Indicatif présent.*—Je punis les coupables. Il adoucit le cœur. Vous applaudissez à ce qu'il dit.

*Imparfait.*—J'avertissais votre frère de son danger. Nous bannissons les méchants de notre société.

*Passé défini.*—Tu réussis dans ton entreprise. Vous désobécites à votre maître. Ils envahirent le pays.

*Futur.*—Je finirai mon ouvrage ce soir. Il garnira cette chambre de tableaux. Nous jouirons des plaisirs de la campagne.

*Conditionnel présent.*—Tu trahirais mes intérêts. Nous enrichirions notre famille. Elles compâtiraient à nos malheurs.

*Impératif.*—Polis ces cuillers. Attendez ce cœur inflexible.

*Subjonctif présent.*—Que j'établisse ma réputation. Qu'il affaiblisse son parti. Que vous renchérissez ces marchandises.

*Imparfait.*—Que tu les affermisses dans leur devoir. Que nous abolissions ces impôts. Qu'ils asservissent les nations étrangères.

*Infinitif.*—Je puis fournir ce travail. Avoir assorti ces couleurs.

*Participes.*—En punissant les coupables, j'ai rempli un véritable devoir.

*Temps composés.*—Tu as approuvé ces enfants. Ce cheval avait henni. Vous auriez accompli cette tâche.

<sup>1</sup> chérir, <sup>2</sup> droits (*m.*), <sup>3</sup> société (*f.*), <sup>4</sup> répartir, <sup>5</sup> fléchir, <sup>6</sup> coup (*m.*), <sup>7</sup> tonnerre (*m.*), <sup>8</sup> retentir, <sup>9</sup> fournir, <sup>10</sup> de charbon, <sup>11</sup> rôti, <sup>12</sup> gigot (*m.*), <sup>13</sup> Espagne (*f.*), <sup>14</sup> aplanir, <sup>15</sup> répartir, <sup>16</sup> paroisse (*f.*), <sup>17</sup> échelle (*f.*), <sup>18</sup> chagrin (*m.*), <sup>19</sup> accomplir, <sup>20</sup> subir, <sup>21</sup> approfondir, <sup>22</sup> tiroir, <sup>23</sup> musique (*f.*).

*Indicative present.*—Thou cherishest<sup>1</sup> thy parents. We abolish the duties<sup>2</sup> on those goods. You strengthen them in their duty.

*Imperfect.*—I finished this book. She enjoyed the pleasures of (the) society.<sup>3</sup> We distributed<sup>4</sup> the provisions (*f.*).

*Past definite.*—He bent<sup>5</sup> under the blow.<sup>6</sup> The thunder<sup>7</sup> resounded.<sup>8</sup> You supplied<sup>9</sup> our house with coal.<sup>10</sup>

*Future.*—Thou wilt betray the party. We shall roast<sup>11</sup> a leg<sup>12</sup> of mutton. They will invade (the) Spain.<sup>13</sup>

*Conditional present.*—I would smooth<sup>14</sup> the difficulties. He would assess<sup>15</sup> the taxes of the parish.<sup>16</sup> They would establish their reputation.

*Imperative.*—Polish all the forks. Strengthen this ladder.<sup>17</sup>

*Subjunctive present.*—That thou mayest enslave the nation. That we may soften his grief.<sup>18</sup> That the fruit may rise in price.

*Imperfect.*—That I might discharge<sup>19</sup> my duty. That she might undergo<sup>20</sup> the punishment. That you might unfurnish the room.

*Infinitive.*—To finish this book before a month is impossible.

*Participles.*—By examining into<sup>21</sup> this question, you will find that the laws have been established.

*Compound tenses.*—I have filled these drawers.<sup>22</sup> We shall have applauded that beautiful music.<sup>23</sup> That he might have been warned.

### III. Third Conjugation.—Verb **RECEVOIR** (=to receive).

*Stem, recev; termination, oir.*

#### INDICATIVE.

##### PRESENT.

(*I receive*)

Je **reçois**  
tu **reçois**  
il or elle **reçoit**  
nous **recevons**  
vous **recevez**  
ils or elles **reçoivent**

##### IMPERFECT.

(*I was receiving*)

Je **recevais**  
tu **recevais**  
il or elle **recevait**  
nous **recevions**  
vous **receviez**  
ils or elles **recevaient**

##### PAST DEFINITE.

(*I received*)

Je **reçus**  
tu **reçus**  
il or elle **reçut**  
nous **reçûmes**  
vous **reçûtes**  
ils or elles **reçurent**

##### FUTURE.

(*I shall receive*)

Je **recevrai**  
tu **recevras**  
il or elle **recevra**  
nous **recevrons**  
vous **recevrez**  
ils or elles **recevront**

##### PERFECT.

(*I have received*)

J'ai **reçu**  
tu **as reçu**  
il or elle **a reçu**  
nous **avons reçu**  
vous **avez reçu**  
ils or elles **ont reçu.**

##### PLUPERFECT.

(*I had received*)

J'avais **reçu**  
tu **avais reçu**  
il or elle **avait reçu**  
nous **avions reçu**  
vous **aviez reçu**  
ils or elles **avaient reçu.**

##### PAST ANTERIOR.

(*I had received*)

J'eus **reçu**  
tu **eus reçu**  
il or elle **eut reçu**  
nous **eûmes reçu**  
vous **eûtes reçu**  
ils or elles **eurent reçu.**

##### FUTURE ANTERIOR.

(*I shall have received*)

J'aurai **reçu**  
tu **auras reçu**  
il or elle **aura reçu**  
nous **aurons reçu**  
vous  **aurez reçu**  
ils or elles **auront reçu.**

## CONDITIONAL.

## PRESENT.

*(I should receive)*

Je recevrais  
tu recevrais  
il or elle recevrait  
nous recevriions  
vous recevriez  
ils or elles recevraient

## ANTERIOR.

*(I should have received)*

J'aurais or j'eusse reçu  
tu aurais or tu eusses reçu  
il or elle aurait or eût reçu  
nous aurions or eussions reçu  
vous auriez or eussiez reçu  
ils or elles auraient or eussent  
reçu.

## IMPERATIVE.

## PRESENT.

*(Receive [thou])*

. . . . .  
Reçois . . . . .  
. . . . .  
recevons . . . . .  
recevez . . . . .  
. . . . .

## PERFECT.

*(Have [thou] received)*

. . . . .  
Aie reçu . . . . .  
. . . . .  
ayons reçu . . . . .  
ayez reçu . . . . .  
. . . . .

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

*(That I may receive)*

Que je reçoive  
que tu reçoives  
qu'il or qu'elle reçoive  
que nous recevions  
que vous receviez  
qu'ils or qu'elles reçoivent

## PERFECT.

*(That I may have received)*

Que j'aie reçu  
que tu aies reçu  
qu'il or qu'elle ait reçu  
que nous ayons reçu  
que vous ayez reçu  
qu'ils or qu'elles aient reçu.

## IMPERFECT.

*(That I might receive)*

Que je reçusse  
que tu reçusses  
qu'il or qu'elle reçût  
que nous reçussions  
que vous reçussiez  
qu'ils or qu'elles reçussent

## PLUPERFECT.

*(That I might have received)*

Que j'eusse reçu  
que tu eusses reçu  
qu'il or qu'elle eût reçu  
que nous eussions reçu  
que vous eussiez reçu  
qu'ils or qu'elles eussent reçu.

## INFINITIVE.

## PRESENT.

Recevoir *(to receive)*

## PERFECT.

Avoir reçu *(to have received)*.

## PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

Recevant *(receiving)*

## PERFECT.

Ayant reçu *(having received)*.

## PAST (VARIABLE).

Reçu, fem. reçue *(received)*.

## Exercise 29.

*Indicatif présent.*—Je conçois comment cela est arrivé. Il aperçoit votre intention. Nous redevons le loyer de notre maison.

*Imparfait.*—Tu recevais tes livres. Vous déceviez ses espérances. Ils percevaient mes revenus.

*Passé défini.*—Je reçus une visite de votre oncle. Elle conçut un grand projet. Nous aperçûmes le voleur.

*Futur.*—Tu recevras demain une lettre de mon ami. Vous concevrez un nouveau projet. Ils apercevront aisément si le thème est bien fait.

*Conditionnel présent.*—Il recevrait les arrérages. Je devrais écrire ce devoir. Vous apercevriez son erreur.

*Impératif.*—Conçois l'importance de cette affaire. Recevez mes remerciements de toutes vos bontés.

*Subjonctif présent.*—Qu'il perçoive l'intérêt de cet argent. Que nous recevions son télégramme. Qu'elles redoivent le montant du billet.

*Imparfait.*—Que je redusse une bagatelle. Que vous déçussiez mes plus chères espérances. Que nous reçussions ce tribut d'estime.

*Infinitif.*—Apercevoir des défauts dans autrui est chose facile.

*Participes.*—En recevant cette demande, le roi a fait un acte de justice. Les impôts sont perçus.

*Temps composés.*—Je l'ai reçu hier. Il a aperçu mon frère. Vous auriez aperçu le clocher de l'église. Que tu eusses conçu l'étendue de ses projets.

<sup>1</sup>gouvernement (*m.*), <sup>2</sup>profondeur (*f.*), <sup>3</sup>trahison (*f.*), <sup>4</sup>cargaison (*f.*), <sup>5</sup>politesse (*f.*) <sup>6</sup>dessain (*m.*), <sup>7</sup>bouquet (*m.*), <sup>8</sup>tout à fait, <sup>9</sup>désirer, <sup>10</sup>montrer, <sup>11</sup>juste, <sup>12</sup>mériter, <sup>13</sup>billet (*m.*), <sup>14</sup>tache (*f.*), <sup>15</sup>drap (*m.*).

*Indicative present.*—I perceive your mistake. You collect the taxes for the government.<sup>1</sup> They receive a tribute (in) money.

*Imperfect.*—He perceived his situation. We owed again a sum of seventy francs. They deceived my fondest hopes.

*Past definite.*—I conceived the depth<sup>2</sup> of his treachery.<sup>3</sup> You received a cargo<sup>4</sup> of goods. We perceived the steeple of the church.

*Future.*—Thou wilt owe many (of) thanks to thy friend. She will receive your message (*m.*). They will conceive a plan (*m.*).

*Conditional present.*—I should receive him with politeness.<sup>5</sup> Thou wouldst receive a telegram. We should perceive the house.

*Imperative.*—Receive my sincere thanks. Let us conceive a better design.<sup>6</sup>

*Subjunctive present.*—That we may receive the nosegay.<sup>7</sup> That he may collect the arrears. That they may owe less.

*Imperfect.*—That I might understand my lesson thoroughly.<sup>8</sup> I wished<sup>9</sup> that you might perceive your danger. That we might conceive the importance of his duties.

*Infinitive.*—To receive this man is to show<sup>10</sup> one's contempt of what is right.<sup>11</sup>

*Participles.*—In deceiving me you have deserved<sup>12</sup> to be punished.

*Compound Tenses.*—I had received your note.<sup>13</sup> She had perceived his intentions. That I might have perceived a stain<sup>14</sup> on that cloth.<sup>15</sup>

#### IV. Fourth Conjugation.—Verb **ROMPRE** (= to break).

*Stem, romp ; termination, re.*

#### INDICATIVE.

##### PRESENT.

(*I break*)

Je romps  
tu romps  
il or elle rompt  
nous rompons  
vous rompez  
ils or elles rompent

##### PERFECT.

(*I have broken*)

J'ai rompu  
tu as rompu  
il or elle a rompu  
nous avons rompu  
vous avez rompu  
ils or elles ont rompu.

##### IMPERFECT.

(*I was breaking*)

Je rompais  
tu rompais  
il or elle rompait  
nous rompions  
vous rompiez  
ils or elles rompaient

##### PLUPERFECT.

(*I had broken*)

j'avais rompu  
tu avais rompu  
il or elle avait rompu  
nous avions rompu  
vous aviez rompu  
ils or elles avaient rompu.

##### PAST DEFINITE.

(*I broke*)

Je rompis  
tu rompis  
il or elle rompit  
nous rompîmes  
vous rompîtes  
ils or elles rompirent

##### PAST ANTERIOR.

(*I had broken*)

J'eus rompu  
tu eus rompu  
il or elle eut rompu  
nous eûmes rompu  
vous eûtes rompu  
ils or elles eurent rompu.

## FUTURE.

*(I shall break)*

Je rompra  
 tu rompras  
 il or elle rompra  
 nous romprons  
 vous romprez  
 ils or elles rompront

## FUTURE ANTERIOR.

*(I shall have broken)*

J'aurai rompu  
 tu auras rompu  
 il or elle aura rompu  
 nous aurons rompu  
 vous aurez rompu  
 ils or elles auront rompu.

## CONDITIONAL.

## PRESENT.

*(I should break)*

Je romprais  
 tu romprais  
 il or elle romprait  
 nous romprions  
 vous rompriez  
 ils or rompraient

## ANTERIOR.

*(I should have broken)*

J'aurais or j'eusse rompu  
 tu aurais or tu eusses rompu  
 il or elle aurait or eût rompu  
 nous aurions or eussions rompu  
 vous auriez or eussiez rompu  
 ils or elles auraient or eussent rompu.

## IMPERATIVE.

## PRESENT.

*(Break [thou])*

Romps  
 rompons  
 rompez  
 . . . . .

## PERFECT.

*(Have [thou] broken)*

Aie rompu  
 ayons rompu  
 ayez rompu  
 . . . . .

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

*(That I may break)*

Que je rompe  
 que tu rompes  
 qu'il or qu'elle rompe  
 que nous romptions  
 que vous rompiez  
 qu'ils or qu'elles rompent

## PERFECT.

*(That I may have broken)*

Que j'aie rompu  
 que tu aies rompu  
 qu'il or qu'elle ait rompu  
 que nous ayons rompu  
 que vous ayez rompu  
 qu'ils or qu'elles aient rompu.

## IMPERFECT.

*(That I might break)*

Que je rompisse  
 que tu rompisses  
 qu'il or qu'elle rompît  
 que nous rompissions  
 que vous rompiez  
 qu'ils or qu'elles rompissent

## PLUPERFECT.

*(That I might have broken)*

Que j'eusse rompu  
 que tu eusses rompu  
 qu'il or qu'elle eût rompu  
 que nous eussions rompu  
 que vous eussiez rompu  
 qu'ils or qu'elles eussent rompu.



## ACTIVE VERBS.

## INFINITIVE.

## PRESENT.

Rompre (to break)

## PERFECT.

Avoir rompu (to have broken)

## PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

Rompant (breaking)

## PERFECT.

Ayant rompu (having broken)

## PAST (VARIABLE).

Rompu, fem. rompue (broken).

## Exercise 30.

*Indicatif présent.*—J'attends de la compagnie aujourd'hui. Il répond correctement. Vous défendez votre patrie.

*Imparfait.*—Tu suspendais ton jugement. Ce chien mordait tout le monde. Vous prétendiez à sa place.

*Passé défini.*—Il condescendit à ses désirs. Nous fondimes le plomb. Ils tendirent leurs bras.

*Futur.*—Je répondrai à votre lettre. Il entendra ce qu'ils disent. Elles vendront leur maison de campagne.

*Conditionnel présent.*—Tu tordrais la corde. Nous confondrions leur orgueil. Ils prendraient leurs chapeaux dans le vestiaire.

*Impératif.*—Entends leur justification. Attendons l'arrivée du bateau à vapeur.

*Subjonctif présent.*—Que tu vendes ces fruits trop cher. Que vous répandiez l'eau sur le tapis. Qu'ils tendent cette corde.

*Imparfait.*—Que je tendisse au même but. Que nous fendissions la presse. Que vous entendissiez le bruit du tonnerre.

*Infinitif.*—Prétendre savoir toutes choses est ridicule.

*Participes.*—En fendant ce morceau de bois, je me suis blessé. La cause entendue, le président prononça la sentence.

*Temps composés.*—J'ai vendu tous mes livres. Vous aviez confondu ces deux règles. Il aura répondu à mon appel.

<sup>1</sup> immédiatement, <sup>2</sup> régulièrement, <sup>3</sup> tendre à, <sup>4</sup> but (m.), <sup>5</sup> défendre, <sup>6</sup> usage (m.), <sup>7</sup> correspondre, <sup>8</sup> séance (f.), <sup>9</sup> linge (m.), <sup>10</sup> terres (f.), <sup>11</sup> chapeau (m.), <sup>12</sup> convention (f.), <sup>13</sup> fendre, <sup>14</sup> toute la journée, <sup>15</sup> répandre, <sup>16</sup> chemin (m.), <sup>17</sup> ne devriez pas, <sup>18</sup> bruit (m.) <sup>19</sup> confondre, <sup>20</sup> raison (f.), <sup>21</sup> larme (f.), <sup>22</sup> grand escalier (m.)

*Indicative present.*—I am coming down immediately.<sup>1</sup> He answers my letters very regularly.<sup>2</sup> We are aiming at<sup>3</sup> a difficult end.<sup>4</sup>

*Imperfect.*—I was forbidding<sup>5</sup> him the use<sup>6</sup> of it. She was writing. You were confounding this rule with another.

*Past definite.*—He corresponded<sup>7</sup> with your friends. We suspended the meeting.<sup>8</sup> She wrung the linen<sup>9</sup> in the garden.

*Future.*—I shall sell all my estates.<sup>10</sup> She will take her bonnet.<sup>11</sup> You will break the agreement.<sup>12</sup>

*Conditional present.*—Thou wouldst answer my letters. We should recast the poem. They would hear us.

*Imperative.*—Split<sup>13</sup> the wood. Let us hang up our coats in the cloak room.

*Subjunctive present.*—That I may wait all day long.<sup>14</sup> That we should sell all the jewels. That you should stretch this rope.

*Imperfect.*—That she might shear the sheep. That I might scatter<sup>15</sup> flowers on his path.<sup>16</sup> That they might defend their interests.

*Infinitive.*—You should not<sup>17</sup> sell your goods so dear.

*Participles.*—Hearing this rumour<sup>18</sup> I went out. His insolence (*f.*) was brought to confusion.<sup>19</sup>

*Compound tenses.*—I had heard his reasons.<sup>20</sup> We should have melted into tears.<sup>21</sup> Thou wouldst have waited. That I might have come down by the principal staircase.<sup>22</sup>

### SECTION III.

**CONJUGATION OF VERBS. 1. Interrogatively; 2. Negatively; 3. Interrogatively with a negative.**

**136.** If we wish to conjugate these verbs *interrogatively* we have only to displace the pronoun, putting it (in the simple tenses) after the verb: *aimez-vous*? (=do you love?), or in the compound tenses, between the auxiliary and the past participle: *ai-je aimé* (=have I loved?), *avais-je aimé* (=had I loved?), *aurai-je aimé* (=shall I have loved?) etc.

**137.** If the first person singular ends in an *e* mute (*j'aime*=I love; *que je puisse*=that I may be able), that *e* mute is replaced by a close *é*: *aimé-je* (=do I love?) *puissé-je* (=may I?).

**138.** When the third person singular ends with a vowel, as is the case for the first conjugation (*il aime*=he loves; *il va*=he goes) a *t*, called euphonic, is placed between the verb and the pronoun (*aime-t-il*, *va-t-il*? =does he love, does he go?)

The old French always had a *t* at the end of the third person, and said *il aimet*, *il vat*, without sounding the *t*. This letter, being mute, disappeared from the direct conjugation; but it persisted in the interrogative one, on account of the following vowel. This *t*, which is called *euphonic t*, and which is joined to the verb by a hyphen, was therefore really, in former times, part of the verb.

**139. Est-ce que** (=is it that) is also used in asking questions, especially with verbs of one syllable : **est-ce que je vends ?** (=do I sell ?) **est-ce que vous aimez cette ville ?** (=do you like this town ?). Then the verb is put in the affirmative.

In sentences like : You see it, do you not ? You will do it, will you not ? You have not done it, have you ? the interrogation is in every case expressed in French by **n'est-ce pas ?** *Vous le voyez, n'est-ce pas ?* *Vous le ferez, n'est-ce pas ?* *Vous ne l'avez pas fait, n'est-ce pas ?*

**140.** When in a question the verb has a noun for the subject, as : Is your friend here ? the noun is placed first, as in the affirmation, and the pronoun (of the same gender, number, and person as the noun) is placed after the verb to show that the sentence is interrogative : **Votre ami est-il ici ?** (=is your friend here ?) **Vos amis sont-ils ici ?** (=are your friends here ?).

**141.** In order to conjugate the verbs in the *negative* form (with the negative *ne...pas, ne...point*), it suffices that we should place *ne* between the pronoun and the verb, and *pas* after the verb, for the simple tenses : *je ne veux pas* (=I do not wish) ; *tu ne veux pas* (=thou dost not wish) etc. In the compound tenses, the word *pas* is placed between the auxiliary and the participle : *je n'ai pas voulu* (=I have not wished) ; *je n'aurais pas voulu* (=I would not have wished) etc. With the infinitive, *pas* generally comes before the verb : *pour ne pas faire cela* (=not to do that).

**142.** To conjugate a verb *interrogatively with a negative*, *ne* is placed before the verb and *pas* after the pronoun following the verb : **ne vois-je pas ?** (=do I not see ?). In the compound tenses *ne* comes before the auxiliary, and *pas* after the pronoun following the auxiliary : **n'ai je pas vu ?** (=have I not seen ?)

**143.** A table of these conjugations will be found at page 156.

### Exercise 31.

*Indicatif présent.*—Préféré-je cet ouvrage ? Il ne finit pas ses devoirs. Ne recevons-nous pas son avis avec reconnaissance ?

*Imparfait.*—Demeurais-tu à Londres ? Il ne renchérissait pas ses marchandises. N'entendaient-ils pas le bruit de la voiture ? Vous aimiez cette ville, n'est-ce pas ?

*Passé défini.*—Conçut-elle toute l'importance de cette démarche ? N'aima-t-il pas son séjour à la campagne ? Vous ternîtes votre gloire par votre cruauté.

*Futur.*—Est-ce que nous ne profiterons pas d'une occasion aussi favorable ? Vous ne réussirez jamais à le persuader. Vos amis ne vendront-ils pas leur propriété ?

*Conditionnel présent.*—Je n'agiserais pas contre ma conscience. Choisiriez-vous ce cheval ? Ne recevriez-vous pas du monde demain ?

*Impératif.*—Ne reçois jamais de ses lettres.

*Subjonctif présent.*—Que je ne rende compte à personne.

*Imparfait.*—Que ce chemin n'aboutit pas au château.

*Infinitif.*—Ne pas me répondre est une preuve d'impertinence.

*Participes.*—N'ayant pas trahi sa patrie, il est plein de confiance.

*Temps composés.*—Avez-vous chanté ce matin ? Il n'avait pas démoli cette chaumière. N'eurent-ils pas aperçu le vaisseau dans le port ? Je n'aurais jamais condescendu à une telle demande. N'auront-ils ni livres ni papiers ? Qu'elle n'ait pas d'argent. Que nous ne fussions pas dénués de ressources.

<sup>1</sup> cave (*f.*), <sup>2</sup> revendre, <sup>3</sup> voiture (*f.*), <sup>4</sup> autrefois, <sup>5</sup> projet (*m.*), <sup>6</sup> négliger, <sup>7</sup> réussir, <sup>8</sup> réfléchir à, <sup>9</sup> proposition (*f.*), <sup>10</sup> rendre, <sup>11</sup> arc (*m.*), <sup>12</sup> ternir, <sup>13</sup> céder, <sup>14</sup> louer, <sup>15</sup> cloche (*f.*), <sup>16</sup> honorablement, <sup>17</sup> tromper, <sup>18</sup> critiquer, <sup>19</sup> sévèrement.

*Indicative present.*—Do you answer (to) his letter ? He does not finish his picture. Do they not dine ?

*Imperfect.*—Was I going down into the cellar<sup>1</sup> ? We did not resell<sup>2</sup> this carriage.<sup>3</sup> Did they not correspond formerly<sup>4</sup> ?

*Perfect definite.*—I had no money. She did not burst into tears. Did he not perceive my design<sup>5</sup> ?

*Future.*—I shall never neglect<sup>6</sup> my duties. They will succeed,<sup>7</sup> will they not ? Will you recast your work ?

*Conditional.*—I would not disobey. Would your friend reflect on<sup>8</sup> that proposal<sup>9</sup> ? Would they negotiate that treaty ?

*Imperative.*—Do not return<sup>10</sup> (to) him his letter.

*Subjunctive present.*—That I may not owe this sum.

*Imperfect.*—That they might not stretch that bow.<sup>11</sup>

*Infinitive.*—Not to sully<sup>12</sup> your reputation (*f.*), confess your fault.

*Participles.*—Not having yielded,<sup>13</sup> he was praised<sup>14</sup> by the journal.

*Compound tenses.*—I have not heard the bell.<sup>15</sup> Wast thou acting honourably ?<sup>16</sup> Did she not sell her estates ? I shall not have received this dangerous man. Would she not have rewarded the merit of that pupil ? That they may not have deceived<sup>17</sup> you. That we might not have criticised<sup>18</sup> him too severely.<sup>19</sup>

## SECTION IV.

## REMARKS ON THE FORMATION OF THE TENSES.

**143.** Notice that in the first person of the present indicative the verbs in **-er** do not take an *s* (*je chante*), while the other conjugations do (*je finis, je romps*).

This exception is a vestige of the Old French language: the first person formerly never took an *s*: *j'aime, je voi, je rend* (= I love, I see, I restore); about the beginning of the sixteenth century, an *s* was added, by analogy with the *s* of the second person *tu chantes, tu lis, tu vois* (= thou singest, thou readest, thou seest); but the first conjugation escaped this assimilation, and even in the case of the other conjugations, the forms without *s* still remained for a long time in the language of poetry. Thus we find in the seventeenth century: *je voi, je li, je croi*. (LA FONTAINE, MOLIÈRE, CORNEILLE.)

**144.** The imperfect is the same in all conjugations (*-ais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient*), always remembering that the conjugation in **-ir** interpolates the particle **-iss** between the root and the termination: *je fin-iss-ais, tu fin-iss-ais*.

Before the time of Voltaire, the imperfect was always written with the syllable *ois* (*j'aimois, je chantois*, etc.) instead of *ais*. It was he who first wrote: *j'aimais, je chantois*, etc. This orthographical modification was only adopted by the Academy in 1835. A century before Voltaire, in 1675, an obscure lawyer, Nicolas Bérain, had already asked for this reform.

**145.** The future is formed throughout all the conjugations in the same manner, that is to say, by adding to the infinitive of the verb the indicative present of the verb *avoir* (*ai, as, a*, etc.).

*Je chanterai* is therefore exactly equivalent to *j'ai à chanter*; hence: *aimerai, as, a*. In the plural, however, the syllable *ai* is struck out: *aimer- (av) ons, aimer- (av) ez, aimer-ont*. The third conjugation is an exception to this rule, as the termination *oir* is shortened into *r*: *je recev-r-ai*.

The conditional present is formed in the same way from the imperfect indicative, the syllable *av* being suppressed: *j'aimer- (av) ais*.

**146.** It will be observed that all the persons of the imperative are borrowed from the corresponding persons of the indicative present. The only exception

is in the first conjugation, which has *chante* without an *s*, whilst *finis*, *reçois*, *romps* retain the *s* of the indicative (*tu finis*, *tu reçois*, *tu romps*). But the *s* of *chante* is expressed, and reappears when the imperative is placed before a word beginning with a vowel, such as *y* or *en*: *chantes-en une partie* (=sing part of it), *vas-y voir* (=go there and see), etc.

**147.** The tenses of the verbs are divided into **primitive** and **derivative**. From the five primitive tenses all the others are formed in the following manner:—

The PRESENT INFINITIVE forms	}	1. The future, see § 145. 2. The conditional, see § 145.
The PRESENT PARTICIPLE    "	}	1. The plural of the present indicative: <i>aimant</i> , <i>aimons</i> , <i>aimez</i> , <i>aiment</i> . 2. The imperfect indicative: <i>finissant</i> , <i>finissais</i> , etc. 3. The present subjunctive <i>finissant</i> , <i>finisse</i> , <i>finisses</i> , except the 3rd conjugation, in which it reappears: <i>recevant</i> , <i>reçoive</i> .
The PAST PARTICIPLE        "	}	All the compound tenses with the auxiliary <i>avoir</i> or <i>être</i> .
The PRESENT INDICATIVE   "	}	the imperative, see § 146.
The PAST DEFINITE         "	}	The imperfect subjunctive, by adding <i>se</i> to the second person singular: <i>tu aimais</i> , <i>aimasse</i> .

**148. Idiomatic tenses.**—Besides the tenses given in the models for the four conjugations, the French use others which are made up with the verbs *aller* (=to go), *venir* (=to come), and *devoir* (=to owe, to be obliged, must). Here is a list of these tenses:—

1. PAST JUST ELAPSED.  
(*I have just spoken*)

2. PAST DEFINITE ANTERIOR.  
(*I had just spoken*)

*Je viens de parler*  
*tu viens de parler*  
*il vient de parler*  
*nous venons de parler*  
*vous venez de parler*  
*ils viennent de parler.*

*Je venais de parler*  
*tu venais de parler*  
*il venait de parler*  
*nous venions de parler*  
*vous veniez de parler*  
*ils venaient de parler.*

## 3. FUTURE PROXIMATE.

*(I am going to speak)*

Je vais parler  
 tu vas parler  
 il va parler  
 nous allons parler  
 vous allez parler  
 ils vont parler.

## 4. FUTURE DEFINITE.

*(I am to, or I must, or I intend to speak)*

Je dois parler  
 tu dois parler  
 il doit parler  
 nous devons parler  
 vous devez parler  
 ils doivent parler.

## 5. FUTURE IMPERFECT ANTERIOR.

*(I was going to speak)*

J'allais parler  
 tu allais parler  
 il allait parler  
 nous allions parler  
 vous alliez parler  
 ils allaient parler.

## 6. CONDITIONAL IMPERFECT.

*(I was to, or I intended to speak)*

Je devais parler  
 tu devais parler  
 il devait parler  
 nous devions parler  
 vous deviez parler  
 ils devaient parler.

## 7. CONDITIONAL FUTURE.\*

*(I ought to, or I should speak)*

Je devrais parler  
 tu devrais parler  
 il devrait parler  
 nous devrions parler  
 vous devriez parler  
 ils devraient parler.

## 8. CONDITIONAL ANTERIOR.\*

*(I ought to, or I should have spoken)*

J'aurais dû parler  
 tu aurais dû parler  
 il aurait dû parler  
 nous aurions dû parler  
 vous auriez dû parler  
 ils auraient dû parler.

There is also a past tense with *devoir*, expressing either obligation or supposition—

J'ai dû parler } = I have had to speak, or must (surely) have  
 tu as dû parler } = thou hadst to speak, &c. [spoken.

The verb *faire* (=to do, to make), is frequently used as an auxiliary, and is also followed (like the above) by the present infinitive: *il a fait faire un habit* (=he has ordered, caused to be made, a coat, or he has had a coat made).

\* In translating into French any sentence in which *shall, will, should, would, may, might* are used, the pupil should be very careful to distinguish whether those words simply express a future or a subjunctive, or whether they express a duty, a strong intention, or a capacity; in the latter case they must be translated literally into French, *shall, should* by *devoir*; *will, would* by *vouloir* and *may, might*, by *pouvoir*, according to the examples given above.

## QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. How many kinds of verbs are there?</li> <li>2. What is an <i>active</i> verb?—By what other name is it known?</li> <li>3. Write the subjunctive present of <i>aimer, chanter, devoir, vendre</i>; the past definite of <i>agir, recevoir, vendre</i>; the conditional past of <i>parler</i> and <i>béuir</i>.</li> <li>4. How is a verb conjugated interrogatively?</li> <li>5. Remark on the following moods and tenses: the <i>indicative present</i>, the <i>imperfect indicative</i>, the</li> </ol> | <p><i>future, the conditional, the imperative.</i></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>6. Conjugate negatively the future simple of <i>parler, douter, recevoir</i>; the conditional past of <i>gémir, devoir, chanter</i>.</li> <li>7. Conjugate: 1. interrogatively; 2. interrogatively with a negative, the indicative present of <i>agir</i>; the past definite of <i>devoir</i>.</li> <li>8. What are the primitive tenses, and what tenses do they form?</li> <li>9. Give a list of the idiomatic tenses.</li> </ol> |
|--|---|

## SECTION V.

## PASSIVE VERBS.

**149.** The passive verb expresses an action suffered by the subject: *l'agneau a été mangé par le loup* (=the lamb has been eaten by the wolf).

Every active verb can become passive, that is to say, it can be employed in the passive form. *Manger* (=to eat) is active in *le chat mange la souris* (=the cat eats the mouse); it becomes passive in *la souris est mangée par le chat* (=the mouse is eaten by the cat).

NOTE.—The French seldom use the passive verb. They employ instead the active verb with an indefinite pronoun for subject: *on vend le sucre quarante centimes la livre* (=sugar is sold at forty centimes a pound), or they use the reflective verb. (See § 160.)

**150.** There is only one form of conjugation for the passive verbs; it consists of the auxiliary *être*, followed (in all its moods, tenses, and persons) by the *past participle* of the verb we wish to conjugate: *je suis mordu* (=I am bitten); *j'ai été mordu* (=I have been bitten); *je serai mordu* (=I shall be bitten), etc.

**151.** Care must be taken to make the past participle *always* agree with the subject of the verb: *il est mordu* (=he is bitten); *elle est mordue* (=she is bitten); *ils sont mordus* (=they are bitten), etc.



Conjugation of the Passive Verb **ÊTRE AIMÉ**  
(= to be loved).

## INDICATIVE.

## PRESENT.

(I am loved)

Je suis	} aimé or aimée
tu es	
il or elle est	
nous sommes	} aimés or aimées
vous * êtes	
ils or elles sont	

## PAST INDEFINITE.

(I have been loved)

J'ai été	} aimé or aimée
tu as été	
il or elle a été	
nous avons été	} aimés or aimées
vous avez été	
ils or elles ont été	

## IMPERFECT.

(I was loved)

J'étais	} aimé or aimée
tu étais	
il or elle était	
nous étions	} aimés or aimées
vous étiez	
ils or elles étaient	

## PLUPERFECT.

(I had been loved)

J'avais été	} aimé or aimée
tu avais été	
il or elle avait été	
nous avions été	} aimés or aimées
vous aviez été	
ils or elles avaient été	

## PAST DEFINITE.

(I was loved)

Je fus	} aimé or aimée
tu fus	
il or elle fut	
nous fûmes	} aimés or aimées
vous fûtes	
ils or elles furent	

## PAST ANTERIOR.

(I had been loved)

J'eus été	} aimé or aimée
Tu eus été	
il or elle eut été	
nous eûmes été	} aimés or aimées
vous eûtes été	
ils or elles eurent été	

## FUTURE.

(I shall be loved)

Je serai	} aimé or aimée
tu seras	
il or elle sera	
nous serons	} aimés or aimées
vous serez	
ils or elles seront	

## FUTURE ANTERIOR.

(I shall have been loved)

J'aurai été	} aimé or aimée
tu auras été	
il or elle aura été	
nous aurons été	} aimés or aimées
vous aurez été	
ils or elles auront été	

\* When *vous* (=you) is used, out of politeness, instead of *tu* (=thou), the past participle remains, of course, in the singular either masculine or

*feminine.*

## CONDITIONAL.

## PRESENT.

*(I should be loved)*

Je serais	}	aimé or aimée
tu serais		
il or elle serait	}	aimés or aimées.
nous serions		
vous seriez		
ils or elles seraient		

## ANTERIOR.

*(I would have been loved)*

J'aurais été	}	aimé or aimée
tu aurais été		
il or elle aurait été	}	aimés or aimées
nous aurions été		
vous auriez été		
ils or elles auraient été		

## IMPERATIVE.

## PRESENT.

*(Be loved)*

Sois	aimé or aimée
Soyons	} aimés or aimées.
Soyez	
. . . . .	

## PERFECT.

*(Have [thou] been loved)*

Aie	été	aimé or aimée
Ayons	été	} aimés or aimées.
Ayez	été	
. . . . .		

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

*(That I may be loved)*

Que je sois	}	aimé or aimée
que tu sois		
qu'il or qu'elle soit	}	aimés or aimées
que nous soyons		
que vous soyez		
qu'ils or qu'elles soient		

## PERFECT.

*(That I might have been loved)*

Que j'aie été	}	aimé or aimée
que tu aies été		
qu'il or qu'elle ait été	}	aimés or aimées.
que nous ayons été		
que vous ayez été		
qu'ils or qu'elles aient été		

## IMPERFECT.

*(That I might be loved)*

Que je fusse	}	aimé or aimée
que tu fusses		
qu'il or qu'elle fût	}	aimé or aimées
que nous fussions		
que vous fussiez		
qu'ils or qu'elles fussent		

## PLUPERFECT.

*(That I might have been loved)*

Que j'eusse été	}	aimé or aimée
que tu eusses été		
qu'il or qu'elle eût été	}	aimés or aimées.
que nous eussions été		
que vous eussiez été		
qu'ils or qu'elles eussent été		

## INFINITIVE.

## PRESENT.

*(To be loved)*

Être aimé or aimée

## PERFECT.

*(To have been loved)*

Avoir été aimé or aimée.

## PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

(Being loved)

Étant aimé or aimée

## PERFECT.

(Having been loved)

Ayant été aimé or aimée.

## PAST (VARIABLE).

Aimé, fem. aimée (loved).

## Exercise 32.

Write affirmatively in the passive voice : the indicative present of *aimer, recevoir, vendre, finir* ; the subjunctive present of *travailler, devoir, répandre, déjeûner*.

Write negatively in the same voice : the imperfect subjunctive of *concevoir, répandre, éblouir, montrer* ; the conditional present of *entendre, critiquer, obéir, concevoir*.

Write interrogatively in the same voice : the perfect definite of *consoler, nourrir, apercevoir, confondre* ; the future anterior of *rendre, décevoir, munir, tourmenter*.

Write interrogatively with a negative in the same voice : the pluperfect indicative of *tromper, désobéir, recevoir, rendre* ; the conditional past of *décevoir, obéir, blâmer, fondre*.

## QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. What is a <i>passive</i> verb ?</li> <li>2. Describe the formation of a passive verb.</li> <li>3. How many conjugations of passive verbs are there ?</li> <li>4. Remark on the participle of passive verbs.</li> </ol> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>5. Write the subjunctive present, the conditional past, and the future anterior of the passive verbs : <i>être trompé, être béni, être reçu, être battu</i>.</li> <li>6. What do the French often use instead of the passive verb ?</li> </ol> |
|--|---|

## SECTION VI.

## NEUTER VERBS.

**152.** A **neuter** verb is one which expresses the state or the action of the subject, but which has no direct complement or object : *Je tombe* (= I fall), *nous languissons* (= we languish).

The *neuter* verb is also called *intransitive*, because it does not transmit the action to a complement.

**153.** The *simple* tenses of the neuter verbs are the same as those of the active ones. The *compound* tenses of the neuter verbs are formed, sometimes with the help of the auxiliary *être* : *Je suis arrivé* (= I have

arrived), sometimes with the help of the auxiliary **avoir**: *j'ai dormi* (=I have slept).

There are only twelve neuter verbs which are conjugated with the auxiliary **être**. They are the following: *aller* (=to go); *arriver* (=to arrive); *décéder* (=to die); *échoir* (=to fall due); *éclore* (=to be hatched); *entrer* (=to enter); *mourir* (=to die); *naître* (=to be born); *partir* (=to go away); *sortir* (=to go out); *tomber* (=to fall, and its compound *retomber*=to fall again); *venir* (=to come, and its compounds: *devenir* [=to become]; *inter-venir* [=to interfere]; *parvenir* [=to succeed]; *revenir* [=to come back]; *survenir* [=to arrive unexpectedly]).

**154.** When the neuter verbs are conjugated with the auxiliary **être**, the participle always agrees with the subject or nominative: *il est arrivé* (=he has arrived), *elle est arrivée* (=she has arrived), *ils sont arrivés* (=they have arrived), etc.

**Conjugation of the verb TOMBER (=to fall).**

*Stem, tomb ; termination, er.*

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT

(*I fall*)

**Je tombe**  
**tu tombes**  
**il or elle tombe**  
**nous tombons**  
**vous tombez**  
**ils or elles tombent**

PERFECT.

(*I have fallen*)

**Je suis**  
**tu es** } **tombé or tombée**  
**il or elle est** }  
**nous sommes** } **tombés or**  
**vous êtes** } **tombées**  
**ils or elles sont** }

IMPERFECT.

(*I was falling*)

**Je tombais**  
**tu tombais**  
**il or elle tombait**  
**nous tombions**  
**vous tombiez**  
**ils or elles tombaient**

PLUPERFECT.

(*I had fallen*)

**J'étais**  
**tu étais** } **tombé or**  
**il or elle était** } **tombée**  
**nous étions** } **tombés or**  
**vous étiez** } **tombées**  
**ils or elles étaient** }

PAST DEFINITE.

(*I fell*)

**Je tombai**  
**tu tombas**  
**il or elle tomba**  
**nous tombâmes**  
**vous tombâtes**  
**ils or elles tombèrent**

PAST ANTERIOR.

(*I had fallen*)

**Je fus**  
**tu fus** } **tombé or tombée**  
**il or elle fut** }  
**nous fûmes** } **tombés or**  
**vous fûtes** } **tombées**  
**ils or elles furent** }

FUTURE.

(*I shall fall*)

Je tomberai  
tu tomberas  
il or elle tombera  
nous tomberons  
vous tomberez  
ils or elles tomberont.

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

(*I shall have fallen*)

Je serai  
tu seras } tombé or tombée  
il or elle sera }  
nous serons } tombés or  
vous serez } tombés.  
ils or elles seront }

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

(*I should fall*)

Je tomberais  
tu tomberais  
il or elle tomberait  
nous tomberions  
vous tomberiez  
ils or elles tomberaient.

ANTERIOR.

(*I should have fallen*)

Je serais  
tu serais } tombé or  
il or elle serait } tombée  
nous serions } tombés or  
vous seriez } tombés.  
ils or elles seraient }

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.

*Fall* [thou]

• • • • •  
Tombe  
• • • • •  
tombons  
tombez  
• • • • •

PERFECT.

(*Have* [thou] fallen)

• • • • •  
Sois tombé or tombée  
• • • • •  
soyons } tombés or tombés.  
soyez }  
• • • • •

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

(*That I may fall*)

Que je tombe  
que tu tombes  
qu'il or qu'elle tombe  
que nous tombions  
que vous tombiez  
qu'ils or qu'elles tombent.

PERFECT.

(*That I may have fallen*)

Que je sois  
que tu sois } tombé or  
qu'il or qu'elle soit } tombée  
que nous soyons } ombés  
que vous soyez } or  
qu'ils or qu'elles soient } tombés

IMPERFECT.

(*That I might fall*)

Que je tombasse  
que tu tombasses  
qu'il or qu'elle tombât  
que nous tombassions  
que vous tombassiez  
qu'ils or qu'elles tombassent.

PLUPERFECT.

(*That I might have fallen*)

Que je fusse  
que tu fusses } tombé or  
qu'il or qu'elle fût } tombée  
que nous fussions } tombés  
que vous fussiez } or  
qu'ils or qu'elles fussent } tombés

## INFINITIVE.

## PRESENT.

(*To fall*)  
Tomber

## PERFECT.

(*To have fallen*)  
Être tombé or tombée.

## PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

(*Falling*)  
Tombant

## PERFECT.

(*Having fallen*)  
Êtant tombé or tombée.

## PAST (VARIABLE).

Tombé, fem. tombée (*fallen*).

## QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. What is a <i>neuter</i> verb?</li> <li>2. Under what other name is it known?</li> <li>3. How are the compound tenses of neuter verbs formed?</li> <li>4. Name the neuter verbs conjugated with the auxiliary <i>être</i>.</li> </ol> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>5. Remark on the past participle of neuter verbs conjugated with the auxiliary <i>être</i>.</li> <li>6. Write out the subjunctive present of <i>tomber</i>, negatively; and the conditional past of the same verb interrogatively.</li> </ol> |
|--|--|

## SECTION VII.

## REFLEXIVE VERBS.

**155.** Whenever the subject at the same time performs and bears the action, as *je me mords*, *je me flatte* (=I bite myself, I flatter myself), the verb is called **reflexive**, because the action which the subject performs is likewise *reflected* by it.

This verb has likewise been called *pronominal*, on account of its being conjugated with two pronouns.

**156.** Reflexive verbs are divided into two classes:

1. The verbs reflexive by nature, *s'écrouler* (=to fall to pieces); *se cabrer* (=to rear); *s'évanouir* (=to faint).
2. The active verbs, as *laver* (=to wash), or neuter verbs, as *nuire* (=to injure), employed in a reflexive form: *je me suis lavé* (=I have washed myself); *je me suis nuï* (=I have injured myself).

**157.** Reflexive verbs are conjugated in all tenses with two pronouns, viz., the *subject je*, and the *complement me*; these pronouns must always belong to the same person, because the action is both performed and suffered by the subject: *je me lave*, *tu te nuis*, etc.

**158.** The compound tenses of reflexive verbs are formed with the auxiliary *être*.

**159.** When the verb is reflexive by nature, the participle agrees: *ils se sont repentis* (=they have repented);\* when, on the other hand, the verb is only used reflexively, the participle agrees, if the verb is active, and preceded by its direct object: *ils se sont aimés* (=they have loved one another); but it remains invariable, if the verb is neuter: *elles se sont plu* (=they have pleased one another); or if the verb, being active, is followed by its direct object: *ils se sont dit des injures* (=they have insulted each other).

**160.** The reflexive verb is often used in French, when the passive is used in English: *Le sucre se vend quarante centimes la livre* (=sugar is sold at forty centimes a pound); *ce légume se mange cru* (=this vegetable is eaten raw, uncooked).

### Conjugation of the Reflexive Verb **SE REPOSER**

(= to rest).

Stem, **repos**; termination, **er**.

#### INDICATIVE.

##### PRESENT.

(*I rest*)

**Je me repose**  
**tu te reposes**  
**il or elle se repose**  
**nous nous reposons**  
**vous vous reposez**  
**ils or elles se reposent**

##### PAST INDEFINITE.

(*I have rested*)

**Je me suis** } **reposé or**  
**tu t'es** } **reposée**  
**il or elle s'est** }  
**nous nous sommes** } **reposés or**  
**vous vous êtes** } **reposées**  
**ils or elles se sont** }

##### IMPERFECT.

(*I was resting*)

**Je me reposais**  
**tu te reposais**  
**il or elle se reposait**  
**nous nous reposions**  
**vous vous reposiez**  
**ils or elles se reposaient**

##### PLUPERFECT.

(*I had rested*)

**Je m'étais** } **reposé or**  
**tu t'étais** } **reposée**  
**il or elle s'était** }  
**nous nous étions** } **reposés or**  
**vous vous étiez** } **reposées**  
**ils or elles s'étaient** }

\* The reflexive verb *s'arroger* (=to assume [for oneself]) is an exception to this rule, as the personal pronoun is always the indirect object.

## PAST DEFINITE.

*(I rested)*

Je me reposai  
 tu te reposas  
 il or elle se reposa  
 nous nous reposâmes  
 vous vous reposâtes  
 ils or elles se reposèrent

## PAST ANTERIOR.

*(I had rested)*

Je me fus  
 tu te fus  
 il or elle se fut  
 nous nous fûmes  
 vous vous fûtes  
 ils or elles se furent

}	reposé or
	reposée
}	reposées or
	reposées

## FUTURE.

*(I shall rest)*

Je me reposerai  
 tu te reposeras  
 il or elle se reposera  
 nous nous reposerons  
 vous vous reposerez  
 ils or elles se reposeront

## FUTURE ANTERIOR.

*(I shall have rested)*

Je me serai  
 tu te seras  
 il or elle sera  
 nous nous serons  
 vous vous serez  
 ils or elles se seront

}	reposé or
	reposée
}	reposés or
	reposées

## CONDITIONAL.

## PRESENT.

*(I should rest)*

Je me reposerais  
 tu te reposerais  
 il or elle se reposerait  
 nous nous reposerions  
 vous vous reposeriez  
 ils or elles se reposeraient

## ANTERIOR.

*(I should have rested)*

Je me serais  
 tu te serais  
 il or elle se serait  
 nous nous serions  
 vous vous seriez  
 ils or elles se seraient

}	reposé or
	reposée
}	reposés or
	reposées

## IMPERATIVE.

## PRESENT.

*(Rest)*

Repose-toi . . . . .  
 . . . . .  
 reposons-nous . . . . .  
 reposez-vous . . . . .  
 . . . . .

## PERFECT.

*(Never used.)*

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

*(That I may rest)*

Que je me repose  
 que tu te reposes  
 qu'il or qu'elle se repose  
 que nous nous repositions  
 que vous vous reposiez  
 qu'ils or qu'elles se reposent

## PERFECT.

*(That I may have rested)*

Que je me sois  
 que tu te sois  
 qu'il or qu'elle se soit  
 que nous nous soyons  
 que vous vous soyez  
 qu'ils or qu'elles se soient

}	reposé
	or
}	reposée
	or
}	reposés
	or
}	reposées
	reposées



## IMPERFECT.

*(That I might rest)*

Que je me reposasse  
 que tu te reposasses  
 qu'il or qu'elle se reposât  
 que nous nous reposassions  
 que vous vous reposassiez  
 qu'ils or qu'elles se reposassent

## PLUPERFECT.

*(That I might have rested)*

Que je me fusse	}	reposé
que tu te fusses		or
qu'il or qu'elle se fût	}	reposée
que nous nous fussions		or
que vous vous fussiez	}	reposés
qu'ils or qu'elles se fussent		or

## INFINITIVE.

## PRESENT.

*(To rest)*

Se reposer

## PERFECT.

*(To have rested)*

S'être reposé or reposée.

## PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

*(Resting).*

Se reposant


## PERFECT.

*(Having rested)*

S'étant reposé or reposée

## PAST (VARIABLE).

Reposé, fem. reposée (*rested*).

 The interrogative and negative conjugation of reflexive verbs will be found at page 164.

## QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

- |   |   |  |
|---|---|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Define a reflexive verb.</li> <li>2. Under what other name is it known?</li> <li>3. Describe the various classes of reflexive verbs.</li> <li>4. What auxiliary is used in the compound tenses of reflexive verbs?</li> </ol> | } | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>5. For what purpose do the French often use the reflexive verb?</li> <li>6. Write the future anterior, the past indefinite, and the imperfect subjunctive of the verb <i>se reposer</i>.</li> </ol> |
|---|---|--|

## Exercise 33.

*Indicatif présent.*—Je m'habille. Il ne se repose pas. Vous vous tourmentez en vain. Ils se baignent tous les étés.

*Imparfait.*—Je me proposais de vous écrire. Votre frère ne s'imaginait-il pas que vous aviez tort? Nous ne nous abouinions pas au cabinet de lecture.

*Parfait défini.*—Je ne me fâchai jamais sans motif. Nous enrageillimes-nous de cet avantage? Vous ne vous dépêchâtes pas.

*Futur.*—T'apercevras-tu de son dessein? Il s'empressera de le faire. Ne nous acquitterons-nous pas de nos compliments? Elles s'enrhumeront.

*Conditionnel présent.*—Je ne me déciderais jamais aussi imprudemment. Ne s'appliquerait-elle pas au dessein? Votre sœur ne

se tromperait-elle pas? Ces élèves ne s'habitueraient pas au travail.

*Impératif.*—Repose-toi. Dépêchons-nous. Attendez-vous à recevoir de nos nouvelles? Ne nous fatiguons pas trop.

*Subjonctif présent.*—Il désire que je me porte mieux. Qu'il ne s'amuse pas à mes dépens. Que nous nous précipitions dans le danger. Que ces fleurs ne se flétrissent pas.

*Imparfait.*—J'exigeais que tu te nourrisses avec soin. Que nous nous détournassions du droit chemin. Que vous vous confondissiez en excuses. Qu'ils ne s'enorgueillissent pas d'un avantage insignifiant.

*Infinitif.*—Ne se reposer qu'à de longs intervalles. Ne s'être jamais trompé.

*Participes.*—Ne me fiant qu'à un honnête homme, je ne crois m'être aperçu d'aucune fraude.

*Temps composés.*—Je me suis esquivé. Tu ne t'étais pas rendu à discrétion. Elle ne se fut pas réjouie de cette nouvelle. Vous seriez-vous dégradés dans l'opinion publique? Que je me sois décidé à rester. Que tu ne te fusses pas égaré dans la forêt. Que cette propriété ne se fut pas vendue si cher.

<sup>1</sup> se rendre, <sup>2</sup> raison (*f.*), <sup>3</sup> joir de, <sup>4</sup> santé (*f.*), <sup>5</sup> s'enorgueillir, <sup>6</sup> léger avantage (*m.*), <sup>7</sup> s'offenser, <sup>8</sup> de poisson, <sup>9</sup> se détromper, <sup>10</sup> s'emparer, <sup>11</sup> en vain, <sup>12</sup> se réunir, <sup>13</sup> se réjoir de, <sup>14</sup> se précipiter, <sup>15</sup> fortune (*f.*), <sup>16</sup> se tromper, <sup>17</sup> s'égarer, <sup>18</sup> se rétracter, <sup>19</sup> s'apercevoir de, <sup>20</sup> s'évanouir, <sup>21</sup> s'esquiver, <sup>22</sup> se recueillir, <sup>23</sup> surprenant, <sup>24</sup> s'acquitter de, <sup>25</sup> avouer, <sup>26</sup> se condamner, <sup>27</sup> se moquer de, <sup>28</sup> se décider, <sup>29</sup> se déshonorer, <sup>30</sup> se vanter.

*Indicative present.*—I yield<sup>1</sup> to his reasons.<sup>2</sup> Dost thou not enjoy<sup>3</sup> better health<sup>4</sup>? We trust an honest man.

*Imperfect.*—He boasted<sup>5</sup> of a trifling advantage.<sup>6</sup> Were you not offended<sup>7</sup>? They feed on fish.<sup>8</sup>

*Perfect definite.*—She undeceived<sup>9</sup> herself. Thou didst not perceive my plan. They took possession<sup>10</sup> of the farm.

*Future.*—I shall subscribe to the circulating library. He will torment himself uselessly.<sup>11</sup> You will not meet<sup>12</sup> here.

*Conditional present.*—Thou wouldst catch cold. We should rejoice at<sup>13</sup> your success. They would rush<sup>14</sup> into (the) danger (*m.*).

*Imperative.*—Make haste. Let us not trust too much to his good luck.<sup>15</sup> Do not make a mistake.<sup>16</sup>

*Subjunctive present.*—That I may not lose myself<sup>17</sup> in the wood. That she may not retract.<sup>18</sup> That we may not wound ourselves.

*Imperfect.*—That thou might perceive<sup>19</sup> the force of this argument. That she might not faint away.<sup>20</sup> That they might steal away.<sup>21</sup>

*Infinitive.*—To collect one's thoughts<sup>23</sup> is often necessary. To have perceived this error is not wonderful.<sup>23</sup>

*Participles.*—Going to Paris, I shall perform<sup>24</sup> your commissions with pleasure. Having made a mistake, he confessed<sup>25</sup> it.

*Compound tenses.*—I have condemned<sup>26</sup> myself. Thou hadst not trusted thy father. We shall not have laughed at<sup>27</sup> him. You would not have made up your mind<sup>28</sup> to remain. That they may have disgraced<sup>29</sup> themselves. That I might have boasted<sup>30</sup> of it.

## SECTION VIII.

### IMPERSONAL VERBS.

**161.** An **impersonal** verb expresses an action which cannot be ascribed to any special subject or person, such as the verbs *neiger* (= to snow), and *pleuvoir* (= to rain).

**162.** Impersonal verbs are used only in the third person singular, and are preceded by the pronoun *il*, which refers to no subject, and has merely a vague and indefinite sense.

The pronoun *il* of the impersonal verbs is not the same as the pronoun *il* of the active verbs; this latter one stands for a distinct person; the former signifies *cela* (= that), and has only a vague, indeterminate sense.

**163.** Besides the verbs which are naturally impersonal (as *il pleut*, *il neige*), we can employ both active and neuter verbs impersonally: *Il tombe de l'eau* (= water is falling); *il fait beau* (= the weather is fine); *il convient d'obéir* (= it is proper to obey), etc.

These verbs having only one person, are called unipersonal.

**Conjugation of the Impersonal Verb NEIGER (= to snow).**

*Stem, neig ; termination er.*

#### INDICATIVE.

##### PRESENT.

Il neige (*it snows*)

##### PAST INDEFINITE.

Il a neigé (*it has snowed*).

##### IMPERFECT.

Il neigeait (*it was snowing*)

##### PLUPERFECT.

Il avait neigé (*it had snowed*).

## PAST DEFINITE.

Il neigea (*it snowed*)

## PAST ANTERIOR.

Il eut neigé (*it had snowed*).

## FUTURE.

Il neigera (*it will snow*)

## FUTURE ANTERIOR.

Il aura neigé (*it will have snowed*).

## CONDITIONAL.

## PRESENT.

Il neigerait (*it would snow*)

## ANTERIOR.

Il aurait neigé (*it would have snowed*).

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

Qu'il neige (*that it may snow*)

## PERFECT.

Qu'il ait neigé (*that it may have snowed*).

## IMPERFECT.

Qu'il neigeât (*that it might snow*)

## PLUPERFECT.

Qu'il eût neigé (*that it might have snowed*).

## INFINITIVE.

## PRESENT.

Neiger (*to snow*)

## PERFECT.

Avoir neigé (*to have snowed*).

## PARTICIPLE PAST (INVARIABLE).

Neigé (*snowed*).

NOTE the use of *avoir* with the adverb **y** (=there), as an impersonal verb:

*Present Ind.*—Il **y** a (=there is), etc.

## SECTION IX.

## IRREGULAR AND DEFECTIVE VERBS.

**164.** Every verb is called *irregular* which, in the formation of its simple tenses, deviates from the rules we have explained above.

**165.** A verb may be irregular in one of two ways. 1. It may lack one or more of the moods, tenses, or persons of regular verbs, and then it is called a *defective verb* (from the Latin *defectivus*=defective, imperfect); or, 2. It may possess all these moods, tenses, or persons, but at the same time vary, so far as their formation is

concerned, from the prescribed rules; it is, then, an *irregular verb* properly so called.

The main characteristic which distinguishes the regular from the irregular verbs, is that in the former the stem remains invariable, whilst the endings *alone* change with the moods, tenses, and persons: *chant-er, chant-ons, chant-erai*; whereas, in the irregular verbs the stem is not uniformly written throughout all the tenses of the conjugation: *t-en-ir, j'e tiens; voul-oir, veuillez, je veux; sav-oir, sus, sache*, etc.

### 1. First conjugation: ER.

**166.** Verbs like *mener* (=to lead), *lever* (=to raise), which have a mute *e* in the last syllable but one, take a grave accent over that *e* whenever it is followed by a mute syllable: *je mène* (=I lead), *il lèvera* (=he will raise). See § 24.

Most verbs, however, in *cler, eter*, like *appeler* (=to call), *jeter* (=to throw), double the **l** or **t**: *j'appelle* (=I call), *il jette* (=he throws). See § 24.

But *acheter* (=to buy), *celer* (=to conceal), *geler* (=to freeze), *modeler* (=to fashion), *peler* (=to peel), etc., take the grave accent, *j'achète* (=I buy), *il pèlera* (=he will peel).

The verbs having a close *é* before the final syllable change it into an open *è* before a consonant followed by an *e* mute, as *céder* (=to yield), *je cède* (=I yield), but those ending in *éger* keep the close *é*, as *protéger* (=to protect), *il me protège* (=he protects me).

**167.** The verbs ending in **cer** and **ger**, such as *percer* (=to pierce), *tracer* (=to trace), *manger* (=to eat), *loger* (=to lodge), keep their *c* and *g* soft before *a* and *o*, the former by taking a cedilla under the *c*: *nous perçons* (=we pierce), *il traça* (=he traced), the latter by adding an *e* mute after the *g*: *nous mangeons* (=we eat), *nous logeons* (=we lodge).

**168.** Verbs ending in **yer** change *y* into *i* before *e* mute: *essuyer* (=to wipe), *j'essuie* (=I wipe), *envoyer* (=to send), *ils envoient* (=they send).

For verbs ending in **ayer**, like *payer* (=to pay), *balayer* (=to sweep), the change is optional, but the *y* is more generally retained: *je paye* (=I pay).

**169.** The first conjugation has really only two irregular verbs : *aller* (=to go), and *envoyer* (=to send).

**Aller** (=to go).

*Prim. Tenses.* Aller, allant, allé, je vais, j'allai.

*Ind. Pres.* Je vais, tu vas, il or elle va, nous allons, vous allez, ils or elles vont.

*Imperf.* J'allais, etc., nous allions, etc.

*Past Def.* J'allai, tu allas, il or elle alla, nous allâmes, vous allâtes, ils or elles allèrent.

*Fut.* J'irai, tu iras, il or elle ira, nous irons, vous irez, ils or elles iront.

*Cond. Pres.* J'irais, tu irais, il or elle irait, nous irions, vous iriez, ils or elles iraient.

*Imper.* Va, allons, allez.

*Subj. Pres.* Que j'aille, etc., que nous allions, que vous alliez, qu'ils or qu'elles aillent.

*Imperf.* Que j'allasse, etc., que nous allussions, etc.

*Inf.* Aller.

*Part.* Allant, allé.

*Conjugated with the auxiliary être.*

**S'en aller** (=to go away) is conjugated in the same manner :—

*Je m'en vais, tu t'en vas, etc.* The compound tenses, *je m'en suis allé, que je m'en fusse allé, etc.*, ought to be thoroughly acquired by the pupils.

**Envoyer** (=to send).

*Prim. Tenses.* Envoyer, envoyant, envoyé, j'envoie, j'envoyai.

*Future.* J'enverrai; *conditional, j'enverrais.*

*Conjugated with the auxiliary avoir.*

## 2. Second conjugation in IR with Imperfect in ISSAIS.

**170.** This conjugation has but one irregular verb, and that only in the past participle. It is the verb **bénir**, the past participle of which can be spelt, according to the meaning, *béni* or *bénit* : *béni*, in the case of things consecrated by the church, and *bénit* in all other instances : *pain béni* (=consecrated bread), *nation bénie* (=blessed nation).

**Fleurir** (=to blossom, to flourish), has two forms, the one regular, *fleurissais, fleurissant*; the other irre-

gular, *florissais, florissant*;—*florissais, florissant* are the remains of the old verb *florir*.

**Hair** (=to hate) takes no diæresis in the indicative present singular, and in the imperative (second person singular): *je hais, tu hais, il hait; hais*.

### 3. Second (direct) conjugation in IR.

**171.** We have seen (§ 131) that there are two regular conjugations in **ir**: the one (consisting of more than three hundred verbs) which places **iss** between the stem and the termination (*fin-iss-ais*); the other (composed only of about twenty verbs) which merely adds the simple termination *directly* to the stem (*je sent-ais*); we have left this latter one entirely aside in studying the formation of the simple tenses; we shall now study in detail each one of the verbs of which it consists, and we designate this conjugation by the name of *direct conjugation in ir*.

**172.** The verbs constituting the direct conjugation in **ir** are divided into three classes, according to the form of their past definite; *dormir* (=to sleep), *courir* (=to run), and *tenir* (=to hold), have for their respective past definites: *je dorm-is, je cour-us, je tin-s*. Accordingly, the first class comprises all the verbs whose past definite is in **is**, the second is characterised by the ending of the same tense in **us**, and the third forms the past definite with the help of the root of the verb: *ten-ir, je tin-s, ven-ir, je vin-s*.

The irregular verbs of the second conjugation are as follows:—

#### **Acquérir** (=to acquire).

<i>Prim. Tenses.</i>	Acquérii, acquérant, acquis, j'acquiens, j'acquies.
<i>Ind. Pres.</i>	J'acquiers, tu acquiers, il or elle acquiert, nous acquérons, vous acquérez, ils or elles acquièrent.
<i>Imperf.</i>	J'acquérais, etc., nous acquiérons, etc.
<i>Past Def.</i>	J'acquis, etc., nous acquimes, etc.
<i>Fut.</i>	J'acquerrai, tu acquerras, il or elle acquerra, nous acquerrons, vous acquerrez, ils or elles acquerront.
<i>Cond. Pres.</i>	J'acquerrais, etc., nous acquerrions. etc.

<i>Imper.</i>	Acquiers, acquérons, acquérez.
<i>Subj. Pres.</i>	Que j'acquière, que tu acquières, qu'il <i>or</i> qu'elle acquière, que nous acquérions, que vous acquériez, qu'ils <i>or</i> qu'elles acquièrent.
<i>Imperf.</i>	Que j'acquiesse, etc., que nous acquisitions, etc.
<i>Injin.</i>	Acquérir.
<i>Part.</i>	Acquérant, acquis, acquise.

*Conjugated with the auxiliary avoir.*

*Acquérir*, *mourir* and *courir* have for their future respectively, *acquerrai*, *mourrai*, *courrai*; as *saillir* has in the future *saillera*, side by side with *saillira*, so, instead of *acquerrai*, *mourrai*, *courrai*, the old French had *acquéreraï*, *moureraï*, *coureraï*; then, later on, the *e* mute disappeared, and the contracted forms *acquerrai*, *mourrai*, *courrai*, prevailed. This explains also why the two *r*'s must be pronounced strongly.

### **Bouillir** (= to boil).

<i>Prim. Tenses.</i>	Bouillir, bouillant, bouilli, je bous, je bouillis.
<i>Ind. Pres.</i>	Je bous, tu bous, il <i>or</i> elle bout, nous bouillons, vous bouillez, ils <i>or</i> elles bouillent.
<i>Imperf.</i>	Je bouillais, etc., nous bouillions, etc.
<i>Past Def.</i>	Je bouillis, etc., nous bouillîmes, etc.
<i>Fut.</i>	Je bouillirai, etc., nous bouillirons, etc.
<i>Cond. Pres.</i>	Je bouillirais, nous bouillirions, etc.
<i>Imp.</i>	Bous, bouillons, bouillez.
<i>Subj. Pres.</i>	Que je bouille, que tu bouilles, qu'il <i>or</i> qu'elle bouille, que nous bouillions, que vous bouilliez, qu'ils <i>or</i> qu'elles bouillent.
<i>Imperf.</i>	Que je bouillisse, etc., que nous bouillissions, etc.
<i>Injin.</i>	Bouillir.
<i>Part.</i>	Bouillant, bouilli, bouillie.

*Conjugated with the auxiliary verb avoir.*

N.B.—*Bouillir* is essentially a neuter verb, and *to boil*, used actively, is rendered by the verb *faire* (= to make) and *bouillir*, as : boil these vegetables = **faites bouillir ces légumes**.

### **Courir** (= to run).

<i>Prim. Tenses.</i>	Courir, courant, couru, je cours, je cours.
<i>Ind. Pres.</i>	Je cours, tu cours, il <i>or</i> elle court, nous courons, vous courez, ils <i>or</i> elles courent.
<i>Imperf.</i>	Je courais, etc., nous courions, etc.
<i>Past Def.</i>	Je courus, etc., nous courûmes, etc.
<i>Fut.</i>	Je courrai, tu courras, il <i>or</i> elle courra, nous courrons, vous courrez, ils <i>or</i> elles courront.
<i>Cond. Pres.</i>	Je courrais, etc., nous courrions, etc.
<i>Imp.</i>	Courez, courons, courez.



<i>Subj. Pres.</i>	Que je coure, que tu coures, qu'il <i>or</i> qu'elle coure, que nous courions, que vous couriez qu'ils <i>or</i> qu'elles courent.
<i>Imperf.</i>	Que je courusse, etc., que nous courussions, etc.
<i>Infin.</i>	Courir.
<i>Part.</i>	Courant, couru, courue.

*Conjugated with the auxiliary avoir.*

Besides *courir*, the old French had also the form *courre*, which still exists in the expression *chasse à courre* (*chassé à courir* = hunting); for the future *courrai*, see above, *acquérir*.

### **Couvrir** (= to cover).

<i>Prim. Tenses.</i>	Couvrir, couvrant, couvert, je couvre, je couvris.
	See <i>offrir</i> . <i>Conjugated with the auxiliary avoir.</i>

### **Cueillir** (= to pluck).

<i>Prim. Tenses.</i>	Cueillir, cueillant, cueilli, je cueille, je cueillis.
<i>Ind. Pres.</i>	Je cueille, tu cueilles, il <i>or</i> elle cueille, nous cueillons, vous cueillez, ils <i>or</i> elles cueillent.
<i>Imperf.</i>	Je cueillais, etc., nous cueillions, etc.
<i>Past Def.</i>	Je cueillis, etc., nous cueillîmes, etc.
<i>Fut.</i>	Je cueillerai, etc., nous cueillerons, etc.
<i>Cond. Pres.</i>	Je cueillerais, etc., nous cueillerions, etc.
<i>Inper.</i>	Cueille, cueillons, cueillez.
<i>Sub. Pres.</i>	Que je cueille, etc., que nous cueillions, etc.
<i>Imperf.</i>	Que je cueillisse, etc., que nous cueillissions, etc.
<i>Infin.</i>	Cueillir.
<i>Part.</i>	Cueillant, cueilli, cueillie.

*Conjugated with the auxiliary avoir.*

For the future *cueillerai*, see *acquérir*.

### **Dormir** (= to sleep).

<i>Prim. Tenses.</i>	Dormir, dormant, dormi, je dors, je dormis.
	See <i>mentir</i> . <i>Conjugated with the auxiliary avoir.</i>

### **Faillir** (= to fail).

Several tenses of this verb, such as the *Indicative Present*, *Imperfect*, and *Future*, are seldom used.

<i>Prim. Tenses.</i>	Faillir, faillant, failli, je faux, je faillis.
<i>Ind. Pres.</i>	Je faux, tu faux, il <i>or</i> elle faut, nous faillons, vous faillez, ils <i>or</i> elles faillent.
<i>Imperf.</i>	Je faillais, tu faillais, il <i>or</i> elle faillait, nous faillions, vous failliez, ils <i>or</i> elles faillaient.
<i>Past Def.</i>	Je faillis, etc., nous faillîmes, etc.

<i>Fut.</i>	Je faillirai, etc., nous faillirons, etc.
<i>Cond. Pres.</i>	Je faillirais, etc., nous faillirions, etc.
<i>Imper.</i>	Faille, . . faillez.
<i>Subj. Pres.</i>	Que je faille, etc., que nous faillions, etc.
<i>Imperf.</i>	Que je faillisse, etc., que nous faussions, etc.
<i>Infinitive.</i>	Faillir.
<i>Part.</i>	Faillant, failli.

*Conjugated with the auxiliary avoir.*

The first three persons of the singular, *je faux, tu faux, il faut* have fallen almost entirely into disuse; the expression is, however, still met with: *le cœur me faut* (*me manque*) = my heart fails me. The *Pres. Part.* also is obsolete.

**FÉRIR** (=to strike) has preserved only the past participle *féru*.

It survives in the expression *sans coup férir* (=without striking a blow): *d'Harcourt prit Turin sans coup férir* (=d'Harcourt took Turin without striking a blow).

**FUIR** (=to flee).

*Prim. Tenses.* Fuir, fuyant, fui, je fais, je fais.

*Ind. Pres.* Je fais, tu fais, il or elle fuit, nous fuyons, vous fuyez, ils or elles fuient.

*Imperf.* Je fuyais, etc., nous fuyions, etc.

*Past Def.* Je fais, etc., nous fuimes, etc.

*Fut.* Je fuirai, etc., nous fuirons, etc.

*Cond. Pres.* Je fuirais, etc., nous fuirions, etc.

*Imper.* Fuis, fuyons, fuyez.

*Subj. Pres.* Que je fuie, etc., que nous fuyions, que vous fuyiez, qu'ils or qu'elles fuient.

*Imperf.* Que je fusse, etc., que nous fuissions, etc.

*Infinitive.* Fuir.

*Part.* Fuyant, fui, fuie.

*Conjugated with the auxiliary avoir.*

**GÉSIR** (*être couché* =to lie down).

This verb is no longer used in the infinitive; the following are the only parts employed: Il gît, nous gisons, il gisent; il gisait, gisant. *Ci-gît* (=here lies) is used in epitaphs.

**MENTIR** (=to tell lies).

*Prim. Tenses.* Mentir, mentant, menti, je mens, je mentis.

*Ind. Pres.* Je mens, tu mens, il or elle ment, nous mentons, vous mentez, ils or elles mentent.

*Imperf.* Je mentais, etc., nous mentions, etc.

*Past Def.* Je mentis, etc., nous mentîmes, etc.

*Fut.* Je mentirai, etc., nous mentirons, etc.

<i>Cond. Pres.</i>	Je mentirais, etc., nous mentirions, etc.
<i>Imper.</i>	Mens, mentons, mentez.
<i>Subj. Pres.</i>	Que je mente, etc., que nous mentionnions, etc.
<i>Imperf.</i>	Que je mentisse, etc., que nous mentissions, etc.
<i>Injñ.</i>	Mentir.
<i>Part.</i>	Mentant, menti.

*Conjugated with the auxiliary avoir.*

### **Mourir** (= to die).

<i>Prim. Tenses.</i>	Mourir, mourant, mort, je meurs, je mourus.
<i>Indic. Pres.</i>	Je meurs, tu meurs, il <i>or</i> elle meurt, nous mourons, vous mourez, ils <i>or</i> elles meurent.
<i>Imperf.</i>	Je mourais, etc., nous mourions, etc.
<i>Past Def.</i>	Je mourus, etc., nous mourûmes, etc.
<i>Fut.</i>	Je mourrai, etc., nous mourrons, etc.
<i>Cond. Pres.</i>	Je mourrais, etc., nous mourrions, etc.
<i>Imper.</i>	Meurs, mourons, mourez.
<i>Subj. Pres.</i>	Que je meure, etc., que nous mourions, que vous mouriez, qu'ils meurent.
<i>Imperf.</i>	Que je mourusse, etc., que nous mourussions, etc.
<i>Injñ.</i>	Mourir.
<i>Part.</i>	Mourant, mort, morte.

*Conjugated with the auxiliary être.*

For the future *mourrai*, see above *acquérir*.

### **Offrir** (= to offer).

<i>Prim. Tenses.</i>	Offrir, offrant, offert, j'offre, j'offris.
<i>Ind. Pres.</i>	J'offre, tu offres, il <i>or</i> elle offre, nous offrons, vous offrez, ils <i>or</i> elles offrent.
<i>Imperf.</i>	J'offrais, etc., nous offrions, etc.
<i>Past Def.</i>	J'offris, etc., nous offrimes, etc.
<i>Fut.</i>	J'offrirai, etc., nous offrirons, etc.
<i>Cond. Pres.</i>	J'offrirais, etc., nous offririons, etc.
<i>Imper.</i>	Offre, offrons, offrez.
<i>Subj. Pres.</i>	Que j'offre, etc., que nous offrions, etc.
<i>Imperf.</i>	Que j'offrisse, etc., que nous offrissions, etc.
<i>Injñ.</i>	Offrir.
<i>Part.</i>	Offrant, offert, offerte.

*Conjugated with the auxiliary avoir.*

### **Ouïr** (= to hear).

This verb is used only in the *Inf. Pres.*, *ouïr*; the *Part. Past*, *ouï*; the *Past Def.*, *j'ouïs*, *tu ouïs*, etc.; the *Imperf. Subj.* *que j'ouïsse*, *que tu ouïsses*, etc. *Conjugated with the auxiliary avoir.*

The past participle subsists in law language: *ouïe la lecture de l'arrêt* (*la lecture de l'arrêt entendue*) = the reading of the sentence being heard.

**Ouvrir** (=to open).

*Prim. Tenses.* Ouvrir, ouvrant, ouvert, j'ouvre, j'ouvris.

See *ouvrir*. Conjugated with the auxiliary **avoir**.

**Partir** (=to set out).

*Prim. Tenses.* Partir, partant, parti, je pars, je partis.

See *partir*. Conjugated with the auxiliary **être**.

**Saillir** (=to jump, to gush) is conjugated like *finir*, but when it means to *jut out* it has :—

*Prim. Tenses.* Saillir, saillant, sailli, il saille, and the future is *saillera*.

See *tressaillir*. Conjugated with the auxiliary **avoir**.

**Sentir** (=to feel).

*Prim. Tenses.* Sentir, sentant, senti, je sens, je sentis.

See *sentir*. Conjugated with the auxiliary **avoir**.

**Servir** (=to serve).

*Prim. Tenses.* Servir, servant, servi, je sers, je servis

See *servir*. Conjugated with the auxiliary **avoir**.

**Sortir** (=to go out).

*Prim. Tenses.* Sortir, sortant, sorti, je sors, je sortis.

See *sortir*. Conjugated with the auxiliary **être**.

**Souffrir** (=to suffer).

*Prim. Tenses.* Souffrir, souffrant, souffert, je souffre, je souffris.

See *souffrir*. Conjugated with the auxiliary **avoir**.

**Tenir** (=to hold).

*Prim. Tenses.* Tenir, tenant, tenu, je tiens, je tins.

See *tenir*. Conjugated with the auxiliary **avoir**.

**Tressaillir** (=to start).

*Prim. Tenses.* Tressaillir, tressaillant, tressailli, je tressaille, je tressaillis.

*Ind. Pres.* Je tressaille, tu tressailles, il tressaille, nous tressaillons, vous tressaillez, ils tressaillent.

*Imperf.* Je tressaillais, etc., nous tressaillions, etc.

*Past Def.* Je tressaillis, etc., nous tressaillîmes, etc.

*Fut.* Je tressaillirai, etc., nous tressaillirons, etc.

*Cond. Pres.* Je tressaillirais, etc., nous tressaillirions, etc.

*Imper.* Tressaille, tressaillons, tressaillez.

<i>Subj. Pres.</i>	Que je tressaille, etc., que nous tressaillions, etc.
<i>Imperf.</i>	Que je tressaillisse, etc., que nous tressaillions, etc.
<i>Infinitive</i>	Tressaillir.
<i>Part.</i>	Tressaillant, tressailli.

*Conjugated with the auxiliary avoir.*

### **Venir** (=to come).

*Prim. Tenses.* Venir, venant, venu, je viens, je vins.

*Ind. Pres.* Je viens, tu viens, il or elle vient, nous venons, vous venez, ils or elles viennent.

*Imperf.* Je venais, etc., nous venions, etc.

*Past Def.* Je vins, etc., nous vinmes, etc.

*Fut.* Je viendrai, etc., nous viendrons, etc.

*Cond. Pres.* Je viendrais, etc., nous viendrions, etc.

*Imper.* Viens, venons, venez.

*Subj. Pres.* Que je vienne, etc., que nous venions, que vous veniez, qu'ils or qu'elles viennent.

*Imperf.* Que je vinsse, etc., que nous vinssions, etc.

*Infinitive* Venir.

*Part.* Venant, venu, venue.

*Conjugated with the auxiliary être.*

### **Vêtir** (=to clothe).

*Prim. Tenses.* Vêtant, vêtu, je vêts, je vêtis.

*Ind. Pres.* Je vêts, tu vêts, il or elle vêt, nous vêtons, vous vêtez, ils or elles vêtent.

*Imperf.* Je vêtais, etc., nous vêtions, etc.

*Past Def.* Je vêtis, etc., nous vêtîmes, etc.

*Fut.* Je vêtirai, etc., nous vêtirons, etc.

*Cond. Pres.* Je vêtirais, etc., nous vêtirions, etc.

*Imper.* Vêts, vêtons, vêtez.

*Subj. Pres.* Que je vête, etc., que nous vêtions, etc.

*Imperf.* Que je vêtisse, etc., que nous vêtissions, etc.

*Infinitive* Vêtir.

*Part.* Vêtant, vêtu, vêtue.

*Conjugated with the auxiliary avoir.*

## **4. Third Conjugation: OIR.**

**173.** The irregular verbs in *oir* are subdivided into two classes:—

1. The first forms its past definite in **us**, and its participle in **u**: *valoir* (=to be worth), *valus*, *valu*.

2. The second class comprises the two verbs *asseoir* (=to sit), and *voir* (=to see), forming their past definite

in **is** (*assis, vis*), but differing from each other in the past participle (*assis, vu*).

**174.** The irregular verbs of the third conjugation are the following :—

**Asseoir** (=to seat, to place, to sit).

<i>Prim. Tenses.</i>	Asseoir, asseyant, assis, j'assieds, j'assis.
<i>Ind. Pres.</i>	J'assieds, tu assieds, il assied, nous asseyons, vous asseyez, ils asseyent.
<i>Imperf.</i>	J'asseyais, etc., nous asseyions, etc.
<i>Past Def.</i>	J'assis, etc., nous assimes, etc.
<i>Fut.</i>	J'assiérai, etc., nous assiérons, etc.; the French also say: j'asseyerai, etc., nous asseyerons, etc.
<i>Cond. Pres.</i>	J'assiérais, etc., nous assiérions, etc.; also: j'asseyerais, etc., nous asseyerions, etc.
<i>Imper.</i>	Assieds, asseyons, asseyez.
<i>Subj. Pres.</i>	Que j'asseye, etc., que nous asseyions, que vous asseyiez, qu'ils asseyent.
<i>Imperf.</i>	Que j'assisse, etc., que nous assissions, etc.
<i>Infín.</i>	Asseoir.
<i>Part.</i>	Asseyant, assis, assise.

The verb *asseoir* is also conjugated as follows :—

<i>Ind. Pres.</i>	J'assois, tu assois, il assoit, nous assoyons, vous assoyez, ils assoient.
<i>Imperf.</i>	J'assoyais, etc.

But this manner is not used in written language.

The verb *surseoir* (=to postpone) follows this second form.

Conjugated with the auxiliary **avoir**; but it takes the auxiliary **être** when used as a reflexive verb: *s'asseoir* (=to sit down).

**Choir** (*tomber* =to fall).

Employed only in the infinitive, and in a limited number of instances.

In the old French it was conjugated throughout (*chois, chéais, cherrai, chut, chéant, chu*). Even as late as the seventeenth century we find the future *cherrai*: *Tirez la chevillette, et la bobinette cherra* (=pull the peg and the bobbin will fall). PERRAULT.

The past participle *chu* (=tombé) has given the feminine substantive *chute*, just as the past participles *entrée, revue, battue* have given, respectively, the substantives: *une entrée, une revue, une battue*.

**Déchoir** (=to decay, fall).

<i>Prim. Tenses.</i>	Déchoir, déchu, je déchois, je déchus.
<i>Ind. Pres.</i>	Je déchois, tu déchois, il déchoit, nous déchoyons, vous déchoyez, ils déchoient.
<i>Imperf.</i>	Je déchoyais, etc., nous déchoyions, etc.
<i>Past Def.</i>	Je déchus, etc., nous déchûmes, etc.
<i>Fut.</i>	Je décherrai, etc., nous décherrons, etc.
<i>Cond. Pres.</i>	Je décherrais, etc., nous décherrions, etc.
<i>Imper.</i>	Déchois, déchoyons, déchoyez.
<i>Subj. Pres.</i>	Que je déchoie, etc., que nous déchoyions, que vous déchoyiez, qu'ils déchoient.
<i>Imperf.</i>	Que je déchusse, etc., que nous déchussions, etc.
<i>Infin.</i>	Déchoir.
<i>Part.</i>	(no <i>Pres. Part.</i> ) déchu, déchue.

Conjugated with avoir when it expresses an action, and with être when it denotes a state.

**Échoir** (=to fall due).

*Prim. Tenses:* échoir, échéant, échu, il échoit, j'échus.

Conjugated as *déchoir*.—Used only in the *Part. Pres.*, échéant; the *Part. Past*, échu; the *Indic. Pres.*, *third person singular*, il échoit (pronounced and often written *échet*); the *Past Def.*, j'échus, etc.; the *Fut.*, j'écherrai, etc.; the *Cond. Pres.*, j'écherrais, etc.; the *Imperf. Subj.*, que j'échusse, etc.

See *déchoir*. *Conjugated with avoir or être.*

From the *Pres. Part.* *échéant* comes the feminine substantive *échéance*, just as *vengeant*, *surveillant* have formed *vengeance*, *surveillance*. (See § 44.)

**Falloir** (=to be necessary).

<i>Prim. Tenses.</i>	Falloir, fallu, il faut, il fallut.
<i>Ind. Pres.</i>	Il faut.
<i>Imperf.</i>	Il fallait.
<i>Past Def.</i>	Il fallut.
<i>Fut.</i>	Il faudra.
<i>Cond. Pres.</i>	Il faudrait.
<i>Imper.</i>	(None.)
<i>Subj. Pres.</i>	Qu'il faille.
<i>Imperf.</i>	Qu'il fallût.
<i>Infin.</i>	Falloir.
<i>Part.</i>	(no <i>Pres. Part.</i> ) fallu.

*Conjugated with the auxiliary avoir*

**Mouvoir** (= to move).

<i>Prim. Tenses.</i>	<u>Mouvoir</u> , <u>mouvant</u> , <u>mû</u> , <u>je meus</u> , <u>je mus</u> .
<i>Ind. Pres.</i>	Je meus, tu meus, il meut, nous mouvons, vous mouvez, ils meuvent.
<i>Imperf.</i>	Je mouvais, etc., nous mouvions, etc.
<i>Past Def.</i>	Je mus, etc., nous mêmes, etc.
<i>Fut.</i>	Je mouvrai, etc., nous mouvrons, etc.
<i>Cond. Pres.</i>	Je mouvrais, etc., nous mouvriens, etc.
<i>Imper.</i>	Meus, mouvons, mouvez.
<i>Subj. Pres.</i>	Que je meuve, que tu meuves, qu'il meuve, que nous mouvions, que vous moviez, qu'ils meuvent.
<i>Imperf.</i>	Que je musse, etc., que nous mussions, etc.
<i>Infîn.</i>	Mouvoir.
<i>Part.</i>	Mouvant, mû, mue.

*Conjugated with the auxiliary avoir.*

**Pleuvoir** (= to rain).

<i>Prim. Tenses.</i>	Pleuvoir, pleuvant, plu, il pleut, il plut.
<i>Ind. Pres.</i>	Il pleut.
<i>Imperf.</i>	Il pleuvait.
<i>Past Def.</i>	Il plut.
<i>Fut.</i>	Il pleuvra.
<i>Cond. Pres.</i>	Il pleuvrait.
<i>Subj. Pres.</i>	Qu'il pleuve.
<i>Imperf.</i>	Qu'il plût.
<i>Infîn.</i>	Pleuvoir.
<i>Part.</i>	Pleuvant, plu.

*Conjugated with the auxiliary avoir.*

**Pouvoir** (= to be able).

<i>Prim. Tenses.</i>	Pouvoir, pouvant, pu, je peux or je puis, je pus.
<i>Ind. Pres.</i>	Je peux or je puis*, tu peux, il peut, nous pouvons, vous pouvez, ils peuvent.
<i>Imperf.</i>	Je pouvais, etc., nous pouvions, etc.
<i>Past Def.</i>	Je pus, etc., nous pûmes, etc.
<i>Fut.</i>	Je pourrai, etc., nous pourrons, etc. †
<i>Cond. Pres.</i>	Je pourrais, etc., nous pourrions, etc. †
<i>Imper.</i>	(None).
<i>Subj. Pres.</i>	Que je puisse, etc., que nous puissions, etc.
<i>Imperf.</i>	Que je pusse, etc., que nous pussions, etc.
<i>Infîn.</i>	Pouvoir.
<i>Part.</i>	Pouvant, pu.

*Conjugated with the auxiliary avoir.*

\**Puis* is the only form used in the interrogative conjugation (for the first person), *Puis-je?* (= can I?)

† The two r's sounded only as one, whilst in *acquerrai*, etc., both are sounded strongly.



**Savoir** (= to know).

*Prim. Tenses.* Savoir, sachant, su, je sais, je sus.

*Ind. Pres.* Je sais, tu sais, il sait, nous savons, vous savez, ils savent.

*Imperf.* Je savais, etc., nous savions, etc.

*Past Def.* Je sus, etc., nous sûmes, etc.

*Fut.* Je saurai, etc., nous saurons, etc.

*Cond. Pres.* Je saurais, etc., nous saurions, etc.

*Imper.* Sache, sachons, sachez.

*Subj. Pres.* Que je sache, etc., que nous sachions, etc.

*Imperf.* Que je susse, etc., que nous sussions, etc.

*Infin.* Savoir.

*Part.* Sachant, su, sue.

*Conjugated with the auxiliary avoir.*

In the Old French, *savoir* was *saver*, from the Latin *sapere*. This form *saver* gave the future *saver-ai*, which, contracted later into *savrai* (as *recevoir* into *recevrai*, *devoir* into *devrai*, etc.), became in the fourteenth century *saurai*, as *habere* has given *aver-ai*, then *avrai*, and finally *aurai*.

**Seoir.**

In the sense of to be seated (= *être assis*) this verb is obsolete. It is sometimes used in the present participle, *séant*, and the past participle, *sis, sise*. When meaning to be becoming (= *être conrenable*) it is still used in certain tenses, and always in the third person singular or plural: *il sied, ils siéent, il seyait, il siéra*.

**Valoir** (= to be worth).

*Prim. Tenses.* Valoir, valant, valu, je vaux, je valva.

*Ind. Pres.* Je vaux, tu vaux, il vaut, nous valons, vous valez, ils valent.

*Imperf.* Je valais, etc., nous valions, etc.

*Past Def.* Je valus, etc., nous valûmes, etc.

*Fut.* Je vaudrai, etc., nous vaudrons, etc.

*Cond. Pres.* Je vaudrais, nous vaudrions, etc.

*Imper.* Vaux, valons, valez.

*Subj. Pres.* Que je vaille, que tu vailles, qu'il vaille, que nous valions, que vous valiez, qu'ils valient.

*Imperf.* Que je valusse, etc., que nous valussions, etc.

*Infin.* Valoir.

*Part.* Valant, valu.

*Conjugated with the auxiliary avoir.*

The compounds of this verb are conjugated in the same manner, with the exception of *prévaloir* (= to prevail), whose *Subj. Pres.* is: *que je prévaille, etc., que nous prévalions, etc.*

**Voir** (=to see).

*Prim. Tenses.* Voir, voyant, vu, je vois, je vis.

*Ind. Pres.* Je vois, tu vois, il voit, nous voyons, vous voyez, ils voient.

*Imperf.* Je voyais, etc., nous voyions, etc.

*Past Def.* Je vis, etc., nous vîmes, etc.

*Fut.* Je verrai, etc., nous verrons,\* etc.

*Cond. Pres.* Je verrais, etc., nous verrions,\* etc.

*Imper.* Vois, voyons, voyez.

*Subj. Pres.* Que je voie, etc., que nous voyions, etc.

*Imperf.* Que je visse, etc., que nous vissions, etc.

*Inf.* Voir.

*Part.* Voyant, vu, vue.

*Conjugated with the auxiliary avoir.*

N.B.—*Pouvoir* (=to provide), and *prévoir* (=to foresee), make in the *Fut.* and *Cond.*: *je pourvoirai*, *je pourvoirais*, and *je prévoirai*, *je prévoirais*. Besides, the *Past. Def.* and *Imperf. Subj.* of *pourvoir* are *je pourvus*, *que je pourrussé*.

*Conjugated with the auxiliary avoir.*

**Vouloir** (=to will, to be willing).

*Prim. Tenses.* Vouloir, voulant, voulu, je veux, je voulais.

*Ind. Pres.* Je veux, tu veux, il veut, nous voulons, vous voulez, ils veulent.

*Imperf.* Je voulais, etc., nous voulions, etc.

*Past Def.* Je voulus, etc., nous voulûmes, etc.

*Fut.* Je voudrai, etc., nous voudrions, etc.

*Cond. Pres.* Je voudrais, etc., nous voudrions, etc.

*Imper.* Veuille, veuillons, veuillez. (The *Imper. proper*, veux, voulons, voulez, is seldom used).

*Subj. Pres.* Que je veuille, etc., que nous voulions, que vous vouliez, qu'ils veuillent.

*Imperf.* Que je voulusse, etc., que nous voulussions, etc.

*Inf.* Vouloir.

*Part.* Voulant, voulu, voulue.

*Conjugated with the auxiliary avoir.*

**5. Fourth Conjugation: RE.**

**175.** The irregular verbs in **re** may be subdivided into two classes according to the formation of the past definite: 1. Verbs with the past definite in **is**: *craindre* (=to fear), *crainis*; 2. Verbs with the past definite in **us**: *connaître* (=to know), *connus*.

\* See Note on *pouvoir*.

**176.** The irregular verbs in **re** are the following :—

**Absoudre** (=to absolve).

*Prim. Tenses.* Absoudre, absolvant, absous (*fem.* absoute), j'absous ;  
no *Past Definite*. See *résoudre*.

*Conjugated with the auxiliary avoir.*

**Boire** (=to drink).

*Prim. Tenses.* Boire, buvant, bu, je bois, je bus.

*Ind. Pres.* - Je bois, tu bois, il boit, nous buvons, vous buvez,  
ils boivent.

*Imperf.* Je buvais, etc., nous buvions, etc.

*Past Def.* Je bus, etc., nous bûmes, etc.

*Fut.* Je boirai, etc., nous boirons, etc.

*Cond. Pres.* Je boirais, etc., nous boirions, etc.

*Imper.* Bois, buvons, buvez.

*Subj. Pres.* Que je boive, etc., que nous buvions, que vous buviez,  
qu'ils boivent.

*Imperf.* Que je busse, etc., que nous bussions, etc.

*Injiv.* Boire.

*Past Part.* Buvant, bu, bue.

*Conjugated with the auxiliary avoir.*

**Braire** (=to bray).

This verb, according to the *Académie*, is used only in the *Infinitive*, and in the third person of the *Present Indicative*, *Future*, and *Conditional* : braire, il brait, ils braient, il braira, ils brairont, il brairait, ils brairaient.

*Conjugated with the auxiliary avoir.*

*Braire*, in the old language, had the general sense of *crier* (=to shout), and was applied to men as well as to animals ; it is only at a comparatively recent period that the meaning was limited to the noise made by an ass.

**Bruire** (=to roar, rattle, resound).

This verb has only the following forms : bruire, il bruit, il bruyait, ils bruyaient. *Bruyant* now is rather an adjective than a present participle.

*Conjugated with the auxiliary avoir.*

**Clore** (=to close).

Used only in the *Past Participle*, clos, close ; the three persons singular of the *Ind. Pres.*, je clos, tu clos, il clôt ; the *Fut.*, je clorai, tu cloras, etc. ; the *Cond. Pres.*, je clorais, etc. ; the *Imper.* singular, clos ; *Subj. Pres.*, que je close ; and all compound tenses.

*Conjugated with the auxiliary avoir.*

**Conclure** (=to conclude).

<i>Prim. Tenses.</i>	Conclure, concluant, conclu, <b>je conclus, je conclus.</b>
<i>Ind. Pres.</i>	Je conclus, tu conclus, il conclut, nous concluons, vous concluez, ils concluent.
<i>Imperf.</i>	Je concluais, etc., nous concluions, etc.
<i>Past Def.</i>	Je conclus, etc., nous conclûmes, etc.
<i>Fut.</i>	Je conclurai, etc., nous conclurons, etc.
<i>Cond. Pres.</i>	Je conclurais, etc., nous conclurions, etc.
<i>Imper.</i>	Conclus, concluons, concluez.
<i>Subj. Pres.</i>	Que je conclue, etc., que nous concluions, que vous concluez, qu'ils concluent.
<i>Imperf.</i>	Que je conclusse, etc., que nous conclusions, etc.
<i>Injin.</i>	Conclure.
<i>Part.</i>	Concluant, conclu, conclue.

*Conjugated with the auxiliary avoir.*

**Conduire** (=to conduct).

<i>Prim. Tenses.</i>	Conduire, conduisant, conduit, <b>je conduis, je conduis.</b>
----------------------	---

See *nuire*. *Conjugated with the auxiliary avoir.*

**Confire** (=to pickle).

<i>Prim. Tenses.</i>	Confire, confisant, confit, <b>je confis, je confis.</b>
<i>Ind. Pres.</i>	Je confis, tu confis, il confit, nous confisons, vous confisez, ils confisent.
<i>Imperf.</i>	Je confisais, etc., nous confisions, etc.
<i>Past Def.</i>	Je confis, etc., nous confimes, etc.
<i>Fut.</i>	Je confirai, etc., nous confirons, etc.
<i>Cond. Pres.</i>	Je confirais, etc., nous confirions, etc.
<i>Imper.</i>	Confis, confisons, confisez.
<i>Subj. Pres.</i>	Que je confise, etc., que nous confisions, etc.
<i>Imperf.</i>	(None.)
<i>Injin.</i>	Confire.
<i>Part.</i>	Confisant, confit, confite.

*Conjugated with the auxiliary avoir.*

**Connaitre** (=to know).

<i>Prim. Tenses.</i>	Connaitre, connaissant, connu, <b>je connais, je connais.</b>
<i>Ind. Pres.</i>	Je connais, tu connais, il connaît, nous connaissons, vous connaissez, ils connaissent.
<i>Imperf.</i>	Je connaissais, etc., nous connaissions, etc.
<i>Past Def.</i>	Je connus, etc., nous connûmes, etc.
<i>Fut.</i>	Je connaîtrai, etc., nous connaîtrons, etc.

<i>Cond. Perf.</i>	Je connaîtrais, etc., nous connaîtrions, etc.
<i>Imper.</i>	Connais, connaissons, connaissez.
<i>Subj. Pres.</i>	Que je connaisse, etc., que nous connaissions, etc.
<i>Imperf.</i>	Que je connusse, etc., que nous connussions, etc.
<i>Infîn.</i>	Connaitre.
<i>Part.</i>	Connaissant, connu, connue.

*Conjugated with the auxiliary avoir.*

N.B.—Whenever the vowel **i** is followed by **t** in this verb, it takes the circumflex accent: *connait, connaîtrai*, etc.

### **Coudre** (= to sew).

<i>Prim. Tenses.</i>	Coudre, cousant, cousu, je couds, je <u>cousis</u> .
<i>Ind. Pres.</i>	Je couds, tu couds, il coud, nous cousons, vous cousez, ils cousent.
<i>Imperf.</i>	Je cousais, etc., nous cousions, etc.
<i>Past Def.</i>	Je cousis, etc., nous cousimes, etc.
<i>Fut.</i>	Je coudrai, etc., nous coudrons, etc.
<i>Cond. Pres.</i>	Je coudrais, etc., nous coudrions, etc.
<i>Imper.</i>	Couds, cousons, cousez.
<i>Subj. Pres.</i>	Que je cose, etc., que nous consions, etc.
<i>Imperf.</i>	Que je cousisse, etc., que nous cousissions, etc.
<i>Infîn.</i>	Coudre.
<i>Part.</i>	Cousant, cousu, cousue.

*Conjugated with the auxiliary avoir.*

### **Craindre** (= to fear).

<i>Prim. Tenses.</i>	Craindre, craignant, craint, je crains, je <u>craignis</u> .
<i>Ind. Pres.</i>	Je crains, tu crains, il craint, nous craignons, vous craignez, ils craignent.
<i>Imperf.</i>	Je craignais, etc., nous craignions, etc.
<i>Past Def.</i>	Je craignis, etc., nous craignimes, etc.
<i>Fut.</i>	Je craindrai, etc., nous craindrons, etc.
<i>Cond. Pres.</i>	Je craindrais, etc., nous craindrions, etc.
<i>Imper.</i>	Crains, craignons, craignez.
<i>Subj. Pres.</i>	Que je craigne, etc., que nous craignions, que vous craigniez, qu'ils craignent.
<i>Imperf.</i>	Que je craignisse, etc., que nous craignissions, etc.
<i>Infîn.</i>	Craindre.
<i>Part.</i>	Craignant, craint, crainte.

*Conjugated with the auxiliary avoir.*

### **Croire** (= to believe).

<i>Prim. Tenses.</i>	Croire, croyant, cru, je crois, je <u>crus</u> .
<i>Ind. Pres.</i>	Je crois, tu crois, il croit, nous croyons, vous croyez, ils croient.
<i>Imperf.</i>	Je croyais, etc., nous croyions, etc.

<i>Past. Def.</i>	Je crus, etc., nous crûmes, etc.
<i>Fut.</i>	Je croirai, etc., nous croirons, etc.
<i>Cond. Pres.</i>	Je croirais, etc., nous croirions, etc.
<i>Imper.</i>	Crois, croyons, croyez.
<i>Subj. Pres.</i>	Que je eroie, etc., que nous croyions, que vous croyiez, qu'ils croient.
<i>Imperf.</i>	Que je crusse, etc., que nous crussions, etc.
<i>Infin.</i>	Croire.
<i>Part.</i>	Croyant, cru, crue.

*Conjugated with the auxiliary avoir.*

### **Croître** (=to grow).

<i>Prim. Tenses.</i>	Croître, croissant, crû, je crois, je crus.
<i>Ind. Pres.</i>	Je erois, tu crois, il croit, nous croissons, vous croissez, il croissent.
<i>Imperf.</i>	Je croissais, etc., nous croissions, etc.
<i>Past Def.</i>	Je crûs, etc., nous crûmes, etc.
<i>Fut.</i>	Je croîtrai, etc., nous croîtrons, etc.
<i>Cond. Pres.</i>	Je croitrais, etc., nous croîtrions, etc.
<i>Imper.</i>	Crois, croissons, croissez.
<i>Subj. Pres.</i>	Que je eroisse, etc., que nous eroissions, etc.
<i>Imperf.</i>	Que je crusse, etc., que nous crussions, etc.
<i>Infin.</i>	Croître.
<i>Part.</i>	Croissant, crû, crue.

*Conjugated with the auxiliary avoir.*

**N.B.**—See *connaître*.

### **Dire** (=to say).

<i>Prim. Tenses.</i>	Dire, disant, dit, je dis, je dis.
<i>Ind. Pres.</i>	Je dis, tu dis, il dit, nous disons, vous dites, ils disent.
<i>Imperf.</i>	Je disais, etc., nous disions, etc.
<i>Past Def.</i>	Je dis, etc., nous dûmes, etc.
<i>Fut.</i>	Je dirai, etc., nous dirons, etc.
<i>Cond. Pres.</i>	Je dirais, etc., nous dirions, etc.
<i>Imper.</i>	Dis, disons, dites.
<i>Subj. Pres.</i>	Que je dise, etc., que nous disions, etc.
<i>Imperf.</i>	Que je disse, etc., que nous dissions, etc.
<i>Infin.</i>	Dire.
<i>Part.</i>	Disant, dit, dite.

*Conjugated with the auxiliary avoir.*

**N.B.**—All the compounds of *dire* make *disez* in the second person plural of the *Pres. Indic.*, with the exception of *re-dire* (=to repeat), and *maudire* (=to curse), which make *redites*, *maudissez*.

**Éclore** (= to be hatched, to open, to dawn). — Limited to the following forms:—

<i>Ind. Pres.</i>	Il éclôt, ils éclosent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Il éclôra, ils éclôront.
<i>Cond. Pres.</i>	Il éclôrait, ils éclôraient.
<i>Subj. Pres.</i>	Qu'il éclore, qu'ils éclosent.
<i>Infin.</i>	Éclore.
<i>Part. Past.</i>	Éclosant, éclos, éclosé.

*Conjugated with the auxiliary être.*

**Écrire** (= to write).

<i>Prim. Tenses.</i>	Écrire, écrivant, écrit, j'écris, j'écrivis.
<i>Ind. Pres.</i>	J'écris, tu écris, il écrit, nous écrivons, vous écrivez, ils écrivent.
<i>Imperf.</i>	J'écrivais, etc., nous écrivions, etc.
<i>Past Def.</i>	J'écrivis, etc., nous écrivîmes, etc.
<i>Fut.</i>	J'écrirai, etc., nous écrirons, etc.
<i>Cond. Pres.</i>	J'écrirais, etc., nous écririons, etc.
<i>Imper.</i>	Écris, écrivons, écrivez.
<i>Subj. Pres.</i>	Que j'écrive, etc., que nous écrivions, etc.
<i>Imperf.</i>	Que j'écrivisse, etc., que nous écrivissions, etc.
<i>Infin.</i>	Écrire.
<i>Part.</i>	Écrivant, écrit, écrite.

*Conjugated with the auxiliary avoir.*

**Faire** (= to make or to do).

<i>Prim. Tenses.</i>	Faire, faisant, fait, je fais, je fis.
<i>Ind. Pres.</i>	Je fais, tu fais, il fait, nous faisons, vous faites, ils font.
<i>Imperf.</i>	Je faisais, etc., nous faisions, etc.
<i>Past Def.</i>	Je fis, etc., nous fîmes, etc.
<i>Fut.</i>	Je ferai, etc., nous ferons, etc.
<i>Cond. Pres.</i>	Je ferais, etc., nous ferions, etc.
<i>Imper.</i>	Fais, faisons, faites.
<i>Subj. Pres.</i>	Que je fasse, etc., que nous fassions, etc.
<i>Imperf.</i>	Que je fisse, etc., que nous fissions, etc.
<i>Infin.</i>	Faire.
<i>Part.</i>	Faisant, fait, faite.

*Conjugated with the auxiliary avoir.*

**Frire** (= to fry).

This verb, besides the *Infin. Pres.*, has also the three persons singular of the *Ind. Pres.*, je fris, tu fris, il frit; the *Fut.*, je

frirai, etc.; the *Cond. Pres.*, je frirais, etc.; the second person singular of the *Imperf.*, fris; the *Part. Past*, frit, frite.

The tenses of this verb are more generally made up by placing the verb *faire* before the infinitive *frire*: nous faisons frire, vous faites frire.

*Conjugated with the auxiliary avoir.*

### Joindre (=to join).

*Prim. Tenses.* Joindre, joignant, joint, je joins, je joignis.

See *craindre*. *Conjugated with the auxiliary avoir.*

### Lire (=to read).

*Prim. Tenses.* Lire, lisant, lu, je lis, je lus.

*Ind. Pres.* Je lis, tu lis, il lit, nous lisons, vous lisez, ils lisent.

*Imperf.* Je lisais, etc., nous lisions, etc.

*Past Def.* Je lus, etc., nous lûmes, etc.

*Fut.* Je lirai, etc., nous lirons, etc.

*Cond. Pres.* Je lirais, etc., nous lirions, etc.

*Imper.* Lis, lisons, lisez.

*Subj. Pres.* Que je lise, etc., que nous lisions, etc.

*Imperf.* Que je lusse, etc., que nous lussions, etc.

*Infîn.* Lire.

*Part.* Lisant, lu, lue.

*Conjugated with the auxiliary avoir.*

### Luire (=to shine).

*Prim. Tenses.* Luire, luisant, lui, je luis, je luisis.

*Ind. Pres.* Je luis, tu luis, il luit, nous luisons, vous lueisez ils luisent.

*Imperf.* Je luisais, etc., nous luisions, etc.

*Past Def.* Je luisis, etc., nous luisimes, etc.\*

*Fut.* Je luirai, etc., nous luirons, etc.

*Cond. Pres.* Je luirais, etc., nous luirions, etc.

*Imper.* LUIS, luisons, lueisez.

*Subj. Pres.* Que je luisse, etc., que nous luisions, etc.

*Imperf.* Que je luisisse, etc., que nous luisissions etc.

*Infîn.* Luire.

*Part.* Luisant, lui.

*Conjugated with the auxiliary avoir.*

\* This tense, which the *Académie* does not give, is very seldom used. It is to be found in Bossuet.



**Mettre** (=to place, to put).

<i>Prim. Tenses.</i>	Mettre, mettant, mis, je mets, je mis.
<i>Ind. Pres.</i>	Je mets, tu mets, il met, nous mettons, vous mettez, ils mettent.
<i>Imperf.</i>	Je mettais, etc., nous mettions, etc.
<i>Past Def.</i>	Je mis, etc., nous mimes, etc.
<i>Fut.</i>	Je mettrai, etc., nous mettrons, etc.
<i>Cond. Pres.</i>	Je mettrais, etc., nous mettrions, etc.
<i>Imper.</i>	Mets, mettons, mettez.
<i>Subj. Pres.</i>	Que je mette, etc., que nous mettions, etc.
<i>Imperf.</i>	Que je misse, etc., que nous missions, etc.
<i>Infin.</i>	Mettre.
<i>Part.</i>	Mettant, mis, mise.

*Conjugated with the auxiliary avoir.*

**Moudre** (=to grind).

<i>Prim. Tenses.</i>	Moudre, moulant, moulu, je mouds, je moulus.
<i>Ind. Pres.</i>	Je mouds, tu mouds, il moud, nous moulons, vous moulez, ils moulent.
<i>Imperf.</i>	Je moulais, etc., nous moulions, etc.
<i>Past Def.</i>	Je moulus, etc., nous moulûmes, etc.
<i>Fut.</i>	Je moudrai, etc., nous moudrons, etc.
<i>Cond. Pres.</i>	Je moudrais, etc., nous moudrions, etc.
<i>Imper.</i>	Mouds, moulons, moulez.
<i>Subj. Pres.</i>	Que je moule, etc., que nous moulions, etc.
<i>Imperf.</i>	Que je moulusse, etc., que nous moulussions, etc.
<i>Infin.</i>	Moudre.
<i>Part.</i>	Moulant, moulu, moulue.

*Conjugated with the auxiliary avoir.*

**Naitre** (=to be born).

<i>Prim. Tenses.</i>	Naitre, naissant, né, je nais, je naquis.
<i>Ind. Pres.</i>	Je nais, tu nais, il naît, nous naissons, vous naissez, ils naissent.
<i>Imperf.</i>	Je naisais, etc., nous naissions, etc.
<i>Past Def.</i>	Je naquis, etc., nous naquimes, etc.
<i>Fut.</i>	Je naîtrai, etc., nous naîtrons, etc.
<i>Cond. Pres.</i>	Je naîtrais, etc., nous naîtrions, etc.
<i>Imper.</i>	Nais, naissons, naissez.
<i>Subj. Pres.</i>	Que je naisse, etc., que nous naissions, etc.
<i>Imperf.</i>	Que je naquisse, etc., que nous naquissions, etc.
<i>Infin.</i>	Naitre.
<i>Part.</i>	Naissant, né, née.

See *connaître*. *Conjugated with the auxiliary être.*

**Nuire** (=to injure, to be hurtful).

*Prim. Tenses.* Nuire, nuisant, nuï, je nuis, je nuisis.

*Ind. Pres.* Je nuis, tu nuis, il nuit, nous nuisons, vous nuisez, ils nuisent.

*Imperf.* Je nuisais, etc., nous nuisions, etc.

*Past Def.* Je nuisis, etc., nous nuisîmes, etc.

*Fut.* Je nuirai, etc., nous nuirons, etc.

*Cond. Pres.* Je nuirais, etc., nous nuirions, etc.

*Imper.* Nuis, nuisons, nuisez.

*Subj. Pres.* Que je nuise, etc., que nous nuisions, etc.

*Imperf.* Que je nuisisse, etc., que nous nuisissions, etc.

*Injin.* Nuire.

*Part.* Nuisant, nuï.

*Conjugated with the auxiliary avoir.*

**Oindre** (=to anoint).

*Prim. Tenses.* Oindre, oignant, oint, j'oins, j'oignis.

*Ind. Pres.* J'oins, etc., nous oignons, etc.

*Imperf.* J'oignais, etc., nous oignons, etc.

*Past Def.* J'oignis, etc., nous oignîmes, etc.

*Fut.* J'oindrai, etc., nous oindrons, etc.

*Cond. Pres.* J'oindraï, etc., nous oindrions, etc.

*Imper.* Oins, oignons, oignez.

*Subj. Pres.* Que j'oigne, etc., que nous oignons, etc.

*Imperf.* Que j'oignisse, etc., que nous oignissions, etc.

*Injin.* Oindre.

*Part.* Oint, ointe.

*Conjugated with the auxiliary avoir.*

This verb is seldom used, except in the *Pres. Infin.*, the *Participles*, and the *Future*.

**Paitre** (=to graze).

*Prim. Tenses.* Paitre, paissant, —, je pais, —.

*Ind. Pres.* je pais, tu pais, il pâit, nous paissions, vous paisez, ils paissent.

*Imperf.* Je paissais, etc., nous paissions, etc.

*Fut.* Je paîtrai, etc., nous paîtrons, etc.

*Cond. Pres.* Je paîtraï, etc., nous paîtrions, etc.

*Imper.* Pais, paissions, paisez.

*Subj. Pres.* Que je paisse, etc., que nous paissions, etc.

*Infin.* Paitre.

*Part.* Paissant.

This verb has neither *Past Def.*, *Imperf. Subjunctive*, nor *Past Participle*.

**Repaitre** is conjugated like *paître*; but it has both a *Past Def.*: je repus, and a *Past Participle*: repu.

The simple participle **pu** is still used as a term of falconry: un *faucon qui a pu* (=a hawk which has been fed).

**Paraître** (=to appear).

*Prim. Tenses.* Paraître, paraissant. paru, je parais, je parus.  
See *connaître*.

**Peindre** (=to paint).

*Prim. Tenses.* Peindre, peignant, peint, je peins, je peignis.  
See *craindre*.

**Plaire** (=to please).

*Prim. Tenses.* Plaire, plaisant, plu, je plais, je plus.

*Ind. Pres.* Je plais, tu plais, il plaît, nous plaisons, vous plaisez, ils plaisent.

*Imperf.* Je plaisais, etc., nous plaisions, etc.

*Past Def.* Je plus, etc., nous plûmes, etc.

*Fut.* Je plairai, etc., nous plairons, etc.

*Cond. Pres.* Je plairais, etc., nous plairions, etc.

*Imper.* Plais, plaisons, plaisez.

*Subj. Pres.* Que je plaise, etc., que nous plaisions, etc.

*Imperf.* Que je pusse, etc., que nous plussions, etc.

*Infin.* Plaire.

*Part.* Plaisant, plu.

*Conjugated with the auxiliary avoir.*

**Prendre** (=to take).

*Prim. Tenses.* Prendre, prenant, pris, je prends, je pris.

*Ind. Pres.* Je prends, tu prends, il prend, nous prenons, vous prenez, ils prennent.

*Imperf.* Je prenais, etc., nous prenions, etc.

*Past Def.* Je pris, etc., nous primes, etc.

*Fut.* Je prendrai, etc., nous prendrons, etc.

*Cond. Pres.* Je prendrais, etc., nous prendrions, etc.

*Imper.* Prends, prenons, prenez.

*Subj. Pres.* Que je prenne, etc., que nous prenions, que vous preniez, qu'ils prennent.

*Imperf.* Que je prisse, etc., que nous prissions, etc.

*Infin.* Prendre.

*Part.* Prenant, pris, prise.

*Conjugated with the auxiliary avoir.*

**Résoudre** (=to resolve).

<i>Prim. Tenses.</i>	Résoudre, résolvant, résolu, je résous, je résclus.
<i>Ind. Pres.</i>	Je résous, tu résous, il résout, nous résolvons, vous résolvez, ils résolvent.
<i>Imperf.</i>	Je résolvais, etc., nous résolvions, etc.
<i>Past Def.</i>	Je résolus, etc., nous résolûmes, etc.
<i>Fut.</i>	Je résoudrai, etc., nous résoudrons, etc.
<i>Cond. Pres.</i>	Je résoudrais, etc., nous résoudrions, etc.
<i>Imper.</i>	Résous, résolvons, résolvez.
<i>Subj. Pres.</i>	Que je résolve, etc., que nous résolvions, etc.
<i>Imperf.</i>	Que je résolusse, etc., que nous résolussions, etc.
<i>Injin.</i>	Résoudre.
<i>Part.</i>	Résolvant, résolu, résolue: <i>or</i> résous; we still say, <i>brouillard résous en pluie</i> (= a fog resolved into rain).

*Conjugated with the auxiliary avoir.*

**Rire** (=to laugh).

<i>Prim. Tenses.</i>	Rire, riant, ri, je ris, je ris
<i>Ind. Pres.</i>	Je ris, tu ris, il rit, nous rions, vous riez, ils rient.
<i>Imperf.</i>	Je riais, etc., nous riions, etc.
<i>Past Def.</i>	Je ris, etc., nous rîmes, etc.
<i>Fut.</i>	Je rirai, etc., nous rirons, etc.
<i>Cond. Pres.</i>	Je rirais, etc., nous ririons, etc.
<i>Imper.</i>	Ris, rions, riez.
<i>Subj. Pres.</i>	Que je rie, que tu ries, qu'il rie, que nous riions, que vous riez, qu'ils rient.
<i>Imperf.</i>	Que je risse, etc., que nous rissions, etc.
<i>Injin.</i>	Rire.
<i>Part.</i>	Riant, ri.

*Conjugated with the auxiliary avoir.*

**Suivre** (=to follow).

<i>Prim. Tenses.</i>	Suivre, suivant, suivi, je suis, je suivis.
<i>Ind. Pres.</i>	Je suis, tu suis, il suit, nous suivons, vous suivez, ils suivent.
<i>Imperf.</i>	Je suivais, etc., nous suivions, etc.
<i>Past Def.</i>	Je suivis, etc., nous suivîmes, etc.
<i>Fut.</i>	Je suivrai, etc., nous suivrons, etc.
<i>Cond. Pres.</i>	Je suivrais, nous suivrions, etc.
<i>Imper.</i>	Suis, suivons, suivez.
<i>Subj. Pres.</i>	Que je suive, etc., que nous suivions, etc.
<i>Imperf.</i>	Que je suivisse, etc., que nous suivissions, etc.
<i>Injin.</i>	Suivre.
<i>Part.</i>	Suivant, suivi, suivie.

*Conjugated with the auxiliary avoir.*

**Taire** (=to keep silent, to conceal).

*Prim. Tenses.* Taire, taisant, tû, je tais, je tus.

See *plaire*. Conjugated with the auxiliary *avoir*.

**Se taire** (=to hold one's tongue), being a reflexive verb, is conjugated with *être* in its compound tenses.

**Traire** (=to milk).

*Prim. Tenses.* Traire, trayant, trait, je traie, ~~no Past. Def.~~

*Ind. Pres.* Je traie, tu traies, il traite, nous trayons, vous trayez, ils traient.

*Imperf.* Je trayais, etc., nous trayions, etc.

*Fut.* Je trairai, etc., nous trairons, etc.

*Cond. Pres.* Je trairais, etc., nous trairions, etc.

*Imper.* Traie, trayons, trayez.

*Subj. Pres.* Que je traie, etc., que nous trayions, que vous trayiez, qu'ils traient.

*Inf.* Traire.

*Part.* Trayant, trait, traite.

This verb has neither *Past Def.*, nor *Imperf. Subj.*

Conjugated with the auxiliary *avoir*.

**Vaincre** (=to conquer).

*Prim. Tenses.* Vaincre, vainquant, vaincu, je vains, je vainquis.

*Ind. Pres.* Je vains, tu vains, il vainc, nous vainquons, vous vainquez, ils vainquent.

*Imperf.* Je vainquais, etc., nous vainquions, etc.

*Past Def.* Je vainquis, etc., nous vainquîmes, etc.

*Fut.* Je vaincrai, etc., nous vaincrons, etc.

*Cond. Pres.* Je vaincrais, etc., nous vaincristions, etc.

*Imper.* Vains, vainquons, vainquez.

*Subj. Pres.* Que je vaille, etc., que nous vainquions, etc.

*Imperf.* Que je vainquisse, etc., que nous vainquissions, etc.

*Inf.* Vaincre.

*Part.* Vainquant, vaincu, vaincue.

Conjugated with the auxiliary *avoir*.

**Vivre** (=to live).

*Prim. Tenses.* Vivre, vivant, vécu, je vis, je vécus.

*Ind. Pres.* Je vis, tu vis, il vit, nous vivons, vous vivez, ils vivent.

*Imperf.* Je vivais, etc., nous vivions, etc.

*Past Def.* Je vécus, etc., nous vécûmes, etc.

*Fut.* Je vivrai, etc., nous vivrons, etc.

<i>Cond. Pres.</i>	Je vivrais, etc., nous vivrions, etc.
<i>Imper.</i>	Vis, vivons, vivez.
<i>Subj. Pres.</i>	Que je vive, etc., que nous vivions, etc.
<i>Imperf.</i>	Que je vécusse, etc., que nous véussions, etc.
<i>Injin.</i>	Vivre.
<i>Part.</i>	Vivant, vécu.

Conjugated with the auxiliary **avoir**.

### QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. What is the difference between an irregular and a defective verb?</li> <li>2. Give the future of <i>mener</i>, and the indicative present of <i>appeler</i>.</li> <li>3. Give the present participle of <i>effacer</i>, and the past participle of <i>percer</i>.</li> <li>4. Write the imperfect of <i>venger</i>, the past participle of <i>bénir</i>, and the future of <i>aller</i> and <i>envoyer</i>.</li> <li>5. Write the following verbs in the subjunctive present:—<i>acquérir</i>, <i>bouillir</i>, <i>courir</i>, <i>cueillir</i>.</li> <li>6. Write the following verbs in the</li> </ol> | <p>future:—<i>mourir</i>, <i>saillir</i>, <i>tenter</i>, <i>venir</i>, <i>braire</i>.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>7. Write the following verbs in the indicative present:—<i>dormir</i>, <i>faillir</i>, <i>gésir</i>.</li> <li>8. Write the following verbs in the conditional:—<i>asseoir</i>, <i>seoir</i>, <i>échoir</i>, <i>falloir</i>, <i>mouvoir</i>, <i>pleuvoir</i>, <i>pouvoir</i>, <i>choir</i>, <i>savoir</i>, <i>valoir</i>, <i>voir</i>, <i>rouloir</i>.</li> <li>9. Write the following verbs in the indicative present, and past definite:—<i>coudre</i>, <i>dire</i>, <i>éclore</i>, <i>faire frîre</i>, <i>naître</i>, <i>prendre</i>, <i>résoudre</i>, <i>traire</i>, <i>vaincre</i>.</li> </ol> |
|---|---|

### Exercise 34.

#### Première conjugaison.

1. Je vais à la poste. 2. Vas-tu lire ce livre? 3. Ce cheval ne va pas vite. 4. Ne vont-ils pas tous les jours à leur bureau? 5. J'irai dimanche matin à l'église. 6. N'iriez-vous pas au concert? 7. Ne croyez pas que j'aille à Paris l'été prochain. 8. Je ne voudrais pas qu'il allât se compromettre. 9. Quand m'enverrez-vous mon argent? 10. Nous vous enverrions ces livres si nous les avions. 11. Je me lève tous les matins à six heures. 12. J'achèterais cette maison de campagne. 13. Il m'appellera quand il sera prêt. 14. Traçons un tableau complet de la situation. 15. En rangeant ma bibliothèque, j'ai trouvé votre lettre.

<sup>1</sup> morcean (*m.*), <sup>2</sup> penser, <sup>3</sup> se lever, <sup>4</sup> de bonne heure, <sup>5</sup> tous les matins, <sup>6</sup> bureau, (*m.*), <sup>7</sup> menacer, <sup>8</sup> revue (*f.*), <sup>9</sup> achever, <sup>10</sup> cacheter.

1. I shall send you some books. 2. Would you go to the concert? 3. Let us eat a piece<sup>1</sup> of bread. 4. I do not think<sup>2</sup> that he gets up<sup>3</sup> early.<sup>4</sup> 5. This child goes to (the) school every morning.<sup>5</sup> 6. Will you go to your office<sup>6</sup>? 7. Let us threaten<sup>7</sup> him. 8. He will call you to-morrow. 9. We went yesterday to see a review.<sup>8</sup> 10. You would send too little (of) money. 11. That they might protect that bad man. 12. Finish<sup>9</sup> this book. 13. That he may seal<sup>10</sup> the letter.

**Seconde conjugaison.**

1. Béni soit-il pour toute sa générosité. 2. J'ai mangé du pain bénit. 3. Les sciences et les arts florissaient sous le règne de Louis XIV. 4. Nous haïssons les méchants, mais il hait les hommes vertueux. 5. Il acquiert de jour en jour plus de réputation. 6. Nous accourûmes à sa voix. 7. Ci-git le meilleur des rois. 8. Je me suis enquis de votre ami partout. 9. Il fuirait les flatteurs. 10. Cueillerai-je ces jolies fleurs? 11. Croyez-vous qu'il m'en offrit, si j'allais le voir? 12. Je me meurs. 13. Les forces lui défaillent. 14. Il mourut de chagrin. 15. J'ai très-bien dormi. 16. Je requiers votre secours. 17. Faites bouillir un peu d'eau. 18. Je pars ce soir pour la France. 19. Vous ressentiriez les effets de sa colère. 20. Il ne concourra pas pour ce prix. 21. Avez-vous ouï dire qu'il mente jamais? 22. Il viendra si vous le souffrez.

<sup>1</sup> consentir, <sup>2</sup> mariage (*m*), <sup>3</sup> pressentir, <sup>4</sup> malheur (*m.*), <sup>5</sup> malade, <sup>6</sup> dormir, <sup>7</sup> mourir, <sup>8</sup> l'année dernière, <sup>9</sup> assaillir, <sup>10</sup> retranchement (*m.*), <sup>11</sup> se vêtir, <sup>12</sup> tres-saillir, <sup>13</sup> de, <sup>14</sup> requérir, <sup>15</sup> ronvrir, <sup>16</sup> malle (*f.*), <sup>17</sup> entr'ouvrir, <sup>18</sup> obtenir, <sup>19</sup> dis-convenir de, <sup>20</sup> dit, <sup>21</sup> devenir, <sup>22</sup> haïr, <sup>23</sup> gésir, <sup>24</sup> pays (*m.*), <sup>25</sup> bénir, <sup>26</sup> prêtre, <sup>27</sup> pendant.

1. I consent<sup>1</sup> to the marriage<sup>2</sup> of my son. 2. I apprehend<sup>3</sup> some misfortunes.<sup>4</sup> 3. The patient<sup>5</sup> slept<sup>6</sup> very well yesterday. 4. He died<sup>7</sup> last year.<sup>8</sup> 5. Shall we not assault<sup>9</sup> the enemy tomorrow in his intrenchments<sup>10</sup>? 6. That you might clothe yourself<sup>11</sup> a little better. 7. That she might start<sup>12</sup> with<sup>13</sup> fear. 8. He would request<sup>14</sup> a favour from you. 9. I shall open again<sup>17</sup> that trunk.<sup>16</sup> 10. They would half open<sup>17</sup> the window. 11. I shall obtain<sup>18</sup> the consent of my parents. 12. I disowned<sup>19</sup> what he said.<sup>20</sup> 13. Would you not become<sup>21</sup> learned if you worked a little more? 14. We hate<sup>22</sup> (the) hypocrites. 15. Here lies<sup>23</sup> a man who has served his country<sup>24</sup> with zeal. 16. This water has been consecrated<sup>25</sup> by the priest.<sup>26</sup> 17. (The) commerce flourished (*imperfect*) in our country during<sup>27</sup> his reign.

**Troisième conjugaison.**

1. Tu ne vaux pas mieux que ton frère. 2. C'est un ressort très-ingénieux qui meut la machine. 3. Il faut pratiquer la vertu si l'on veut être heureux. 4. Nous pouvons vous être utiles. 5. Vous ne savez pas votre leçon. 6. Il pleuvait hier. 7. Vous prévaliez sur nous. 8. Nous prévîmes toutes les conséquences de cette affaire. 9. Ils s'assirent sur le pont du navire. 10. Vous pourvûtes à la sûreté de la ville. 11. Cette robe vous sied à merveille.

12. Vous verrez mieux d'ici. 13. Cette réponse équivaldrait à un refus. 14. Je ne pense pas qu'il faille lui demander pardon. 15. Qu'ils sachent que je ne les oublie pas. 16. Si je pouvais lui parler, j'obtiendrais ce que je demande. 17. Cette lettre de change écherra lundi. 18. Je crains qu'il ne pleuve. 19. Elle émut le cœur de cet homme insensible.

<sup>1</sup> valoir, <sup>2</sup> guinée, <sup>3</sup> seoir, <sup>4</sup> vouloir, <sup>5</sup> émouvoir, <sup>6</sup> il faut, <sup>7</sup> savoir, <sup>8</sup> chemin (*m.*), <sup>9</sup> grand, <sup>10</sup> prévoir, <sup>11</sup> pourvoir, <sup>12</sup> à, <sup>13</sup> besoin (*m.*), <sup>14</sup> chaise (*f.*), <sup>15</sup> équivaloir, <sup>16</sup> insulte (*f.*), <sup>17</sup> prévaloir, <sup>18</sup> lettre de change, <sup>19</sup> échoir, <sup>20</sup> falloir, <sup>21</sup> proposition (*f.*).

1. This horse is worth<sup>1</sup> two hundred guineas.<sup>2</sup> 2. Has he moved the spring of the machine? 3. We shall see if this dress becomes<sup>3</sup> (to) her. 4. If you wish<sup>4</sup> to move<sup>5</sup> the heart of that unfeeling man, you must<sup>6</sup> be useful to him. 5. It was raining yesterday. 6. You will not know<sup>7</sup> your way<sup>8</sup> in this large<sup>9</sup> town. 7. Did you foresee<sup>10</sup> the consequences of the battle? 8. I shall provide<sup>11</sup> for<sup>12</sup> your wants.<sup>13</sup> 9. Sit down, gentlemen, here are some chairs.<sup>14</sup> 10. Do you think that his answer is equivalent<sup>15</sup> to an insult<sup>16</sup>? 11. I shall prevail<sup>17</sup> upon him. 12. When will your bill<sup>18</sup> fall due? <sup>19</sup> 13. We did not suppose that it was necessary<sup>20</sup> to accept his proposal.<sup>21</sup> 14. These colours will never become you. 15. He knows his lesson wonderfully well. 16. Do you see this magnificent landscape?

#### Quatrième conjugaison.

1. Je buvais un verre d'eau. 2. Il écrivit à ses enfants. 3. Croyez-vous qu'il comprenne votre remarque? 4. Je ferai tout mon possible pour vous servir. 5. S'il vous connaissait mieux, il vous croirait. 6. Permettez-moi de vous accompagner chez vous. 7. Je désirerais que vous lussiez ce bel ouvrage. 8. Ces enfants souriaient. 9. Ils se plurent beaucoup dans votre société. 10. Je veux qu'il prenne un parti énergique. 11. Je le suivrais partout. 12. Nous apprendrions ces règles avec facilité. 13. Il vécut heureux et mourut à un âge avancé. 14. Ils trayaient leurs vaches. 15. Il me nuisit dans toutes les occasions. 16. Pourquoi n'absoudrions-nous pas ce pauvre homme? 17. Il défit les ennemis à deux reprises différentes. 18. Ils abattirent le mur. 19. Ne déplurent-ils pas à leur maître? 20. Poursuis ton chemin. 21. Faites votre devoir. 22. Ils se repurent de chimères. 23. Cet arbre croîtrait rapidement s'il était arrosé. 24. Il éteignit les chandelles. 25. Ne plaignaient-ils pas vos malheurs? 26. Ils disparurent bientôt. 27. Enjoignez-lui de terminer cette affaire.



<sup>1</sup>boire, <sup>2</sup>écrire, <sup>3</sup>croire, <sup>4</sup>comprendre, <sup>5</sup>suivre, <sup>6</sup>à travers, <sup>7</sup>tous les, <sup>8</sup>abattre, <sup>9</sup>absoudre, <sup>10</sup>disparaître, <sup>11</sup>croître. <sup>12</sup>se plaindre, <sup>13</sup>se repaître de, <sup>14</sup>chimère (*f.*), <sup>15</sup>vivre, <sup>16</sup>défaire, <sup>17</sup>aucun, <sup>18</sup>atteindre, <sup>19</sup>balle (*f.*), <sup>20</sup>traire, <sup>21</sup>vache, <sup>22</sup>sourire, <sup>23</sup>éteindre, <sup>24</sup>lampe (*f.*), <sup>25</sup>joindre, <sup>26</sup>réduire, <sup>27</sup>reconduire, <sup>28</sup>feindre, <sup>29</sup>enfreindre, <sup>30</sup>naître, <sup>31</sup>sujet, <sup>32</sup>se dédire de, <sup>33</sup>coudre, <sup>34</sup>traduire, <sup>35</sup>se résoudre à, <sup>36</sup>plaindre, <sup>37</sup>émoudre, <sup>38</sup>légume (*m.*), <sup>39</sup>confire, <sup>40</sup>vinaigre.

1. I never drink <sup>1</sup>wine. 2. Have you written <sup>2</sup>to your father? 3. I thought <sup>3</sup>that you understood <sup>4</sup>me. 4. I shall follow <sup>5</sup>him through <sup>6</sup>every <sup>7</sup>obstacle. 5. They were felling <sup>8</sup>a tree. 6. I absolve <sup>9</sup>you. 7. When did he disappear <sup>10</sup>? 8. These trees have grown <sup>11</sup>a great deal lately. 9. I shall complain <sup>12</sup>of you. 10. Do not feed on <sup>13</sup>idle dreams. <sup>14</sup> 11. This stupid poem will never live. <sup>15</sup> 12. I shall defeat <sup>16</sup>the enemy without any <sup>17</sup>difficulty. 13. He has been struck <sup>18</sup>by a bullet. <sup>19</sup> 14. I do not believe you. 15. Have you milked <sup>20</sup>the cows <sup>21</sup>? 16. He is always smiling. <sup>22</sup> 17. Put out <sup>23</sup>the lamp. <sup>24</sup> 18. If you join <sup>25</sup>your efforts, you will succeed. 19. Would he drive <sup>26</sup>you to (the) despair? 20. I shall take you back <sup>27</sup>in my carriage. 21. He pretended <sup>28</sup>to be ill. 22. Will they not infringe <sup>29</sup>the laws? 23. We are born <sup>30</sup>liable <sup>31</sup>to many (of) infirmities. 24. We would withdraw <sup>32</sup>our accusation. 25. They will sew <sup>33</sup>on this button. 26. She translated <sup>34</sup>her letter. 27. Let them resolve <sup>35</sup>to suffer much. 28. That they may pity <sup>36</sup>his fall. 29. I have ground <sup>37</sup>your knives. 30. These vegetables <sup>38</sup>are pickled <sup>39</sup>in (some) vinegar. <sup>40</sup>

## SECTION X.

## FORMATION OF THE VERBS.

**177.** New French verbs are formed by placing before them: 1. a noun: **maintenir** (=to maintain [properly *tenir avec la main* =to hold with the hand]);—2. an adjective employed adverbially or an adverb: **mal traiter, traiter mal** (=to ill-use);—3. a prefix: **défaire dé..** and **faire** (=to undo); **surmonter, sur** and **monter** (=to surmount).

The most important of the prefixes are the following: 1. **contre** (=against), **dire, contredire** (=to say, to contradict); **signer, contresigner** (=to sign, to countersign); 2. **entre** (=between), **voir, entrevoir** (=to see, to have a glimpse of); **ouvrir, entr'ouvrir** (=to open, to half-open); **aider, s'entr'aider**, (=to help, to help one another); **dévoré, s'entre-dévore**

(=to devour, to devour one another); 3. **bien** (=well), *faire, bienfaire* (=to do, to do good); 4. **mal** (=ill), *traiter, maltraiter* (=to treat, to ill-treat); *mener, mal-mener* (=to lead, to treat roughly); 5. **més**, prefix of depreciation, Eng. *mis, allier, mésallier* (=to match, to mis-match); *user, mésuser* (=to use, to misuse); 6. **re**, prefix of return and repetition, *changer, rechanger* (=to change, to change over again); *venir, revenir* (=to come, to come again); *blanchir, reblanchir* (=to whiten, to whiten over again); 7. **sur** (=above, over), *mener, surmener* (=to drive, to overdrive); *chauffer, surchauffer* (=to heat, to overheat); this prefix implies excess.

New verbs are moreover formed in French by adding to substantives the termination **er** of the first conjugation. Thus *barricade* (=a barricade), *fourrage* (=forage), *chemin* (=path, road), *crayon* (=pencil), *frisson* (=shudder), give *barricader, fourrager, cheminer, crayonner, frissonner* (=to barricade, to forage, to journey, to sketch, to shudder). But the most recent words are generally formed with the termination **iser**: *germaniser, napoléoniser, bonapartiser* (=to make German, to win over to the cause of Napoleon or Bonaparte).

**178.** The French language makes up new verbs from *adjectives*, sometimes by the addition of the termination **ir**: *jaune, bleu, gros* (=yellow, blue, big), give *jaunir, bleuir, grossir* (=to become yellow, blue, big); sometimes by adding the termination **ir** and prefixing **a**: *grand, a-grand-ir* (=great, to enlarge), *mince, a-mince-ir* (=thin, to make thin), *maigre, a-maigr-ir* (=lean, to become or make lean), etc.

**179.** The French language creates new verbs with the help of *verbs* already existing, by introducing the three diminutive suffixes: **ot, on, asse**, which give to the words a depreciative sense: *cligner, clign-ot-er* (=to wink, to wink repeatedly); *trembler, trembl-ot-er* (=to tremble, to shiver); *chanter, chant-onn-er* (=to sing, to hum); *griffer, griff-onn-er* (=to scratch, to scribble); *rêver, rêv-ass-er* (=to dream, to muse).

SECTION XI.

**RULES FOR THE AGREEMENT OF THE VERB WITH ITS SUBJECT.**

**180.** Every verb must be in the same number and person as its subject: *Je lis* (=I read), *vous chantez* (=you sing).

*Lis* is in the first person singular, because its subject *je* is in the first person singular; *chantez* is in the second person plural, because its subject *vous* is in the second person plural.

**181.** When a verb has two subjects in the singular, it is put in the plural: *Paul et Marie lisent* (=Paul and Mary read).

**182.** When the subjects are of different persons, the verb is put in the first, if there is a pronoun of the first person in the sentence, otherwise it is put in the second: *vous, lui et moi, nous sommes heureux* (=you, he, and I, we are happy); *vous et lui, vous êtes sages* (=you and he are wise). The pronoun *nous* or *vous* is generally expressed before the verb.

QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. How are new verbs formed in French?</li> <li>2. Give a list of the prefixes used in connection with the verb.</li> <li>3. Write a list of suffixes added to the substantive;—to the adjective.</li> <li>4. Name a few diminutive verbs.</li> </ol> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>5. How does the verb agree with its subject?</li> <li>6. In what number is the verb put when there are two subjects?</li> <li>7. In what person is the verb put when the subjects are of different persons?</li> </ol> |
|--|---|

**Exercise 35.**

1. Form new verbs from the following ones, preceded with: (1) a noun (*main*); 2. an adverb (*mal*); 3. a prefix (a. *contre*; b. *entre*; c. *re*; d. *sur*): 1. *tenir*; 2. *mener, traiter, verser*; 3. (a) *dire, faire, carrer*; (b) *prendre, larder, mettre*; (c) *lancer, trancher, vêtir, voir, prendre*; (d) *veiller, seoir, nager, passer, prendre*.

2. Form new verbs of the first conjugation from the following substantives: *ménage, chant, apostrophe, cri*.

3. Form new verbs of the second conjugation (a) from the following adjectives: *bleu, jaune, gros, rouge, sale, verd* (old

spelling of *vert*); (b) from the following adjectives, together with the prefix *a*: *maigre, mince, faible, fade, doux, brute*.

4. Form new verbs from the following ones by placing between the stem and the ending one of the suffixes: (a) *ot*, (b) *on*, (c) *asse*; (a) *cligner, taper*; (b) *chanter, griffer*; (c) *rêver*.

Give in every case the English meaning of the verb, and write out the verbs in the following tenses:—

1. Subjunctive present, conditional past, perfect definite;
2. Indicative present, imperfect subjunctive, conditional present;
3. Future anterior, imperative, imperfect indicative;
4. Pluperfect subjunctive, past anterior, pluperfect indicative.

## CHAPTER VI.

### OF THE PARTICIPLE.

**183.** The participle is a word which *participates* at once in the nature of the verb, because it marks a tense: **lisant, ayant lu** (=reading, having read); and in that of the adjective, because it can serve to qualify a noun: *un homme charmant* (=a charming man), *une romance chantée* (=a ballad sung).

*Participe* comes from the Latin accusative *participem* (=that which takes a part, which participates).

**184.** There are two kinds of participles, the *participle present* and the *participle past*.

The present participle marks an action, and is always invariable: *il est doux de voir des enfants aimant leur mère et lui obéissant avec empressement* (=it is pleasant to see children loving their mother and obeying her with eagerness).

The same word becomes an adjective when it expresses the quality of a person or thing, in which case it agrees with the noun: *ces enfants sont aimants et obéissants* (=these children are affectionate and obedient).

**185.** When the present participle is employed as an adjective, it agrees in gender and number with the noun to which it refers: *un homme aimant* (=an affectionate man), *des eaux courantes* (=running waters).

**136.** The same rule applies to the past participle : *un roi honoré* (=an honoured king), *une maison meublée* (=a furnished house), *des champs cultivés* (=cultivated fields).

### QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. What is a <i>participle</i>? Explain the meaning of the word.</li> <li>2. How many kinds of participles are there?</li> <li>3. When is the present participle invariable?</li> </ol> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>4. How can the present participle be distinguished from the adjective?</li> <li>5. State the rule of agreement for the present participle used as an adjective.</li> <li>6. What is the rule of agreement for the past participle?</li> </ol> |
|--|--|

### Exercise 36.

1. Un père obligeant. 2. Une demoiselle obligeante. 3. Cette femme est obligeante, prévenant tout le monde. 4. Des rumeurs alarmant la ville entière. 5. La plainte de ce pauvre esclave est touchante. 6. Une porte battante. 7. Des jeunes gens prévenants. 8. Une attitude suppliante. 9. Un ouvrage terminé. 10. Des fleurs arrachées de leur tige. 11. Des fruits cueillis.

<sup>1</sup> bruit (*m.*), <sup>2</sup> alarmer, <sup>3</sup> obliger, <sup>4</sup> offre (*f.*), <sup>5</sup> en, <sup>6</sup> mériter, <sup>7</sup> flétrir, <sup>8</sup> chaleur (*f.*) <sup>9</sup> composer, <sup>10</sup> vivre, <sup>11</sup> obéir, <sup>12</sup> billet (*m.*), <sup>13</sup> supplier, <sup>14</sup> offensant.

1. These rumours<sup>1</sup> are alarming.<sup>2</sup> 2. An obliging<sup>3</sup> offer.<sup>4</sup> 3. By<sup>5</sup> obliging your friends, you will deserve<sup>6</sup> their friendship. 4. The flowers have been withered<sup>7</sup> by the heat.<sup>8</sup> 5. (The) society is composed<sup>9</sup> of men living<sup>10</sup> under the same laws. 6. Pupils obeying<sup>11</sup> (to) their master. 7. A finished house. 8. My two notes<sup>12</sup> are written. 9. A mother loving her children. 10. Slaves entreating<sup>13</sup> the judge. 11. Offensive words.<sup>14</sup>

## CHAPTER VII.

### OF THE ADVERB.

**137.** The **adverb** is a word which serves to modify the significations of the verb, the adjective, or another adverb : *Le cheval court vite* (=the horse runs fast), *cette rose est très-belle* (=this rose is very beautiful), *cet enfant marche très-lentement* (=that child walks very slowly).

*Adverb* comes from the Latin *adverbium*, which means *near the verb*, because that word is usually placed near the verb.

**188.** There are in French eight kinds of adverbs: the adverbs of *place*, of *time*, of *manner*, of *quantity*, of *interrogation*, of *affirmation*, of *negation*, and of *doubt*.

**189.** The principal **adverbs of place** are: *ici* (=here), *là* (=there), *y* (=here or there), *où* (=where), *en* (=in), *loin* (=far), *ailleurs* (=elsewhere), *deçà* (=on this side), *delà* (=on that side), *partout* (=everywhere), *çà* (=here), *dessus* (=above), *dessous* (=beneath), *dedans* (=within), *dehors* (=without), *devant* (=before), *derrière* (=behind), etc. *Je partirai d'ici pour aller partout où tu voudras* (=I shall start from hence to go wherever thou wilt), *restez là* (=remain there), *allons ailleurs* (=let us go elsewhere).

Adverbs of place are either expressed by one word, as *là*, *y*, *où*, *en*; or compounded of two, as *dedans* (from *de* and *dans*), *partout* (from *par* and *tout*), *dessous* (from *de* and *sous*).

**190.** The principal **adverbs of time** are: *quand* (=when), *puis* (=then), *depuis* (=since), *souvent* (=often), *toujours* (=always), *maintenant* (=now), *jamais* (=ever), *aujourd'hui* (=to-day), *demain* (=to-morrow), *hier* (=yesterday), *jadis* (=formerly), *lors*, *alors* (=then), *longtemps* (=for a long time), *enfin* (=at last), etc. *J'irai demain et aussi souvent que tu le voudras* (=I shall go to-morrow, and as often as thou wilt).

These adverbs are either expressed by a single word, as *hier*, *lors*, *quand*, *puis*; or compounded of two words, as *longtemps* (from *long* and *temps*), *aussitôt* (from *aussi* and *tôt*), *ensuite* (from *en* and *suite*).

**191.** The **adverbs of manner** are formed by adding the termination **ment** to a feminine adjective: *Il mourut courageusement*, i.e., *il mourut d'une manière courageuse* (=he died courageously); *il vécut sagement*, i.e., *il vécut d'une manière sage* (=he lived wisely).

#### EXCEPTIONS :

A. If the feminine adjective ends with two vowels, the last one is cut off. *hardie* (=bold), *hardiment* (=boldly).

B. The following adjectives form their adverbs by placing an **acute accent** over the **e** preceding the termination **-ment**:—

<i>aveugle</i> = blind	<i>aveuglément</i> = blindly
<i>commun</i> = common	<i>communément</i> = commonly
<i>conforme</i> = conformable	<i>conformément</i> = conformably
<i>confus</i> = confused	<i>confusément</i> = confusedly
<i>diffus</i> = diffuse	<i>diffusément</i> = diffusely
<i>énorme</i> = enormous	<i>énormément</i> = enormously
<i>express</i> = express	<i>expressément</i> = expressly
<i>immense</i> = immense	<i>immensément</i> = immensely
<i>impuni</i> = unpunished	<i>impunément</i> = with impunity
<i>obscur</i> = dark	<i>obscurément</i> = darkly
<i>opiniâtre</i> = obstinate	<i>opiniâtrément</i> = obstinately
<i>précis</i> = precise	<i>précisément</i> = precisely
<i>profond</i> = deep	<i>profondément</i> = deeply
<i>uniforme</i> = uniform	<i>uniformément</i> = uniformly.

N.B.—The **è** open of the feminine adjective *complète* (=complete) becomes **é** close in the adverb *complètement* (=completely).

C. *Brièvement* (=briefly) and *traîtreusement* (=treacherously), commonly used as the adverbs of the adjectives *bref* (=short), and *traître* (=treacherous), are formed in the regular manner from the old feminine adjectives *brève* and *traîtreuse*.

D. The final **l** of *gentil* (=pretty) not being pronounced, the adverb is spelt *gentiment* (=prettily).

192. The adjectives ending in **ent**, **ant** form their adverbs in **emment**, **amment**: *prudent* (=prudent), *prudemment* (=prudently); *obligeant* (=obliging), *obligeamment* (=obligingly).

#### EXCEPTIONS :—

A. *Lent* (=slow) and *véhément* (=vehement, violent) form their adverbs *lentement* (=slowly), *véhétement* (=vehemently), according to the general rule. (See § 191.)

B. The adverbs *notamment* (=especially), *nuitamment* (=by night), and *sciemment* (=knowingly), were formed from the Old French adjectives *notant*, *nuitant*, and *sciant*, which are now obsolete.

**193.** Adverbs of quality are also formed in French by the occasional use of the *simple adjective*: *chanter juste* (=to sing in tune), *voir clair* (=to see distinctly), *parler bas* (=to speak in a low voice), etc.

**194.** The adverbs of manner in *ment* have, like their corresponding adjectives, the three degrees of comparison: *clairement*, **plus clairement**, **très-clairement**.

The *adjectives* employed as adverbs of quality have likewise the three degrees of comparison: *chanter juste*, **plus juste**, **très-juste**.

The adverbs of quality, **bien**, **mal**, form their degrees of comparison irregularly: **bien** makes *mieux* in the comparative, *le mieux* in the superlative relative, and *très-bien* in the superlative absolute; **mal** makes *pis* or *plus mal* in the comparative, and *le pis* in the superlative relative, or *très-mal* in the superlative absolute.

In the same way, the adverbs *loin* (=far), *près* (=near), *tôt* (=soon), *tard* (=late), *vite* (=quickly), *volontiers* (=willingly), make **plus loin**, **très-loin**, **plus près**, **très-près**, etc.

NOTE.—Adverbs are generally placed after the verb: *Il parle clairement* (=he speaks clearly).

**195.** The principal **adverbs of quantity** are *assez* (=enough), *trop* (=too much), *peu* (=little), *beaucoup* (=much), *très* (=very), *tant* (=so much), etc.

N.B.—*Peu* makes *moins* in the comparative, *le moins* in the superlative relative, and *très-peu* in the superlative absolute.

Adverbs of quantity generally take **de** after them. *Très*, *environ*, *davantage* are exceptions; *bien* requires **des**.

**196.** The principal **adverbs of interrogation** are: *pourquoi* (=why), *comment* (=how), *quand* (=when), *combien* (=how much), etc.

**197.** The principal **adverbs of affirmation** are: *oui* (=yes), *certes* (=certainly), *vraiment* (=truly), etc.

*Oui* was *oïl* in the Old French (see Introduction, p. 3). This *oïl* had for its corresponding negative expression *nenil*, which has become in modern French *nenni*, just as *oïl* has become *oui*.

**198.** The principal **adverbs of negation** are: *non*, *ne*, *pas*, *goutte*, *personne*, *rien*, etc.: **non**, **je ne veux pas** (=no, I will not).



The French have really only two adverbs of negation: *non* and *ne*; the other words, such as *pas*, *point*, *goutte*, are mere substantives: *un pas* (=a step), *un point* (=a point), *une goutte* (=a drop), used adverbially as terms of comparison. Every one knows that, in order to give greater strength to the expression of our judgments, we readily support them by a comparison: *pauvre comme Job* (=as poor as Job), *fort comme un lion* (=as strong as a lion), *féroce comme un tigre* (=as fierce as a tigre), etc.; or by using an estimation: *Cet objet ne vaut pas un sou* (=this object is not worth a penny). In like manner, the adverbial locutions *pas*, *mie*, *goutte*, *point*, etc., were originally employed in a matter-of-fact manner—they were placed, we mean, in a comparison where they had a distinctive signification: *Je ne marche pas* (=I do not walk a step), *je ne vois point* (=I do not see a point), *je ne mange mie* (=I do not eat a crumb), *je ne bois goutte* (=I do not drink a drop), etc.

**199.** The principal adverbs of doubt are: *peut-être* (=perhaps), *probablement* (=probably): *Il sera probablement ici demain* (=he will probably be here to-morrow).

*Peut-être* is elliptical for *cela peut être*, and this accounts for the fact that it can be followed by *que*: *Peut-être que je viendrai*, i.e. *cela peut être que je viendrai* (=it may be that I shall come).

**200.** A combination of words having the force of an adverb is called an adverbial locution. Thus: *à l'envi* (=vying with each other), *au delà* (=beyond), *en deçà* (=on this side of), *tout à fait* (=quite), *point du tout* (=not at all).

#### QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. What is an <i>adverb</i>?—Explain the meaning of the word.</li> <li>2. How many kinds of adverbs are there?</li> <li>3. Name the adverbs of <i>place</i>;—of <i>time</i>.</li> <li>4. What is the comparative of <i>bien</i>?—of <i>mal</i>?—of <i>peu</i>?</li> </ol> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>5. Give a list of the adverbs of <i>quantity</i>—<i>interrogation</i>—<i>affirmation</i>—<i>negation</i>—<i>doubt</i>.</li> <li>6. How do you form adverbs of <i>manner</i>?</li> <li>7. What is meant by an adverbial locution?</li> <li>8. Name a few adjectives used adverbially.</li> </ol> |
|--|--|

#### Exercise 37.

1. Il dit toujours la vérité.
2. Elle vient quelquefois.
3. Nous réussirons tôt ou tard.
4. Je suis allé hier à Brighton.
5. Voyez-vous cette maison là-bas?
6. Il est tard; vous devriez venir plus tôt.
7. Parlez peu, mais parlez à propos.
8. Ce que l'on conçoit bien s'énonce clairement, et les mots pour le dire arrivent aisément.
9. Il ne se moquera pas de moi impunément.
10. Ne lui aviez-

vous pas expressément défendu de prendre votre fusil? 11. Puisque vous le voulez, j'y consens. 12. Je me tiendrai dorénavant sur mes gardes. 13. Cette demoiselle ne chante pas juste. 14. Ces élèves étudient à l'envi. 15. Il entra tout à coup.

<sup>1</sup> arriver, <sup>2</sup> guerrier (*m.*), <sup>3</sup> action (*f.*), <sup>4</sup> entreprise (*f.*), <sup>5</sup> périr, <sup>6</sup> gagner, <sup>7</sup> en retard, <sup>8</sup> se rencontrer, <sup>9</sup> paraître, <sup>10</sup> de, <sup>11</sup> se conduire, <sup>12</sup> se rappeler.

1. This event happened<sup>1</sup> suddenly. 2. Whence comes this warrior<sup>2</sup>? 3. How many shares<sup>3</sup> have you bought in this undertaking<sup>4</sup>? 4. We shall certainly perish<sup>5</sup> together. 5. The general has already won<sup>6</sup> two battles. 6. He often loses his money, and he is always late<sup>7</sup> for the train (*m.*). 7. When shall we meet<sup>8</sup> again? 8. Your daughter seemed<sup>9</sup> quite surprised at<sup>10</sup> my offer. 9. The citadel was obstinately attacked by the enemy. 10. I have seen that man everywhere. 11. I went to the Crystal Palace yesterday. 12. Above all, tell him to meet me to-morrow in the park. 13. This child behaves<sup>11</sup> very well. 14. I remember<sup>12</sup> the details of the catastrophe confusedly.

## CHAPTER VIII.

### OF THE PREPOSITION.

**201.** The **preposition** is an invariable word which serves to unite two words by showing the relation in which the one stands to the other: *Le livre de Paul* (=Paul's book); *utile à l'homme* (=useful to man); *de* and *à* are prepositions.

*Preposition* comes from the Latin accusative *præpositionem*, from *præ* (=before), and *positionem* (=position).

**202.** The relations expressed by prepositions are *five* in number: 1. time: *avant* (=before), *après* (=after), *depuis* (=since), etc.; 2. place: *à* (=to, at), *vers* (=towards), *dans* (=in), *chez* (=at or in the house of), *devant* (=before), *derrière* (=behind), etc.; 3. manner or means: *par* (=by), *avec* (=with), *sans* (=without), *selon* (=according to), etc.; 4. origin or cause: *de* (=of), *par* (=by), *pour* (=for); 5. tendency towards or remoteness from: *envers* (=towards), *pour* (=for), *contre* (=against), *à* (=to), *de* (of), etc.

**203.** The prepositions sometimes consist of one word, as *à*, *de*, *dans*, *pour*, *par*, *sur*, and are then called

**simple prepositions**; sometimes they are made up of two or more words, as *quant à*, (=as for), *à cause de* (=on account of), *vis-à-vis de* (=opposite), *au-dessus de* (=above, upon), *à l'égard de* (=with regard to), etc., and are then designated as **prepositive locutions**.

**204.** REMARK 1.—The preposition **à** must not be confounded with **a**, third person singular of the verb *avoir*; **à**, preposition, takes the grave accent: *il monte à cheval* (=he goes on horseback); **a**, verb, has no accent: *il a un livre* (=he has a book).

2. **Dès**, preposition, takes the grave accent: *il se lève dès l'aurore* (=he rises with the dawn); **des** (=of the), genitive plural of the definite article, takes no accent: *les feuilles des arbres* (=the leaves of the trees).

## SECTION I.

### FORMATION OF SIMPLE PREPOSITIONS.

**205.** The French language has formed new prepositions with the help of:—

1. **Substantives**: *malgré*, from the old French adjective **mal** (=mauvais=bad), and the substantive **gré** (=will=in spite of).

2. **Adjectives**: *sauf* (still found in *sain et sauf* [=safe and sound]=except, but): *Sauf mes intérêts* (=my interests excepted), *sauf Jean* (=John excepted).

3. **Imperative of verbs**: *voici* (=here is, here are), *voilà* (there is, there are).

These words are compounded of the adverb *ci* and *là* and of *vo*, the old imperative of *voir*. *Voici le loup* (=here is the wolf), means therefore really: *voyez ici le loup* (=see here the wolf), or *le loup est ici*; *voyez-le* (=the wolf is here; see him).

4. **Past participles**: *passé* (=over), *vu* (=considering), *excepté* (=except, save), *attendu* (=considering), *passé ce moment* (=the moment being over), *excepté cet homme* (=with the exception of that man), *vu le danger que nous courons* (=considering the danger we are running), *attendu son infirmité* (=considering his infirmity).

We must add to this list *hormis* (=except), spelt in Old French *hor-mis*, that is to say, *mis hors* (=placed outside). In this locution

the participle *mis* (*missus*) was variable; the French of the thirteenth century said: *Cet homme a perdu tous ses enfants, hors mise sa fille* (=this man has lost all his children, with the exception of his daughter). In the fifteenth century the participle *mis* was joined on to the adverb *hors*, and the expression *hors mis* became in its turn a preposition.

**5. Present participles:** *durant, pendant, suivant, concernant, touchant* (from *durer, pendre, suivre, concerner, toucher*). *L'avocat mourut pendant le procès = tandis que le procès était pendant* (=the barrister died whilst the lawsuit was pending), *durant sa vie = sa vie durant* (=as long as his life lasts), *durant le jour = pendant que le jour dure* (=whilst the day lasts).

## SECTION II.

### FORMATION OF PREPOSITIVE LOCUTIONS.

**206.** They are formed chiefly with the help either of substantives or of adverbs followed by the preposition **de**. Thus nouns, such as *face, force, cause, faute, milieu*, etc., give the prepositive locutions: *en face de* (=opposite), *à force de* (=by dint of), *à cause de* (=on account of), *faute de* (=for want of), *au milieu de* (=in the midst of), etc.; and adverbs, such as *loin, autour, devant*, etc., give *loin de* (=far from), *autour de* (=around), *au devant de* (=in front of), etc.

**Vis-à-vis** is a compound of the same kind. The Old French *vis* (from the Latin *visus*) = *visage* (=the face); hence the locution *vis-à-vis*, which is literally equivalent to *face à face* (=face to face). *Vis* is also found in the word *visière* (=visor); the visor was originally the part of the helmet intended to protect the face = *vis*.

## SECTION III.

### GOVERNMENT OF PREPOSITIONS.

- 207.** 1. Prepositions usually govern the accusative;  
 2. Prepositive locutions generally govern the genitive;  
 3. The following prepositions and prepositive locutions govern the dative:—

*Jusqu'à, jusques à* (=as far as, until), *quant à* (=as for, as to), *par rapport à* (=with regard to).

**208.** The prepositions are always placed, in French, immediately before the object: *De quoi parlez-vous?* (= what are you speaking of?).

**209.** The prepositions must be repeated before every word which they govern: *Il ira à Paris et à Londres* (=he will go to Paris and London).

**210.** The verb governed by a preposition must be put in the infinitive, except in the case of *en*, which governs the present participle: *Ne partez pas sans venir me voir* (=do not start without coming to see me), *il tremble en parlant* (=he trembles whilst speaking).

### QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <p>1. What is a <i>preposition</i>?</p> <p>2. State the difference between <i>a</i>, verb, and <i>à</i>, preposition;— between <i>des</i>, article, and <i>dès</i> preposition.</p> <p>3. What is a <i>prepositive locution</i>?</p> <p>4. Name the <i>present</i> and <i>past participles</i> used as prepositions.</p> | <p>5. How are <i>prepositive locutions</i> formed with the help (a) of nouns, (b) of adverbs?</p> <p>6. Name the prepositions which govern substantives (a) in the genitive, (b) in the dative, (c) in the accusative.</p> <p>7. What preposition governs the verb in the present participle?</p> <p>8. Where are prepositions placed?</p> |
|--|--|

### Exercise 33.

1. Ne va-t-il pas à Paris? 2. Il a été ingrat envers son bienfaiteur. 3. Mon chapeau est dans la chambre. 4. Venez chez moi. 5. Vers le nord, la nature présente un aspect triste et sauvage. 6. Dès aujourd'hui je renonce à le voir. 7. En agissant ainsi vous avez manqué à toutes les convenances. 8. Mettez vos livres sur la table. 9. Irez-vous jusqu'à Berlin? 10. Quant à moi, je meurs de faim. 11. Êtes-vous hors d'affaire? 12. Attendu sa jeunesse, nous ne le punirons pas. 13. Il demeure près de l'église.

<sup>1</sup> près de, <sup>2</sup> offense (*f.*), <sup>3</sup> doux, <sup>4</sup> orage (*m.*), <sup>5</sup> éclater, <sup>6</sup> dès.

1. He is going to Paris. 2. I live near<sup>1</sup> the railway. 3. In absolving this man, justice has not been done. 4. Never be ungrateful towards your parents. 5. Considering the nature of the offence,<sup>2</sup> the punishment is extremely mild.<sup>3</sup> 6. During the ceremony, a thunderstorm<sup>4</sup> burst<sup>5</sup> over the town. 7. The troops are out of danger. 8. As for my books, they are in your room. 9. Towards the river you will find a pretty country-house. 10. The book shall be sent to the printer's as early as<sup>6</sup> to-morrow morning. 11. The laws are the same in France and Algeria.

## CHAPTER IX.

## OF THE CONJUNCTION.

211. The conjunction is an invariable word which serves to unite together two words or two propositions: *Pierre et Paul sont frères* (= Peter and Paul are brothers), *aimons Dieu puisqu'il est bon* (= let us love God, since He is good); **et**, **puisque** are conjunctions.

*Conjunction* is from the Latin accusative *conjunctionem* (= conjunction, properly union).

212. The conjunctions are sometimes one single word, as *et*, *ou*, *si*, *mais*, etc., and are then called **simple conjunctions**; sometimes they are formed of two or more words: *tandis que*, *bien que*, *parce que*, and are then designated as **conjunctive locutions**.

213. The principal **simple conjunctions** are: *car* (= for), *comme* (= as), *donec* (= then, therefore), *et* (= and), *mais* (= but), *or* (= now, but), *ou* (= or), *que* (= that), *quand* (= though, even though), *ni* (= nor), *si* (= if), each of which is really only one word.

To the above list we must add the conjunctions such as *plutôt* (= rather), *puisque* (= since), *néanmoins* (= nevertheless), *cependant* (= meanwhile), *lorsque* (= when), which are really compounded of two distinct words (*plus-tôt*, *puis-que*, *néant-moins*, *ce-pendant*, *lors-que*), combined into one by modern orthography.

214. The principal **conjunctive locutions** are: *au contraire*, (= on the contrary), *au moins* (= at least), *tandis que* (= whilst), *alors que* (= when, now that), *sans que* (= without), *dès que* (= as soon as), *avant que* (= before that), *après que* (= after that), etc.

215. REMARK.—1. **Que** is a relative pronoun when used instead of *lequel*, *laquelle*; it is an adverb when used instead of *combien*; it is a conjunction when it serves to unite two clauses of a sentence: *Je crois que Dieu est saint* (= I believe that God is holy).

2. **Où**, adverb (=where, when), points out a place or a time, and takes the grave accent; *ou*, conjunction (=or) takes no accent: *Mon frère ou moi* (=my brother or I).

3. **Si** is an adverb when it can be used instead of *tant, tellement* (=so, so much); in all other cases, it is a conjunction: *Je sortirai si le temps est beau* (=I shall go out if the weather is fine).

**216.** Conjunctions followed by *de* take the verb in the infinitive. (For the use of the indicative or subjunctive after conjunctions, see Syntax of prepositions).

### QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

- |  |   |  |
|--|---|--|
| 1. What is a conjunction?  | } | 5. Distinguish between <i>si</i> , adverb, and <i>si</i> , conjunction.        |
| 2. Distinguish between simple conjunctions, and conjunctive locutions. |   | 6. In what mood is the verb placed after a conjunction followed by <i>de</i> . |
| 3. When is <i>que</i> an adverb?                                       |   |  |
| 4. When is <i>où</i> an adverb?  |   |  |

### Exercise 39.

1. Vous et moi, lui ou elle. 2. J'ai fait mon thème, mais je n'ai pas appris ma leçon. 3. Soyez tranquille, car le maître est là. 4. Puisque vous ne voulez pas m'accompagner, je ne sortirai pas. 5. Il ferait cela plutôt que de vous le proposer. 6. Le roi a rejeté cette mesure comme trop violente. 7. Il ne sait ni lire, ni écrire. 8. Il a perdu beaucoup d'argent, néanmoins il persiste à jouer. 9. Quoiqu'il aille à Londres, il ne verra pas son ami.

<sup>1</sup> pourvu que, <sup>2</sup> n'ussir, <sup>3</sup> grandeur (*f.*), <sup>4</sup> quoique, <sup>5</sup> parce que, <sup>6</sup> indisposé, <sup>7</sup> dire, <sup>8</sup> tandis que, <sup>9</sup> déguiser, <sup>10</sup> que, <sup>11</sup> à moins que, <sup>12</sup> ne changiez, <sup>13</sup> abandonner, <sup>14</sup> part (*f.*).

1. Provided<sup>1</sup> you are\* attentive, you will succeed.<sup>2</sup> 2. Neither gold nor greatness<sup>3</sup> make a man happy. 3. You and I shall go together. 4. Although<sup>4</sup> I do\* all (that which) I can, I do not succeed. 5. If we do not succeed, it will not be our fault. 6. I cannot come because<sup>5</sup> I am unwell.<sup>6</sup> 7. We speak<sup>7</sup> the truth, whereas<sup>8</sup> your friend always disguises<sup>9</sup> it. 8. Whether<sup>10</sup> I was\* hungry or not, you should have kept the dinner on the table. 9. Unless<sup>11</sup> you alter<sup>12\*</sup> your plans, I shall give up<sup>13</sup> my share<sup>14</sup> in the business.

\* These verbs must be put in the subjunctive.

## CHAPTER X

## OF THE INTERJECTION.

**217.** The **interjection** is a cry, an exclamation expressing the sudden impulse of the mind: *Ah! Oh! Fi! Hélas!*

*Interjection* comes from the Latin accusative *interjectionem*, which means literally the action of throwing into the middle (of the sentence).

**Principal interjections.**

Joy :	<i>Bon! Vive la joie!</i>	Surprise :	<i>Quoi! Vraiment!</i>
Grief :	<i>Hélas! Aïe! Ah! Ouf!</i>	Silence :	<i>Chut! Paix!</i>
Fear :	<i>Ha! Hé! Ho!</i>	Calling :	<i>Holà! Ho! Hem!</i>
Aversion :	<i>Fi! Fi donc!</i>	Warning :	<i>Gare!</i>
Admiration :	<i>Oh!</i>	Attention :	<i>Tenez! Voilà!</i>
Encouraging :	<i>Allons! Courage!</i>	Disbelief :	<i>Ah! bah!</i>

*Ciel! Bis! Bravo! Tout beau* (= softly), are also used in various exclamations.

**218.** The interjections are formed either with the help of nouns: *paix!* (=silence), *courage!* (=cheer up!), *patience!* (=have patience!), or of verbs: *soit!* (=be it so!), *allons!* (=come on!), *suffit!* (=enough! that will do!). Sometimes they are mere exclamations: *ah! oh!* etc.

**Hélas**, written in Old French in two words: *hé! las!* is formed of the interjection *hé!* and the adjective *las* (*lassus*), which formerly meant *malheureux*=unhappy. The French of the thirteenth century said: *Cette mère est lasse de la mort de son fils* (=this mother is unhappy at the death of her son). *Hé! las! que je suis* (=Ah! unhappy that I am!). It was only in the fifteenth century that the two words coalesced, and that *hélas* became inseparable. At the same time, *las* lost all its primitive energy, and changed the meaning of *grief* for that of *weariness* or *fatigue*, just as it had happened in the words *gêne* (=inconvenience) and *ennui* (=weariness), which originally meant *torture* and *hatred*, respectively.



**Dame!** which must not be confounded with the feminine substantive *dame* (=lady), is the abbreviation of *Dame-Dieu*, an Old French exclamation equivalent to *Seigneur Dieu* (= Lord God). We constantly find in medieval texts: *que Dame-Dieu nous aide!* (=the Lord God help us!). *Dame-Dieu*, and simply *Dame* (that is to say, Lord God), was used as an interjection; and the exclamation *Ah! dame* (=ah! well), which, nowadays, has lost all meaning, signifies really *Ah! Seigneur!* (=ah! Lord!). The word *dame* is still found in the geographical names *Dammartin*, *Dampierre*, etc., which signify the Lord Martin, the Lord Peter, etc.

#### QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

- |   |  |   |
|---|--|---|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. What is an <i>interjection</i>?</li> <li>2. Name the principal interjections.</li> <li>• How are interjections formed?</li> </ol> |  | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>4. Explain the original meaning of <i>Hilas!</i> and <i>Dame!</i></li> </ol> |
|---|--|---|

The following table will complete and resume all the details given in Section III.

*Conjugation of the auxiliary verb avoir (=to have), negatively, interrogatively, and interrogatively with a negation.*

N.B.—The same scheme is applicable to any transitive verb, and to all neuter verbs conjugated with the auxiliary **avoir**.

### INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Negatively.*

PRESENT.—**Ne pas avoir** or **n'avoir pas**, *not to have.*

PAST.—**N'ayant pas eu**, *not to have had.*

### PARTICIPLES.

*Negatively.*

PRESENT.—**N'ayant pas**, *not having.*

PAST.—**N'ayant pas eu**, *not having had.*

FUTURE.—**Ne devant pas avoir**, *not about to have.*

### INDICATIVE MOOD.

#### PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Negatively.</i>	<i>Interrogatively.</i>	<i>Interrog. with a neg.</i>
<i>I have not, etc.</i>	<i>Have I? etc.</i>	<i>Have I not? etc.</i>
Je <b>n'ai pas</b>	ai-je? *	n'ai-je pas? †
tu <b>n'as pas</b>	as-tu?	n'as-tu pas?
il <b>n'a pas</b>	a-t-il?	n'a-t-il pas?
nous <b>n'avons pas</b>	avons-nous?	n'avons-nous pas?
vous <b>n'avez pas</b>	avez-vous?	n'avez-vous pas?
ils <b>n'ont pas</b>	ont-ils?	n'ont-ils pas?

\* Aimé-je? Est-ce que je romps?

† N'aimé-je pas? Est-ce que je ne romps pas?

PAST INDEFINITE.

<i>I have not had, etc.</i>	<i>Have I had? etc.</i>	<i>Have I not had? etc.</i>
Je <b>n'ai pas</b> eu	Ai-je * eu?	<b>N'ai-je pas</b> eu?
tu <b>n'as pas</b> eu	as-tu eu?	<b>n'as-tu pas</b> eu?
il <b>n'a pas</b> eu	a-t-il eu?	<b>n'a-t-il pas</b> eu?
nous <b>n'avons pas</b> eu	avons-nous eu?	<b>n'avons-nous pas</b> eu?
vous <b>n'avez pas</b> eu	avez-vous eu?	<b>n'avez-vous pas</b> eu?
ils <b>n'ont pas</b> eu	ont-ils eu?	<b>n'ont-ils pas</b> eu?

IMPERFECT.

<i>I had not, etc.</i>	<i>Had I? etc.</i>	<i>Had I not? etc.</i>
Je <b>n'avais pas</b>	Avais-je?	<b>N'avais-je pas?</b>
tu <b>n'avais pas</b>	avais-tu?	<b>n'avais-tu pas?</b>
il <b>n'avait pas</b>	avait-il?	<b>n'avait-il pas?</b>
nous <b>n'avions pas</b>	avions-nous?	<b>n'avions-nous pas?</b>
vous <b>n'aviez pas</b>	aviez-vous?	<b>n'aviez-vous pas?</b>
ils <b>n'avaient pas</b>	avaient-ils?	<b>n'avaient-ils pas?</b>

PLUPERFECT.

<i>I had not had, etc.</i>	<i>Had I had? etc.</i>	<i>Had I not had? etc.</i>
Je <b>n'avais pas</b> eu	avais-je eu?	<b>N'avais-je pas</b> eu?
tu <b>n'avais pas</b> eu	avais-tu eu?	<b>n'avais-tu pas</b> eu?
il <b>n'avait pas</b> eu	avait-il eu?	<b>n'avait-il pas</b> eu?
nous <b>n'avions pas</b> eu	avions-nous eu?	<b>n'avions-nous pas</b> eu?
vous <b>n'aviez pas</b> eu	aviez-vous eu?	<b>n'aviez-vous pas</b> eu?
ils <b>n'avaient pas</b> eu	avaient-ils eu?	<b>n'avaient-ils pas</b> eu?

PAST DEFINITE or PRETERPERFECT.

<i>I had not, etc.</i>	<i>Had I? etc.</i>	<i>Had I not? etc.</i>
Je <b>n'eus pas</b>	Eus-je?	<b>N'eus-je pas?</b>
tu <b>n'eus pas</b>	eus-tu?	<b>n'eus-tu pas?</b>
il <b>n'eut pas</b>	eut-il?	<b>n'eut-il pas?</b>
nous <b>n'eûmes pas</b>	eûmes-nous?	<b>n'eûmes-nous pas?</b>
vous <b>n'eûtes pas</b>	eûtes-vous?	<b>n'eûtes-vous pas?</b>
ils <b>n'eurent pas</b>	eurent-ils?	<b>n'eurent-ils pas?</b>

\* The e of *je* is not dropped in the interrogation before a vowel.

## PAST ANTERIOR.

<i>I had not had, etc.</i>	<i>Had I had? etc.</i>	<i>Had I not had? etc.</i>
Je <b>n'eus pas</b> eu	Eus-je eu?	<b>N'eus-je pas</b> eu?
tu <b>n'eus pas</b> eu	eus-tu eu?	<b>n'eus-tu pas</b> eu?
il <b>n'eut pas</b> eu	eut-il eu?	<b>n'eut-il pas</b> eu?
nous <b>n'eûmes pas</b> eu	eûmes-nous eu?	<b>n'eûmes-nous pas</b> eu?
vous <b>n'eûtes pas</b> eu	eûtes-vous eu?	<b>n'eûtes-vous pas</b> eu?
ils <b>n'eurent pas</b> eu	eurent-ils eu?	<b>n'eurent-ils pas</b> eu?

## FUTURE.

<i>I shall not have, etc.</i>	<i>Shall I have? etc.</i>	<i>Shall I not have? etc.</i>
Je <b>n'aurai pas</b>	Aurai-je?	<b>N'aurai-je pas?</b>
tu <b>n'auras pas</b>	auras-tu?	<b>n'auras-tu pas?</b>
il <b>n'aura pas</b>	aura-t-il?	<b>n'aura-t-il pas?</b>
nous <b>n'aurons pas</b>	aurons-nous?	<b>n'aurons-nous pas?</b>
vous <b>n'aurez pas</b>	aurez-vous?	<b>n'aurez-vous pas?</b>
ils <b>n'auront pas</b>	auront-ils?	<b>n'auront-ils pas?</b>

## FUTURE ANTERIOR.

<i>I shall not have had, etc.</i>	<i>Shall I have had? etc.</i>	<i>Shall I not have had? etc.</i>
Je <b>n'aurai pas</b> eu	Aurai-je eu?	<b>N'aurai-je pas</b> eu?
tu <b>n'auras pas</b> eu	auras-tu eu?	<b>n'auras-tu pas</b> eu?
il <b>n'aura pas</b> eu	aura-t-il eu?	<b>n'aura-t-il pas</b> eu?
nous <b>n'aurons pas</b> eu	aurons-nous eu?	<b>n'aurons-nous pas</b> eu?
vous <b>n'aurez pas</b> eu	aurez-vous eu?	<b>n'aurez-vous pas</b> eu?
ils <b>n'auront pas</b> eu	auront-ils eu?	<b>n'auront-ils pas</b> eu?

## CONDITIONAL PRESENT.

<i>I should not have, etc.</i>	<i>Should I have? etc.</i>	<i>Should I not have? etc.</i>
Je <b>n'aurais pas</b>	Aurais-je?	<b>N'aurais-je pas?</b>
tu <b>n'aurais pas</b>	aurais-tu?	<b>n'aurais-tu pas?</b>
il <b>n'aurait pas</b>	aurait-il?	<b>n'aurait-il pas?</b>
nous <b>n'aurions pas</b>	aurions-nous?	<b>n'aurions-nous pas?</b>
vous <b>n'auriez pas</b>	auriez-vous?	<b>n'auriez-vous pas?</b>
ils <b>n'auraient pas</b>	auraient-ils?	<b>n'auraient-ils pas?</b>

CONDITIONAL PAST.

<i>I should not have had, etc.</i>	<i>Should I have had? etc.</i>	<i>Should I not have had, etc.</i>
Je <b>n'aurais pas</b> eu	Aurais-je eu ?	<b>N'aurais-je pas</b> eu ?
tu <b>n'aurais pas</b> eu	aurais-tu eu ?	<b>n'aurais-tu pas</b> eu ?
il <b>n'aurait pas</b> eu	aurait-il eu ?	<b>n'aurait-il pas</b> eu ?
nous <b>n'aurions pas</b> eu	aurions-nous eu ?	<b>n'aurions-nous pas</b> eu ?
vous <b>n'auriez pas</b> eu	auriez-vous eu ?	<b>n'auriez-vous pas</b> eu ?
ils <b>n'auraient pas</b> eu	auraient-ils eu ?	<b>n'auraient-ils pas</b> eu ?
<i>or</i>	<i>or</i>	<i>or</i>
Je <b>n'eusse pas</b> eu	Eussé-je eu ?	<b>N'eussé-je pas</b> eu ?
tu <b>n'eusses pas</b> eu	eusses-tu eu ?	<b>n'eusses-tu pas</b> eu ?
il <b>n'eût pas</b> eu	eût-il eu ?	<b>n'eût-il pas</b> eu ?
nous <b>n'eussions pas</b> eu	eussions-nous eu ?	<b>n'eussions-nous pas</b> eu ?
vous <b>n'eussiez pas</b> eu	eussiez-vous eu ?	<b>n'eussiez-vous pas</b> eu ?
ils <b>n'eussent pas</b> eu	eussent-ils eu ?	<b>n'eussent-ils pas</b> eu ?

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

*Negatively.*

PRESENT.	PAST.
<i>Have not</i>	<i>Have not had.</i>
<b>N'aie pas</b>	<b>N'aie pas</b> eu
<b>n'ayons pas</b>	<b>n'ayons pas</b> eu
<b>n'ayez pas</b>	<b>n'ayez pas</b> eu

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

*Negatively.*

PRESENT <i>or</i> FUTURE.	PAST.
<i>That I may not have, etc.</i>	<i>That I may not have had, etc.</i>
Que je <b>n'aie pas</b>	Que je <b>n'aie pas</b> eu
que tu <b>n'aies pas</b>	que tu <b>n'aies pas</b> eu
qu'il <b>n'ait pas</b>	qu'il <b>n'ait pas</b> eu
que nous <b>n'ayons pas</b>	que nous <b>n'ayons pas</b> eu
que vous <b>n'ayez pas</b>	que vous <b>n'ayez pas</b> eu
qu'ils <b>n'aient pas</b>	qu'ils <b>n'aient pas</b> eu

## IMPERFECT.

*That I might not have, etc.*

Que je **n'eusse pas**  
 que tu **n'eusses pas**  
 qu'il **n'eût pas**  
 que nous **n'eussions pas**  
 que vous **n'eussiez pas**  
 qu'ils **n'eussent pas**

## PLUPERFECT.

*That I might not have had, etc*

Que je **n'eusse pas eu**  
 que tu **n'eusses pas eu**  
 qu'il **n'eût pas eu**  
 que nous **n'eussions pas eu**  
 que vous **n'eussiez pas eu**  
 qu'ils **n'eussent pas eu.**

*Conjugation of the auxiliary verb être (= to be), negatively,  
 interrogatively, and interrogatively with a negation.*

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Negatively.*PRESENT.—**Ne pas être** or **n'être pas**, *not to be.*PAST.—**N'avoir pas été**, *not to have been.*

## PARTICIPLES.

*Negatively.*PRESENT.—**N'étant pas**, *not being.*PAST.—**N'ayant pas été**, *not having been.*FUTURE.—**Ne devant pas être**, *not about to be.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

*Negatively.**Interrogatively.**Interrog. with a neg.**I am not, etc.**Am I? etc.**Am I not? etc.***Je ne suis pas**

Suis-je ?

**Ne suis-je pas ?****tu n'es pas**

es-tu ?

**n'es-tu pas ?****il n'est pas**

est-il ?

**n'est-il pas ?****nous ne sommes pas**

sommes-nous ?

**ne sommes-nous pas ?****vous n'êtes pas**

êtes-vous ?

**n'êtes-vous pas ?****ils ne sont pas**

sont-ils ?

**ne sont-ils pas ?**

PAST INDEFINITE.

<i>I have not been, etc.</i>	<i>Have I been? etc.</i>	<i>Have I not been? etc.</i>
Je n'ai pas été	Ai-je été?	N'ai-je pas été?
tu n'as pas été	as-tu été?	n'as-tu pas été?
il n'a pas été	a-t-il été?	n'a-t-il pas été?
nous n'avons pas été	avons-nous été?	n'avons-nous pas été?
vous n'avez pas été	avez-vous été?	n'avez-vous pas été?
ils n'ont pas été	ont-ils été?	n'ont-ils pas été?

IMPERFECT.

<i>I was not, etc.</i>	<i>Was I? etc.</i>	<i>Was I not? etc.</i>
Je n'étais pas	Étais-je?	N'étais-je pas?
tu n'étais pas	étais-tu?	n'étais-tu pas?
il n'était pas	était-il?	n'était-il pas?
nous n'étions pas	étions-nous?	n'étions-nous pas?
vous n'étiez pas	étiez-vous?	n'étiez-vous pas?
ils n'étaient pas	étaient-ils?	n'étaient-ils pas?

PLUPERFECT.

<i>I had not been, etc.</i>	<i>Had I been? etc.</i>	<i>Had I not been? etc.</i>
Je n'avais pas été	Avais-je été?	N'avais-je pas été?
tu n'avais pas été	avais-tu été?	n'avais-tu pas été?
il n'avait pas été	avait-il été?	n'avait-il pas été?
nous n'avions pas été	avions-nous été?	n'avions-nous pas été?
vous n'aviez pas été	aviez-vous été?	n'aviez-vous pas été?
ils n'avaient pas été	avaient-ils été?	n'avaient-ils pas été?

PAST DEFINITE OR PRETERPERFECT.

<i>I was not, etc.</i>	<i>Was I? etc.</i>	<i>Was I not? etc.</i>
Je ne fus pas	Fus-je?	Ne fus-je pas?
tu ne fus pas	fus-tu?	ne fus-tu pas?
il ne fut pas	fut-il?	ne fut-il pas?
nous ne fûmes pas	fûmes-nous?	ne fûmes-nous pas?
vous ne fûtes pas	fûtes-vous?	ne fûtes-vous pas?
ils ne furent pas	furent-ils?	ne furent-ils pas?

## PAST ANTERIOR.

<i>I had not been, etc.</i>	<i>Had I been ? etc.</i>	<i>Had I not been ? etc.</i>
Je <b>n'eus pas</b> été	Eus-je été ?	<b>N'eus-je pas</b> été ?
tu <b>n'eus pas</b> été	eus-tu été ?	<b>n'eus-tu pas</b> été ?
il <b>n'eut pas</b> été	eut-il été ?	<b>n'eut-il pas</b> été ?
nous <b>n'eûmes pas</b> été	eûmes-nous été ?	<b>n'eûmes-nous pas</b> été ?
vous <b>n'eûtes pas</b> été	eûtes-vous été ?	<b>n'eûtes-vous pas</b> été ?
ils <b>n'eurent pas</b> été	eurent-ils été ?	<b>n'eurent-ils pas</b> été ?

## FUTURE.

<i>I shall not be, etc.</i>	<i>Shall I be ? etc.</i>	<i>Shall I not be ? etc.</i>
Je <b>ne serai pas</b>	Serai-je ?	<b>Ne serai-je pas ?</b>
tu <b>ne seras pas</b>	seras-tu ?	<b>ne seras-tu pas ?</b>
il <b>ne sera pas</b>	sera-t-il ?	<b>ne sera-t-il pas ?</b>
nous <b>ne serons pas</b>	serons-nous ?	<b>ne serons-nous pas ?</b>
vous <b>ne serez pas</b>	serez-vous ?	<b>ne serez-vous pas ?</b>
ils <b>ne seront pas</b>	seront-ils ?	<b>ne seront-ils pas ?</b>

## FUTURE ANTERIOR.

<i>I shall not have been, etc.</i>	<i>Shall I have been ? etc.</i>	<i>Shall I not have been ? etc.</i>
Je <b>n'aurai pas</b> été	Aurai-je été ?	<b>N'aurai-je pas</b> été ?
tu <b>n'auras pas</b> été	auras-tu été ?	<b>n'auras-tu pas</b> été ?
il <b>n'aura pas</b> été	aura-t-il été ?	<b>n'aura-t-il pas</b> été ?
nous <b>n'aurons pas</b> été	aurons-nous été ?	<b>n'aurons-nous pas</b> été ?
vous <b>n'aurez pas</b> été	aurez-vous été ?	<b>n'aurez-vous pas</b> été ?
ils <b>n'auront pas</b> été	auront-ils été ?	<b>n'auront-ils pas</b> été ?

## CONDITIONAL PRESENT.

<i>I should not be, etc.</i>	<i>Should I be ? etc.</i>	<i>S'ould I not be ? etc.</i>
Je <b>ne serais pas</b>	Serais-je ?	<b>Ne serais-je pas ?</b>
tu <b>ne serais pas</b>	serais-tu ?	<b>ne serais-tu pas ?</b>
il <b>ne serait pas</b>	serait-il ?	<b>ne serait-il pas ?</b>
nous <b>ne serions pas</b>	serions-nous ?	<b>ne serions-nous pas ?</b>
vous <b>ne seriez pas</b>	seriez-vous ?	<b>ne seriez-vous pas ?</b>
ils <b>ne seraient pas</b>	seraient-ils ?	<b>ne seraient-ils pas ?</b>



CONDITIONAL PAST.

<i>I should not have been, etc.</i>	<i>Should I have been? etc.</i>	<i>Should I not have been? etc.</i>
Je <b>n'aurais pas</b> été	Aurais-je été ?	<b>N'aurais-je pas</b> été ?
tu <b>n'aurais pas</b> été	aurais-tu été ?	<b>n'aurais-tu pas</b> été ?
il <b>n'aurait pas</b> été	aurait-il été ?	<b>n'aurait-il pas</b> été ?
nous <b>n'aurions pas</b> été	aurions-nous été ?	<b>n'aurions-nous pas</b> été ?
vous <b>n'auriez pas</b> été	auriez-vous été ?	<b>n'auriez-vous pas</b> été ?
ils <b>n'auraient pas</b> été	auraient-ils été ?	<b>n'auraient-ils pas</b> été ?
or	or	or
Je <b>n'eusse pas</b> été	Eussé-je été ?	<b>N'eussé-je pas</b> été ?
tu <b>n'eusses pas</b> été	eusses-tu été ?	<b>n'eusses-tu pas</b> été ?
il <b>n'eût pas</b> été	eût-il été ?	<b>n'eût-il pas</b> été ?
nous <b>n'eussions pas</b> été	eussions-nous été ?	<b>n'eussions-nous pas</b> été ?
vous <b>n'eussiez pas</b> été	eussiez-vous été ?	<b>n'eussiez-vous pas</b> été ?
ils <b>n'eussent pas</b> été	eussent-ils été ?	<b>n'eussent-ils pas</b> été ?

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

*Negatively.*

PRESENT.	PAST.
<i>Do thou not be.</i>	<i>Have not been.</i>
<b>Ne sois pas</b>	<b>N'aie pas</b> été
<b>ne soyons pas</b>	<b>n'ayons pas</b> été
<b>ne soyez pas</b>	<b>n'ayez pas</b> été.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

*Negatively.*

PRESENT or FUTURE.	PAST.
<i>That I may not be, etc.</i>	<i>That I may not have been, etc.</i>
Que je <b>ne sois pas</b>	Que je <b>n'aie pas</b> été
que tu <b>ne sois pas</b>	que tu <b>n'aies pas</b> été
qu'il <b>ne soit pas</b>	qu'il <b>n'ait pas</b> été
que nous <b>ne soyons pas</b>	que nous <b>n'ayons pas</b> été
que vous <b>ne soyez pas</b>	que vous <b>n'ayez pas</b> été
qu'ils <b>ne soient pas</b>	qu'ils <b>n'aient pas</b> été
IMPERFECT.	PLUPERFECT.
<i>That I might not be.</i>	<i>That I might not have been.</i>
Que je <b>ne fusse pas</b>	Que je <b>n'eusse pas</b> été
que tu <b>ne fusses pas</b>	que tu <b>n'eusses pas</b> été
qu'il <b>ne fût pas</b>	qu'il <b>n'eût pas</b> été
que nous <b>ne fussions pas</b>	que nous <b>n'eussions pas</b> été
que vous <b>ne fussiez pas</b>	que vous <b>n'eussiez pas</b> été
qu'ils <b>ne fussent pas</b>	qu'ils <b>n'eussent pas</b> été.

*Models of Reflexive Verbs conjugated negatively, interrogatively, and interrogatively with a negation.*

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT.

*Negatively.*

*Ne pas se réjouir, not to rejoice*      *ne pas s'apercevoir, not to perceive*      *ne pas se perdre, not to lose one's self.*

## PAST.

*Ne pas s'être réjoui, not to have rejoiced*      *ne pas s'être aperçu, not to have perceived*      *ne pas s'être perdu, not to have lost one's self.*

## PARTICIPLES.

## PRESENT.

*Negatively.*

*Ne se réjouissant pas, not rejoicing*      *ne s'apercevant pas, not perceiving*      *ne se perdant pas, not losing one's self.*

## PAST.

*Réjoui, -ie, -is, or -ies, rejoiced*      *aperçu, -ue, -us, or -us, perceived*      *perdu, -ue, -us, or -us, lost*  
*ne s'étant pas réjoui, not having rejoiced*      *ne s'étant pas aperçu, not having perceived*      *ne s'étant pas perdu, not having lost one's self.*

## FUTURE.

*Ne devant pas se réjouir, not about to rejoice*      *ne devant pas s'apercevoir, not about to perceive*      *ne devant pas se perdre, not about to lose one's self.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

*Negatively.*

*I do not rejoice, etc.*

*Je ne me réjouis pas*

*tu ne te réjouis pas*

*il ne se réjouit pas*

*nous ne nous réjouissons pas*

*vous ne vous réjouissez pas*

*ils ne se réjouissent pas*

*Interrogatively.*

*Do I perceive? etc.*

*M'aperçois-je?*

*t'aperçois-tu?*

*s'aperçoit-il?*

*nous apercevons-nous?*

*vous apercevez-vous?*

*s'aperçoivent-ils?*

*Interrog. with a neg.*

*Do I not lose myself?*

*Est-ce que je ne me perds pas?*

*ne te perds-tu pas?*

*ne se perd-il pas?*

*ne nous perdons-nous pas?*

*ne vous perdez-vous pas?*

*ne se perdent-ils pas?*

## PAST INDEFINITE.

<i>I have not rejoiced, etc.</i>	<i>Have I perceived? etc.</i>	<i>Have I not lost myself? etc.</i>
Je ne me suis pas réjoui	Me suis-je aperçu?	Ne me suis-je pas perdu?
tu ne t'es pas réjoui	t'es-tu aperçu?	ne t'es-tu pas perdu?
il ne s'est pas réjoui	s'est-il aperçu?	ne s'est-il pas perdu?
nous ne nous sommes pas réjouis	nous sommes-nous aperçus?	ne nous sommes-nous pas perdus?
vous ne vous êtes pas réjouis	vous êtes-vous aperçus?	ne vous êtes-vous pas perdus? [dus?
ils ne se sont pas réjouis	se sont-ils aperçus?	ne se sont-ils pas per-

## IMPERFECT.

<i>I was not rejoicing, etc.</i>	<i>Was I perceiving? etc.</i>	<i>Was I not losing myself? etc.</i>
Je ne me réjouissais pas	M'apercevais-je?	Ne me perdais-je pas?
tu ne te réjouissais pas	t'apercevais-tu?	ne te perdais-tu pas?
il ne se réjouissait pas	s'apercevait-il?	ne se perdait-il pas?
nous ne nous réjouissions pas	nous apercevions-nous?	ne nous perdions-nous pas?
vous ne vous réjouissiez pas [pas	vous aperceviez-vous?	ne vous perdiez-vous pas?
ils ne se réjouissaient	s'apercevaient-ils?	ne se perdaient-ils pas?

## PLUPERFECT.

<i>I had not rejoiced, etc.</i>	<i>Had I perceived? etc.</i>	<i>Had I not lost myself? etc.</i>
Je ne m'étais pas réjoui	M'étais-je aperçu?	Ne m'étais-je pas perdu?
tu ne t'étais pas réjoui	t'étais-tu aperçu?	ne t'étais-tu pas perdu?
il ne s'était pas réjoui	s'était-il aperçu?	ne s'était-il pas perdu?
nous ne nous étions pas réjouis	nous étions-nous aperçus?	ne nous étions-nous pas perdus?
vous ne vous étiez pas réjouis [jouis	vous étiez-vous aperçus?	ne vous étiez-vous pas perdus? [dus?
ils ne s'étaient pas ré-	s'étaient-ils aperçus?	ne s'étaient-ils pas per-

## PAST DEFINITE OR PRETERPERFECT.

<i>I did not rejoice, etc.</i>	<i>Did I perceive? etc.</i>	<i>Did I not lose myself? etc.</i>
Je ne me réjouis pas	M'aperçus-je?	Ne me perdis-je pas?
tu ne te réjouis pas	t'aperçus-tu?	ne te perdis-tu pas?
il ne se réjouit pas	s'aperçut-il?	ne se perdit-il pas?
nous ne nous réjouîmes pas [pas	nous aperçûmes-nous?	ne nous perdîmes-nous pas? [pas?
vous ne vous réjouîtes	vous aperçûtes-vous?	ne vous perdistes-vous pas?
ils ne se réjouirent pas	s'aperçurent-ils?	ne se perdirent-ils pas?

## PAST ANTERIOR.

*I had not rejoiced, etc.*  
 Je ne **me** fus pas réjoui  
 tu ne **te** fus pas réjoui  
 il ne **se** fut pas réjoui  
 nous ne **nous** fûmes pas  
 réjouis  
 vous ne **vous** fûtes pas  
 réjouis [réjouis  
 ils ne **se** furent pas

*Had I perceived? etc.*  
**Me** fus-je aperçu?  
**te** fus-tu aperçu?  
**se** fut-il aperçu?  
**nous** fûmes-nous aper-  
 çus?  
**vous** fûtes-vous aper-  
 çus?  
**se** furent-ils aperçus?

*Had I not lost myself? etc.*  
 Ne **me** fus-je pas perdu?  
 ne **te** fus-tu pas perdu?  
 ne **se** fut-il pas perdu?  
 ne **nous** fûmes-nous pas  
 perdus?  
 ne **vous** fûtes-vous pas  
 perdus? [perdus?  
 ne **se** furent-ils pas

## FUTURE.

*I shall not rejoice, etc.*  
 Je ne **me** réjouirai pas  
 tu ne **te** réjouiras pas  
 il ne **se** réjouira pas  
 nous ne **nous** réjou-  
 irons pas [pas  
 vous ne **vous** réjouirez  
 ils ne **se** réjouiront pas

*Shall I perceive? etc.*  
**M'**apercevrai-je?  
**t'**apercevras-tu?  
**s'**apercevra-t-il?  
**nous** apercevrons-  
 nous?  
**vous** apercevrez-vous?  
**s'**apercevront-ils?

*Shall I not lose myself? etc.*  
 Ne **me** perdrai-je pas?  
 ne **te** perdras-tu pas?  
 ne **se** perdra-t-il pas?  
 ne **nous** perdrons-nous  
 pas? [pas?  
 ne **vous** perdrez-vous  
 ne **se** perdront-ils pas?

## FUTURE ANTERIOR.

*I shall not have rejoiced,  
 etc.*  
 Je ne **me** serai pas réjoui  
 tu ne **te** seras pas réjoui  
 il ne **se** sera pas réjoui  
 nous ne **nous** serons pas  
 réjouis  
 vous ne **vous** serez pas  
 réjouis [réjouis  
 ils ne **se** seront pas

*Shall I have perceived? etc.*  
**Me** serai-je aperçu?  
 te seras-tu aperçu?  
 se sera-t-il aperçu?  
 nous serons-nous aper-  
 çus?  
 vous serez-vous aper-  
 çus?  
 se seront-ils aperçus?

*Shall I not have lost  
 myself? etc.*  
 Ne **me** serai-je pas per-  
 du?  
 ne **te** seras-tu pas perdu?  
 ne **se** sera-t-il pas perdu?  
 ne **nous** serons-nous  
 pas perdus?  
 ne **vous** serez-vous pas  
 perdus? [dus?  
 ne **se** seront-ils pas per-

## CONDITIONAL MOOD.

## PRESENT.

*I should not rejoice,  
 etc.*  
 Je ne **me** réjouirais pas  
 tu ne **te** réjouirais pas  
 il ne **se** réjouirait pas  
 nous ne **nous** réjou-  
 irions pas  
 vous ne **vous** réjou-  
 iriez pas [pas  
 ils ne **se** réjouiraient

*Should I perceive? etc.*  
**M'**apercevrais-je?  
**t'**apercevrais-tu?  
**s'**apercevrait-il?  
**nous** apercevriions-  
 nous?  
**vous** apercevriez-  
 vous?  
**s'**apercevraient-ils?

*Should I not lose myself?  
 etc.*  
 Ne **me** perdrais-je pas?  
 ne **te** perdrais-tu pas?  
 ne **se** perdrait-il pas?  
 ne **nous** perdriions-nous  
 pas?  
 ne **vous** perdriez-vous  
 pas? [pas?  
 ne **se** perdraient-ils

## PAST.

*I should not have rejoiced, etc.*

**Je ne me serais pas réjoui**

**tu ne te serais pas réjoui**

**il ne se serait pas réjoui**

**nous ne nous serions pas réjouis**

**vous ne vous seriez pas réjouis** [réjouis

**ils ne se seraient pas**

*or*

**je ne me fusse pas réjoui**

**tu ne te fusses pas réjoui**

**il ne se fût pas réjoui**

**nous ne nous fussions pas réjouis**

**vous ne vous fussiez pas réjouis**

**ils ne se fussent pas réjouis**

*Shou'd I have perceived? etc.*

**Me serais-je aperçu?**

**te serais-tu aperçu?**

**se serait-il aperçu?**

**nous serions-nous aperçus?**

**vous seriez-vous aperçus?**

**se seraient-ils aperçus?**

*or*

**me fussé-je aperçu?**

**te fusses-tu aperçu?**

**se fût-il aperçu?**

**nous fussions-nous aperçus?**

**vous fussiez-vous aperçus?**

**se fussent-ils aperçus?**

*Should I not have lost myself? etc.*

**Ne me serais-je pas perdu?** [du?

**ne te serais-tu pas perdu?**

**ne se serait-il pas perdu?**

**ne nous serions-nous pas perdus?**

**ne vous seriez-vous pas perdus?** [perdus?

*or*

**ne me fussé-je pas perdu?** [du?

**ne te fusses-tu pas perdu?**

**ne se fût-il pas perdu?**

**ne nous fussions-nous pas perdus?**

**ne vous fussiez-vous pas perdus?**

**ne se fussent-ils pas perdus?**

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

*Negatively.*

## PRESENT.

*Do not rejoice, etc.*

**Ne te réjouis pas** [pas

**Ne nous réjouissons**

**Ne vous réjouissez pas**

*Do not perceive, etc.*

**Ne t'aperçois pas** [pas

**Ne nous apercevons**

**Ne vous apercevez pas**

*Do not lose thyself, etc.*

**Ne te perds pas**

**Ne nous perdons pas**

**Ne vous perdez pas**

## PAST.

*Have not rejoiced, etc.*

**Ne te sois pas réjoui**

**Ne nous soyons pas réjouis** [jouis

**Ne vous soyez pas réjouis**

*Have not perceived, etc.*

**Ne te sois pas aperçu**

**Ne nous soyons pas aperçus** [çus

**Ne vous soyez pas aperçus**

*Have not lost thyself, etc.*

**Ne te sois pas perdu**

**Ne nous soyons pas perdus** — fûs

**Ne vous soyez pas perdus**

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

*Negatively.*

## PRESENT or FUTURE.

*That I may not rejoice, etc.*

**Que je ne me réjouisse pas** [pas

**que tu ne te réjouisses pas**

**qu'il ne se réjouisse pas**

*That I may not perceive, etc.*

**Que je ne m'aperçoive pas** [pas

**que tu ne t'aperçoives pas**

**qu'il ne s'aperçoive pas**

*That I may not lose myself, etc.*

**Que je ne me perde pas**

**que tu ne te perdes pas**

**qu'il ne se perde pas**

que nous **ne nous ré-**  
**jouissions pas**  
que vous **ne vous ré-**  
**jouissiez pas** [*pas*  
qu'ils **ne se réjouissent**

que nous **ne nous aper-**  
**cevions pas**  
que vous **ne vous aper-**  
**ceviez pas** [*pas*  
qu'ils **ne s'aperçoivent**

que nous **ne nous per-**  
**dions pas**  
que vous **ne vous per-**  
**diez pas**  
qu'ils **ne se perdent pas**

## PAST.

*That I may not have re-*  
*joiced, etc.*

Que je **ne me sois pas**  
**réjoui**

que tu **ne te sois pas ré-**  
**joui**

qu'il **ne se soit pas ré-**  
**joui**

que nous **ne nous**  
**soyons pas réjouis**

que vous **ne vous soyez**  
**pas réjouis**

qu'ils **ne se soient pas**  
**réjouis**

*That I may not have per-*  
*ceived, etc.*

Que je **ne me sois pas**  
**aperçu**

que tu **ne te sois pas**  
**aperçu**

qu'il **ne se soit pas aper-**  
**çu**

que nous **ne nous**  
**soyons pas aperçus**

que vous **ne vous soyez**  
**pas aperçus**

qu'ils **ne se soient pas**  
**aperçus**

*That I may not have lost*  
*myself, etc.*

Que je **ne me sois pas**  
**perdu**

que tu **ne te sois pas**  
**perdu**

qu'il **ne se soit pas per-**  
**du**

que nous **ne nous**  
**soyons pas perdus**

que vous **ne vous soyez**  
**pas perdus**

qu'ils **ne se soient pas**  
**perdus**

## IMPERFECT.

*That I might not rejoice,*  
*etc.*

Que je **ne me réjouisse**  
**pas** [*pas*

que tu **ne te réjouisses**  
qu'il **ne se réjouît pas**

que nous **ne nous réjou-**  
**issions pas**

que vous **ne vous réjou-**  
**issiez pas** [*pas*

qu'ils **ne se réjouissent**

*That I might not per-*  
*ceive, etc.*

Que je **ne m'aperçusse**  
**pas** [*pas*

que tu **ne t'aperçusses**  
qu'il **ne s'aperçût pas**

que nous **ne nous aper-**  
**çussions pas**

que vous **ne vous aper-**  
**çussiez pas** [*pas*

qu'ils **ne s'aperçussent**

*That I might not lose*  
*myself, etc.*

Que je **ne me perdisse**  
**pas** [*pas*

que tu **ne te perdisse**  
qu'il **ne se perdît pas**

que nous **ne nous per-**  
**dissions pas**

que vous **ne vous per-**  
**dissiez pas** [*pas*

qu'ils **ne se perdissent**

## PLUPERFECT.

*That I might not have*  
*rejoiced, etc.*

Que je **ne me sois pas**  
**réjoui**

que tu **ne te sois pas ré-**  
**joui**

qu'il **ne se soit pas ré-**  
**joui**

que nous **ne nous**  
**soyons pas réjouis**

que vous **ne vous soyez**  
**pas réjouis**

qu'ils **ne se soient pas**  
**réjouis**

*That I might not have*  
*perceived, etc.*

Que je **ne me sois pas**  
**aperçu**

que tu **ne te sois pas**  
**aperçu**

qu'il **ne se soit pas aper-**  
**çu**

que nous **ne nous**  
**soyons pas aperçus**

que vous **ne vous soyez**  
**pas aperçus**

qu'ils **ne se soient pas**  
**aperçus**

*That I might not have*  
*lost myself, etc.*

Que je **ne me sois pas**  
**perdu**

que tu **ne te sois pas**  
**perdu**

qu'il **ne se soit pas per-**  
**du**

que nous **ne nous**  
**soyons pas perdus**

que vous **ne vous soyez**  
**pas perdus**

qu'ils **ne se soient pas**  
**perdus**

# INDEX.

The numbers refer to the paragraphs when the word page is not expressed.

- able** (suffix), 73.  
**accents**, 6, 20; tonic, 24.  
**active verbs**, 134; used impersonally, 163.  
**ade** (suffix), 40, 44.  
**adjective**, 49; qualifying, 50; determinative, 50, 77; indefinite, 50; formation of fem. in, 52 and foll.; formation of, 69 and foll.; derivative, 70 and foll.; agreement of, 74 and foll.; numeral, 78 and foll.; demonstrative, 82; possessive, 83; indefinite, 84, 111; interrogative, 107; used as adverb, 193.  
**adverb**, 187; of place, 189; of time, 190; of manner, 191; how formed, 191, 192; adjectives used as, 193; comparison of, 194; of quantity, 195; of interrogation, 196; of affirmation, 197; of negation, 198; of doubt, 199.  
**adverbial locutions**, 200.  
**age** (suffix), 40, 44.  
**aille** (suffix), 42.  
**ain** (suffix), 40, 71.  
**aller**, 169; **s'en aller**, 169.  
**alphabet**, page 7.  
**ance** (suffix), 44.  
**anti** (prefix), 69.  
**apostrophe**, 21.  
**après** (prefix), 39.  
**archi** (prefix), 69.  
**ard** (suffix), 40, 73.  
**arrière** (prefix), 39.  
**article**, 45; definite, 46 and foll.; indefinite, 48; used in French when *some* or *any* is meant in English, 48.  
**as** (suffix), 42.  
**asse** (suffix), in verbs, 179.  
**at** (suffix), 40.  
**âtre** (suffix), 72.  
**and** (suffix), 72.  
**auxiliary verbs**, 127, 132; with neuter verbs, 153; with reflexive verbs, 158.  
**avoir**, 132; **y avoir**, page 110.  
**avant** (prefix), 39.  
  
**Basque**, page 1.  
**bénir**, 170.  
**bien** (prefix), 69.  
**bis** (prefix), 24.  
**Breton (Bas-)**, page 1.  
**Burgundian**, pages 1, 3.  
  
**cardinal adjectives**, 79, 81.  
**Catalonian**, page 1.  
**ce**, 100.  
**cedilla**, 22.  
**Celtic**, page 4.  
**celui qui**, 100.  
**cer**, verbs ending in, 167.  
**collective numbers**, 81.  
**comparative in adjectives**, 66; irregular, 67; in adverbs, 194.  
**complement**, 113, 114; direct, 115; indirect, 116.  
**conditional mood**, 121.  
**conjugation**, 130, 131; first, page 79; second, page 83; third, page 86; fourth, page 82; interrogative, 136 and foll.; negative, 141; interrogative and negative, 142; passive, page 99; neuter, page 102; reflexive, page 105; im-

- personal, page 109; observations on first conj., 166 and foll.; on second conj., with imperfect in *issais*, 170; on 2nd (direct) conj., 171; irregular, page 112 and foll.
- conjunction**, 211 and foll.; government of, 216.
- conjunctive locutions**, 214.
- consonants**, 3, 11 and foll.
- contre** (prefix), 39.
- defective verbs**, 165.
- demi** (prefix), 69.
- demonstrative**, *see* adjective and pronoun.
- derivative tenses**, 147.
- determinative**, *see* adjective and pronoun.
- deveir**, page 97, note.
- diæresis**, 21.
- diphthong**, 9.
- é, ée** (suffix), 40, 71.
- eau, elle** (suffix), 42.
- éyer** (verbs ending in), 166.
- eler** (verbs ending in), 166.
- elet** (suffix), 72.
- en** (pronoun), 92.
- entre** (pre-ix), 39.
- envoyer**, 169.
- er, ier** (suffix), 40, 71.
- esse** (suffix), 40, 43.
- et** (suffix), 42, 72.
- eter** (verbs ending in), 166.
- être**, page 75; with neuter verbs, 153.
- eur** (suffix), 44.
- cux** (suffix), 71.
- feminine** (formation of) in nouns, 30 and foll.; in adjectives, 52 and foll.
- Flemish**, page 1.
- fleurir**, 170.
- foreign words**, page 5.
- French patois**, page 2; dialect, page 3; learned, page 5; popular, page 5.
- future tense**, 123, 126.
- Gascon**, pages 2, 4.
- gender**, 29; formation of fem in nouns, 30 and foll.; in adjectives, 52 and foll.
- ger** (verbs ending in), 167.
- grammar** (definition), page 5.
- hair**, 170.
- hyphen**, 23.
- idiomatic tenses**, 148.
- ie (erie)** (suffix), 40, 43.
- if** (suffix), 73.
- imperative mood**, 121.
- imperfect tense**, 125.
- impersonal verbs**, 161; their pronoun subject, 162; active or neuter verbs used as impersonal, 163.
- in** (prefix), 69; (suffix), 71.
- indefinite**, *see* adjective and pronoun.
- indicative mood**, 121.
- infinitive mood**, 121.
- interjection**, 217; how formed, 218.
- interrogative**, *see* adjective and pronoun.
- irregular verbs**, 165; 1st conj., 166 and foll.; 2nd conj. with imperfect in *issais*, 170; 3rd. conj. (direct), 171.
- is** (suffix), 44.
- ise** (suffix), 43.
- ison** (suffix) 44.
- isseur** (suffix), 44.
- iste** (suffix), 40.
- Italian**, page 3.
- Languedocian**, pages 2, 4.
- Latin** (popular), pages 2, 3, 4; classical, 2.
- leur**, 92.
- Limousin**, pages 2, 4.
- locutions**, adverbial, 200; pre-positive, 203; how formed, 206; conjunctive, 214.
- Lorrain**, page 1.



**mal** (prefix), 69.  
**ment** (suffix), 44.  
**mi** (prefix), 39.  
**moods**, 121.

**neuter verbs**, 152; their auxiliary, 153; used impersonally, 163.

**non** (prefix), 39.

**Norman**, pages 1, 3.

**noun**, *see* substantive.

**number**, 31; formation of plur. in nouns, 32 and foll.; in adjectives, 62 and foll.; in verbs, 119.

**numbers**, 81.

**numeral adjectives**, 78, 81.

**object**, 113; direct, 115; indirect, 116.

**Oc** (*langue d'*) pages 3, 4.

**Oil** (*langue d'*), pages 3, 4.

**oir** (suffix), 44.

**on** (suffix), 42, 44; in verbs, 179.

**ordinal adjectives**, 80, 81.

**orthographic signs**, 20.

**ot** (suffix), 42, 72; in verbs, 179.

**participle**, 183; present, 184; used as an adjective, 185.

**passive verbs**, 149 and foll.; the reflexive used instead, 149, 160.

**past anterior**, 125.

**past definite**, 125.

**past indefinite**, 125.

**past participle** of passive verbs, 151; of neuter verbs, 154; of reflexive verbs, 159; used as an adjective, 186.

**past tense**, 123.

**personal pronouns**, *see* pronouns.

**persons** in verbs, 120.

**Picard**, pages 1, 3.

**pluperfect**, 125.

**plural** (formation of) in nouns, 32 and foll.; in adjectives, 62 and foll.

**positive**, 65.

**possessive**, how expressed in French, 48; *see* adjective and pronoun.

**pouvoir**, page 97, note.

**prefixes**, 39.

**prepositions**, 201 and foll.; how formed, 205; government of, 207, 210; their place, 208; repetition of, 209.

**prepositive locutions**, 203, 206.

**present participle**, 184; used as an adjective, 185.

**present tense**, 123.

**preterite**, *see* past.

**primitive tenses**, 147.

**pronouns**, 85; personal, 89; conjunctive, 89; where placed, 90, 92; disjunctive, 93; used as subject, 94; used as object, 95; reflexive, 96; demonstrative, 97 and foll.; possessive, 101; relative, 102 and foll.; interrogative, 105 and foll.; indefinite, 109 and foll.

**Proverbal**, pages 2, 4; Patois, page 2.

**qualifying adjectives**, *see* adjectives.

**que**, 104, 105, 106.

**qui**, 104, 106.

**reflexive verbs**, 155; how conjugated, 157; their auxiliary, 158; their past participle, 159; instead of the passive, 149, 160.

**Romance language**, pages 3, 5.

**sans** (prefix), 39.

**some**, translated by *du*, &c., 48.

- sous** (prefix), 39, 69.  
**Spanish**, page 3.  
**speech** (parts of), 25.  
**stem**, 118.  
**subject**, 113; agreement of verb with, 180 and foll.  
**subjunctive mood**, 121.  
**substantive**, 26 and foll.; formation of the fem., 29 and foll.; of the plural, 31 and foll.; formation of substantives, 37; derivative, 38; compound, 39; formed from adjectives, 43; from verbs, 44.  
**suffixes**, 40; diminutive, 41, 42.  
**superlative**, 68.  
**sur** (prefix), 69.  
**syllable**, 19; tonic, 24.  
**té** (suffix), 43.  
**tenses**, 122; simple, 128; compound, 129; formation of, 143 and foll.; primitive and derivative, 147; idiomatic, 148.  
**termination** (of verbs), 118.  
**trait d'union**, 23.  
**tréma**, 21.  
**u** (suffix), 71.  
**ultra** (prefix), 69.  
**ure** (suffix), 43, 44.  
**verb**, 112, auxiliary, 127, 132; active, 134; passive, 149 and foll.; neuter, 152 and foll.; reflexive, 155 and foll.; impersonal, 161; irregular, 164; defective, 165; formation of, 177 and foll.; agreement with the subject, 180 and foll.  
**vice** (prefix), 39.  
**vouloir**, page 97, note.  
**vowels**, 3 and foll.  
**y** (pronoun), 92.  
**y avoir**, page 110.  
**yer** (verbs ending in), 168.

# FRENCH-ENGLISH VOCABULARY.

---

## A

**À**, *prep.*, at, to  
**a**, *v.a.*, avoir, (*page 71*)  
**abattement**, *s.m.*, prostration  
**abattre**, *v.a.*, to cast down  
**abolir**, *v.a.*, to abolish  
**abonner (s')** *v.r.*, to subscribe to  
**abonnement**, *s.m.*, subscription  
**aboucher**, *v.a.*, to bring together  
**aboutir**, *v.n.*, to lead  
**abreuver**, *v.a.*, to water  
**abreuvoir**, *s.m.*, horse-pond, watering-place  
**abrutir**, *v.a.*, to make a brute of, to stultify, to besot  
**absoudre**, *v.a.*, to absolve  
**absurde**, *adj.*, absurd  
**absurdité**, *s.f.*, absurdity  
**acajou**, *s.m.*, mahogany  
**accabler**, *v.a.*, to weigh down  
**accablement**, *s.m.*, despondency, dejection  
**accident**, *s.m.*, accident  
**accompagner**, *v.a.*, to accompany  
**accomplir**, *v.a.*, to accomplish  
**accomplissement**, *s.m.*, accomplishment, fulfilment

**accourir**, *v.n.*, to run  
**acheter**, *v.a.*, to buy  
**acheteur**, *s.m.*, buyer, purchaser  
**acide**, *adj.*, acid  
**acidité**, *s.f.*, acidity  
**acier**, *s.m.*, steel  
**aciérie**, *s.f.*, steel work  
**acolyte**, *s.m.*, acolyte, clerk  
**acquéreur**, *s.m.*, buyer, purchaser  
**acquérir**, *v.a.*, to acquire  
**acquitter**, (s') *v.r.*, to perform  
**âcre**, *adj.*, acrid, sour  
**acreté**, *s.f.*, acridness, sourness  
**acteur**, *s.m.*, actor  
**actrice**, *s.f.*, actress  
**admirateur**, -trice, *s.m.f.*, admirer  
**admirer**, *v.a.*, to admire  
**adorateur**, -trice, *s.m.f.*, worshipper, adorer  
**adorer**, *v.a.*, to adore, to worship  
**adoucir**, *v.a.*, to soften  
**adresser (s')**, *v.r.*, to apply, to address, to speak to  
**affadir**, *v.a.*, to make tasteless  
**affaiblir**, *v.a.*, to weaken  
**affaire** *s.f.*, affair, business, difficulty  
**affaisser**, *v.a.*, to sink

**affaissement**, *s.m.*, sinking  
**affermir**, *v.a.*, to strengthen  
**Afrique**, *s.f.*, Africa  
**africain**, *s.m.*, African  
**âge**, *s.m.*, age  
**âgé**, e, *adj.*, old, aged  
**agencer**, *v.a.*, to dispose  
**agencement**, *s.m.*, arrangement  
**agile**, *adj.*, nimble  
**agilité**, *s.f.*, nimbleness, agility  
**agir**, *v.n.*, to act  
**agrandir**, *v.a.*, to enlarge  
**agrandissement**, *s.m.*, enlargement  
**aïeul**, *s.m.*, grand-father, ancestor  
**aigle**, *s.m.*, eagle  
**aiglon**, *s.m.*, eaglet  
**aigre**, *adj.*, sour  
**aigrelet**, *adj.*, sourish  
**aiguille**, *s.f.*, needle  
**aiguillon**, *s.m.*, goad  
**aile**, *s.f.*, wing  
**ailé**, e, *adj.*, winged  
**aileron**, *s.m.*, pinion, fin  
**aimable**, *adj.*, kind, amiable, gentle  
**aimant**, aimé, aiment.  
*Part. pres.* ; *part. past* ;  
*ind. pr.* of  
**aimer**, *v.a.*, to like, to love, to be fond of  
**ainsi**, *adv.*, thus, so

aïsément, <i>adv.</i> , easily, readily	aôût, <i>s.m.</i> , August	archiépiscopal, <i>adj.</i> , ar- chiepiscopal
alarmer, <i>v.a.</i> , to alarm	apaiser, <i>v.a.</i> , to appease, to calm, to soothe	archi fou, <i>adj.</i> , stark mad
allée, <i>s.f.</i> , path alley, going	apercevoir, <i>v.a.</i> , to per- ceive, to see	argent, <i>s.m.</i> , silver, money
aller, <i>v.n.</i> , to go	s'apercevoir, <i>v.r.</i> , to per- ceive one's self, to see each other	argenterie, <i>s.f.</i> , plate
allure, <i>s.f.</i> , gait	s'apercevoir, <i>v.r.</i> [de], to notice, to discover	armée, <i>s.f.</i> , army
amaigrir, <i>v.a.</i> , to make thin	aperçu, <i>s.m.</i> , glimpse	arracher, <i>v.a.</i> , to tear
amande, <i>s.f.</i> , almond	apôtre, <i>s.m.</i> , apostle	arranger, <i>v.a.</i> , to put in order, to arrange
amandier, <i>s.m.</i> , almond- tree	apostrophe, <i>s.f.</i> , apos- trophe, address, re- proach	arranges, <i>s.m.</i> , arrears
ambition, <i>s.f.</i> , ambition	apostropher, <i>v.a.</i> , to apostrophise, to ad- dress (roughly)	arrêter, <i>v.a.</i> , to arrest
amener, <i>v.a.</i> , to bring, to bring along	appauvrir, <i>v.a.</i> , to im- poverish	arrêt, <i>s.m.</i> , stoppage, decree
Amérique, <i>s.f.</i> , America	appauvrissement, <i>s.m.</i> , impoverishment	arrière-boutique, <i>s.f.</i> , back-shop
américain, <i>s.m.</i> , Ameri- can	appeler, <i>v.a.</i> , to call	arrière-garde, <i>s.f.</i> , rear- guard, rear
ami, <i>s.m.</i> , friend	appel, <i>s.m.</i> , call	arrière-neveu, <i>s.m.</i> , grand nephew
amincir, <i>v.a.</i> , to make thin	applaudir, <i>v.a.</i> , to applaud	arrière-pensée, <i>s.f.</i> , men- tal reservation
amiral, <i>s.m.</i> , admiral	applaudissement, <i>s.m.</i> , applause	arrière-saison, <i>s.f.</i> , latter end of the season, autumn, decline (of life)
amollir, <i>v.a.</i> , to soften	appliquer, (s'), <i>v.r.</i> , to apply one's self	arrivée, <i>s.f.</i> , arrival
amollissement, <i>s.m.</i> , soft- tening	apporter, <i>v.a.</i> , to bring	arriver, <i>v.n.</i> , to arrive
amuser, <i>v.a.</i> , to amuse	âpre, <i>adj.</i> , rough, sour, eager	arroser, <i>v.a.</i> , to water
amuser (s') <i>v.r.</i> , to amuse one's self	âpreté, <i>s.f.</i> , roughness, tartness, eagerness	arsenal, <i>s.m.</i> , arsenal
amusement, <i>s.m.</i> , amuse- ment	après, <i>prep.</i> , after	art, <i>s.m.</i> , art
analyse, <i>s.f.</i> , analysis, parsing, outline	après-coup, <i>loc. adv.</i> , when too late, after- wards	artiste, <i>s.m.</i> , artist
ancien, -ne, <i>adj.</i> , ancient	après-demain, <i>loc. adv.</i> , the day after to-morrow	aspect, <i>s.m.</i> , aspect
ancienneté, <i>s.f.</i> , anti- quity, seniority	après-dîner, <i>s.m.</i> , after dinner, evening	assassin, <i>s.m.</i> , murderer
ancrer, <i>s.f.</i> , anchor	après-midi, <i>s.f.</i> , after- noon	assassinat, <i>s.m.</i> , assas- sination
ancre, <i>s.f.</i> , anchor	arc, <i>s.m.</i> , arc	asseoir (s'), <i>v.r.</i> , to sit down
ancre, <i>s.m.</i> , anchorage	arcade, <i>s.f.</i> , arcade	asservir, <i>v.a.</i> , to enslave, to subdue
âne, <i>s.m.</i> , ass	archidiaconal, <i>adj.</i> , archi- diaconal	assiéger, <i>v.a.</i> , to besiege
ânon, <i>s.m.</i> , young ass	archidécacal, <i>adj.</i> , arch- decacal	assiégant, <i>s.m.</i> , besieger
anglais, <i>s.m.</i> , English- man, Briton		assiette, <i>s.f.</i> , plate
annexion, <i>s.f.</i> , annexion		assiettée, <i>s.f.</i> , plateful
anifébrile, <i>adj.</i> , antife- brile		assistance, <i>s.f.</i> , assistance
anti-monarchique, <i>adj.</i> , anti-monarchical		assistant, <i>s.m.</i> , assistant, bystander
anti-religieux, <i>adj.</i> , anti- religious		assister, <i>v.a.n.</i> , to assist, to be present
antisocial, <i>adj.</i> , anti- social		assortir, <i>v.a.</i> , to match, to sort, to suit

attabler, *v.a.*, to sit at table

attaquer, *v.a.*, to attack

attendre, *v.a.*, to wait for, to expect

s'attendre, *v.r.*, to expect  
attendu, *prep.*, considering

attendrir, *v.a.*, to soften, to move

attentif, *adj.*, attentive

attention, *s.f.*, attention

attirail, *s.m.*, implements, apparatus, train

atitude, *s.f.*, attitude

aubade, *s.f.*, morning serenade

aube, *s.f.*, dawn

auberge, *s.f.*, inn

aubergiste, *s.m.*, inn-keeper

aucun, *e. adj.*, any, no, none

aujourd'hui, *adv.*, to-day

autre, *adj.* and *pr. ind.*, other

autrui, *pr. ind.*, others, our neighbour

Auvergne, *s.f.*, Auvergne

auvergnat, *s.m.*, native of Auvergne

avancé, *-e, adj.*, advanced, forward, clear

avancer, *v.a.m.*, to advance

avant, *prep.*, before

avantage, *s.m.*, advantage

avant-coureur, *s.m.*, fore-runner

avant-goût, *s.m.*, foretaste

avant-poste, *s.m.*, outpost

avant-propos, *s.m.*, preface

avertir, *v.a.*, to warn

avide, *adj.*, greedy

avidité, *s.f.*, greediness

avis, *s.m.*, advice, opinion

avoine, *s.f.*, oats

avoir, *v. aux.* and *act.*, to have

avoir, *s.m.*, property

## B

Bagatelle, *s.f.*, trifle

baigner (se), *v.a.*, to bathe

baigneur, *-euse, s.m.f.*, bather

bail, *s.m.*, lease

bailler, *v.n.*, to yawn

baillage, *s.m.*, yawning

baillon, *s.m.*, gag

bal, *s.m.*, ball (dancing)

balancier, *v.a.*, to balance

balançoire, *s.f.*, swing, see-saw

balayer, *v.a.*, to sweep

balle, *s.f.*, ball

ballon, *s.m.*, balloon

ballot, *s.m.*, package

balustrade, *s.f.*, railing

balustre, *s.f.*, railing

barabou, *s.m.*, bamboo

banal, *adj.*, trite

banalité, *s.f.*, common-place saying

bandage, *s.m.*, bandage

bande, *s.f.*, band

bandelette, *s.f.*, bandlet

bannir, *v.a.*, to banish, to exile

barbare, *adj.*, barbarous, barbarian

barbarie, *s.f.*, barbarity, rudeness

barbe, *s.f.*, beard

barbier, *s.m.*, barber

barbouiller, *v.a.*, to besmear

barbu, *-e, adj.*, bearded

barbue, *s.f.*, brill

barre, *s.f.*, bar, cross-bar

barreau, *s.m.*, (small bar, grating

bas, *s.m.*, stocking

bassiner, *v.a.*, to warm

bât, *s.m.*, pack-saddle

bâté, *-e, adj.*, pack saddled; un âne bâté, a

downright ass

bataille, *s.f.*, battle

bateau, *s.m.*, boat

batelier, *s.m.*, boatman

battant, *-e, adj.*, porte

battante, slamming door

battre, *v.a.*, to beat

bavard, *adj.*, talkative

baver, *v.n.*, to slobber

beau, bel (*m.*), belle (*f.*), *adj.*, beautiful, handsome, fine

beaucoup, *adv.*, much

beauté, *s.f.*, beauty

bellâtre, *adj.*, of insipid

beauty

bénir, *v.a.*, to bless

berger, *s.m.*, shepherd

bergerie, *s.f.*, fold

Berlin, *n.p.*, Berlin

beurre, *s.m.*, butter

bible, *s.f.*, bible

bibliothèque, *s.f.*, library, book-case

bien, *adv.*, well, very, much, really

bien, *s.m.*, good, property, wealth

bien-aimé, *adj.*, well-beloved, dearest

bienfaisant, *adj.*, beneficent

bienfaiteur, *-rice, s.m.f.*

benefactor (*m.*), benefactress (*f.*)

bienheureux, *-se, adj.*, blessed

bijou, *-x, s.m.*, jewel

bijouterie, *s.f.*, jewellery

bille, *s.f.*, ball

billard, *s.m.*, billiards

billot, *s.m.*, block, clog

billet, *s.m.*, ticket: billet

de banque, bank-note

bisaïeul, *s.m.*, great-

grandfather

bissac, *s.m.*, wallet

blâmer, *v.a.*, to blame

blanc, *-che, adj.*, white

blanchir, *v.a.*, to whiten

blanchisseur, *s.m.*,  
bleacher  
blé, *s.m.*, corn, wheat  
blesser, *v.a.*, to wound  
blessure, *s.f.*, wound  
bleu, *adj.*, blue  
bleuir, *v.n.*, to become  
blue  
bocal, *s.m.*, glass jar,  
glass globe  
boire, *v.a.*, to drink  
boire, *s.m.*, drink, drink-  
ing  
bois, *s.m.*, wood  
boiserie, *s.f.*, wainscot  
boiteux, -se, *adj.*, lame,  
crippled  
bombarde, *s.f.*, bombard  
bombe, *s.f.*, bomb  
bon, *adj.*, good, kind;  
les bons, the good  
bord, *s.m.*, edge  
bordage, *s.m.*, planking  
border, *v.a.*, to hem  
bordure, *s.f.*, edging,  
border, frame  
bosse, *s.f.*, lump, hunch  
bossu, -e, *adj.*, lump-  
backed, hunch-backed  
botte, *s.f.*, boot  
bottier, *s.m.*, bootmaker  
bouche, *s.f.*, mouth  
bouchée, *s.f.*, mouthful  
boucher, *s.m.*, butcher;  
boucherie, butcher's  
shop  
boucher, *v.a.*, to stop  
bouchon, *s.m.*, cork  
boucle, *s.f.*, buckle, tie,  
ring  
bouffée, *s.f.*, puff  
bouffer, *v.n.*, to swell  
bouffir, *v.n.*, to swell out  
bouffissure, *s.f.*, swelling,  
bombast  
bouillir, *v.n.*, to boil,  
page 114  
boulanger, *s.m.*, baker  
boulangerie, *s.f.*, bakery  
boule, *s.f.*, ball

boulet, *s.m.*, cannon ball  
boulette, *s.f.*, ball (of  
bread or paper)  
bourg, *s.m.*, borough,  
market-town  
bourgade, *s.f.*, small mar-  
ket-town, village  
bourrade, *s.f.*, blow (with  
the but end of a  
musket)  
bourre, *s.f.*, flock, wad  
bourse, *s.f.*, purse  
boursier, *s.m.*, bursar,  
treasurer, stock-jobber  
bouteille, *s.f.*, bottle  
boutique, *s.f.*, shop  
bracelet, *s.m.*, bracelet  
branchage, *s.m.*, branches,  
boughs  
branche, *s.f.*, branch  
branchu, -e, *adj.*, branch-  
ed, branchy  
bras, *s.m.*, arm  
brigand, *s.m.*, brigand  
brigandage, *s.m.*, bri-  
gandage  
broche, *s.f.*, brooch  
brochette, *s.f.*, skewer  
broder, *v.a.*, to embroider  
brouillard, *adj.*, for blot-  
ting; papier-bouillard,  
blotting-paper  
brouiller, *v.a.*, to mix  
together, to upset  
brouillon, *s.m.*, rough  
draft, blunderer  
bruit, *s.m.*, noise, fame,  
rumour  
brume, *s.f.*, mist, fog  
brute, *s.f.*, brute  
brute, *adj.*, brutish  
bryant, *adj.*, noisy; *see*  
bruire, p. 125  
bûche, *s.f.*, log of wood  
bûcher, *s.m.*, log-house,  
stake  
bûcheron, *s.m.*, woodcut-  
ter  
bûchette, *s.f.*, small log  
of wood

bureau, *s.m.*, office  
but, *s.m.*, aim, end

## C

cache, *s.f.*, hiding place  
cachette, *s.f.*, hiding  
place  
cabine, *s.f.*, cabin  
cabinet, *s.m.*, cabinet,  
closet, study  
cacheter, *v.a.*, to seal  
cahier, *s.m.*, copy-book  
caillou, *s.m.*, flint, pebble  
caisse, *s.f.*, case  
caisson, *s.m.*, waggon  
canail, *s.m.*, canail  
camp, *s.m.*, camp  
campagne, *s.f.*, country  
campagnard, *s.m.*, coun-  
tryman  
canal, *s.m.*, canal, channel  
canard, *s.m.*, duck  
cane, *s.f.*, cane, stick  
cannelle, *s.f.*, cinnamon  
capital, *s.m.*, main point,  
capital, stock  
capitaliste, *s.m.*, capitalist  
car, *conj.*, for  
caractère, *s.m.*, charac-  
ter, temper  
carafe, *s.f.*, flaggon  
carafon, *s.m.*, decanter  
cardinal, *s.m.*, cardinal  
cardinalat, *s.m.*, cardina-  
late  
carnaval, *s.m.*, carnival  
carpe, *s.f.*, carp  
carpillon, *s.m.*, little carp  
carrosse, *s.m.*, carriage  
carrossier, *s.m.*, carriage  
or coachmaker  
cascade, *s.f.*, cascade,  
waterfall, fall  
cause, *s.f.*, cause  
cave, *s.f.*, cellar, win  
vault  
caveau, *s.m.*, cellar,  
burial vault

- ce, cet, *m.*, cette, *f.*, ces, *pl.*, *adj. dem.*, this, these, that, those  
 ce, c', *pr. dem.*, 1, he, she, they; 2, it; 3, *expletive*, ce qui, ce que, what  
 cela, *pr. dem.*, that  
 celui, (*m.*), celle, (*f.*), ceux, celles, *pl.* *Pr. dem. subj.*, he, she, one; *pl.*, they or those; *obj.*, him, her, the one; *pl.*, those  
 celui-ci, (*m.*), celle-ci, (*f.*), ceux-ci; celles-ci, (*m.f. pl.*) *pr. dem.*, (see page 58)  
 celui-là, (*m.*), celle-là, (*f.*), ceux-là, celles-là, (*m.f. pl.*) *pr. dem.*, (see page 58)  
 ceinture, *s.f.*, girdle  
 ceinturon, *s.m.*, belt  
 céleste, *adj.*, heavenly, celestial  
 cendre, *s.f.*, ashes  
 cendrier, *s.m.*, fender  
 cent, *adj. num.*, hundred  
 centaine, *s.f.*, about a hundred  
 cerise, *s.f.*, cherry  
 cerisier, *s.m.*, cherry-tree  
 certain, -e, *adj.*, sure, certain; (*ind.*) one, some  
 cerveau, *s.m.*, cerebellum  
 cervelas, *s.m.*, saveloy  
 chacal, *s.m.*, jackal  
 chagrin, *s.m.*, sorrow  
 chaîne, *s.f.*, chain  
 chaînette, *s.f.*, little chain  
 chaise, *s.f.*, chair, seat  
 chaleur, *s.f.*, heat  
 chambre, *s.f.*, room  
 champ, *s.m.*, field  
 chandelle, *s.f.*, candle  
 change, *s.m.*, exchange, change; lettre de change, bill of exchange, bill  
 chanoine, *s.m.*, canon, prebendary  
 chanoinesse, *s.f.*, canoness  
 chant, *s.m.*, song, singing  
 chanter, *v.a.n.*, to sing  
 chanteur, -euse, *s.m.f.*, singer; cantatrice, a professional singer  
 chantonner, *v.n.*, to hum  
 chape, *s.f.*, cope  
 chapeau, *s.m.*, hat  
 chaperon, *s.m.*, hood, chaperon  
 chaque, *adj. ind.*, each  
 charger, *v.a.*, to load  
 charitable, *adj.*, charitable  
 Charles, *s.m.*, Charles  
 Charlot, *s.m.*, Charlie  
 charmant, *adj.*, charming, delightful  
 charrue, *s.f.*, plough  
 chasse, *s.f.*, hunting, sporting  
 châsse, *s.f.*, shrine  
 chasseur, *s.m.*, hunter, sportsman  
 châtaigne, *s.f.*, chestnut  
 châtaignier, *s.m.*, chestnut-tree  
 châtelain, -e, *adj.*; le seigneur châtelain, the lord of the manor; la dame châtelaine, the lady of the manor; chaîne châtelaine, or châtelaine, chain  
 châtelet, *s.m.*, little castle  
 chaumière, *s.f.*, cottage  
 chausser, *v.a.*, to shoe  
 chaussure, *s.f.*, boots, shoes  
 chemin, *s.m.*, way, road  
 chemise, *s.f.*, shirt  
 cher, *adj.*, dear, (*adv.*) dear, dearly  
 cheval, *s.m.*, horse  
 chevalier, *s.m.*, knight  
 chevelure, *s.f.*, hair  
 chèvre, *s.f.*, goat  
 chevreau, *s.m.*, kid  
 chez, *prep.*, at or to the house of; allons chez moi, chez nous, let us go home  
 chien, *s.m.*, dog  
 chimère, *s.f.*, idle dream  
 chimie, *s.f.*, chemistry  
 chimiste, *s.m.*, chemist  
 chômer, *v.n.*, to be without work  
 chômage, *s.m.*, want of work, rest  
 chœur, *s.m.*, chorus, choir  
 choisir, *v.a.*, to choose, to select  
 chose, *s.f.*, thing  
 chrétien, -ne, *adj.*, christian  
 chrétienté, *s.f.*, christendom  
 chute, *s.f.*, fall  
 ci, *adv.*, here; ci-git, here lies  
 cible, *s.f.*, target  
 cinquante, *adj. num.*, fifty  
 cinquantaîne, *s.f.*, about fifty  
 circonstance, *s.f.*, circumstance  
 citoyen, *s.m.*, citizen  
 citron, *s.m.*, citron, lemon  
 citronnelle, *s.f.*, balm  
 clairement, *adv.*, clearly  
 cligner, *v.a.*, to half close (the eyes)  
 clignoter, *v.n.*, to wink (repeatedly)  
 cliqueter, *v.n.*, to clack  
 cliquetis, *s.m.*, din, clang  
 cloche, *s.f.*, bell  
 clocher, *s.m.*, bell-tower, steeple  
 cœur, *s.m.*, heart  
 coffre, *s.m.*, coffer  
 coffret, *s.m.*, little coffer

colère, *s.f.*, anger  
 colombe, *s.f.*, dove  
 colombier, *s.m.*, dove-cot  
 colonel, *s.m.*, colonel  
 colonnade, *s.f.*, colonnade  
 colonne, *s.f.*, column  
 colorer, *v.a.*, to colour  
 coloris, *s.m.*, colouring  
 combattre, *v.a.*, to combat  
 combattant, *s.m.*, combatant  
 combinaison, *s.f.*, combination  
 combiner, *v.a.*, to combine  
 comédien, *s.m.*, comedian, actor  
 commander, *v.a.n.*, to command  
 commandant, *s.m.*, commander  
 comme, *adv.*, how  
 comme, *conj.*, as  
 comment, *adv.*, how  
 commercer, *v.n.*, to trade  
 commerçant, *s.m.*, trader  
 compagnie, *s.f.*, company, society  
 comparable, *adj.*, comparable  
 comparaison, *s.f.*, comparison  
 comparer, *v.a.*, to compare  
 compatir, *v.n.*, to sympathise (with)  
 complet, *-ête, adj.*, complete  
 compliment, *s.m.*, compliment, congratulation  
 complot, *s.m.*, plot  
 composer (se), *v.r.*, to be composed  
 comprendre, *v.a.*, to understand, to comprehend  
 compromettre (se), *v.r.*, to compromise one's self  
 compte, *s.m.*, account

compter, *v.a.*, to reckon  
 compteur, *s.m.*, meter (gas)  
 Comte, *s.m.*, Count, Earl  
 comté, *s.m.*, earldom, county  
 Comtesse, *s.f.*, Countess  
 concert, *s.m.*, concert  
 concevoir, *v.a.*, to conceive  
 concourir, *v.n.*, (à), to concur (in); concourir pour, to compete for  
 condamner, *v.a.*, to condemn  
 condescendre, *v.n.*, to condescend  
 conducteur, *-trice, s.m.f.*, conductor, guide, driver  
 conduire, *v.a.*, to lead  
 conduite, *s.f.*, conduct, behaviour  
 confiance, *s.f.*, confidence, trust  
 confier, *v.a.*, to entrust  
 confondre, *v.a.*, to confound; se confondre, to be blended; se confondre en excuses, to be lost in apologies  
 conjugaison, *s.f.*, conjugation  
 conjuguer, *v.a.*, to conjugate  
 connaître, *v.a.*, to know  
 conquérant, *s.m.*, conqueror  
 conquérir, *v.a.*, to conquer  
 conscience, *s.f.*, conscience  
 consentir, *v.n.*, to consent  
 conséquence, *s.f.*, consequence  
 consoler, *v.a.*, to console  
 consul, *s.m.*, consul  
 consulat, *s.m.*, consulate  
 contenir, *v.a.*, to contain

contenter, *v.a.*, to content  
 contenu, *s.m.*, contents  
 continuuel, *-le, adj.*, continual  
 contre, *prep.*, against  
 contre-amiral, *s.m.*, rear admiral  
 contre-coup, *s.m.*, rebound, consequence  
 contre-maitre, *s.m.*, foreman  
 contre-marque, *s.f.*, countermark, check  
 contre-sens, *s.m.*, mistranslation  
 contrecarrer, *v.a.*, to thwart  
 contredire, *v.a.*, to contradict  
 contrefaire, *v.a.*, to imitate  
 convenance, *s.f.*, fitness, (*pl.*), propriety; manquer aux convenances, to be guilty of impropriety  
 convenir, *v.n.*, to agree to, to fit  
 convoi, *s.m.*, funeral, convoy, train  
 copie, *s.f.*, copy  
 copiste, *s.m.*, copyist  
 coquet, *-te, adj.*, coquettish, elegant  
 coquetterie, *s.f.*, coquetry, flirtation  
 coquillage, *s.m.*, shell-fish  
 coquille, *s.f.*, shell  
 corail, *s.m.*, coral  
 cordage, *s.m.*, cordage, rope  
 corde, *s.f.*, cord  
 cordeau, *s.m.*, cord  
 corder, *v.a.*, to cord  
 corderie, *s.f.*, rope-making  
 cordier, *s.m.*, rope-maker  
 cordon, *s.m.*, string  
 correctement, *adv.*, correctly



côte, *s.f.*, rib, cost  
 côtelette, *s.f.*, cutlet, chop  
 cotte, *s.f.*, petticoat  
 cotillon, *s.m.*, under-  
 petticoat  
 couleur, *s.f.*, colour  
 coupable, *adj.*, guilty  
 couple, *s.m.*, couple  
 complet, *s.m.*, verse (of a  
 song)  
 coup, *s.m.*, blow, stroke,  
 knock; tout-à-coup,  
 all at once  
 couper, *v.a.*, to cut  
 coupon, *s.m.*, coupon  
 coupure, *s.f.*, cut  
 courage, *s.m.*, courage  
 courageux, -se, *adj.*,  
 courageous  
 coureur, *s.m.*, runner  
 court, *adj.*, short  
 cousin, *s.m.*, cousin  
 coussin, *s.m.*, cushion  
 coussinet, *s.m.*, little  
 cushion  
 couteau, *s.m.*, knife  
 coutelier, *s.m.*, cutter  
 couvée, *s.f.*, brood  
 couvrir, *v.a.*, to hatch  
 cracher, *v.n.*, to spit  
 crachoir, *s.m.*, spittoon  
 craignez, *v.a.*, (see crain-  
 dre, p. 127)  
 craindre, *v.a.*, to fear  
 crainte, *s.f.*, fear  
 cravate, *s.f.*, cravat,  
 necktie  
 crayon, *s.m.*, pencil  
 crédule, *adj.*, credulous  
 crédulité, *s.f.*, credulity  
 cri, *s.m.*, cry  
 crier, *v.n.*, to cry  
 cristal, *s.m.*, crystal  
 critiquer, *v.a.*, to criticise  
 croc, *s.m.*, hook  
 crochet, *s.m.*, little hook  
 croire, *v.a.n.*, to believe  
 crois, -croit, *ind.pres.* of  
 croire  
 croisée, *s.f.*, window

croître, *v.n.*, to grow  
 croix, *s.f.*, cross; croisil-  
 lon, cross-bar  
 croquer, *v.a.*, to crunch,  
 to sketch  
 croquis, *s.m.*, sketch  
 croûte, *s.f.*, crust  
 croyance, *s.f.*, belief  
 croyant, *v.a.*, *p.pr.* of  
 croire  
 croyant, *s.m.*, believer  
 croyez, *imp.* of croire  
 cru, *v.*, *p.past* of croire  
 cru, *adj.*, raw, crude  
 crû, *v.*, *p.past* of croître  
 crû, *s.m.*, growth, growing  
 cruauté, *s.f.*, cruelty  
 cruel, -le, *adj.*, cruel, un-  
 kind  
 cueillir, *v.a.*, to gather,  
 to pluck  
 cuiller, *s.f.*, spoon  
 cuillerée, *s.f.*, spoonful  
 cuir, *s.m.*, leather  
 cuisine, *s.f.*, kitchen  
 cuisinier, *s.m.*, cook  
 cyprès, *s.m.*, cypress

## D

danger, *s.m.*, danger  
 dans, *prep.*, in, into  
 danser, *v.a.n.*, to dance  
 danseur, -se, *s.m.f.*, dancer  
 dame, *s.f.*, lady  
 dame, *int.*, indeed, well  
 de, *prep.*, of  
 de, *art.*, *def.* or *part.*  
 (instead of du, de la,  
 des), some, any  
 déclinaison, *s.f.*, declen-  
 sion  
 décliner, *v.a.*, to decline  
 déballer, *v.a.*, to unpack  
 débat, *s.m.*, debate  
 débattre, *v.a.*, to discuss  
 débitant, *s.m.*, retailer  
 débiter, *v.a.*, to retail  
 débrouiller, *v.a.*, to un-  
 ravel

début, *s.m.*, beginning  
 débiter, *v.n.*, to begin  
 décacheter, *v.a.*, to open  
 (a letter)  
 décevoir, *v.a.*, to deceive  
 décider, *v.a.*, to decide  
 se décider, *v.r.*, to come  
 to a decision, to make  
 up one's mind  
 déclarer, *v.a.*, to declare  
 défailir, *v.n.*, to fall, to  
 decay, to faint  
 défaire, *v.a.*, to undo, to  
 defeat, to rout  
 défaut, *s.m.*, defect, fault  
 défendre, *v.a.*, to forbid,  
 to defend  
 défendeur, *s.m.*, -eresse,  
*s.f.*, defendant  
 défiant, *adj.*, distrustful  
 définir, *v.a.*, to define  
 dégât, *s.m.*, damage,  
 waste  
 dégrader (se), *v.r.*, to  
 degrade or disgrace  
 one's self  
 déjeuner, *v.n.* to break-  
 fast  
 déjeuner, *s.m.*, breakfast  
 délatcur, *s.m.*, délatrice,  
*f.*, informer  
 délicieux, -se, *adj.*, deli-  
 cious  
 délivrance, *s.f.*, deliver-  
 ance  
 délivrer, *v.a.*, to deliver  
 démarche, *s.f.*, step, pro-  
 ceeding  
 demain, *adv.*, to-morrow  
 demande, *s.f.*, request,  
 question  
 demander, *v.a.*, to ask  
 demeure, *s.f.*, abode,  
 dwelling  
 demeurer, *v.n.*, to live,  
 to remain, to stay  
 demi-fermé, *adj.*, half-  
 closed, partly closed  
 demi-fin, *adj.*, half-fine  
 demi-mort, *adj.*, half-dead

- demi-nu, *adj.*, half-naked  
 démolir, *v.a.*, to demolish,  
 to pull down  
 dent, *s.f.*, tooth  
 dentelle, *s.f.*, lace  
 dentier, *s.m.*, set of teeth  
 dentiste, *s.m.*, dentist  
 dénué, -e, *adj.*, destitute,  
 devoid  
 dépêcher (se), *v.r.*, to  
 hasten  
 dépendance, *s.f.*, depen-  
 dence  
 dépendre, *v.n.*, to depend  
 dépens, *s.m.pl.*, expense,  
 cost, charge; à mes  
 dépens, at my expense  
 dépenser, *v.a.* to spend  
 déplaire, *v.n.*, to dis-  
 please  
 déranger, *v.a.*, to disturb  
 des, *art.pl.*, of the, of;  
 from the, from; some,  
 any  
 désir, *s.m.*, desire, wish  
 désirer, *v.a.*, to desire, to  
 wish for  
 désobéir, *v.n.*, to disobey  
 desseïn, *s.m.*, design,  
 project  
 dessin, *s.m.*, drawing  
 détail, *s.m.*, detail, *pl.*  
 details, particulars  
 détourner (se), to go out of  
 one's way, to turn away  
 détromper, *v.a.*, to un-  
 deceive  
 détruire, *v.a.*, to destroy  
 deuil, *s.m.*, mourning  
 deux, *adj.card.*, two  
 dévoiler, *v.a.*, to reveal  
 devoir, *v.a.*, to owe  
 devoir, *s.m.*, duty  
 diable, *s.m.*, devil  
 diaconal, -e, *adj.*, diaconal  
 dictionnaire, *s.m.*, dic-  
 tionary  
 Dieu, *s.m.*, God  
 différent, *adj.*, different,  
 various  
 différer, *v.a.*, to defer, to  
 postpone  
 dimanche, *s.m.*, Sunday  
 dinde, *s.f.*, turkey-hen  
 dindon, *s.m.*, turkey  
 dîner, *v.n.*, to dine  
 diner, *s.m.*, dinner  
 diocèse, *s.m.*, diocese  
 diocésain, *s.m.*, diocesan  
 dire, *v.a.*, to say  
 dire, *s.m.*, saying, state-  
 ment  
 disent, dit, dites, *v.a.*,  
 (from dire p. 128)  
 directeur, *s.m.*, director,  
 manager  
 directrice, *s.f.*, directrix  
 discret, -ète, *adj.*, discreet  
 discrétion, *s.f.*, discretion  
 discuter, *v.a.*, to discuss  
 disparaître, *v.n.*, to dis-  
 appear  
 diviser, *v.a.*, to divide  
 diviseur, *s.m.*, divisor  
 dix, *adj.n.*, ten  
 dizaine, *s.f.*, about ten  
 docile, *adj.*, docile  
 docilité, *s.f.*, docility  
 doigt, *s.m.*, finger  
 doigté, *s.m.*, fingering  
 domestique, *s.m.f.*, man-  
 servant; woman ser-  
 vant  
 donner, *v.a.*, to give;  
 donner la parole, to  
 give leave to speak  
 dont, *pr. relat.* (par. 103  
 to 106)  
 dorénavant, *adv.*, hence-  
 forth  
 dormir, to sleep  
 douane, *s.f.*, custom-  
 house  
 douanier, *s.m.*, custom-  
 house officer  
 douçâtre, *adj.*, sweetish,  
 insipidly sweet  
 doux, -co, *adj.*, sweet,  
 fresh, soft, mild  
 douze *adj.num.*, twelve  
 douzaine, *s.f.*, about  
 twelve, or a dozen  
 droit, *adj.*, straight, right  
 drôle, *adj.*, droll, funny  
 drôlerie, *s.f.*, drollery  
 du (instead of de le) of  
 the, of; from the, from  
 some, any  
 dû, *s.m.*, due  
 ducal, *adj.*, ducal  
 dur, *adj.*, hard  
 dureté, *s.f.*, hardness

## E

- Eau, *s.f.*, water  
 ébarber, *v.a.*, to strip  
 (quills)  
 ébène, *s.f.*, ebony  
 ébénier, *s.m.*, ebony-tree  
 ébéniste, *s.m.*, cabinet-  
 maker  
 ébénisterie, *s.f.*, cabinet-  
 making  
 éblouir, *v.a.*, to dazzle  
 échafaud, *s.m.*, scaffold  
 échafaudage, *s.m.*, scaf-  
 folding  
 échappée, *s.f.*, vista,  
 prank  
 échapper, *v.n.*, to escape  
 échoir, *v.n.*, to fall, to  
 befall, to fall due  
 éclaircir, *v.a.*, to en-  
 lighten  
 éclaircissement, *s.m.*, ex-  
 planation  
 école, *s.f.*, school  
 écolier, *s.m.*, school-boy  
 économat, *s.m.*, steward-  
 ship  
 économe, *adj.*, thrifty,  
 saving  
 économe, *s.m.*, steward  
 écrire, *v.a.*, to write  
 écrit, *s.m.*, writing  
 écrivain, *s.m.*, bill, board  
 écrivain, *s.m.*, writer  
 écrivassier, *s.m.*, scribbler

- écueil, *s.m.*, rock, reef  
 écuelle, *s.f.*, bowl  
 écuelle, *s.f.*, bowl-full  
 écureuil, *s.m.*, squirrel  
 édenté, *adj.*, toothless  
 édifice, *s.m.*, edifice  
 effacer, *v.a.*, to efface  
 effet, *s.m.*, effect  
 égal, *adj.*, equal  
 égarer (s'), *v.r.*, to lose one's self, to go astray  
 église, *s.f.*, church  
 élargir, *v.a.*, to enlarge, to widen  
 élargissure, *s.f.*, piece put in to widen  
 élégant, *adj.*, elegant  
 élève, *s.2g.*, pupil  
 élever, *v.a.*, to raise  
 élire, *v.a.*, to elect  
 élu, *s.m.*, elect  
 émail, *s.m.*, enamel  
 emballer, *v.a.*, to pack up  
 embarras, *s.m.*, encumbrance, trouble  
 emboucher, *v.a.*, to put (a wind instrument) to one's mouth  
 embouchure, *s.f.*, mouth of a river  
 embrassade, *s.f.*, embrace  
 embrasser, *v.a.*, to embrace  
 émigrant, *s.m.*, emigrant  
 émigrer, *v.n.*, to emigrate  
 émouvoir, *v.a.*, to move  
 empesser (s'), *v.r.*, to hasten  
 en, *prep.*, in, into  
 en, *adv.*, from thence  
 en, *pr.pers.* (page 56)  
 enchanteur, *s.m.*, enchanter  
 enchanteresse, *s.f.*, enchantress  
 enchérir, *v.a.*, to raise (prices)  
 enchérisseur, *s.m.*, bidder  
 encore, *adv.*, still, yet, again  
 encre, *s.f.*, ink  
 encrier, *s.m.*, inkstand  
 endenté, *adj.*, with teeth  
 énergique, *adj.*, energetic  
 enfant, *s.m.*, infant, baby, child  
 enfantin, *adj.*, childish  
 enfiler, *v.a.*, to thread  
 enfilade, *s.f.*, suite of rooms, long string  
 enjamber, *v.a.*, to stride  
 enjambée, *s.f.*, stride  
 enjoindre, *v.a.*, to enjoin, to direct  
 ennemi, *s.m.*, enemy, foe  
 ennui, *s.m.*, wearisomeness, care  
 énoncer, *v.a.*, to express  
 s'énoncer, to express one's-self, to be expressed  
 enorgueillir (s'), *v.r.*, to boast  
 enquérir (s'), to inquire, to ask  
 enrhumé (s'), to catch a cold  
 enrichir, *v.a.*, to enrich  
 entabler, *v.a.*, to entable  
 entablement, *s.m.*, entablature  
 entendre, *v.a.n.*, to hear, to understand  
 entêté, *adj.*, obstinate  
 entre-côte, *s.m.*, meat between the ribs  
 entrelarder, *v.a.*, to interlard  
 entremets, *s.m.*, side-dish  
 entremettre, *v.a.*, to interpose  
 entrepont, *s.m.*, between the decks  
 entreprendre, *v.a.*, to undertake  
 entreprise, *s.f.*, enterprising, undertaking  
 entrée, *s.f.*, entrance  
 entrer, *v.n.*, to enter  
 entresol, *s.m.*, mezzanine  
 envahir, *v.a.*, to invade  
 envers, *pr.*, towards, to  
 envi (à l'), *adv.*, in emulation of each other, vying with each other  
 envie, *s.f.*, envy, wish, longing  
 envoyer, *v.a.*, to send  
 épais, -se, *adj.*, thick  
 épanchement, *s.m.*, discharge, overflow, (*fig.*) overflow, outburst  
 épancher, *v.a.*, to pour out, (*fig.*) to vent, to discharge  
 épée, *s.f.*, sword  
 épiscopal, *adj.*, episcopal  
 épître, *s.f.*, epistle  
 équestre, *adj.*, equestrian  
 équivaloir, *v.n.*, to be equivalent, to be tantamount  
 ermite, *s.m.*, hermit  
 ermitage, *s.m.*, hermitage  
 erreur, *s.f.*, error, mistake  
 esclavage, *s.m.*, slavery  
 esclave, *s.m.f.*, slave  
 espérance, *s.f.*, hope  
 espiègle, *adj.*, frolicsome  
 espièglerie, *s.f.*, frolic  
 esprit, *s.m.*, wit; avoir de l'esprit, to be witty  
 esquiver (s'), *v.r.*, to steal away  
 essentiel, -le, *adj.*, essential  
 estime, *s.m.*, esteem  
 estimer, *v.a.*, to esteem  
 établir, *v.a.*, to establish  
 établissement, *s.m.*, establishment  
 été, *s.m.*, summer  
 éteindre, *v.a.*, to extinguish, to put out

étendre, *v.c.*, to extend  
 étendue, *s.f.*, extent  
 étoile, *s.f.*, star  
 étranger, -ère, *adj.*, foreign  
 étroit, *adj.*, narrow, light  
 européen, *adj.*, European  
 éventail, *s.m.*, fan  
 éviter, *v.a.*, to avoid  
 excellent, *adj.*, excellent  
 excès, *s.m.*, excess, abuse  
 excuse, *s.f.*, excuse, apology  
 exemple, *s.m.*, example  
 exhaler, *v.a.*, to exhale, to emit  
 exigeant, *adj.*, particular, unreasonable  
 exiger, *v.a.*, to exact, to require  
 exigu, -iie, *adj.*, small, slender, slight  
 expédient, *adj.*, expedient, advisable  
 expédient, *s.m.*, expedient, device  
 expédient, *v.a.*, from expédier, to dispatch  
 exposer, *v.a.*, to expose  
 exprès, *s.m.*, express, courier  
 exprès, -esse, *adj.*, express  
 exprès, *adv.*, purposely  
 expressément, *adv.*, expressly  
 externat, *s.m.*, day-school  
 externe, *s.m.*, day-pupil

## F

Façade, *s.f.*, front (of a building)  
 face, *s.f.*, face  
 facette, *s.f.*, facet  
 fâcher (se) *v.r.*, to get angry  
 facile, *adj.*, easy  
 facilité, *s.f.*, facility  
 façon, *s.f.*, fashion, way  
 fade, *adj.*, tasteless  
 faible, *adj.*, weak, feeble

faiblesse, *s.f.*, weakness, feebleness  
 fainéant, *adj.*, idle, lazy  
 fainéantise, *s.f.*, idleness, laziness  
 faire, *v.a.n.*, to do, to make  
 falloir, *v.imp.*, to be necessary  
 famille, *s.f.*, family  
 fatal, *adj.*, fatal  
 fatiguer (se), *v.r.*, to fatigue or to tire one's self  
 faucheur, -euse, *s.m.f.*, mower; (*fem.*) a mowing machine  
 faute, *s.f.*, fault, mistake  
 fauteuil, *s.m.*, arm-chair  
 favorable, *adj.*, favourable  
 favori, -te, *adj.*, favourite  
 fébrile, *adj.*, febrile  
 félon, *adj.*, felonious  
 félonie, *s.f.*, treason  
 fendre, *v.a.*, to split; fendre la presse, to squeeze through the throng  
 fermage, *s.m.*, rent (of a farm)  
 ferme, *s.f.*, farm  
 ferme, *adj.*, firm  
 fermeté, *s.f.*, firmness  
 fermer, *v.a.*, to close  
 fermier, *s.m.*, farmer  
 fermoir, *s.m.*, clasp  
 féroce, *adj.*, fierce, ferocious  
 ferrer, *v.a.*, to put iron to, to shoe (a horse)  
 ferrure, *s.f.*, iron-work  
 festin, *s.m.*, feast, banquet  
 fête, *s.f.*, feast, festival  
 feu, *s.m.*, fire  
 feuillage, *s.m.*, foliage  
 feuille, *s.f.*, leaf  
 feuillet, *s.m.*, leaflet  
 fidèle, *adj.*, faithful  
 fier, *adj.*, proud  
 figure, *s.f.*, figure, face

fier, (se), *v.r.*, (*à, sur. en*) to trust, to confide (*in*), to rely (*on*)  
 fil, *s.m.*, thread  
 filasse, *s.f.*, tow  
 fille, *s.f.*, daughter, child  
 girl  
 filleul, *s.m.*, godson, god-child  
 fils, *s.m.*, son, boy  
 fin, *adj.*, fine, sharp, shrewd  
 finaud, *adj.*, artful, cunning  
 finir, *v.a.*, to finish, to end  
 flâner, *v.n.*, to lounge  
 flâneur, *s.m.*, lounge  
 flatteur, -se, *s.m.f.*, flatterer, *adj.*, flattering  
 flétrir, (se) *v.r.*, to wither  
 flétrissure, *s.f.*, withering, disgrace  
 fleur, *s.f.*, flower  
 fleurir, *v.n.*, to blossom, to flourish  
 fleuriste, *s.m.*, flower-seller, flower-maker, flower gardener, florist  
 fonction, *s.f.*, duty, function  
 fondateur, -trice, *s.m.f.*, founder  
 fondement, *s.m.*, foundation  
 fondre, *v.a.*, to melt  
 forêt, *s.f.*, forest  
 forme, *s.f.*, shape, mould  
 format, *s.m.*, size (of a book)  
 fortune, *s.f.*, fortune, wealth  
 fou, fol, folle, *adj.*, mad, foolish; follet, -te, playful, foolish  
 foudre, *s.f.*, lightning, thunder, thunderbolt  
 foudroyant, *adj.*, thundering, thunder-staking

lacet, *s.m.*, whip  
 fourbe, *s.m.*, knave,  
 cheat  
 fourberie, *s.f.*, knavery  
 fourche, *s.f.*, pitchfork  
 fourchette, *s.f.*, fork  
 fournir, *v.a.*, to furnish  
 fournisseur, *s.m.*, pur-  
 veyor  
 frais, fraîche, *adj.*, fresh,  
 cool  
 Français, *s.m.*, French-  
 man  
 franc, -che, *adj.*, free,  
 frank  
 franchise, *s.f.*, freedom,  
 frankness, franchise  
 fraude, *s.f.*, fraud, de-  
 ceit  
 frémir, *v.n.*, to shudder,  
 to quiver  
 frémissement, *s.m.*, shud-  
 der, thrill  
 fréquenter, *v.a.*, to fre-  
 quent  
 frère, *s.m.*, brother  
 frivole, *adj.*, frivolous  
 froment, *s.m.*, wheat  
 fruiterie, *s.f.*, fruitery  
 fuir, *v.a.n.*, to flee, to  
 fly  
 fumer, *v.a.*, to smoke  
 fumée, *s.f.*, smoke  
 fusil, *s.m.*, gun  
 fusillade, *s.f.*, firing, vol-  
 ley of musketry  
 fût, *s.m.*, cask  
 futaille, *s.f.*, small cask  
 fuyard, *adj.*, fugitive

## G

gagner, *v.a.*, to gain, to  
 win  
 gai, -e, *adj.*, gay  
 galop, *s.m.*, gallop  
 galoper, *v.n.*, to gallop  
 garçon, *s.m.*, boy, ser-  
 vant, waiter  
 garde, *s.f.*, guard; se  
 tenir sur ses gardes, to  
 be on one's guard  
 garde, *s.m.*, guard, guar-  
 dian  
 garder, *v.a.*, to keep, to  
 guard  
 gardien, *s.m.*, keeper,  
 guardian  
 garnir, *v.a.*, to fill, to  
 trim  
 garnison, *s.f.*, garrison  
 Gascogne, *s.f.*, Gascony  
 Gascon, *s.adj.*, Gascon  
 gâteau, *s.m.*, cake  
 géant, *s.m.*, giant  
 gémir, *v.n.*, to groan, to  
 lament  
 gendarme, *s.m.*, gendarme  
 gendarmerie, *s.f.*, gen-  
 darmery  
 gêne, *s.f.*, trouble, un-  
 easiness  
 général, *s.m.*, general  
 généreux, -se, *adj.*, gene-  
 rous  
 générosité, *s.f.*, generosity  
 gens, *s.m.*, folks, persons,  
 men; les jeunes gens,  
 young people  
 gésir, *v.n.*, to lie  
 gibier, *s.m.*, game  
 glace, *s.f.*, ice  
 glaçon, *s.m.*, icicle  
 glissade, *s.f.*, slip  
 glisser, *v.n.*, to glide, to slip  
 golfe, *s.m.*, gulf  
 gomme, *s.f.*, gum  
 gommier, *s.m.*, gum-tree  
 gorger, *v.a.*, to gorge, to  
 glut  
 gorgée, *s.f.*, mouthful (of  
 a liquid), draught

gourmand, -e, *adj.*, greedy  
 goût, *s.m.*, taste  
 goûter, *v.a.*, to taste  
 goûter, *s.m.*, lunch  
 goutte, *s.f.*, drop  
 gouttelette, *s.f.*, little drop  
 gouvernail, *s.m.*, rudder  
 helm  
 grammaire, *s.f.*, gram-  
 mar  
 graver, *v.a.*, to engrave  
 grand, -e, *adj.*, great, large,  
 wide  
 gravure, *s.f.*, engraving  
 grec, -que, *adj.*, Greek  
 grenade, *s.f.*, pome-  
 granate, grenade  
 grenadier, *s.m.*, pome-  
 granate-tree, grenadier  
 griffer, *v.a.*, to claw, to  
 scratch  
 griffonner, *v.n.*, to scrib-  
 ble  
 grillade, *s.f.*, broiled meat  
 grillage, *s.m.*, wire-work  
 grille, *s.f.*, grating  
 grillier, *v.a.*, to broil  
 grogner, *v.n.*, to grum-  
 ble  
 grognon, *s.m.*, grumbler  
 gros, -se, *adj.*, big  
 groseille, *s.f.*, currant  
 groseillier, *s.m.*, currant-  
 tree  
 grossir, *v.n.*, to become  
 big  
 guérir, *v.a.*, to cure  
 guérison, *s.f.*, recovery  
 guerre, *s.f.*, war  
 guerrier, *s.m.*, warrior  
 guêtre, *s.f.*, gaiter  
 guide, *s.m.*, guide  
 guidon, *s.m.*, guidon,  
 sight of a gun, flag,  
 cornet  
 Guillaume, *s.p.m.*, Wil-  
 liam

Gâcher, *v.a.*, to mix  
 (mortar), to make a  
 mess of  
 gâchis, *s.m.*, mess

## II

Habile, *adj.*, clever, skilful, able  
 habiller, *v.a.*, to dress; s'habiller, to dress oneself  
 habit, *s.m.*, clothes, coat, dress-coat  
 habiter, *v.a.n.*, to inhabit  
 habitant, *s.m.*, inhabitant  
 habitation, *s.f.*, habitation, abode  
 habituer, (s'), *v.r.*, to accustom one's self  
 hache, *s.f.*, axe, hatchet  
 hacher, *v.a.*, to mince  
 hachis, *s.m.*, hash  
 hagard, *adj.*, haggard, wild  
 haie, *s.f.*, hedge, row, line  
 haine, *s.f.*, hatred  
 haïr, *v.a.*, to hate  
 hardi, *adj.*, bold  
 hardiesse, *s.f.*, boldness  
 hasard, *s.m.*, chance, hazard  
 haut, *adj.*, high  
 hauteesse, *s.f.*, highness  
 hélas! *int.*, alas! ah!  
 hennir, *v.n.*, to neigh  
 herbe, *s.f.*, herb  
 herbage, *s.m.*, herbage  
 héritier, *s.m.*, heir  
 heur, *s.m.*, luck  
 heure, *s.f.*, hour  
 heureux, -se, *adj.*, happy, lucky, fortunate  
 hibou, *s.m.*, owl  
 hier, *adv.*, yesterday  
 histoire, *s.f.*, history  
 hiver, *s.m.*, winter  
 hommage, *s.m.*, homage  
 homme, *s.m.*, man  
 honnête, *adj.*, honest  
 honnêteté, *s.f.*, honesty  
 honteux, -se, *adj. m.f.*, ashamed, shameful  
 horloge, *s.f.*, clock

horloger, *s.m.*, clock-maker  
 hors, *prep.*, out  
 hospitalier, *adj.*, hospitable  
 hôte, *s.m.*, host  
 houille, *s.f.*, coal  
 houiller, *adj.*, containing coal; bassin houiller, coal-basin  
 huile, *s.f.*, oil  
 huilier, *s.m.*, oil-cruet  
 huit, *adj.num.*, eight  
 huitaine, *s.f.*, about a week, or a week  
 humilier, *v.a.*, to humble

## I

Ici, *adv.*, here  
 île, *s.f.*, island  
 îlot, *s.m.*, islet  
 imaginer, (s'), *v.r.*, to imagine  
 immense, *adj.*, immense  
 immensité, *s.f.*, immensity  
 impatient, *adj.*, impatient  
 impertinence, *s.f.*, impertinence  
 importance, *s.f.*, importance  
 impôt, *s.m.*, tax  
 imprimer, *v.a.*, to print  
 imprudemment, *adv.*, imprudently  
 impunément, *adv.*, with impunity  
 incendie, *s.m.*, fire, conflagration  
 inconstant, *adj.*, inconstant, inconsistent  
 indifférent, *adj.*, indifferent  
 infirme, *adj.*, infirm  
 infirmerie, *s.f.*, infirmary  
 inflexible, *adj.*, inflexible  
 ingénieux, -se, *adj.*, ingenious, clever

ingrat, *adj.*, ungrateful  
 inquiet, -ète, *adj.*, uneasy  
 insensible, *adj.*, insensible, unfeeling  
 insignifiant, *adj.*, insignificant  
 instituteur, *s.m.*, founder, tutor, schoolmaster  
 institutrice, *s.f.*, governess, school-mistress  
 insuffisant, *adj.*, insufficient  
 intendant, *s.m.*, steward  
 intention, *s.f.*, intention, design  
 intéressant, *adj.*, interesting  
 intérêt, *s.m.*, interest  
 interne, *s.m.*, boarder  
 internat, *s.m.*, boarding-school  
 intervalle, *s.m.*, interval; *loc.*, à de longs intervalles, at long intervals  
 intime, *adj.*, intimate  
 intimité, *s.f.*, intimacy  
 invariable, *adj.*, invariable  
 inviter, *v.a.*, to invite  
 invité, *adj.*, invited  
 irai, *v.n.*, see aller, p. 112  
 Italien, *s.m.*, Italian

## J

Jaloux, -se, *adj.*, jealous  
 jalousie, *s.f.*, jealousy  
 jamais, *adv.*, ever; ne... jamais, never  
 jambage, *s.m.*, stroke (of a pen), jamb  
 jambe, *s.f.*, leg  
 jambon, *s.m.*, ham  
 jardin, *s.m.*, garden  
 jardinage, *s.m.*, gardening  
 jardiner, *v.n.*, to garden  
 jardinier, *s.m.*, gardener  
 jatte, *s.f.*, bowl

jattée, *s.f.*, bowl-full  
 jaune, *adj.*, yellow  
 jaunir, *v.u.*, to become yellow  
 je, *j'*, *pr.pers.*, I  
 jeune, *adj.*, young  
 jeûne, *s.m.*, fast, fasting  
 joie, *s.f.*, joy  
 joli, -e, *adj.*, pretty  
 jouet, *s.m.*, toy, plaything  
 joueur, *s.m.*, player (*fem.* joueuse)  
 joujou, *s.m.*, toy  
 jour *s.m.*, day; *loc.*, de jour en jour, from day to day  
 journal, *s.m.*, journal, newspaper  
 journaliste, *s.m.*, journalist  
 joute, *s.f.*, joust, tilt, fight  
 joyeux, -se, *adj.*, joyous, joyful  
 jugement, *s.m.*, judgment  
 juillet, *s.m.*, July  
 jumeau, *s.m.*, twin  
 jumeau, *adj.m.* (*fem.* jumelle), twin  
 jupe, *s.f.*, skirt  
 jupon, *s.m.*, petticoat  
 jurer, *v.a.n.*, to swear  
 juron, *s.m.*, oath  
 jusque (à) *pr.*, to, as far as  
 juste, *adj.*, just, correct, (*adv.*) chanter juste, to sing in tune  
 justesse, *s.f.*, justness, accuracy, propriety  
 justice, *s.f.*, justice  
 justification, *s.f.*, justification

## K

Kilomètre, *s.m.*, kilometer

## L

La, *l'*, *art.f.*, the  
 lui, *pr.pers.reg.dir.*, her, it

là, *adv.*, there, thither;  
 là-bas, yonder  
 laborieux, -se *adj.*, laborious, industrious  
 lait, *s.m.*, milk  
 laiterie, *s.f.*, dairy  
 laite, *s.f.*, soft-roe  
 laité, -e, *adj.*, soft-roed  
 lancer, *v.a.*, to dart, to throw, to cast  
 langage, *s.m.*, language  
 langue, *s.f.*, tongue  
 languette, *s.f.*, tongue  
 lard, *s.m.*, bacon  
 lardon, *s.m.*, slice of bacon  
 Latin, *s.m.*, Latin  
 latiniste, *s.m.*, Latin scholar  
 lavage, *s.m.*, washing  
 laver, *v.a.*, to wash  
 laveur, *s.m.*, washer; laveuse, *s.f.*, washer-woman  
 lavis, *s.m.*, wash (drawing)  
 le, *l'*, *art.m.*, the  
 le, *l'*, *pr.pers.masc.reg.dir.*, him, it  
 leçon, *s.f.*, lesson  
 lecteur, *s.m.*, reader, lecturer  
 lectrice, *s.f.*, reader  
 lecture, *s.f.*, reading; cabinet de lecture, reading-rooms  
 légèreté, *s.f.*, lightness  
 les, *art.pl.*, the  
 les, *pr.pers.reg.dir.pl.*, them  
 lettre, *s.f.*, letter  
 lever (se), *v.r.*, to rise  
 liaison, *s.f.*, union, joining  
 libre, *adj.*, free  
 lier, *v.a.*, to tie  
 ligue, *s.f.*, line  
 lignage, *s.m.*, lineage  
 limon, *s.m.*, lemon  
 limonade, *s.f.*, lemonade  
 limonier, *s.m.*, lemon-tree  
 lion, *s.m.*, lion

liquide, *s.m.*, and *adj.*, liquid  
 lire, *v.a.*, to read  
 lit, *s.m.*, bed  
 livre, *s.m.*, book  
 livre, *s.f.*, pound  
 livret, *s.m.*, little book  
 loger, *v.a.u.*, to lodge  
 logis, *s.m.*, dwelling  
 loi, *s.f.*, law  
 Londres, *n.p.*, London  
 louage, *s.m.*, letting out, hire  
 Louis, *s.m.*, Lewis  
 lourd, -e, *adj.*, heavy  
 louve, *s.f.*, she-wolf  
 loyal, -e, *adj.*, loyal  
 loyer, *s.m.*, rent  
 lu, *past part.*, of lire  
 luxe, *s.m.*, luxury

## M

Mâcher, *v.a.*, to chew  
 mâchoire, *s.f.*, jaw  
 machine, *s.f.*, machine  
 machiniste, *s.m.*, machinist  
 magasin, *s.m.*, shop  
 magasinage, *s.m.*, warehousing  
 magicien, *s.m.*, magician  
 magnifique, *adj.*, magnificent  
 maigre, *adj.*, thin  
 maille, *s.f.*, stitch, mesh, mail  
 maillot, *s.m.*, swaddling clothes  
 maint, -e, *adj.*, many  
 maintenir, *v.a.*, to maintain  
 maison, *s.f.*, house  
 maître, *s.m.*, master  
 mal, *s.m.*, evil  
 malade, *adj.*, ill, sick  
 malformé, *adj.*, badly made, ill-shaped  
 malhabile, *adj.*, awkward

- malheur, *s.m.*, misfortune  
 malheureux, -se, *adj.*, unhappy  
 malin, maligne, *adj.*, malicious  
 malintentionné, *adj.*, evilminded  
 malnemer, *v.a.*, to ill-treat  
 malsain, *adj.*, unhealthy  
 maltraiter, *v.a.*, to ill-treat  
 malverser, *v.n.*, to be guilty of malversations  
 mangeoire, *s.f.*, manger  
 manger, *v.a.*, to eat  
 manger, *s.m.*, eating  
 manquer, *v.n.*, to fail, to miss; manquer à, to be deficient or wanting (in), to fall short of  
 manteau, *s.m.*, mantle  
 mantelet, *s.m.*, mantlet  
 marbre, *s.m.*, marble  
 marbrerie, *s.f.*, marble-cutting, marble yard  
 marchand, -e, *adj.*, saleable, trading  
 marchand, *s.m.*, dealer, tradesman, merchant  
 marchandise, *s.f.*, merchandise, goods  
 maréchal, *s.m.*, farrier, marshal  
 mari, *s.m.*, husband  
 mariage, *s.m.*, marriage  
 marin, *s.m.*, seaman, sailor  
 Maroc, *s.m.*, Morocco  
 Marocain, *s.m.*, native of Morocco  
 marque, *s.f.*, mark  
 marquis, *s.m.*, marquis  
 marquisat, *s.m.*, marquisate  
 marteau, *s.m.*, hammer  
 martelet, *s.m.*, little hammer  
 martyr, *s.m.*, martyr  
 matin, *s.m.*, morning  
 matinée, *s.f.*, morning, forenoon  
 méchanceté, *s.f.*, wickedness  
 méchant, *adj.*, wicked, bad, naughty  
 méchant, *s.m.*, wicked (person)  
 médaille, *s.f.*, medal  
 médailler, *v.a.*, to give a medal to  
 médaillier, *s.m.*, cabinet of medals  
 médailliste, *s.m.*, medalist  
 médaillon, *s.m.*, medalion  
 médiocre, *adj.*, middling, indifferent  
 médiocre, *s.m.*, mediocrity  
 médire, *v.n.*, to speak ill  
 médisance, *s.f.*, slander  
 même, *adj.* (see paragraph 84)  
 même, *adv.*, even  
 ménage, *s.m.*, household, housekeeping, husbandry  
 ménager, *v.a.*, to husband, to take care of  
 mendier, *v.a.*, to beg  
 mendiant, *s.m.*, beggar  
 mener, *v.a.*, to lead  
 mensonge, *s.m.*, falsehood, story, lie  
 mensonger, -ère, *adj.*, untrue, delusive  
 mentir, *v.n.*, to lie, to tell a falsehood  
 menton, *s.m.*, chin  
 mer, *s.f.*, sea  
 mercier, *s.m.*, haberdasher, mercer  
 mériter, *v.a.*, to deserve, to merit  
 message, *s.m.*, message  
 messenger-ère, *s.m.f.*, messenger, courier; *adj.*, le pigeon messenger (Béranger)  
 mesure, *s.f.*, measure  
 mets, *s.m.*, dish  
 meurtrir, *v.a.*, to bruise  
 meurtrissure, *s.f.*, bruise  
 merveille, *s.f.*, wonder, marvel; à merveille, wonderfully well  
 mieux, *adv.*, better  
 midi, *s.m.*, noon, midday  
 mie, *s.f.*, crumb  
 miette, *s.f.*, crumb  
 mi-jambe (à), half-way up the leg  
 mi-juillet, *s.f.*, middle of July  
 mince, *adj.*, thin  
 minuit, *s.m.*, midnight  
 mi-partie, *s.f.*, half  
 mirer, *v.n.*, to aim  
 miroir, *s.m.*, looking-glass  
 mis, *past part.* of mettre, to put  
 mode, *s.f.*, fashion  
 modiste, *s.f.*, milliner  
 modéré, -e, *adj.*, moderate  
 modeste, *adj.*, modest  
 moi, *pron., pers.*, 1. *subject*, I; 2. *object* (instead of à moi), to me, me  
 moindre, *adj.comp.*, lesser, less (with the *def. art.*), the least  
 moins, *adv.*, less; le moins, the least  
 moisir, *v.n.*, to mould  
 moisissure, *s.f.*, mouldiness  
 mollesse, *s.f.*, softness, indolence  
 mollet, -ette, *dim.adj.*, soft; pain mollet, roll  
 mon, ma, mes, *adj.poss.*, my



monarchie, *s.f.*, monarchy; monarchique, monarchial  
 monarchiste, *s.m.*, monarchist  
 monde, 1. *s.m.*, world, people, company; 2. tout le monde, *pr.ind.*, everybody  
 mondain, *adj.*, worldly, mundane  
 monotone, *adj.*, monotonous  
 monotonie, *s.f.*, monotony  
 monsieur, *s.m.*, (*pl.* mes-sieurs) sir, gentleman  
 montagne, *s.f.*, mountain  
 montagnard, *s.m.*, mountaineer, highlander  
 montant, *s.m.*, amount  
 monter, *v.n.*, to mount  
 montée, *s.f.*, ascent, rise  
 montre, *s.f.*, watch  
 montrer, *v.a.*, to show  
 moquer (se), *v.r.* (de), to laugh (at)  
 moqueur, -se, *adj.*, sarcastic  
 morale, *s.f.*, morals  
 moraliste, *s.m.*, moralist  
 morceau, *s.m.*, bit, piece, morsel; *lit.*, passage  
 mordre, *v.a.*, to bite  
 mort, *s.f.*, death  
 mot, *s.m.*, word  
 moteur, motrice, *s.m.f.*, mover, moving-power  
 motif, *s.m.*, motive  
 mou, mol, molle, *adj.*, soft  
 mouche, *s.f.*, fly  
 noncher, *v.a.*, to blow one's nose  
 noucheron, *s.m.*, gnat  
 nouchoir, *s.m.*, handkerchief  
 couiller, *v.a.*, to wet  
 noule, *s.m.*, shape, mould  
 moulage, *s.m.*, moulding

mourir, *v.n.*, to die; se mourir (*ref.*) to be dying  
 moult, *s.m.*, must, unfermented wine  
 montarde, *s.f.*, mustard  
 montardier, *s.m.*, mustard-pot  
 mouvoir, *v.a.*, to move  
 munir, *v.a.*, to provide  
 mur, *s.m.*, wall; muraille, thick wall  
 mûr, *adj.*, ripe  
 musicien, -ne, *s.m.f.*, musician

## N

Nager, *v.n.*, to swim  
 nageoire, *s.f.*, fin  
 nageur, *s.m.*, swimmer  
 naître, *v.n.*, to be born  
 naissance, *s.f.*, birth  
 nation, *s.f.*, nation, people  
 nature, *s.f.*, nature  
 navigation, *s.f.*, navigation  
 navire, *s.m.*, ship  
 ne, *adv.*, 1. before or after aucun, rien, jamais, etc.; no, not. 2. instead of ne pas; not. 3. ne . . . pas, ne . . . point; not, *loc. ne . . . que*, but, only  
 néanmoins, *adv.*, nevertheless  
 nègre, *s.m.*, negro  
 négresse, *s.f.*, negress  
 négrellou, -ne, *s.m.f.*, negro-boy; negro-girl  
 net, nette, *adj.*, clean, clear, plain  
 netteté, *s.f.*, cleanness, clearness, plainness  
 nettoyer, *v.a.*, to clean  
 nettoieinent, nettoyage, *s.m.*, cleaning, clearing  
 neuf, *adj.*, new; nine

neveu, *s.m.*, nephew  
 ni, *conj.*, neither, nor  
 niche, *s.f.*, niche, kennel  
 nichée, *s.f.*, brood  
 noëud, *s.m.*, knot  
 noir, *adj.*, black  
 noirâtre, *adj.*, blackish  
 noiraud, *adj.*, dark, (complexion) darkish  
 noix, *s.f.*, walnut, nut  
 nombreux, -se, *adj.*, numerous  
 non-payement, *s.m.*, want of payment  
 non-sens, *s.m.*, nonsense  
 non-valeur, *s.f.*, thing without value  
 nord, *s.m.*, north  
 Normand, *s.m.*, Norman  
 notre, nos, *adj.*, our  
 nôtre (le, la) *pr.poss.*, ours  
 nourrir, *v.a.*, to nourish, to feed  
 se nourrir, *v.r.*, to feed, to live  
 nouvelle, *s.f.*, news, tidings, intelligence  
 nuire, *v.n.*, to injure, to harm, to do harm  
 nuit, *s.f.*, night  
 nul, nulle, *adj.* and *pr.ind.*, no, none

## O

Obéir, *v.n.*, to obey  
 obéissance, *s.f.*, obedience  
 obéissant, -e, *adj.*, obedient  
 obliger, *v.a.*, to oblige  
 obligeance, *s.f.*, kindness  
 obstacle, *s.m.*, obstacle  
 occasion, *s.f.*, occasion, opportunity  
 occuper, (s'), *v.r.*, to occupy one's self  
 œil, *s.m.*, eye  
 œillade, *s.f.*, glance, ogle  
 œuf, *s.m.*, egg

officier, *s.m.*, officer  
 offre, *s.f.*, offer, tender  
 oiseau, *s.m.*, bird  
 oisif, -ve, *adj.*, idle  
 ombre, *s.f.*, shade, shadow  
 ombrelle, *s.f.*, parasol  
 oncle, *s.m.*, uncle  
 opiniâtre, *adj.*, obstinate  
 opinion, *s.f.*, opinion  
 orange, *s.f.*, orange  
 orangé, *adj.*, orange-  
 colour  
 orangeade, *s.f.*, orangeade  
 orangeat, *s.m.*, caulied  
 orange-peel  
 oranger, *s.m.*, orange-tree  
 orangerie, *s.f.*, orange-  
 house  
 oreille, *s.f.*, ear  
 oreiller, *s.m.*, pillow  
 orgueil, *s.m.*, pride  
 orme, *s.m.*, elm  
 ormeau, *s.m.* young elm,  
 elm  
 orphelin, *s.m.*, orphan,  
 (boy)  
 où, *adv.*, where, whither  
 ou, *conj.*, or  
 oublier, *s.m.*, forgetfulness  
 oublier, *v.a.*, to forget  
 œuvre, *s.2g.*, work  
 ouïr, *v.a.*, to hear; ouïr  
 dire, to hear (it said)  
 ours, *s.m.*, bear  
 ouvrier, *v.a.*, to work  
 ouvrage, *s.m.*, work  
 ouvrier, *s.m.*, workman

## P

Pain, *s.m.*, bread  
 pair, *s.m.*, equal, fellow,  
 peer  
 pair, *adj.*, equal  
 paire, *s.f.*, pair  
 palais, *s.m.*, palace  
 pâle, *adj.*, pale  
 palot, -te, *adj.*, palish  
 paperasse, *s.f.*, waste  
 paper

papier, *s.m.*, paper  
 parade, *s.f.*, parade, show  
 pardon, *s.m.*, pardon  
 parents, *s.pl.*, parents.  
 relations  
 parenté, *s.f.*, relationship  
 parer, *v.a.*, to adorn  
 parler, *v.a.n.*, to speak  
 parloir, *s.m.*, parlour  
 parole, *s.f.*, word  
 parti, *s.m.*, party, decision  
 partie, *s.f.*, part, portion  
 partir, *v.n.*, to set out  
 partout, *adv.*, everywhere  
 pas, *adv.*, not; see ne  
 passage, *s.m.*, passage  
 passager, -ère, *adj.*, pas-  
 sing, short-lived, tran-  
 sitory  
 passer, *v.n.*, to pass  
 passant, *s.m.*, passer-by  
 pâté, *s.m.*, pie  
 pâte, *s.f.*, paste  
 pâtée, *s.f.*, paste, mess  
 patience, *s.f.*, patience  
 patin, *s.m.*, skate  
 pauvre, *adj.*, poor; les  
 pauvres, the poor  
 pauvreté, *s.f.*, poverty  
 paiement, *s.m.*, payment  
 pays, *s.m.*, country, birth-  
 place  
 paysage, *s.m.*, landscape  
 paysagiste, *s.m.*, land-  
 scape painter  
 paysan, *s.m.*, peasant,  
 countryman  
 péage, *s.m.*, toll, toll-  
 house  
 péager, *s.m.*, toll-gatherer  
 taxe-péagère, tax, toll  
 pêche, *s.f.*, peach  
 pêcher, *s.m.*, peach-tree  
 pêcher, *v.a.n.*, to fish  
 pêcher, *v.n.*, to sin  
 pêcheur, *s.m.*, fisherman  
 pécheur, *s.m.*, sinner  
 peigner, *v.a.*, to comb  
 peignoir, *s.m.*, dressing-  
 gown (lady's)

pélerin, *s.m.*, pilgrim  
 pèlerinage, *s.m.*, pilgrim  
 mage  
 penchant, *s.m.*, leaning  
 pencher, *v.n.*, to lean  
 pendant, *pr.*, during  
 pendre, *v.a.*, to hang  
 pendu, *s.m.*, hanged man  
 pensée, *s.f.*, thought  
 penser, *v.a.n.*, to think  
 pensif, -ve, *adj.*, pensive,  
 thoughtful  
 percevoir, *v.a.*, to gather  
 in, to collect  
 percher, *v.n.*, to perch  
 perchoir, *s.m.*, roost  
 perdrix, *s.f.*, partridge  
 perdue, *p.p.fem.* of perdre,  
 to lose  
 père, *s.m.*, father  
 perfide, *adj.*, perfidious,  
 treacherous  
 perfidie, *s.f.*, perfidy,  
 treacherousness  
 péril, *s.m.*, peril, danger  
 période, *s.2g.*, period  
 permettre, *v.a.*, to allow,  
 to permit to suffer  
 persévérance, *s.f.*, perse-  
 verance  
 persister, *v.n.*, to persist  
 personne, *s.f.*, person,  
 (*pl.*) people, persons;  
*loc.*, une jeune per-  
 sonne, a young lady  
 personne, *pr.ind.*, page 64  
 perte, *s.f.*, loss  
 petit, *adj.*, small, little  
 petitesse, *s.f.*, littleness,  
 meanness  
 peu, *adv.*, little, few  
 peu, *s.m.*, a little, a few  
 peuple, *s.m.*, people  
 peuplade, *s.f.*, tribe  
 pierraille, *s.f.*, broker  
 stone  
 pierre, *s.f.*, stone  
 pierreux, -se, *adj.*, stony  
 pillage, *s.m.*, plunder  
 pillard, *adj.*, plundering

pillier, <i>v.a.</i> , to plunder	plusieurs, <i>adj.ind.</i> , several	poularde, <i>s.f.</i> , fat poulet
pis, <i>adv.comp.</i> , worse	poète, <i>s.m.</i> , poet	poule, <i>s.f.</i> , hen
pis, <i>sup.</i> , the worst	pointe, <i>s.f.</i> , point, top	poulet, <i>s.m.</i> , chicken
pistolet, <i>s.m.</i> , pistol	pointu, <i>adj.</i> , pointed, sharp	pour, <i>prep.</i> , for ( <i>before a infinitive</i> ), to, in order to
pitié, <i>s.f.</i> , pity	poire, <i>s.f.</i> , pear	pourquoi? <i>conj. and adv.</i> , why? wherefore? what ...for?
place, <i>s.f.</i> , place	poirier, <i>s.m.</i> , pear-tree	poursuivre, <i>v.a.</i> , to pursue
plaindre, <i>v.a.</i> , to pity	pois, <i>s.m.</i> , pea	pourvoir, <i>v.n.</i> , to provide
plainte, <i>s.f.</i> , complaint	poivrade, <i>s.f.</i> , pepper sauce	poussée, <i>s.f.</i> , push
plaire, <i>v.n.</i> , to please	poivre, <i>s.m.</i> , pepper	pousser, <i>v.a.</i> , to push
se plaindre, <i>v.r.</i> , to please one's self or each other, to take delight, to be delighted	poivrer, <i>v.a.</i> , to pepper	pouvoir, <i>v.a.n.</i> , to be able (to do)
plaisir, <i>s.m.</i> , pleasure	poivrier, <i>s.m.</i> , pepper-tree	pouvoir, <i>s.m.</i> , power
plancher, <i>s.m.</i> , floor, ceiling	poivrière, <i>s.f.</i> , pepper-box	prairie, <i>s.f.</i> , meadow
plat, <i>s.m.</i> , dish	pôle, <i>s.m.</i> , pole	pratiquer, <i>v.a.</i> , to practice
plateau, <i>s.m.</i> , wooden basin, tray	polir, <i>v.a.</i> , to polish	précipiter, (se), <i>v.r.</i> , to fling one's self headlong, to run headlong-
plein, -e, <i>adj.</i> , full	polisseur, <i>s.m.</i> , polisher	précipiter, <i>v.a.</i> , to precipitate
pleurer, <i>v.a.</i> , to mourn over	polissure, <i>s.f.</i> , polishing	précipité, <i>s.m.</i> , precipitate
pleurer, <i>v.n.</i> , to weep, to cry	pomme, <i>s.f.</i> , apple	précoce, <i>adj.</i> , precocious
pleuvoir, <i>v.i.</i> , to rain	pommeau, <i>s.m.</i> , pommel	préférer, <i>v.a.</i> , to prefer
pli, <i>s.m.</i> , fold	pommier, <i>s.m.</i> , apple-tree	préfet, <i>s.m.</i> , prefect
pliage, <i>s.m.</i> , folding	pont, <i>s.m.</i> , bridge, deck	prendre, <i>v.a.</i> , to take
plier, <i>v.a.</i> , to fold	porcelaine, <i>s.f.</i> , china, porcelain; de or en porcelaine, china ( <i>adj.</i> )	près, <i>prep.</i> (de), near
plomb, <i>s.m.</i> , lead	porter, <i>v.a.</i> , to bear, to carry, to wear	presbytère, <i>s.m.</i> , parsonage, vicarage
plomber, <i>s.m.</i> , plumber	se porter, <i>v.r.</i> , to be, to do; comment vous portez-vous? how do you do? je me porte assez bien, I am pretty well	présent, <i>s.m.</i> , present, gift
plonger, <i>v.a.n.</i> , to plunge	porte, <i>s.f.</i> , door	présent, <i>adj.</i> , present
plongeon, <i>s.m.</i> , diver (bird)	portier, <i>s.m.</i> , door-keeper	présenter, <i>v.a.</i> , to present, to offer
plumage, <i>s.m.</i> , plumage	possible, <i>adj.</i> , possible	président, <i>s.m.</i> , president
plumassier, <i>s.m.</i> , feather-seller	possible, <i>s.m.</i> , possibility, what is possible; je ferai tout mon possible, I will do my utmost, all I can	présider, <i>v.n.</i> , to preside
plumasserie, <i>s.f.</i> , feather-trade	poste, <i>s.f.</i> , post-house, post, post-office	presque, <i>adv.</i> , almost, nearly
plume, <i>s.f.</i> , feather, pen	poste, <i>s.m.</i> , post, guard-house, station	prêt, <i>adj.</i> , ready
plumée, <i>s.f.</i> , penful	potage, <i>s.m.</i> , soup	prétendre, <i>v.a.n.</i> , to pretend, to pretend to, to claim
plumeau, <i>s.m.</i> , feather-broom	potager, -ère, <i>adj.</i> , jardin-potager, kitchen garden	preuve, <i>s.f.</i> , proof
plumer, <i>v.a.</i> , to pluck the feathers		prévaloir, <i>v.n.</i> , to prevail
plumet, <i>s.m.</i> , plumet		prévenir, <i>v.a.</i> , to precede, to prevent, to anticipate
plumetis, <i>s.m.</i> , needle-embroidery		
plus, <i>adv.</i> , more ( <i>p. 40, 41</i> )		
plutôt, <i>adv.</i> , (que), rather (than)		

prévenant, *adj.*, complain-  
 sant  
 prévoir, *v.a.*, to foresee  
 prévoyance, *s.f.*, foresight  
 prévôt, *s.m.*, provost  
 prévôté, *s.f.*, provostship  
 prince, *s.m.*, prince  
 princesse, *s.f.*, princess  
 prise, *p.p.fem.*, of prendre,  
 to take  
 procéder, *v.n.*, to proceed  
 procédé, *s.m.*, proceeding,  
 operation  
 prochain, *adj.*, near,  
 nearest, next  
 proche, *adj.*, near, nigh  
 proches, *s.m.pl.*, kindred  
 profiter, *v.n.*, to profit  
 projet, *s.m.*, project  
 promener, (se), *v.r.*, to  
 walk  
 promenoir, *s.m.*, place  
 for walking  
 prompt, -e, *adj.*, prompt,  
 quick  
 prononcer, *v.a.*, to pro-  
 nounce  
 prophète, *s.m.*, prophet  
 propos, *s.m.*, speech,  
 talk, tattle, purpose;  
 à propos, to the pur-  
 pose  
 proposer, *v.a.*, to propose  
 proposer, (se), *v.r.*, to pur-  
 pose  
 propre, *adj.*, clean, own,  
 proper  
 propriété, *s.f.*, property  
 protester, *v.a.n.*, to pro-  
 test  
 protestant, *s.m.*, protes-  
 tant  
 prudence, *s.f.*, prudence  
 prudent, -e, *adj.*, pru-  
 dent  
 prune, *s.f.*, plum  
 pruneau, *s.m.*, small  
 plum, French plum  
 pruneau, *s.f.*, sloe, eye-  
 ball

public (publique, *f.*), pub-  
 lic  
 publicain, *s.m.*, publican  
 puis, *v.a.n.*, *ind.pres.* of  
 pouvoir, to be able  
 puisque, *conj.*, since  
 puissant, *adj.*, powerful  
 punir, *v.a.*, to punish  
 punissable, *adj.*, pun-  
 ishable  
 punition, *s.f.*, punish-  
 ment  
 pureté, *s.f.*, purity

## Q

Quand, *adv.*, when  
 quand, *conj.*, though  
 quant (à), *adv.*, with, in  
 regard to, as to  
 quarante, *adj.n.*, forty;  
 quarantaine, *s.f.*, about  
 forty, or quarantine  
 quatre, *adj.*, four  
 quatrain, *s.m.*, quatrain  
 que, *pr.rel.*, whom, that,  
 which, (*interr.*) what?  
 que, *conj.*, that, than, as  
 que, *adv.*, how, how  
 much, how many, why  
 quel, quelle, *adj.*, what  
 (*parag.* 107)  
 quelconque, *adj.ind.*,  
 whatever, whatsoever  
 quelquefois, *adv.*, some-  
 times  
 question, *s.f.*, question  
 queue, *s.f.*, tail, end  
 qui, *pr.rel.sub.*, who,  
 that; *obj.*, whom, that,  
 which; *interr.*, who,  
 whom, which  
 quille, *s.f.*, keel, skittle  
 quinzaine, *adj.*, fifteen  
 quinzaine, *s.f.*, about  
 fifteen or a fortnight  
 quoique, *conj.*, though,  
 although

## R

Racoat, *s.m.*, band (for the  
 neck)  
 rabattre, *v.a.*, to beat  
 down  
 rabot, *s.m.*, plane  
 raboteux, *adj.*, uneven,  
 rugged  
 raconter, *v.a.*, to relate  
 raffiner, *v.a.*, to refine;  
 raffinage, refining  
 rail, *s.m.*, rail  
 raisin, *s.m.*, grapes  
 rallonger, *v.a.*, to leng-  
 then  
 rallonge, *s.f.*, lengthening  
 piece, leaf of a table  
 rameur, *v.n.*, to row  
 rameur, *s.m.*, rower  
 rang, *s.m.*, rank  
 rangée, *s.f.*, row  
 ranger, *v.a.*, to put in  
 a row  
 râpe, *s.m.*, rasp  
 râper, *v.a.*, to rasp  
 rapidement, *adv.*, rapidly  
 rayon, *s.m.*, ray, beam, shelf  
 rebuter, *v.a.*, to repel, to  
 rebuff  
 rebut, *s.m.*, refuse  
 recevoir, *v.a.*, to receive  
 récompenser, *v.a.*, to re-  
 ward, to recompense  
 reconnaître, *v.a.*, to re-  
 cognise  
 reconnaissance, *s.f.*, gra-  
 titude  
 recul, *s.m.*, recoil  
 reculade, *s.f.*, backing,  
 retreat  
 redevoir, *v.a.*, to owe still  
 réduire, *v.a.*, to reduce  
 réduit, *s.m.*, small habi-  
 tation  
 réformer, *v.a.*, to reform  
 refus, *s.m.*, refusal  
 régala, *s.m.* (*pl.* régals).  
 entertainment, feast,  
 treat

- régir, v.a.*, to administer  
*régisseur, s.m.*, administrator, steward  
*règle, s.f.*, rule  
*régne, s.m.*, reign  
*reine, s.f.*, queen  
*rejet, s.m.*, rejection, shoot  
*rejeter, v.a.*, to throw again, to throw back or away, to reject, to set aside  
*rejeton, s.m.*, sprout, scion, offspring  
*réjouir, (se), v.r.*, to rejoice  
*relancer, v.a.*, to start anew  
*relier, v.a.*, to bind  
*relieur, s.m.*, binder  
*religieux, -se, adj.*, religious  
*remarque, s.f.*, remark  
*remarquer, v.a.*, to remark, to notice  
*remerciment, s. m.*, thanks  
*remontre, v.a.*, to remonstrate  
*remontrance, s.f.*, remonstrance  
*remplir, v.a.*, to fill again, to fill up; *remplir un devoir*, to fulfil a duty  
*remplumer, v.a.*, to feather again  
*renard, s.m.*, fox  
*enchérir, v.a.*, to raise the price of  
*rencontrer, v.a.*, to meet  
*rendre, v.a.*, to render, to give back  
*rendre, v.r.*, 1. to repair, to betake one's self; 2. to yield; 3. to give one's self up, to surrender  
*renforcer, v.a.*, to strengthen, to reinforce  
*renommer, v.a.*, to name again  
*nommée, s.f.*, fame  
*renoncer, v.n.*, to renounce  
*repaitre, (se), v.r.*, (de) to feed on  
*répandre, v.a.*, to pour, to spill, to spread  
*répondre, v.a.*, to answer  
*reposer, v.n.*, *reposer, (se), v.r.*, to rest  
*repousser, v.a.*, to repulse  
*repoussoir, s.m.*, driving bolt  
*reprandre, v.a.*, to resume  
*reprise, s.f.*, retaking, renewal; *à deux reprises différentes*, two several times  
*république, s.f.*, republic  
*républicain, s.m.*, republican  
*répugner, v.n.*, to be repugnant  
*répugnance, s.f.*, repugnance  
*réputation, s.f.*, reputation, fame  
*requérir, v.a.*, to request, to demand, to require  
*requête, s.f.*, request, petition  
*réserver, v.a.*, to reserve  
*réservoir, s.m.*, reservoir, cistern  
*ressemblance, s.f.*, likeness  
*ressembler, v.n.*, to resemble  
*ressentir, v.a.*, to feel, to resent  
*ressort, s.m.*, spring  
*ressource, s.f.*, resource  
*rester, v.n.*, to stay, to remain  
*retirer (se), v.r.*, to retire, to withdraw  
*retrencher, v.a.*, to retrench  
*réussir, v.n.*, to succeed  
*revenir, v.n.*, to come back  
*revenu, s.m.*, income, revenue  
*rêver, v.a.n.*, to dream;  
*rêvasser, v.n.*, to muse  
*revers, s.m.*, back, reverse  
*revêtir, v.a.*, to clothe again  
*revoir, v.a.*, to see again  
*revue, s.f.*, review  
*riche, adj.*, rich, wealthy  
*richesse, s.f.*, riches, wealth  
*ridicule, adj.*, ridiculous  
*rien, s. and pr.*, (*page 64*)  
*rieur, s.m.*, laughter  
*rire, v.n.*, to laugh  
*rire, s.m.*, laughter  
*rivage, s.m.*, shore, bank  
*robe, s.f.*, dress  
*roc, s.m.*, rock  
*rocaille, s.f.*, rock-work  
*rodomont, s.m.*, swaggerer  
*rodomontade, s.f.*, swaggering  
*roi, s.m.*, king  
*Rome, s.f.*, Rome  
*romain, -e, adj.*, Roman  
*rond, -e, adj.*, round  
*rondelet, adj.*, plump  
*rose, s.f.*, rose  
*rosier, s.m.*, rose-tree  
*roue, s.f.*, wheel  
*rouge, adj.*, red  
*rougeâtre, adj.*, reddish  
*rougeaud, -e, adj.*, ruddy, red-faced  
*rougir, v.a.n.*, to redden  
*rouler, v.a.*, to roll  
*roulade, s.f.*, trill  
*roulis, s.m.*, rolling (of ships)  
*route, s.f.*, road, route, way  
*roux, -sse, adj.*, sandy (of the hair)  
*ruade, s.f.*, kick  
*rude, adj.*, rough, rude  
*rudesse, s.f.*, roughness, rudeness  
*rue, s.f.*, street

ruelle, *s.f.*, lane, bedside  
 ruer, *v.n.*, to kick  
 rugir, *v.n.*, to roar  
 rugissement, *s.m.*, roar-  
 ing  
 rumeur, *s.f.*, rumour

## S

Sable, *s.m.*, sand  
 sablier, *s.m.*, hour-glass,  
 sand-box  
 sac, *s.m.*, sack, bag  
 sachet, *s.m.*, little bag  
 sacrifier, *v.a.*, to sacrifice  
 sage *adj.*, wise  
 sagesse, *s.f.*, wisdom  
 saison, *s.f.*, season  
 salade, *s.f.*, salad  
 saladier, *s.m.*, salad-dish  
 salaud, *adj.*, slovenly  
 sale, *adj.*, dirty  
 saler, *v.a.*, to salt  
 salir, *v.a.*, to soil  
 saloir, *s.m.*, salting-tub  
 salutaire, *adj.*, salutary  
 sangle, *s.f.*, strap, band,  
 girth  
 sanglé, *p.part.* of sang-  
 ler, to strap, to give  
 blows  
 sans, *prep.*, without  
 sans - dent, without  
 teeth  
 sans-*façon*, *loc.adv.*, un-  
 ceremoniously  
 sans-gêne, *s.m.*, free  
 manners; *adv.*, un-  
 ceremoniously  
 satisfait, -e, *adj.*, satis-  
 fied, pleased  
 sauteur, -se, *s.m.f.*, leaper,  
 jumper  
 sauvage, *adj.*, wild  
 savant, -e, *adj.*, learned  
 savoir, *v.a.*, to know  
 savoir, *s.m.*, knowledge  
 savonnage, *s.m.*, washing  
 with soap

savonner, *v.a.*, to lather  
 scie, *s.f.*, saw  
 science, *s.f.*, science  
 scier, *v.a.*, to saw  
 se, soi, *pr.pers.*, (*parag.*  
 95, 96)  
 secours, *s.m.*, succour,  
 help, aid  
 Seigneur, *s.m.*, Lord  
 séjour, *s.m.*, stay  
 semer, *v.a.*, to sow  
 semis, *s.m.*, seed-plot  
 sens, *s.m.*, sense, mean-  
 ing  
 sentence, *s.f.*, sentence  
 sentiment, *s.m.*, sensa-  
 tion, feeling, senti-  
 ment  
 sentir, *v.a.*, to feel  
 seoir, *v.n.*, to be becom-  
 ing  
 séparable, *adj.*, separable  
 séparer, *v.a.*, to separate  
 serrure, *s.f.*, lock  
 serrurier, *s.m.*, locksmith  
 servir, *v.n.*, to serve, to  
 be useful  
 si, *conj.*, if, whether  
 si, *adv.*, so  
 siècle, *s.m.*, century, age,  
 time, world  
 siège, *s.m.*, seat  
 siéger, *v.n.*, to preside  
 signal, *s.m.*, signal  
 sincère, *adj.*, sincere  
 sincérité, *s.f.*, sincerity  
 singe, *s.m.*, monkey  
 singerie, *s.f.*, apishness,  
 mimicry  
 situation, *s.f.*, situation  
 sobre, *adj.*, sober  
 sobriété, *s.f.*, sobriety  
 social, -e, *adj.*, social  
 société, *s.f.*, society,  
 company  
 sœur, *s.f.*, sister  
 soigneux, -se, *adj.*, care-  
 ful  
 soin, *s.m.*, care  
 soir, *s.m.*, evening

soirée, *s.f.*, evening,  
 evening party  
 soixante, *adj.ind.*, sixty  
 soixantaine, *s.f.*, about  
 sixty  
 sol, *s.m.*, soil, ground  
 soldat, *s.m.*, soldier  
 solde, *s.f.*, pay  
 somme, *s.m.*, nap, sleep  
 somme, *s.f.*, sum  
 sommeil, *s.m.*, sleep  
 son, sa, ses, *adj.poss.*,  
 his, her, its, one, one's  
 sortir, *v.n.*, to go out  
 soulier, *s.m.*, shoe  
 soumis, *adj.*, obedient  
 sot, sotté, *adj.*, foolish,  
 silly  
 sottise, *s.f.*, folly, foolery  
 souci, *s.m.*, care, anxiety  
 soucier, (se), *v.r.*, to care  
 souffrir, *v.n.*, to suffer  
 souffrance, *s.f.*, suffering  
 souhait, *s.m.*, wish  
 souhaiter, *v.a.*, to wish  
 soulèvement, *s.m.*, heav-  
 ing, rising, insurrec-  
 tion  
 soulier, *s.m.*, shoe  
 souper, *v.n.*, to sup  
 souper, *s.m.*, supper  
 soupir, *s.m.*, sigh  
 soupirail, *s.m.*, air-hole  
 soupirer, *v.n.*, to sigh  
 sourire, *v.n.*, to smile  
 sous, *prep.*, under  
 sous-axillaire, *adj.*, sub-  
 axillary  
 sous - intendant, *s.m.*,  
 understewart  
 sous-jacent, -e, *adj.*, sub-  
 jacent  
 sous-maître, *s.m.*, under-  
 master, usher  
 sous-marin, *adj.*, sub-  
 marine  
 sous-officier, *s.m.*, non-  
 commissioned officer  
 sous-préfet, *s.m.*, sub-  
 prefect

sous sol, *s.m.*, basement  
 souvenir, *s.m.*, remembrance  
 souvenir, (se), *v.r.*, to remember  
 souvent, *adv.*, often  
 stimulant, *s.m.*, stimulant  
 stimuler, *v.a.*, to stimulate  
 studieux, -se, *adj.*, studious  
 style, *s.m.*, style  
 succès, *s.m.*, success  
 sucre, *s.m.*, sugar  
 sucrier, *s.m.*, sugar-basin  
 suffire, *v.n.*, to suffice  
 suffisance, *s.f.*, sufficiency  
 Suisse, *s.m.*, Swiss  
 Suisse, *s.f.*, Swiss-woman  
 suivre, *v.a.*, to follow  
 sujet, *s.m.*, subject  
 suppliant, *adj.* (*pers.*), suppliant, (*things*) beseeching  
 sur, *prep.*, on, upon, over, above  
 sûr, -e, *adj.*, sure, certain, safe  
 sûreté, *s.f.*, safety  
 surface, *s.f.*, surface  
 surmonter, *v.a.*, to overcome, to surmount  
 surnager, *v.n.*, to float (upon the surface), to swim  
 surpasser, *v.a.*, to surpass  
 surprendre, *v.a.*, to surprise  
 surseoir, *v.n.*, to respite  
 surveiller, *v.a.*, to watch  
 suspendre, *v.a.*, to suspend  
 syllabe, *s.f.*, syllable  
 symbole, *s.m.*, symbol  
 syndic, *s.m.*, syndic  
 syndicat, *s.m.*, syndicate

## T

Table, *s.f.*, table  
 tablée, *s.f.*, tablefull  
 tableau, *s.m.*, picture, painting, table, board  
 tablette, *s.f.*, tablet  
 tablier, *s.m.*, apron  
 tache, *s.f.*, spot, stain, blot  
 tacher, *v.a.*, to spot  
 tâche, *s.f.*, task  
 tâcher, *v.n.*, to endeavour  
 tailler, *v.n.*, to cut  
 tailleur, *s.m.*, tailor  
 taillis, *s.m.*, copse  
 tante, *s.f.*, aunt  
 taper, *v.a.*, to smack, to hit  
 tapis, *s.m.*, carpet  
 tapisser, *s.m.*, upholsterer  
 tapoter, *v.a.*, to pat  
 tard, *adv.*, late  
 tarte, *s.f.*, tart  
 tartelette, *s.f.*, tartlet  
 teindre, *v.a.*, to dye  
 tel, telle, *adj.* and *pr.ind.*, such  
 télégramme, *s.m.*, telegram  
 témoignage, *s.m.*, testimony  
 témoigner, *v.a.*, to testify  
 température, *s.f.*, temperature  
 tempérer, *v.a.*, to temper  
 tempête, *s.f.*, tempest, storm  
 tendre, *v.a.*, to stretch  
 tendre, *adj.*, tender  
 tendresse, *s.f.*, tenderness  
 tenir, *v.a.*, to hold  
 terminaison, *s.f.*, termination  
 terminer, *v.a.*, to end  
 ternir, *v.a.*, to tarnish, to stain

terrain, *s.m.*, ground  
 terrasse, *s.f.*, terrace  
 terre, *s.f.*, land, earth  
 texte, *s.m.*, text  
 thé, *s.m.*, tea  
 thème, *s.m.*, exercise  
 tige, *s.f.*, stalk, stem  
 tigre, *s.m.*, tiger  
 timide, *adj.*, timid  
 timidité, *s.f.*, timidity  
 tirer, *v.a.*, to draw, to pull  
 tirage, *s.m.*, drawing (of a lottery), pulling (printing)  
 tiroir, *s.m.*, drawer  
 tombe, *s.f.*, 1. tomb, tombstone; 2. tomb, grave  
 tombeau, *s.m.*, 1. tomb (monument); 2. tombstone  
 tonne, *s.f.*, tun  
 tonneau, *s.m.*, cask  
 tonnelle, *s.f.*, arbour  
 tonnerre, *s.m.*, thunder  
 tordre, *v.a.*, to wring, to twist  
 tort, *s.m.*, wrong; avoir tort, to be wrong  
 tôt, *adv.*, soon; tôt ou tard, sooner or later  
 touchant, -e, *adj.*, affecting, touching  
 toucher, *v.a.*, to touch  
 toucher, *s.m.*, touch (the sense)  
 touffe, *s.f.*, tuft  
 toujours, *adv.*, always  
 Toulouse, *s.p.*, Toulouse  
 Toulousain, *s.m.*, native of Toulouse  
 tour, *s.m.*, turn, trip, tour, trick  
 tour, *s.f.*, tower  
 tourelle, *s.f.*, turret  
 tourmenter, *v.a.*, to torment  
 tout, *adj.* and *pr.ind.*, every, all; *loc.*, tous les jours, every day

tracér, *v.a.*, to trace, to draw out  
 trahir, *v.a.*, to betray  
 trahison, *s.f.*, treason  
 train, *s.m.*, train  
 traînée, *s.f.*, trail  
 traire, *v.a.*, to milk  
 traître, *s.m.*, traitresse, *s.f.*, traitor, traitress  
 tranchant, *s.m.*, edge  
 tranchée, *s.f.*, trench, cutting  
 trancher, *v.a.*, to cut  
 tranquille, *adj.*, tranquil  
 tranquillité, *s.f.*, tranquillity  
 travail, *s.m.*, work  
 travailler, *v.a.n.*, to work  
 travailleur, *s.m.*, labourer, workman, hard worker  
 travailleuse, *s.f.*, work-woman, painstaking person (woman, girl)  
 trentaine, *s.f.*, about thirty  
 trente, *adj.num.*, thirty  
 très, *adv.*, very, very much  
 triage, *s.m.*, sorting  
 tribun, *s.m.*, tribune  
 tribunal, *s.m.*, tribuneship  
 tribut, *s.m.*, tribute  
 tricher, *v.a.*, to cheat  
 tricheur, *s.m.*, trickster, cheat  
 trier, *v.a.*, to sort  
 triste, *adj.*, sad  
 tristesse, *s.f.*, sadness  
 trivial, *adj.*, trivial  
 trivialité, *s.f.*, triviality  
 tromper, *v.a.*, to deceive  
 se tromper, *v.r.*, to be mistaken, to make a mistake  
 trop, *adv.*, too, too much, too many, too far, too long  
 trou, *s.m.*, hole

trouble, *s.m.*, trouble, confusion  
 trouver, *v.a.*, to find, to think, to like  
 tuer, *v.a.*, to kill  
 tuile, *s.f.*, tile  
 turbulent, *adj.*, noisy

## U

Ultra-libéral, *adj.*, ultra-liberal  
 ultra-mondain, *adj.*, ultra-mundane  
 ultra-royaliste, *adj.*, ultra-royalist  
 ultra-zodiacal, *adj.*, ultra-zodiacal  
 un, -e, *adj.*, and, *subs.*; one  
 un, -e, *art.ind.*, a or an  
 user, *v.a.*, to wear out  
 usure, *s.f.*, wear and tear, usury  
 utile, *adj.*, useful

## V

Va, *3.p.ind.* of aller (p. 112)  
 vache, *s.f.*, cow  
 vacher, *s.m.*, cow-keeper  
 vagabond, *s.m.*, vagabond  
 vagabondage, *s.m.*, vagrancy  
 vain, -e, *adj.*, vain; *loc.*, en vain, in vain, vainly  
 vaincre, *v.a.*, to conquer  
 vainqueur, *s.m.*, conqueror  
 vaisseau, *s.m.*, ship, vessel  
 valeur, *s.f.*, value, valour  
 valoir, *v.n.*, to be worth  
 vanter, *v.a.*, to praise  
 vantard, -e, *adj.*, boastful  
 vapeur, *s.f.*, vapour, steam  
 varié, *adj.*, varied  
 variété, *s.f.*, variety

vassal, *s.m.*, vassal  
 vaut, *3.p.ind.* of valoir, to be worth  
 végétal, *s.m.*, vegetable  
 veille, *s.f.*, watch  
 veiller, *v.a.*, to watch; *v.n.*, to set up  
 vendange, *s.f.*, vintage  
 vendanger, *v.a.*, to gather the grapes  
 vendre, *v.a.*, to sell  
 vendredi, *s.m.*, Friday  
 vengeance, *s.f.*, vengeance  
 venger, *v.a.*, to avenge  
 vengeur, *s.m.*, avenger  
 vengeur, -eresse, *adj.*, avenging  
 venir, *v.n.*, to come  
 venue, *s.f.*, coming  
 verbe, *s.m.*, verb  
 verdir, *v.n.*, to become green  
 véritable, *adj.*, true  
 vérité, *s.f.*, truth  
 vermeil, -le, *adj.*, vermilion, ruddy  
 vermeil, *s.m.*, silver-gilt  
 verre, *s.m.*, glass  
 verrou, *s.m.*, bolt  
 vers, *s.m.*, verse  
 verset, *s.m.*, verse (in Scripture)  
 vert, *adj.*, green  
 vertu, *s.f.*, virtue  
 vertueux, *adj.*, virtuous  
 vestiaire, *s.m.*, vestiary  
 veux, *v.a.n.*, *ind.p.* of vouloir (p. 124)  
 vexer, *v.a.*, to vex  
 viande, *s.f.*, meat  
 vice, *s.m.*, vice  
 vice-amiral, *s.m.*, vice-admiral  
 vice-président, *s.m.*, vice-president  
 vice-roi, *s.m.*, vice-roy  
 vieux, vieil, vieille, *adj.*, old  
 vieillot, -te, *adj.*, oldish



vigne, <i>s.f.</i> , vine	voiler, <i>v.a.</i> , to veil	vous, <i>pron.pers.</i> , you, to
vigneron, <i>s.m.</i> , vine- dresser	voilure, <i>s.f.</i> , set of sails	you
vilain, -e, <i>adj.</i> , ugly,	voir, <i>v.a.n.</i> , to see	voyage, <i>s.m.</i> , travelling, journey, voyage
nasty, villanous	voiture, <i>s.f.</i> , carriage	voyageur, <i>s.m.</i> , travel- ler
vin, <i>s.m.</i> , wine	volable, <i>adj.</i> , 1. (persons) to be robbed; 2. (things) easily stolen	
vingt, <i>adj.num.</i> , twenty	voler, <i>v.a.</i> , to steal, to rob	
vingtaine, <i>s.f.</i> , about twenty	voler, <i>v.n.</i> , to fly	Y
violent, -e, <i>adj.</i> , violent	volée, <i>s.f.</i> , flight, volley	Y, <i>adv.</i> , there, thither, at home, within
visite, <i>s.f.</i> , visit	volet, <i>s.m.</i> , shutter	y, <i>pron.</i> , (things)it, then, ( <i>pers.</i> ) him, her, them (with the preposition required by the verb)
vite, <i>adj.</i> , quick, swift	voleur, -euse, <i>s.m.f.</i> , thief	
vite, <i>adv.</i> , quickly, swiftly, fast	volume, <i>s.m.</i> , volume	Z
vitrail, <i>s.m.</i> , stained glass-window	voter, <i>v.a.n.</i> , to vote	Zéro, <i>s.m.</i> , nought, cypher
vivre, <i>v.n.</i> , to live	votre ( <i>pl. vos</i> ), <i>adj.pos.</i> , your, thy	zone, <i>s.f.</i> , zone
vœu, <i>s.m.</i> , vow, wish	vôtre ( <i>le, la</i> ), vôtres ( <i>les</i> ), <i>pron.pos.</i> , yours	
are	vouloir, <i>v.a.</i> , will, to be willing	
voilà, <i>adv.</i> , there is, there are		

## ENGLISH-FRENCH VOCABULARY.

### A

A, *art.ind.*, un (*m.*), une (*f.*)  
 abolish, *v.t.*, abolir  
 abominable, *adj.*, abominable  
 above, *prep.*, au-dessus de, sur; above all, surtout  
 absolve, *v.t.*, absoudre  
 accept, *v.t.*, accepter  
 accusation, *s.*, accusation (*f.*)  
 act, *v.t.*, agir  
 admire, *v.t.*, admirer  
 advantage, *s.*, avantage (*m.*)  
 advice, *s.*, avis (*m.*)  
 affair, *s.*, affaire (*f.*)  
 afflicted, *s.* and *adj.*, affligé  
 again, *adv.*, de nouveau, encore  
 agreement, *s.*, convention (*f.*)  
 aim, *v.intr.* (at), tendre (à)  
 alarm, *v.t.*, alarmer  
 alarming, *adj.*, alarmant  
 Algeria, *s.*, Algérie (*f.*)  
 all, *adj.ind.*, tout, -e, tous (*m.pl.*)  
 already, *adv.*, déjà  
 alter, *v.t.*, changer  
 although, *conj.*, quoique  
 always, *adv.*, toujours

amiable, *adj.*, aimable  
 ancestor, *s.*, ancêtre (*m.*), aïeul (*pl.* aïeux)  
 and, *conj.*, et  
 another, *adj.ind.* un (*e*), autre  
 answer, *v.t.*, répondre  
 answer, *s.*, réponse (*f.*)  
 anxiety, *s.*, inquiétude (*f.*)  
 any, *adj.ind.*, tout, n'importe lequel  
 applaud, *v.t.*, applaudir  
 apply, *v.int.*, s'appliquer  
 apprehend, *v.t.*, pressentir  
 argument, *s.*, argument (*m.*)  
 arm, *v.t.*, armer  
 army, *s.*, armée (*f.*)  
 arrive, *v.int.*, arriver  
 as, *prep.*, (for), quant (à)  
 as, *adv.*, comme, aussi; as forward as they, aussi avancé qu'eux  
 assault, *v.t.*, assaillir  
 assess, *v.t.*, répartir, évaluer  
 attack, *v.t.*, attaquer  
 attention, *s.*, attention (*f.*)  
 attentive, *adj.*, attentif  
 aunt, *s.*, tante (*f.*)  
 avenging, *adj.*, vengeur, -resse (*m.f.*)  
 avoid, *v.t.*, éviter

### B

Bad, *adj.*, mauvais, méchant  
 bank-note, *s.*, billet de banque (*m.*)  
 battle, *s.*, bataille (*f.*)  
 be, *v.aux.*, être (*p.* 75)  
 beautiful, *adj.*, beau, bel (*m.*), belle (*f.*)  
 because, *conj.*, parce que  
 become, *v.int.*, devenir (*v.t.*), seoir (à)  
 bed, *s.*, lit (*m.*)  
 before, *prep.*, avant  
 believe, *v.int.*, se conduire  
 believe, *v.t.*, croire (*p.* 127)  
 bell, *s.*, cloche (*f.*)  
 belong, *v.int.*, appartenir  
 bend, *v.t.*, fléchir  
 benefactor, *s.*, bienfaiteur (*m.*)  
 benefactress, *s.*, bienfaitrice (*f.*)  
 benevolent, *adj.*, bienfaisant  
 best, *adj.sup.*, (the, my, le, mon, etc.), meilleur  
 betray, *v.t.*, trahir  
 better, *adj.comp.*, meilleur  
 better, *adv.*, mieux  
 bill, *s.*, lettre de change (*f.*)  
 bird, *s.*, oiseau (*m.*)  
 bite, *v.t.*, mordre

blow, *s.*, coup (*m.*)  
 boast, *v.int.*, s'enorgueillir, se vanter  
 boat, *s.*, bateau (*m.*)  
 bonnet, *s.*, chapeau (*m.*)  
 book, *s.*, livre (*m.*)  
 boot, *s.*, botte (*f.*)  
 born, *adj.*, né; to be born, naître  
 bottle, *s.*, bouteille (*f.*)  
 bow, *s.*, arc (*m.*)  
 branch, *s.*, branche (*f.*)  
 bread, *s.*, pain (*m.*)  
 break, *v.t.*, casser, rompre  
 breakfast, *v.int.*, déjeuner  
 bring, *v.t.*, apporter; to bring to confusion, confondre; to bring back, rapporter  
 brother, *s.*, frère (*m.*)  
 bullet, *s.*, balle (*f.*)  
 burn, *v.t.*, brûler  
 burst, *v.int.*, éclater; burst into tears, fondre en larmes  
 but, *conj.*, mais  
 button, *s.*, bouton (*m.*)  
 buy, *v.t.*, acheter  
 by, *prep.*, par, de, en

## C

Cake, *s.*, gâteau (*m.*)  
 call, *v.t.*, appeler  
 calumniate, *v.t.*, calomnier  
 camp, *s.*, camp (*m.*)  
 can, *v.def.*, pouvoir  
 candlestick, *s.*, chandelier (*m.*)  
 care, *s.*, soin (*m.*)  
 cargo, *s.*, cargaison (*f.*)  
 carriage, *s.*, voiture (*f.*)  
 castle, *s.*, château (*m.*)  
 cat, *s.*, chat (*m.*)  
 catastrophe, *s.*, catastrophe (*f.*)  
 cautious, *adj.*, prudent  
 cellar, *s.*, cave (*f.*)  
 ceremony, *s.*, cérémonie (*f.*)

certainly, *adv.*, certainement  
 chair, *s.*, chaise (*f.*)  
 charming, *adj.*, charmant  
 cherish, *v.t.*, chérir  
 child, *s.*, enfant (*m.*)  
 choice, *s.*, choix (*m.*)  
 choose, *v.t.*, choisir  
 church, *s.*, église (*f.*)  
 circumstance, *s.*, circonstance (*f.*)  
 citadel, *s.*, citadelle (*f.*)  
 cloak, *s.*, manteau (*m.*); cloak-room, vestiaire (*m.*)  
 close, *v.t.*, fermer  
 cloth, *s.*, drap (*m.*)  
 clothe, *v.t.*, vêtir; one's self, se vêtir  
 coal, *s.*, charbon (*m.*)  
 coat, *s.*, habit (*m.*)  
 cold, *s.*, rhume (*m.*); to catch cold, s'enrhumer  
 collar, *s.*, col (*m.*)  
 collect, *v.t.*, percevoir  
 collection, *s.*, collection (*f.*)  
 colonel, *s.*, colonel (*m.*)  
 colour, *s.*, couleur (*f.*)  
 come, *v.int.*, venir; to come down, descendre  
 comfortable, *adj.*, commode  
 commerce, *s.*, commerce (*m.*)  
 commission, *s.*, commission (*f.*)  
 company, *s.*, compagnie, société (*f.*)  
 compassionate, *adj.*, compatissant  
 complain, *v.int.*, se plaindre  
 conceited, *adj.*, suffisant  
 conceive, *v.t.*, concevoir  
 concert, *s.*, concert (*m.*)  
 condemn, *v.t.*, condamner  
 conduct, *s.*, conduite (*f.*)  
 confess, *v.t.*, avouer, confesser

confidence, *s.*, confiance (*f.*)  
 confound, *v.t.*, confondre  
 confusedly, *adv.*, confusément  
 conquered, *p.part.*, conquis  
 consecrate, *v.t.*, bénir  
 consent, *v.int.*, consentir  
 consent, *s.*, consentement (*m.*)  
 consequence, *s.*, conséquence (*f.*)  
 consider, *v.t.*, considérer, —as, regarder comme  
 console, *s.*, consolateur (*m.*)  
 contempt, *s.*, mépris (*m.*)  
 continual, *adj.*, continuel, -le  
 correspond, *v.int.*, correspondre  
 cost, *v.int.*, coûter  
 country, *s.*, pays (*m.*), campagne (*f.*); country-house, maison de campagne; in the country, à la campagne  
 countrywoman, *s.*, paysanne (*f.*)  
 court, *s.*, cour (*f.*)  
 cousin, *s.*, cousin (*m.*)  
 cousin, *s.*, cousine (*f.*)  
 cow, *s.*, vache (*f.*)  
 criticise, *v.t.*, critiquer  
 cross, *v.t.*, traverser  
 crown, *s.*, couronne (*f.*)  
 cruel, *adj.*, cruel, -le  
 crystal, *s.*, cristal (*m.*); Crystal Palace, l'Palais de Cristal  
 cup, *s.*, tasse (*f.*)  
 curtain, *s.*, rideau (*m.*)  
 custom, *s.*, coutume (*f.*)

## D

Danger, *s.*, danger (*m.*); dangerous, *adj.*, dangereux, -se

day, *s.*, jour (*m.*); journée (*f.*)  
 deal, *s.*, quantité (*f.*); a great deal, beaucoup  
 dear, *adj.*, cher, (*adv.*) cher  
 death, *s.*, mort (*f.*)  
 deceive, *v.t.*, tromper  
 defeat, *v.t.*, défaire  
 defend, *v.t.*, défendre  
 delicious, *adj.*, délicieux  
 departure, *s.*, départ (*m.*)  
 depth, *s.*, profondeur (*f.*)  
 deserve, *v.t.*, mériter  
 design, *s.*, dessein (*m.*)  
 despair, *s.*, désespoir (*m.*)  
 detail, *s.*, détail (*m.*)  
 devote, *v.t.*, consacrer  
 dictionary, *s.*, dictionnaire (*m.*)  
 die, *v.int.*, mourir  
 difficult, *adj.*, difficile  
 difficulty, *s.*, difficulté (*f.*)  
 diligent, *adj.*, appliqué  
 dine, *v.int.*, dîner  
 dinner, *s.*, dîner (*m.*)  
 disappear, *v.int.*, disparaître  
 discharge, *v.t.*, accomplir  
 discouraged, *adj.part.*, découragé  
 discreet, *adj.*, discret  
 discuss, *v.t.*, discuter  
 disgrace, *v.t.*, déshonorer  
 disguise, *v.t.*, déguiser  
 disobey, *v.int.*, désobéir  
 disown, *v.int.*, disconvenir de  
 disposition, *s.*, disposition (*f.*)  
 distribute, *v.t.*, répartir  
 distrustful, *adj.*, méfiant  
 do, *v.t.*, faire (*p.* 129)  
 door, *s.*, porte (*f.*)  
 dozen, *s.coll.*, douzaine (*f.*)  
 drawer, *s.*, tiroir (*m.*)  
 drawing, *s.*, dessin (*m.*)

dream, *s.*, rêve (*m.*); idle dream, chimère (*f.*)  
 dress, *s.*, robe (*f.*)  
 drink, *v.t.*, boire  
 drive, *v.t.*, conduire, mener, pousser; to drive to despair, réduire au désespoir  
 dumb, *adj.*, muet  
 during, *pr.*, pendant  
 dust, *s.*, poussière (*f.*)  
 dust, *v.t.*, épousseter; to dust a coat, battre un habit  
 duty, *s.*, devoir (*m.*)

## E

Each, *adj.ind.*, chaque  
 each, *pr.ind.*, chacun; each other, l'un l'autre  
 early, *adv.*, de bonne heure; as early as, dès  
 eat, *v.t.*, manger  
 effort, *s.*, effort (*m.*)  
 either, *adj.* and *pr.*, l'un ou l'autre, l'une ou l'autre  
 embroider, *v.t.*, broder  
 end, *s.*, but (*m.*), fin (*f.*)  
 enemy, *s.*, ennemi (*m.*)  
 England, *s.p.*, Angleterre (*f.*)  
 engrave, *v.t.*, graver  
 engraving, *s.*, gravure (*f.*)  
 enjoy, *v.int.*, jouir de  
 enslave, *v.t.*, asservir  
 entreat, *v.t.*, supplier  
 envy, *s.*, envie (*f.*)  
 equal, *adj.*, égal  
 equivalent (to be) équivaloir  
 error, *s.*, erreur (*f.*)  
 essential, *adj.*, essentiel  
 establish, *v.t.*, établir  
 estate, *s.*, terre, (*f.*), propriété (*f.*)  
 event, *s.*, événement (*m.*)

## F

every, *adj.ind.*, chaque, tout; tous les; every body, tout le monde  
 everywhere, *adv.*, partout  
 examine, *v.*, (into) approfondir  
 excellent, *adj.*, excellent  
 exercise, *s.*, thème (*m.*)  
 expose, *v.t.*, dévoiler  
 extremely, *adv.*, extrêmement  
 eye, *s.*, œil (*m.*), (*pl.* yeux); eye-glass, *s.*, lorgnon (*m.*)

Face, *s.*, face (*f.*), visage (*m.*), figure (*f.*)  
 fail, *v.int.*, faillir  
 faint, *v.int.*, (away) s'évanouir  
 fall, *s.*, chute (*f.*)  
 fall, *v.int.*, tomber; to fall due, échoir  
 false, *adj.*, faux (*m.*), fausse (*f.*)  
 fan, *s.*, éventail (*m.*)  
 far, *adv.*, loin  
 farm, *s.*, ferme (*f.*)  
 fatal, *adj.*, fatal  
 father, *s.*, père (*m.*)  
 fault, *s.*, faute (*f.*)  
 favour, *s.*, faveur (*f.*)  
 favourite, *adj.*, favori (*m.*), -te (*f.*)  
 fear, *s.*, crainte (*f.*)  
 fear, *v.t.*, craindre  
 feed, *v.t.* (on), se repaître de  
 fell, *v.t.*, abattre  
 field, *s.*, champ (*m.*)  
 fill, *v.t.*, remplir  
 find, *v.t.*, trouver  
 fine, *adj.*, beau, bel, belle  
 finish, *v.t.*, finir  
 fire, *s.*, feu (*m.*)  
 firm, *adj.*, ferme

fish, *s.*, poisson (*m.*)  
 flattering, *adj.*, flatteur  
 fleet, *s.*, flotte (*f.*)  
 flourish, *v. int.*, fleurir  
 flower, *s.*, fleur (*f.*);  
 flower-bed, planche (*f.*)  
 follow, *v. t.*, suivre  
 fond, *adj.*, cher  
 food, *s.*, nourriture (*f.*)  
 for, *prep.*, pour, à  
 forbid, *v. t.*, défendre  
 force, *s.*, force (*f.*)  
 foresee, *v. t.*, prévoir  
 forget, *v. t.*, oublier  
 fork, *s.*, fourchette (*f.*)  
 formerly, *adv.*, autrefois  
 forward, *adj.*, avancé  
 fox, *s.*, renard (*m.*)  
 franc, *s.*, franc (*m.*)  
 France, *s.*, France (*f.*)  
 French, *adj.*, français  
 frequent, *v. t.*, fréquenter  
 Friday, *s.*, vendredi (*m.*)  
 friend, *s.*, ami (*m.*), amie  
 (*f.*)  
 friendship, *s.*, amitié (*f.*)  
 from, *pr.*, de  
 fruit, *s.*, fruit (*m.*)  
 full, *adj.*, plein  
 future, *s.*, avenir (*m.*)

## G

Gain, *v. t.*, gagner  
 garden, *s.*, jardin (*m.*)  
 gardener, *s.*, jardinier  
 (*m.*)  
 general, *s.*, général (*m.*)  
 gentle, *adj.*, doux, -ce  
 gentleman, *s.*, monsieur  
 (*pl. messieurs*)  
 get (up), *v. int.*, se lever  
 give, *v. t.*, donner; to  
 give up, abandonner  
 glass, *s.*, verre (*m.*)  
 glove, *s.*, gant (*m.*)  
 go, *v. int.*, aller; go out,  
 sortir  
 God, *s.*, Dieu (*m.*)

good, *adj.*, bon, bonne  
 goods, *s.*, marchandises  
 (*fem. pl.*)  
 goose, *s.*, oie (*f.*)  
 government, *s.*, gouverne-  
 ment (*m.*)  
 grammar, *s.*, grammaire  
 (*f.*)  
 grandfather, *s.*, grand-  
 père, aïeul (*m.*)  
 grape, *s.*, raisin (*m.*)  
 grass, *s.*, herbe (*f.*)  
 grateful, *adj.*, reconnais-  
 sant  
 great, *adj.*, grand  
 greatness, *s.*, grandeur  
 (*f.*)  
 Greek, *adj.*, grec, grecque  
 grief, *s.*, chagrin (*m.*)  
 grind, *v. t.*, moudre (a  
 knife) émondre  
 grow, *v. int.*, croître  
 guilty, *s. and adj.*, cou-  
 pable  
 guinea, *s.*, guinée (*f.*)  
 gun, *s.*, fusil (*m.*)

## H

Hand, *s.*, main (*f.*)  
 hang, *v. int.*, pendre (up)  
 suspendre  
 happen, *v. int.*, arriver  
 happiness, *s.*, bonheur  
 (*m.*)  
 happy, *adj.*, heureux, -se  
 haste, *s.*, hâte (*f.*), to make  
 haste, se hâter  
 hasty, *adj.*, emporté  
 hat, *s.*, chapeau (*m.*)  
 hate, *v. t.*, haïr  
 he, *pr. pers.*, il; lui; ce-  
 lui  
 health, *s.*, santé (*f.*)  
 hear, *v. t.*, entendre  
 heart, *s.*, cœur (*m.*)  
 heat, *s.*, chaleur (*f.*)  
 heaven, *s.*, ciel (*m.*)  
 heavy, *adj.*, pesant, lourd

her, *pr. pers.*, elle, la, lui,  
 à elle; hers (*pr. poss.*),  
 le sien, la sienne, les  
 siens, les siennes; à  
 elle (*adj.*) son, sa, ses  
 here, *adv.* ici  
 him, *pr. p.*, le, lui, celui;  
 himself, se, lui-  
 même, lui  
 his, *adj. poss.*, son, sa, ses  
 his, *pr. poss.*, le sien, la  
 sienne; les siens;  
 les siennes; *pr. pers.*  
 à lui, de lui  
 history, *s.*, histoire (*f.*)  
 holiday, *s.*, congé (*m.*)  
 honest, *adj.*, honnête  
 honourably, *adv.*, honora-  
 blement  
 hope, *s.*, espérance (*f.*)  
 horse, *s.*, cheval (*m.*)  
 house, *s.*, maison (*f.*)  
 how, *adv.*, comment;  
 how much, combien  
 humane, *adj.*, humain  
 hundred, *adj. num.*, cent  
 hungry, *adj.*, affamé; to  
 be—, avoir faim  
 hurt, *v. t.*, blesser  
 hypocrite, *s.*, hypocrite  
 (*m.*)

## I

I, *pr. pers.*, je, moi (*m. f.*)  
 ice, *s.*, glace (*f.*)  
 idea, *s.*, idée (*f.*)  
 if, *conj.*, si  
 ill, *adj.*, malade  
 importance, *s.*, impor-  
 tance (*f.*)  
 immediately, *adv.*, im-  
 médiatement  
 impossible, *adj.*, impossi-  
 ble  
 in, *pr.*, dans, en, à  
 inconsiderate, *adj.*, indis-  
 cret  
 industrious, *adj.*, labe-  
 rieux

infirm, *adj.*, infirme  
 infirmity, *s.*, infirmité (*f.*)  
 infringe, *v.t.*, enfreindre  
 inhabit, *v.t.*, habiter  
 inkstand, *s.*, encrier (*m.*)  
 insult, *s.*, insulte (*f.*)  
 interest, *s.*, intérêt (*m.*)  
 intrenchment, *s.* re-  
 tranchement (*m.*)  
 invade, *v.t.*, envahir  
 it, *pr. nom.*, il, elle; (*acc.*)  
 le, la; (*dat.*) lui (*m.f.*);  
 (*imp.*) il, ce

## J

January, *s.*, janvier (*m.*)  
 jealous, *adj.*, jaloux, -se  
 jewel, *s.*, bijou (*m.*)  
 join, *v.t.*, joindre  
 journal, *s.*, journal (*m.*)  
 judge, *s.*, juge (*m.*)  
 justice, *s.*, justice (*f.*)

## K

Keep, *v.t.*, garder, tenir,  
 conserver  
 kill, *v.t.*, tuer  
 kind, *adj.*, bon, bonne  
 kindness, *s.*, bonté (*f.*)  
 king, *s.*, roi (*m.*)  
 knife, *s.*, couteau (*m.*)  
 know, *v.t.*, savoir, con-  
 naître

## L

Ladder, *s.*, échelle (*f.*)  
 lady, *s.*, dame (*f.*); young  
 lady, demoiselle (*f.*)  
 lamp, *s.*, lampe (*f.*)  
 landscape, *s.*, paysage  
 (*m.*)  
 large, *adj.*, grand  
 last, *adj.*, dernier

late, *adj.*, en retard  
 lately, *adv.*, dernière-  
 ment  
 laugh, *v.int.*, rire;—at,  
 se moquer de  
 law, *s.*, loi (*f.*)  
 learned, *adj.*, instruit,  
 savant  
 lease, *s.*, bail (*m.*), (*pl.*)  
 baux  
 least, *adj. s.*, moindre,  
 plus petit  
 least, *adv.*, moins; at  
 least; au moins, du  
 moins  
 less, *adj. c.*, moindre, plus  
 petit  
 less, *adv.*, moins  
 leg, *s.* (of mutton), gigot  
 (*m.*)  
 legal, *adj.*, légal  
 leisure, *s.*, loisir (*m.*)  
 lemon, *s.*, citron (*m.*)  
 lesson, *s.*, leçon (*f.*)  
 letter, *s.*, lettre (*f.*)  
 liable, *adj.*, sujet  
 library, *s.*, bibliothèque  
 (*f.*); circulating library,  
 cabinet de lecture (*m.*)  
 lie, *v. int.*, gésir  
 like, *v. tr.*, aimer  
 like, *adj.*, pareil, sembla-  
 ble, tel; like master,  
 like man, tel maître,  
 tel valet.  
 little, *adj.*, petit, (*adv.*)  
 peu  
 linen, *s.*, linge (*m.*)  
 live, *v. int.*, vivre; de-  
 meurer  
 long, *adj.*, long; all day  
 long, toute la jour-  
 née  
 lose, *v.t.*, perdre; to lose  
 one's self, s'égarer  
 loss, *s.*, perte (*f.*)  
 love, *v.t.*, aimer  
 loyal, *adj.*, loyal  
 luck, *s.*, bonheur (*m.*)

## M

Machine, *s.*, machine (*f.*)  
 magnificent, *adj.*, ma-  
 gnifique  
 make, *v.t.*, faire; to make  
 happy, rendre heureux  
 man, *s.*, homme (*m.*)  
 many, *adj. ind.*, plu-  
 sieurs, beaucoup (*de*);  
 bien (*des*); many a  
 time, mainte fois  
 marriage, *s.*, mariage (*m.*)  
 master, *s.*, maître (*m.*)  
 mayor, *s.*, maire (*m.*)  
 means, *s.*, moyen (*m.*)  
 meat, *s.*, viande (*f.*)  
 meet, *v. t.*, rencontrer;  
 (*ref.*) se rencontrer  
 meeting, *s.*, rencontre (*f.*),  
 séance (*f.*)  
 melt, *v. t.*, fondre  
 mend, *v. t.*, réformer  
 merchant, *s.*, marchand  
 (*m.*)  
 merit, *s.*, mérite (*m.*)  
 merry, *adj.*, gai  
 mild, *adj.*, doux  
 milk, *v. t.*, traire  
 mind, *s.*, esprit; to make  
 up one's mind, se  
 décider  
 mine, *pr. poss.*, le mien,  
 la mienne, les miens,  
 les miennes, à moi  
 my, *adj. poss.*, mon, ma,  
 mes  
 minister, *s.*, ministre (*m.*)  
 minute, *s.*, minute (*f.*)  
 misfortune, *s.*, malheur  
 (*m.*)  
 mistake, *s.*, faute (*f.*);  
 erreur (*f.*); to make  
 a mistake, se tromper  
 moderate, *adj.*, modéré  
 money, *s.*, argent (*m.*)  
 month, *s.*, mois (*m.*)  
 moral, *adj.*, moral  
 more, *adv.*, plus  
 morning, *s.*, matin (*m.*)

morrow, *s.*, demain ; le  
lendemain ; (*adv.*) to-  
morrow, demain  
mother, *s.*, mère (*f.*)  
move, *v. t.*, mouvoir,  
émouvoir  
mouse, *s.*, souris (*f.*)  
much, *adv.*, beaucoup,  
bien ; too much,  
trop  
murder, *v. t.*, massacrer  
museum, *s.*, musée (*m.*)  
music, *s.*, musique (*f.*)  
must, *v. n. def.*, falloir  
mutton, *s.*, mouton (*m.*)

## N

Nation, *s.*, nation (*f.*)  
nature, *s.*, nature (*f.*)  
near, *prep.*, près de  
necessary, *adj.*, néces-  
saire ; to be necessary,  
falloir  
needle, *s.*, aiguille (*f.*)  
neglect, *v. t.*, négliger  
negotiate, *v. t.*, négocier  
neither, *adj. and pr.*, ni  
l'un ni l'autre, ni l'une  
ni l'autre  
neither, *conj.*, ni  
never, *adv.*, ne . . . ja-  
mais  
new, *adj.*, neuf, -ve, nou-  
veau, nouvel, -le  
news, *s.*, nouvelle (*f.*)  
no, *adj.*, ne pas . . . de, nul,  
ne . . . aucun, pas un, ne  
... pas or point  
no, *adv.*, non, ne . . . pas  
none, *pr. pers.*, nul,  
aucun, pas un, per-  
sonne ne  
nor, *conj.*, ni  
nosegay, *s.*, bouquet  
(*m.*)  
not, *adv.*, ne . . . pas, ne . . .  
point, non, pas  
note, *s.*, billet (*m.*)

nothing, *s. pr.*, rien ;  
good-for-nothing, bon  
à rien  
notice, *v. t.*, remarquer  
nut, *s.*, noisette (*f.*)

## O

Oar, *s.*, rame (*f.*)  
obedient, *adj.*, obéis-  
sant  
obey, *v. int.*, obéir  
oblige, *v. t.*, obliger  
observe, *v. t.*, observer  
obstinate, *adj.*, obstiné  
obstinately, *adv.*, opi-  
niâtement  
obtain, *v. t.*, obtenir  
of, *pr.*, de  
offence, *s.*, offense (*f.*)  
offend, *v. t.*, offenser ; to  
be offended, s'offenser  
offensive, *adj.*, offensant  
offer, *s.*, offre (*f.*)  
office, *s.*, bureau (*m.*)  
officer, *s.*, officier (*m.*)  
often, *adv.*, souvent  
old, *adj.*, vieux, vieil,  
vieille, ancien, an-  
cienne ; old man,  
vieillard, *s. m.*  
on, *pr.*, sur  
one, *adj. and s.*, un, (*pr.*)  
on, *se, soi, en*  
open, *v. t.*, ouvrir ; open  
again, rouvrir ; half-  
open, entr'ouvrir  
opinion, *s.*, opinion (*f.*)  
orchard, *s.*, verger (*m.*)  
order, *v. t.*, commander  
original, *adj.*, original  
other, *pr. ind.*, autre, *pl.*  
autres, d'autres, au-  
trui  
other, *adj.*, autre  
our, *adj. poss.*, notre, nos  
ours, *pr. poss.*, le nôtre,  
la nôtre, les nôtres, à  
nous

ourselves, *pr. pl.*, nous-  
mêmes, nous  
out, *pr.*, hors  
over, *pr.*, sur  
owe, *v. t.*, devoir ; owe  
again, redevoir  
owl, *s.*, hibou (*m.*)  
own, *adj.*, propre

## P

Pair, *s.*, paire (*f.*)  
palace, *s.*, palais (*m.*)  
paper, *s.*, papier (*m.*)  
pardon, *v. t.*, pardonner  
(à)  
parents, *s.*, parents  
(*m. pl.*)  
Paris, *s. pr.*, Paris (*m.*)  
parish, *s.*, paroisse (*f.*)  
parish, *adj.*, paroissial, -e,  
communal ; parish  
school, école com-  
munale  
park, *s.*, parc (*m.*)  
party, *s.*, parti (*m.*)  
pass, *v. int.*, passer  
past, *prep.*, au delà de ;  
it is past six, il est  
six heures passées ;  
half-past two, deux  
heures et demie  
path, *s.*, chemin (*m.*)  
patient, *s.*, malade (*m. f.*)  
pear, *s.*, poire (*f.*)  
pen, *s.*, plume (*f.*)  
penknife, *s.*, canif (*m.*)  
perceive, *v. t.*, apercevoir  
(*act.*), s'apercevoir de  
(*ref.*)  
perform, *v. t.*, s'acquitter  
de  
perish, *v. int.*, périr  
perseverance, *s.*, persé-  
vérance (*f.*)  
person, *s.*, personne (*f.*)  
pickle, *v. t.*, confire  
picture, *s.*, tableau (*m.*)  
picco, *s.*, morceau (*m.*)

pistol, *s.*, pistolet (*m.*)  
 pity, *v.t.*, plaindre  
 place, *s.*, place (*f.*)  
 plan, *s.*, plan (*m.*)  
 play, *v.int.*, jouer  
 play, *s.*, comédie (*f.*)  
 please, *v.int.*, plaire  
 pleased, *adj.*, content  
 pleasure, *s.*, plaisir (*m.*)  
 plot, *s.*, complot (*m.*)  
 poem, *s.*, poëme (*m.*)  
 poet, *s.*, poëte (*m.*)  
 polish, *v.t.*, polir  
 politeness, *s.*, politesse (*f.*)  
 poor, *adj.*, pauvre; the  
 poor, les pauvres (*m.*)  
 pond, *s.*, étang (*m.*)  
 pope, *s.*, pape (*m.*); Pope  
 Sixtus Quintus, le  
 Pape Sixte-Quint  
 possession, *s.*, posses-  
 sion (*f.*); to take pos-  
 session, s'emparer de  
 postpone, *v.t.*, différer  
 praise, *v.t.*, louer  
 prefer, *v.t.*, préférer  
 pretend, *v.t.*, feindre  
 pretty, *adj.*, joli  
 prevail, *v.i.*, prévaloir  
 priest, *s.*, prêtre (*m.*)  
 princess, *s.*, princesse (*f.*)  
 principal, *adj.*, principal  
 print, *v.t.*, imprimer  
 printer, *s.*, imprimeur (*m.*)  
 proposal, *s.*, proposition  
 (*f.*)  
 propose, *v.t.*, proposer  
 protect, *v.t.*, protéger  
 protest, *s.*, protestant (*m.*)  
 provide, *v.int.*, pourvoir  
 (for...à)  
 provided, *conj.*, pourvu  
 que  
 prudent, *adj.*, prudent  
 punish, *v.t.*, punir  
 punishment, *s.*, punition  
 (*f.*)  
 pupil, *s.*, élève (*m.*)  
 put, *v.t.*, placer, mettre;  
 put out, éteindre

## Q

Quality, *s.*, qualité (*f.*)  
 queen, *s.*, reine (*f.*)  
 question, *s.*, question (*f.*)  
 quiet, *adj.*, tranquille  
 quire, *s.*, main (*f.*)  
 quite, *adv.*, tout-à-fait,  
 tout, -e

## R

Railway, *s.*, chemin de  
 fer (*m.*)  
 rain, *v.imp.*, pleuvoir  
 read, *v.t.*, lire, (*past part.*,  
 lu)  
 ready, *adj.*, prêt  
 reason, *s.*, raison (*f.*)  
 rebel, *s.*, rebelle (*m.*)  
 recast, *v.t.*, refondre  
 receive, *v.t.*, recevoir  
 recompense, *v.t.*, récom-  
 penser  
 red, *adj.*, rouge; red  
 (head of) hair, cheve-  
 lure rousse  
 reflect, *v.int.*, (on), réflé-  
 chir (à)  
 regularly, *adv.*, régulière-  
 ment  
 reign, *s.*, règne (*m.*)  
 rejoice, *v.int.*, se réjouir  
 (de)  
 relate, *v.t.*, raconter  
 remain, *v.int.*, rester  
 remember, *v.*, se rappé-  
 ler, se souvenir de  
 reputation, *s.*, réputation  
 (*f.*)  
 request, *v.t.*, requérir  
 resell, *v.t.*, revendre  
 reserve, *v.t.*, réserver  
 resolve, *v.t.*, se résoudre à  
 resound, *v.i.*, retentir  
 retract, *v.t.*, se rétracter  
 return, *v.t.*, rendre  
 review, *s.*, revue (*f.*)  
 reward, *s.*, récompense  
 (*f.*)

rich, *adj.*, riche  
 ridiculous, *adj.*, ridicule  
 right, *adj.*, juste  
 ripe, *adj.*, mûr  
 rise, *v.int.*, (in price),  
 enchérir  
 river, *s.*, rivière (*f.*)  
 roast, *v.t.*, rôtir  
 room, *s.*, salle (*f.*),  
 chambre (*f.*)  
 root, *s.*, racine (*f.*)  
 rope, *s.*, corde (*f.*)  
 royal, *adj.*, royal  
 ruddy, *adj.*, rouge  
 rule, *s.*, règle (*f.*)  
 rumour, *s.*, bruit (*m.*)  
 rush, *v.int.*, se précipiter

## S

Sail, *v.i.*, mettre à la voile,  
 appareiller, partir  
 sailor, *s.*, marin (*m.*)  
 same, *adj.*, même  
 sarcastic, *adj.*, moqueur,  
 -se  
 satisfy, *v.t.*, satisfaire  
 (*irr.*)  
 say, *v.t.*, dire (*p.* 128)  
 scarf, *s.*, écharpe (*f.*)  
 scatter, *v.t.*, répandre  
 school, *s.*, école (*f.*)  
 schoolmaster, *s.*, maître  
 d'école (*m.*)  
 scold, *v.t.*, gronder  
 scribbler, *s.*, écrivassier  
 (*m.*)  
 seal, *v.t.*, cacheter  
 see, *v.t.*, voir (*irr.*)  
 seem, *v.i.*, paraître (*irr.*)  
 sell, *v.t.*, vendre  
 send, *v.t.*, envoyer  
 sense, *s.*, sentiment (*m.*)  
 servant, *s.*, domestique  
 (*m.*)  
 serve, *v.t.*, servir (*irr.*)  
 several, *adj. ind.*, plu-  
 sieurs  
 severely, *adv.*, sévèrement  
 sew, *v.t.* (on), coudre



shore, <i>s.</i> , part ( <i>f.</i> ), ac- tion ( <i>f.</i> )	staircase, <i>s.</i> , escalier ( <i>m.</i> )	telegram, <i>s.</i> , télégramme ( <i>m.</i> )
she, <i>pr. f.</i> , elle	start, <i>v. int.</i> , tressaillir (with...de)	tell, <i>v. t.</i> , dire
shear, <i>v. t.</i> , tondre	steady, <i>adj.</i> , posé	temper, <i>s.</i> , caractère ( <i>m.</i> )
sheep, <i>s.</i> , brebis ( <i>f.</i> )	steal, <i>v. t.</i> , voler — away ( <i>v. i.</i> ) s'esquiver	than, <i>conj.</i> , que, de
shilling, <i>s.</i> , shelling ( <i>m.</i> )	steeple, <i>s.</i> , clocher ( <i>m.</i> )	thanks, <i>s.</i> , remerciement ( <i>m.</i> )
ship, <i>s.</i> , vaisseau ( <i>m.</i> )	stocking, <i>s.</i> , bas ( <i>m.</i> )	that <i>adj. dem.</i> , ce, cet, cette, ces
shirt, <i>s.</i> , chemise ( <i>f.</i> )	street, <i>s.</i> , rue ( <i>f.</i> )	that, <i>pr. dem.</i> , celui-là, celle-là, cela, ça, le
shoe, <i>s.</i> , soulier ( <i>m.</i> )	strengthen, <i>v. t.</i> , affermir, fortifier	that, <i>pr. rel.</i> , ( <i>nom.</i> ) qui ; ( <i>acc.</i> ) que, lequel, la- quelle, lesquels, les- quelles
shore, <i>s.</i> , rivage ( <i>m.</i> )	stretch, <i>v. t.</i> , étendre	that, <i>conj.</i> , que, afin que; in order that, afin que
show, <i>v. t.</i> , montrer	strike, <i>v. t.</i> , atteindre	the, <i>art.</i> , le, la, les
shut, <i>v. t.</i> , fermer	studious, <i>adj.</i> , studieux, -se	their, <i>adj. poss.</i> , leur, leurs
shutter, <i>s.</i> , volet ( <i>m.</i> )	stupid, <i>adj.</i> , stupide	theirs, <i>pr. poss.</i> , le leur, la leur, les leurs, à eux, à elles
sincere, <i>adj.</i> , sincère	subscribe, <i>v. i.</i> , s'abonner	themselves, <i>pr. pers.</i> , se, eux - mêmes, elles - mêmes, mêmes
sing, <i>v. t.</i> , chanter	succeed, <i>v. i.</i> , réussir	there, <i>adv.</i> , là, y
sister, <i>s.</i> , sœur ( <i>f.</i> )	success, <i>s.</i> , succès ( <i>m.</i> )	they, <i>pr. pers. (subj.)</i> ils. elles; (when alone) eux, elles; they who, ceux ( <i>m.</i> ), celles ( <i>f.</i> ) qui
sit, <i>v. i.</i> , sit down, s'asseoir	such, <i>adj.</i> , tel, telle	thick, <i>adj.</i> , épais, épaisse
situation, <i>s.</i> , situation ( <i>f.</i> )	suddenly, <i>adv.</i> , soudaine- ment	thine, <i>pr. pers.</i> , le tien, la tienne, les tiens, les tiennes, à toi
skate, <i>s.</i> , patin ( <i>m.</i> )	suffer, <i>v. t.</i> , souffrir	thing, <i>s.</i> , chose ( <i>f.</i> ); everything, tout
slave, <i>s.</i> , esclave ( <i>m. f.</i> )	sully, <i>v. t.</i> , ternir	think <i>v. t. int.</i> , croire, penser
sleep, <i>v. i.</i> , dormir ( <i>irr.</i> )	sum, <i>s.</i> , somme ( <i>f.</i> )	this, <i>adj. dem.</i> , ce, cet ( <i>m.</i> ), cette ( <i>f.</i> )
small, <i>adj.</i> , petit	supply, <i>v. t.</i> , fournir	thoroughly, <i>adv.</i> , com- plètement
smile, <i>v. i.</i> , sourire	suppose, <i>v. t.</i> , supposer	thou, <i>pr. p. 2 pers.</i> , tu, toi
smooth, <i>v. t.</i> , aplanir	supreme, <i>adj.</i> , suprême	thought, <i>s.</i> , pensée ( <i>f.</i> ); to collect one's thoughts, se recueillir
so, <i>adv.</i> , aussi; so...( <i>as</i> ), aussi, si; autant, tant ( <i>que</i> )	surprised, <i>pr. and adj.</i> , surpris (at...de)	threaten, <i>v. t.</i> , menacer
society, <i>s.</i> , société ( <i>f.</i> )	suspect, <i>v. t.</i> , soupçonner	three, <i>adj. num. card.</i> , trois
soften, <i>v. t.</i> , adoucir	suspend, <i>v. t.</i> , suspendre	
soldier, <i>s.</i> , soldat ( <i>m.</i> )	sweep, <i>v. t.</i> , balayer	
some, <i>art.</i> , du, de la, des	sweet, <i>adj.</i> , doux, douce	
some, <i>adj.</i> , quelque	sword, <i>s.</i> , épée ( <i>f.</i> )	
some, <i>pr.</i> , quelques-uns, quelques-unes, en		
son, <i>s.</i> , fils ( <i>m.</i> )		
sorrowful, <i>adj.</i> , chagrin		
sound, <i>adj.</i> , a sound ad- vice, un avis salutaire		
spacious, <i>adj.</i> , spacieux, -se		
Spain, <i>s. pr.</i> , l'Espagne ( <i>f.</i> )		
speak, <i>v. t. i.</i> , parler		
speech, <i>s.</i> , discours ( <i>m.</i> )		
spend, <i>v. t.</i> , dépenser		
splendour, <i>s.</i> , splendeur ( <i>f.</i> )		
split, <i>v. t.</i> , fendre		
sport, <i>s.</i> , jeu ( <i>m.</i> )		
spring, <i>s.</i> , ressort ( <i>m.</i> )		
spear, <i>s.</i> , éperon ( <i>m.</i> )		
stain, <i>s.</i> , tache ( <i>f.</i> )		

## T

Table, *s.*, table (*f.*)  
take, *v. t.*, prendre; take  
back, reprendre; (some-  
body in a carriage) re-  
conduire  
talent, *s.*, talent (*m.*)  
tax, *s.*, impôt (*m.*)  
tea, *s.*, thé (*m.*)  
tea-pot, *s.*, théière (*f.*)  
tear, *v. t.*, déchirer  
tear, *s.*, larme (*f.*)  
tedious, *adj.*, ennuyeux, -se

through, *pr.*, à travers  
 thunder, *s.*, tonnerre (*m.*)  
 thunderstorm, *s.*, orage (*m.*)  
 thy, *adj. poss.*, ton, ta, tes  
 ticket, *s.*, billet (*m.*)  
 tiger, *s.*, tigre (*m.*)  
 time, *s.*, temps (*m.*)  
 timid, *adj.*, timide  
 to, *pr.*, à  
 together, *adv.*, ensemble  
 too, *adv.*, trop  
 torment, *v.t.*, tourmenter; torment one's self, se tourmenter  
 towards, *pr.*, envers, vers  
 town, *s.*, ville (*f.*)  
 toy, *s.*, joujou (*m.*)  
 train, *s.*, train (*m.*)  
 translate, *v.t.*, traduire  
 treachery, *s.*, trahison (*f.*)  
 treatise, *s.*, traité (*m.*)  
 tree, *s.*, arbre (*m.*)  
 tribute, *s.*, tribut (*m.*)  
 trifling, *adj.*, léger  
 troop, *s.*, troupe (*f.*)  
 trunk, *s.*, malle (*f.*), tronc (*m.*)  
 trust, *v.t.*, se fier à  
 truth, *s.*, vérité (*f.*)  
 tune (in), *loc.*, juste  
 Turkish, *adj.*, ture, turque  
 two, *adj. num.*, deux

## U

Undeceive, *v.t.*, dé-tromper; undeceive one's self, se dé-tromper  
 under, *pr.*, sous  
 undergo, *v.t.*, subir  
 understand, *v.t.*, com-prendre

undertaking, *s.*, entre-prise (*f.*)  
 unfeeling, *adj.*, insen-sible  
 unfurnish, *v.t.*, dégarnir  
 ungrateful, *adj.*, ingrat  
 unless, *conj.*, à moins que  
 unpolite, *adj.*, impoli  
 unravel, *v.t.*, débrouiller  
 unwell, *adj.*, indisposé, souffrant  
 use, *s.*, usage (*m.*)  
 usef. *adj.*, utile  
 uselessly, *adv.*, en vain, inutilement

## V

Vegetable, *s.*, légume (*m.*)  
 very, *adv.*, très  
 village, *s.*, village (*m.*)  
 vinegar, *s.*, vinaigre (*m.*)  
 virtuous, *adj.*, vertueux, -se  
 visit, *v.t.*, visiter  
 voice, *s.*, voix (*f.*)

## W

Wait, *v.*, attendre  
 walk, *v. int.*, marcher  
 walking, *s.*; marche (*f.*), promenade (*f.*); walk-ing-stick, *s.*, canne  
 want, *s.*, besoin (*m.*)  
 warm (a bed), *v.t.*, bas-siner  
 warn, *v.t.*, avertir  
 warrior, *s.*, guerrier (*m.*)  
 watch, *s.*, montre (*f.*)  
 watch, *v.*, surveiller  
 water, *s.*, eau (*f.*)  
 water, *v.t.*, arroser  
 way, *s.*, chemin (*m.*)  
 we, *pr. pers.*, nous  
 weak, *adj.*, faible  
 week, *s.*, semaine (*f.*)

weep, *v.t.*, pleurer  
 well, *adv.*, bien  
 what, *pr. rel.*, ce qui, que, qui, que  
 what, *pr. adj.*, quel  
 what, *pr. int.*, que, quoi  
 what? *adj. int.*, quel, lequel?  
 when, *adv.*, quand  
 whence, *adv.*, d'où  
 whereas, *conj.*, tandis qu  
 whether, *conj.*, si; soit que... ou; que... ou  
 which, *pr. rel.*, 1. qui que, lequel, laquelle  
 2. ce qui, ce que  
 3. (*int.*) qui, lequel, laquelle? 4. ce, cette etc.  
 whimsical, *adj.*, capri-cieux, -se  
 whip, *s.*, fouet (*m.*)  
 who, *pr. pers.*, 1. qui, lequel, laquelle, les quels, lesquelles; 2. quel; 3. (*int.*) qui; 4. celui qui  
 whoever, *pr. ind.*, qui conque  
 whom, *pr. obj.*, que, qui (*int.*) qui?  
 wicked, *adj.*, méchant  
 wide, *adj.*, large  
 wilderness, *s.*, désert (*m.*)  
 win, *v.t.*, gagner  
 window, *s.*, fenêtre (*f.*)  
 wine, *s.*, vin (*m.*)  
 wing, *s.*, aile (*f.*)  
 wise, *adj.*, sage  
 wish, *v.t.*, désirer  
 with, *pr.*, avec  
 withdraw, *v.t.*, se dédui-de  
 wither, *v. int.*, flétrir  
 without, *pr.*, sans  
 woman, *s.*, femme (*f.*)  
 wonderful, *adj.*, mé-veilleux, -se  
 wonderfully, *adv.*, mé-veilleusement

wood, *s.*, bois (*m.*)  
 word, *s.*, parole (*f.*)  
 work, *s.*, ouvrage, travail ; work-box, *s.*, boîte (*f.*) à ouvrage  
 work, *v.t.*, travailler  
 worship, *v.t.*, adorer  
 worth (to be), valoir (*v.i.*)  
 wound, *v.t.*, blesser  
 wring, *v.t.*, tordre  
 write, *v.t.*, écrire

## Y

Year, *s.*, an (*m.*), année (*f.*)  
 yesterday, *adv.*, hier  
 yet, *adv.*, encore  
 yield, *v.int.*, céder, se rendre (à)  
 you, *pr.pers.*, vous  
 young, *adj.*, jeune  
 your, *adj.poss.*, votre, vos

yours, *pr.poss.*, le vôtre, la vôtre, les vôtres, à vous  
 yourself, *pr.pers.*, vous-même, vous

## Z

Zeal, *s.*, zèle (*m.*)



THE  
PUBLIC SCHOOL  
ELEMENTARY FRENCH GRAMMAR

PART II—SYNTAX

BY AUGUSTE BRACHET

Adapted for the use of English Schools and Persons engaged in  
Elementary Teaching

BY

THE REV. P. H. E. BRETTE, B.D.

HEAD-MASTER OF THE FRENCH SCHOOL, CHRIST'S HOSPITAL,

AND

GUSTAVE MASSON, B.A.

ASSISTANT MASTER AND LIBRARIAN, HARROW SCHOOL,

EXAMINERS IN THE UNIVERSITY OF LONDON.

*FIFTH EDITION.*

Toronto:  
JAMES CAMPBELL & SON.  
1878.

[All rights reserved.]



## P R E F A C E.

---

THE publication of the Syntax of our "ELEMENTARY FRENCH GRAMMAR" has been postponed much longer than we either wished or expected; we trust, however, that the result of this unavoidable delay will have been to render our work more worthy of the success already obtained by the "Accidence." Persons engaged in tuition know perfectly well how difficult it is to modify the explanation of Syntactic rules, originally addressed to French pupils, so as to meet the wants of English students; grammatical problems meet us as we go on, which we did not anticipate when we started; and thus, what was to have proved the occupation of a few weeks, has ended in being the labour of months.

The present volume, composed exactly on the plan of the previous one. is also followed by an alphabetical index, which, we trust, will be found

useful for purposes of reference. In accordance with the wishes of many experienced masters, we have also added a complete French-English and English-French Vocabulary. Finally, a supplementary series of Exercises is in active preparation, and will be ready in the course of next August.

P. H. ERNEST BRETTE.  
GUSTAVE MASSON.

LONDON, *February*, 1877.



# TABLE OF CONTENTS.

## BOOK III.—SYNTAX.

### FIRST PART.

	PAGE
Syntax of Words ... ..	3

### CHAPTER I.

Syntax of the Substantive ... ..	4
SECTION I.—Agreement of the Substantive.—Of Gender ...	4
SECTION II.—Of Number ... ..	8
I. Plural of Proper Nouns ... ..	9
II. Plural of Words taken from Foreign Languages ...	9
III. Plural of Compound Nouns ... ..	10
SECTION III.—Complement of the Substantive ... ..	12

### CHAPTER II.

Syntax of the Article ... ..	15
------------------------------	----

### CHAPTER III.

Syntax of the Adjective ... ..	19
SECTION I.—Agreement of the Adjective ... ..	19
SECTION II.—Of the Position of the Adjectives ... ..	21
SECTION III.—Complement of the Adjective ... ..	24
SECTION IV.—Degrees of Comparison ... ..	25

### CHAPTER IV.

Syntax of Numeral, Possessive, and Indefinite Adjectives ...	28
SECTION I.—I. Numeral Adjectives ... ..	28
SECTION II.—II. Possessive Adjectives ... ..	30
SECTION III.—Indefinite Adjectives ... ..	32

## CHAPTER V.

	PAGE
Syntax of the Pronouns ... ..	36
I. Personal Pronouns.—Conjunctive ... ..	36
Disjunctive ... ..	39
Reflective ... ..	39
Repetition of the Personal Pronouns ... ..	40
II. Possessive Pronouns ... ..	42
III. Demonstrative Pronouns ... ..	43
IV. Relative and Interrogative Pronouns ... ..	46
V. Indefinite Pronouns ... ..	50

## CHAPTER VI.

Syntax of the Verb ... ..	55
I. Agreement of the Verb with one simple Subject ... ..	55
II. Agreement of the Verb with several Subjects ..	58
III. Complement of the Verb ... ..	61
IV. Use of the Auxiliary Verbs ... ..	64

## CHAPTER VII.

Syntax of the Participles ... ..	67
SECTION I.—Agreement of the Present Participle ... ..	67
SECTION II.—Agreement of the Past Participle ... ..	70
1. General Principles ... ..	70
2. The Past Participle used with the Auxiliary Verb <b>être</b> (= <i>to be</i> ) ... ..	70
3. The Past Participle used with the Auxiliary <b>avoir</b> (= <i>to have</i> ) ... ..	71
4. Additional Remarks on the Agreement of the Participles ... ..	74
5. Summary ... ..	77

## CHAPTER VIII.

Syntax of Adverbs ... ..	73
--------------------------	----

## CHAPTER IX.

Syntax of Prepositions ... ..	84
-------------------------------	----





# BOOK III.

## SYNTAX.

**219.** We have studied successively the ten kinds of words of which the French language is composed ; it remains for us to show how these words can be brought together, in order to form sentences. That part of grammar which treats of the manner of connecting words so as to make sentences is called **syntax**.

*Syntax* comes from the Greek σύνταξις (=arrangement, construction).

**220.** We cannot express a thought by words, without making what is called a **proposition**. When we say : *Dieu est tout-puissant* (=God is almighty), *l'enfant aime ses parents* (=the child loves his parents), each of these phrases forms a *proposition*.

**221.** The *proposition* may be **simple**, as in *Dieu aime les hommes* (=God loves men), or **compound**, as in *Dieu, qui est clément, aime les hommes* (=God, who is merciful, loves men). This latter proposition is called *compound*, because, to the principal proposition (*Dieu aime les hommes*), a secondary proposition is added (*qui est clément*).

222. Syntax, then, is divided into two parts: the first teaches us how to combine two or more words in order to make of them a *simple* proposition; the second, how to combine two or more simple propositions, in order to make of them a *compound* proposition.

223. These two parts of syntax are called: the first, **syntax of words**, the second, **syntax of propositions**.

## FIRST PART.

## SYNTAX OF WORDS.

**224.** We have said that we cannot express a thought by words without making what is called a *proposition*.

Every proposition contains three terms; the *subject*, the *verb*, the *attribute*. When we say, for instance, *le juge est juste* (=the judge is just), we attribute to the person called *judge* the quality of *just*; we affirm that *the judge* possesses that quality. The word *just*, designating the quality which we **attribute** to the judge, is for that reason called **attribute**; the word *est* (=is), which serves to **affirm** that this quality of just *exists* in the judge, is called **verb**; finally, *the judge*, of whom we have affirmed that he possessed the quality pointed out by the attribute, is called **subject**.

Thus the *subject* of the proposition is that of which something is affirmed, the *verb* is the word which expresses this affirmation, and the *attribute* is the quality which we affirm to exist in the subject.

In every proposition, the verb and the attribute **agree** with the subject—that is to say, they take the number, the gender, and the person of the subject to which they refer. When we say *l'herbe est verte* (=the grass is green) *est* is the third person singular, and *verte* (=green) is the feminine of the same number, because the two words, *est* and *verte*, refer to the same object—*l'herbe* (=the grass)—which is in the feminine gender and singular number. If we compare the proposition to a little band of soldiers, we can say that the subject is the commander, and that the verb and attribute recognise his authority and wear his uniform. We ought then to begin syntax with the study of the rules, according to which different words *agree* together, when we wish to combine them in order to form a proposition.

When we say *l'herbe est verte* (=the grass is green), the word *grass* as yet only indicates a very vague idea; we know that *that which is green is the grass*, not *water* or *the earth*, but we do not know whether it is this or that grass which is green — if it is the grass of the garden, for instance, or that of the meadow. If, to particularise this general idea, we say *l'herbe du jardin est verte* (=the grass of the garden is green), the word *garden*, which comes in to *complete*, to explain the word *grass* to which it refers, is called, for this reason, its **complement**. To express an idea by the help of words joined together in a proposition, we must know how to render that idea clearer by adding to the proposition one or more **complements**, which explain or determine it.

**225.** The syntax of *words* has, then, the double object of determining for each of the ten parts of speech all the rules which concern the **agreement** and the **complement**.

## CHAPTER I.

### SYNTAX OF THE SUBSTANTIVE.

#### SECTION I.

##### AGREEMENT OF THE SUBSTANTIVE.

**226.** When two substantives following each other point out the same person or the same thing, the second agrees with the first in gender and in number. *Le roi chevalier* (=the king-knight), *la reine mère* (=the queen-mother), *les soldats laboureurs* (=the ploughmen soldiers), *Clotilde, reine illustre* (=Clotilda, an illustrious queen), *Turenne était un héros* (=Turenne was a hero).

##### OF GENDER.

**227.** The nouns **aide, critique, garde, manœuvre, statuaire**, are :—

A. Feminine when they denote the action :—

- L'aide puissante de Dieu** (=the powerful help of God)
- La critique est bonne** (=the criticism [review] is good)
- La garde des frontières** (=the watching over the frontiers)
- La manœuvre d'un navire** (=the working of a ship)
- La statuaire des anciens** (=the statuary of the ancients);



**B. Masculine** when they denote **the man who accomplishes those different actions** :—

**Un critique** (= a critic)

**Un garde-chasse** (= a gamekeeper)

**Un aide-chirurgical** (= an assistant-surgeon)

**Un manoeuvre** (= a workman)

**Un statuaire** (= a sculptor)

**228. Aigle** (= eagle), *properly and figuratively*, is *masculine* when it denotes the male bird or a man, as :—

**L'aigle est fier et courageux** (= the eagle is proud and courageous)

**Cet homme est un aigle** (= this man is a transcendent genius);

It is *feminine* when it means the female of the eagle, or a military standard, as :—

**Une aigle attaqua un vautour** (= an eagle attacked a vulture)

**L'aigle romaine** (= the Roman eagle).

**229. Amour** (= love), **délice** (= delight), and **orgue** (= organ), are *masculine* in the singular, and *feminine* in the plural :—

**L'amour filial** (= filial love)

**Les premières amours** (= first love)

**Un délire enivrant** (= an intoxicating pleasure, delight)

**De joyeuses délices** (= joyful delights)

**Un bel orgue** (= a fine organ)

**De belles orgues** (= fine organs).

**230. Chose** in the locution *quelque chose*, or *quelque chose de* is *masculine* :—

**J'ai appris quelque chose de fâcheux** (= I have heard some sad news, *lit.*, something sad).

But in *quelque chose que je lui aie dite, je n'ai pu le convaincre* (= whatever I might tell him, I could not convince him), *quelque chose* means *quelle que soit la chose*, and is *feminine*.

**231. Foudre** is *feminine* when it means *lightning, thunderbolt* :—

**La foudre sillonne les nues** (= the lightning flashes through the clouds);

but it is *masculine* when used *figuratively* :—

**Un foudre de guerre** (= a doughty warrior)

**Un foudre d'éloquence** (= a very eloquent orator).

**232. Gent** is *feminine* in the singular, and means *race, tribe, crowd* :—

**La gent moutonnaière** (=the ovine race)

**La gent criarde** (=the noisy crowd).

In the plural (**gens**) it means *men, people*, and remains *feminine* if an adjective comes before it :—

**Les bonnes gens** (=good folks) ;

but it becomes *masculine* if an adjective follows it :—

**Les gens de ce pays sont bons** (=the people of that country are good)

**Les vieilles gens sont soupçonneux** (=old people are suspicious).

The adjective **tout** is an exception, as it remains *masculine* whether it comes before or after the word *gens* :—

**Tous les gens que j'ai vus** (=all the people I have seen)

**Ces bonnes gens sont tous ennuyeux** (=these good folks are all tiresome).

**Tout**, however, becomes *feminine* when it precedes an adjective not having the same termination for both genders. Thus it is right to say : **tous les honnêtes gens** (=all honest people), because *honnête* is spelt alike for the masculine and feminine ; but we must say : **toutes les bonnes gens** (=all good people).

**Gens de lettres** and other compounds are always *masculine*.

*Gent* is feminine, and meant formerly *nation, people* :—

“ O combien lors aura de veuves

*La gent qui porte le turban !* ”—MALHERBE (1556-1628).

(= Oh how many widows will there be then among the people that wear turbans !) But it soon lost that meaning in the plural (which, however, is even now retained in *le droit des gens*, for *le droit des nations*, = the law of nations) for that of *men, individuals*, as : *les gens de ce pays* (=the men of that country), *les gens de mer* (=the sailors), etc. Just as the feminine word *personne* (see § 110), with the meaning of *man*, became masculine in such locutions as : *personne n'est bon dans ce pays* (=there is no good man in this country), *personne n'est venu* (=no one has come), the idea of *man* causing its proper gender to be forgotten ; in the same way, the new idea of *man, individual* caused the change of gender in the word *gens*. This conflict between the two genders has given rise to the double rule explained above.

**233. Hymne**, when meaning a hymn (of the church), is *feminine* :—

*Les anciennes hymnes de l'église ont le mérite de la simplicité*  
(=the ancient hymns of the church have the merit of simplicity);

but it is *masculine* in all other cases :—

*Chaque peuple a son hymne national* (=every nation has its national hymn).

**234. Orge** (=barley) is *feminine* :—

*De belle orge* (=some fine barley);

but, according to the *Dictionnaire de l'Académie*, it is *masculine* in the expressions :—

*Orge perlé* (=pearl barley),  
*Orge mondé* (=Scotch barley, husked barley).

**235.** The following substantives have different meanings according to their gender :—

	MASC.	FEM.
<i>Crêpe</i>	crape	pancake
<i>livre</i>	book	pound
<i>manche</i>	handle	sleeve
<i>mémoire</i>	memoir, bill, paper	memory
<i>mode</i>	mood	fashion
<i>moule</i>	mould	mussel
<i>mousse</i>	cabin-boy	moss
<i>page</i>	page (boy)	page (of a book)
<i>pendule</i>	pendulum	clock, timepiece
<i>période</i>	highest pitch	period
<i>poêle</i>	stove, pall	frying-pan
<i>somme</i>	nap, slumber	sum
<i>souris</i>	smile	mouse
<i>tour</i>	turn, trick, lathe	tower
<i>vase</i>	vase, vessel	slime
<i>voile</i>	veil	sail

#### QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

1. What is the rule for the agreement of substantives?
2. What have you to say on the gender of *aide*, *critique*, *garde*, *manœuvre*?
3. Give the rules concerning the gender of *aigle*, *amour*, *délice*, *orgue*, *soudre*, *chaise*.
4. State fully the rules relating to the agreement of adjectives accompanying *gens*.
5. Give six nouns which are masculine in one sense and feminine in the other.

## Exercise 40.

1. Les paratonnerres préservent les édifices de la foudre. 2. Cette critique est bonne. 3. Si vous cassez quelque chose, je le rabattrai sur vos gages. 4. Le moule est cassé. 5. Donnez-moi la poêle. 6. Tous les honnêtes gens le respectent, mais toutes les mauvaises gens le haïssent. 7. Les soldats chantèrent leur hymne national. 8. Certains gens de lettres sont venus me voir. 9. A Milan il y a deux grandes orgues. 10. On a placé un orgue de chaque côté du chœur. 11. Ce sont mes plus chères délices.

<sup>1</sup> salle (*f.*), <sup>2</sup> faisait, <sup>3</sup> garde, <sup>4</sup> pour, <sup>5</sup> chirurgien (*m.*), <sup>6</sup> trompeur, <sup>7</sup> cacher, <sup>8</sup> frapper, <sup>9</sup> foudre, <sup>10</sup> moine (*m.*).

1. All the eagles taken from the enemy were placed in the hall.<sup>1</sup> 2. It is a good help. 3. He kept<sup>2</sup> a good watch.<sup>3</sup> 4. All these people have been very kind to<sup>4</sup> me. 5. This surgeon<sup>5</sup> has two very good assistants. 6. This manœuvre was deceptive.<sup>6</sup> 7. If something remains he hides<sup>7</sup> it. 8. This tree was struck<sup>8</sup> by lightning.<sup>9</sup> 9. The monks<sup>10</sup> were singing a beautiful hymn. 10. All the good people were surprised.

## SECTION II.

## OF NUMBER.

**236. Aïeul, ciel, œil, travail, see § 36.**

**237. Témoin** (=witness) does not take the sign of the plural when it is placed at the beginning of a sentence, or in the locution *à témoin* :—

*Témoin les blessures qu'il a reçues* (=witness the wounds he has received)

*Je vous prends tous à témoin* (=I call you all to witness).

N.B.—*Prendre à témoin* means properly *prendre pour témoin*; the Old French said: *élire un chevalier à roi* (=to elect a knight for king).

**238.** Some nouns are only used in the singular :—

*Le boire* (=drinking)

*le manger* (=eating)

*la botanique* (=botany)

*l'adolescence* (=youth)

*la reconnaissance* (=gratitude)

*le silence* (=silence)

Others are used only in the plural :—

<i>alentours</i> , m. (= neighbourhood, environs)	<i>environs</i> , m. (= neighbourhood, vicinity, environs)
<i>archives</i> , f. (= archives)	<i>mathématiques</i> f. (= mathematics)
<i>catacombes</i> , f. (= catacombs)	<i>ténèbres</i> , f. (= darkness, dark, night).
<i>ciseaux</i> ,* m. (= scissors)	

### I. Plural of Proper Nouns.

**239.** In English proper nouns take the sign of the plural, but, in French, they do not, as :—

*Les deux Corneille sont nés à Rouen* (=the two Corneilles were born at Rouen)

*Les Corneille, les Molière, les Racine ont illustré le siècle de Louis XIV* (=men like Corneille, Molière, and Racine have rendered the age of Louis XIV illustrious);

EXCEPT (1) when they are common to great families or dynasties, as :—

*Les deux Gracques, en flattant le peuple, commencèrent les divisions qui ne finirent qu'avec la République*—(BOSSUET) (=The two Gracchi, by flattering the people, originated those quarrels which only ended with the Republic);

(2) when they are used as common nouns, as :—

*Un Auguste aisément peut faire des Virgiles* (i.e., des poètes comme Virgile) (=an emperor like Augustus can easily produce poets like Virgil);

(3) when the name of an author is used to designate his works, as :—

*J'ai plusieurs Virgiles dans ma bibliothèque* (=I have several copies of Virgil in my library).

**240.** Proper names of countries take the sign of the plural, as :—

*Les deux Guinées* (=Upper and Lower Guinea)

*Les deux Amériques* (=North and South America).

### II. Plural of Words taken from Foreign Languages.

**241.** Words taken from foreign languages, and which have become French by frequent use, take *s* in the plural:

\* *Ciseau* in the singular means chisel.

<i>Un accessit</i> ( <i>proxime accessit</i> = honourable mention)	<i>des accessits</i>
<i>un album</i> (= album)	<i>des albums</i>
<i>un examen</i> (= examination)	<i>des examens</i>
<i>un opéra</i> (= opera)	<i>des opéras</i>
<i>un pensum</i> (= an imposition, task)	<i>des pensums</i>
<i>un spécimen</i> (= a specimen)	<i>des spécimens, &amp;c.</i>

EXCEPT (1) names of prayers: *des ave, des credo*; (2) compound nouns: *des in-octavo, des ex-voto*; (3) terms of music borrowed from the Italian: *des allegro, des crescendo*.

*Carbonaro, lazzarone, dilettante* keep their Italian plural: *carbonari, lazzaroni, dilettanti*.

### III. Plural of Compound Nouns.

**242.** Compound nouns written in one word, as *portemanteau* (= portmanteau, *lit.* that which carries the cloak), *contrevent* (= shutter, *lit.* that which protects against the wind), follow the rules for the formation of the plural of simple nouns: *des portemanteaux* (= portmanteaus), *des contrevents* (= shutters).

**243.** *Gentilhomme* (= nobleman), *monsieur* (= Sir, Mr.), *madame* (= Madam, Mrs.), *mademoiselle* (= Miss), however, become *gentilshommes*, *messieurs*, *mesdames*, *mesdemoiselles*, in the plural.

**243.** When the compound nouns are written in two words, as *coffre-fort* (= strong-box, safe), *porte-drapeau* (= standard-bearer), the noun and adjective alone can take the sign of the plural; all the other words, whether verb, adverb, or preposition, remain invariable.

**244.** The rules for forming the plural of compound nouns are *six* in number.

When a compound noun is formed—

1. **Of two nouns**, both nouns take the sign of the plural:—

<i>un chat-tigre</i> (= a tiger-cat)	<i>des chats-tigres</i>
<i>un chou-fleur</i> (= a cauliflower)	<i>des choux-fleurs.</i>

2. **Of two nouns joined by a preposition**, the first alone takes the sign of the plural:—

<i>un arc-en-ciel</i> (= a rainbow)	<i>des arcs-en-ciel</i>
<i>un chef-d'œuvre</i> (= a masterpiece)	<i>des chefs-d'œuvre.</i>

When the preposition is understood, the same rule must be observed; thus *un hôtel-Dieu*, which stands for *un hôtel de Dieu* (= a house of God = a hospital) is in the plural *des hôtels-Dieu*;

EXCEPT: *Un tête-à-tête* (= a private interview)  
*un coq-à-l'âne* (= a cock and bull story)  
*un pied-à-terre* (= temporary lodgings, a country box)

which remain the same: *des tête-à-tête*, &c.

3. Of a noun and an adjective, both take the sign of the plural:—

*une basse-taille* (= a bass voice)    *des basses-tailles*  
*un coffre-fort* (= a safe)            *des coffres-forts.*

EXCEPT some expressions formed with Old French words such as: *terre-plein* (= platform, terre-plein), from the old adjective *plein*, *plain* (= flat, even); *cheval-léger* (= light horseman), properly *cheval léger*; *blanc-seing* (= signature on a blank paper), from the Old French *seing*, for *signature*. These nouns form their plural like the compounds written in one word — that is to say, that the last word alone takes the plural—*des terre-pleins*, *des cheval-légers*, *des blanc-seings*.

4. Of a noun and a verb, the noun alone takes the sign of the plural:—

*un passe-port* (= a passport)            *des passe-ports*  
*un tire-bouchon* (= a corkscrew)      *des tire-bouchons.*

EXCEPT the compound nouns formed with the verb *garder*: *un garde-chasse* (= a game-keeper), *un garde-manger* (= a larder, meat-safe), in which *garde* takes *s* in the plural when it means a keeper: *un garde-chasse*, *des gardés-chasse*; but remains invariable when it designates an instrument or object: *un garde-manger*, *des garde-manger* (see § 227).

5. Of a noun and a preposition, or of a noun and an adverb, the noun alone takes the sign of the plural:—

*un sous-officier* (= a non-commissioned officer)    *des sous-officiers*  
*un avant-coureur* (= a precursor, harbinger)      *des avant-coureurs*

6. Of invariable words (verb, preposition, adverb), both words remain unchanged:—

*un oui-dire* (= a hearsay)            *des oui-dire*  
*un passe-partout* (= a master-key)    *des passe-partout.*

**245.** REMARKS.—In forming the plural of compound nouns we must first examine what is their exact meaning; thus we write *des serre-tête* (=head-bands) without *s* after *tête*, because the band is fastened round *one head only*, and *un couvre-pieds* (=a counterpane, quilt) because it covers *the feet*; again, *des abat-jour* (=shades), because it shades *the light*; but *un porte-clefs* (=a turnkey), because he carries *many keys*

### Exercise 41.

1. Les deux Corneille sont nés à Rouen. 2. Les Boileau et les Gilbert furent les Juvénals de leur siècle. 3. J'ai deux Molières dans ma bibliothèque, ce sont des in-octavo. 4. Les porte-clefs arrivaient. 5. Je vous prends tous à témoin. 6. Il a remporté deux prix et trois accessits. 7. Permettez-moi de vous présenter mes beaux-frères. 8. Voici un casse-noisettes.

<sup>1</sup> essuie-mains (*m.*), <sup>2</sup> tire-bottes (*m.*), <sup>3</sup> en haut, <sup>4</sup> renard (*m.*), <sup>5</sup> basse-cour (*f.*), <sup>6</sup> porte-plume (*m.*), <sup>7</sup> ivoire (*m.*), <sup>8</sup> Néron, <sup>9</sup> couvre-feu (*m.*).

1. These towels<sup>1</sup> are new. 2. Your boot-jack<sup>2</sup> is upstairs.<sup>3</sup> 3. The foxes<sup>4</sup> visited several poultry-yards.<sup>5</sup> 4. These penholders<sup>6</sup> are of ivory.<sup>7</sup> 5. The rainbows were beautiful. 6. The game-keepers were in the forest. 7. These kings were as many Neros.<sup>8</sup> 8. *Poets such as* (the *pl.*) Corneille and (the *pl.*) Milton are rare. 9. The sub-lieutenants were speaking with the vice-admirals. 10. I have lost my tooth-pick. 11. The curfew<sup>9</sup> was introduced into England by William the Conqueror. 12. These master-keys are well made.

### SECTION III.

#### COMPLEMENT OF THE SUBSTANTIVE.

**246.** When one substantive is used as a complement to another, this use is generally marked by the prepositions **de** (=of) or **à** (=to): *un homme d'honneur* (=a man of honour), *la maison de Paul* (=Paul's house), *un oiseau de proie* (=a bird of prey), *un fusil à aiguille* (=a needle-gun), *un chandelier à branches* (=a branch-candlestick), *un piano à queue* (=a grand piano), *un enfant aux cheveux noirs* (=a black-haired child).



In expressions like the above, which mark possession, *à* (=to) signifies *avec* (=with); *fusil à aiguille*, *piano à queue* are equivalent to *fusil avec aiguille*, *piano avec queue* (lit. a piano with a tail). Besides possession, *à* and *de* serve to mark the relation between cause and effect, that of a part to the whole, etc.

*De* is used when the idea of origin, composition, or possession is implied; *à* implies means or purpose, and is also used instead of *with*.

247. We find also *en*, *sans*, *autour*, etc. (=in, without, round, etc.) equally employed for this purpose: *un homme sans fortune* (=a man without fortune), *une épée en acier* (=a steel sword), *un voyage autour du monde* (=a voyage round the world).

248. The infinitives can also be used as complements to the substantive: *l'art d'écrire* (=the art of writing), *la façon de marcher* (=the way of walking), etc.

249. We must carefully distinguish between the case where the noun and its complement are united by the article *du* (=of the), and that where they are united by the preposition *de* (=of): *un palais de roi* et *le palais du roi* (=a kingly palace, and the palace of the king) do not by any means express the same idea; the former phrase is general, and qualifies a palace of royal appearance: *cette maison est un vrai palais de roi* (=that house is quite a royal palace); the latter phrase, on the contrary, is very special, and determines to whom the palace belongs: *cette maison est le palais du roi* (=that house is the king's palace).

250. When two nouns require after them the same preposition, they may have the same complement: *son ardeur et son application au travail* (=his ardour and his application to work), because *ardeur* and *application* both require after them the preposition *à*.

But we cannot say: *son dévouement et son obéissance pour son maître* (=his devotedness and his obedience to his master). Each word must take its appropriate complement. We shall say then: *son dévouement pour son maître et son obéissance envers lui*.

REMARK.—The use of a noun in the singular or the plural after a preposition depends entirely on the idea expressed. We must see whether the noun conveys or not an idea of plurality. Thus we must say: *marchand de lait* (=a milkman)=*qui vend du lait*, and *marchand de pommes* (=an apple-seller)=*qui vend les pommes*; *un fruit à noyau* (=a fruit with a stone in it—*i.e.*, apricots, peaches, cherries, etc.)=*qui a un noyau*, but *un fruit à pepins* (=a fruit with pips—*i.e.*, apples, pears, etc.)=*qui a des pepins*.

### QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Give the plural of <i>œil</i>, <i>œil</i>.</li> <li>2. In what instances do nouns of persons take the sign of the plural?</li> <li>3. Write out the plural of <i>pensum</i>, <i>ultimatum</i>, <i>dilettante</i>, <i>ave</i>, <i>te deum</i>, <i>post-scriptum</i>.</li> <li>4. How do you form the plural of compound nouns composed of (1) two nouns, (2) an adjective and a noun, (3) a verb and a noun, (4) a preposition or adverb and a noun?</li> <li>5. What is the best means to know</li> </ol> | <p>whether any parts, and which, of a compound noun ought to be in the plural?</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>6. How is the use of the complement generally marked in French?</li> <li>7. What are the ideas expressed by the two prepositions <i>à</i> and <i>de</i> respectively?</li> <li>8. When do two nouns take the same complement?</li> <li>9. When is a noun to be placed in the singular and when in the plural after a preposition?</li> </ol> |
|---|--|

### Exercise 42.

1. Tout bon citoyen doit l'obéissance aux lois et à la constitution de son pays. 2. Les règles de l'honnêteté sont celles de la bienséance et des bonnes mœurs. 3. Le Pérou a de nombreuses mines d'or, d'argent et de diamants. 4. Le plaisir est souvent l'ennemi de la raison. 5. J'ai toujours des armes à feu chez moi. 6. Prenez un verre de vin. 7. La domestique a laissé tomber le pot au lait. 8. Où est la bouteille à vin? 9. Le raisin est un fruit à pepins et la pêche est un fruit à noyau.

<sup>1</sup> règle (*f.*), <sup>2</sup> décence (*f.*), <sup>3</sup> manière (*f.*), <sup>4</sup> boîte (*f.*), <sup>5</sup> couverture (*f.*), <sup>6</sup> noyer (*m.*).

1. Has the servant broken the wine bottle? 2. Give a glass of beer to that brave soldier. 3. The rules<sup>1</sup> of decency<sup>2</sup> and good manners<sup>3</sup> condemn this action. 4. My sister has bought a grand piano. 5. Who is that lady with a blue bonnet? 6. I shall buy a pair of satin shoes. 7. Bring down the tea-caddy<sup>4</sup>; it is in my bedroom. 8. The peach is a stone-fruit, but the orange is a fruit with pips. 9. It is a book with a green cover<sup>5</sup>. 10. The cover of the book is green. 11. A walnut-wood<sup>6</sup> table. 12. A stone house.

## CHAPTER II.

## SYNTAX OF THE ARTICLE.

**251.** The article is used in French:—

1. Before nouns taken in their general as well as in their particular sense: **les livres sont les meilleurs amis de l'homme** (=books are man's best friends), **le livre que je lis** (=the book which I read).

2. Before nouns of measure, weight, number, etc.: **ce vin coûte six shillings la bouteille** (=this wine costs six shillings a bottle).

Instead of the article, the preposition *par* (=by) is placed before nouns expressing a subdivision of time, or the wages, salary, price of entrance paid, etc.: **il jouit d'un revenu de trois cent mille francs par an** (=he has an income of three hundred thousand francs a year).

3. Before nouns of kingdoms, countries, provinces, etc.: **l'Angleterre est un pays libre** (=England is a free country).

4. Before adjectives taken substantively: **le rouge est une couleur qui ne vous sied pas** (=red is a colour which does not become you).

5. Before titles followed by the name: **le docteur Nélaton** (=Doctor Nélaton).

**252.** Every noun which is either the subject, the attribute, or the object of a verb must have one of the two articles, *definite* or *indefinite*: **Le cheval mange du foin** (=the horse eats hay), **un ami est un trésor sans prix** (=a friend is a priceless treasure).

**253.** When the article refers to two substantives in the singular, it must be repeated before each of them: **le cousin et la nièce** (=the cousin and the niece), and not **les cousin et nièce**, except in the locution **les père et mère** (=the father and mother), which usage has consecrated.

**254.** When two adjectives united by *et* (=and) refer to the same substantive, and the substantive represents two distinct things, the article must be repeated before the second adjective: *l'histoire ancienne et la moderne* (=ancient and modern history), not *l'histoire ancienne et moderne*; but it would be correct to say *le brave et illustre Turenne* (=the brave and illustrious Turenne), because both adjectives qualify the same person (Cf. § 300).

**255.** No article is used in French:—

1. Before the ordinal numbers introduced in quotations: *livre premier* (=book the first).

2. Before the numbers expressing the succession of popes, kings, etc.: *Charles premier* (=Charles the First).

3. Before nouns expressing the title, profession, country, etc., of the person or thing represented by the preceding noun, the material of which a thing is made, and generally before a noun when it is used to complete the meaning of another: *une table de marbre* (=a marble table), *du vin d'Espagne* (=Spanish wine), *un homme d'esprit* (=a witty man), *mon père était libraire* (=my father was a bookseller).

4. Before substantives placed in apposition: *le roi fut reçu en triomphe, honneur qu'il méritait bien* (=the king was received in triumph, an honour he well deserved).

5. In the title of a book: *histoire de France* (=a history of France).

6. After the pronouns **quel, quelle, quels, quelles** (=which, what), used as exclamations: *quel magnifique coucher de soleil!* (=what a splendid sunset!)

7. After words of quantity, want, etc., except *la plupart* and *bien*; *votre thème a beaucoup de fautes* (=your exercise has many mistakes), *bien des années après la mort d'Alexandre* (=many years after Alexander's death).

8. In proverbs or in sentences of a general kind: *pauvreté n'est pas vice* (=poverty is no crime).

9. In enumerations, when we wish to give more rapidity to the phrase: *rois, peuples, ennemis, tout tremblait devant lui* (=kings, people, enemies, all trembled before him).

**256.** Before the adverbs **plus, moins, and mieux**, the articles *le, la, les* are employed when a comparison is meant: *la rose est la plus belle des fleurs* (=the rose is the finest of flowers), *les gazelles sont les plus agiles des quadrupèdes* (=gazelles are the nimblest of quadrupeds).

**257.** *Le*, however, remains invariable when we wish to express a quality carried to the highest degree, without making any comparison: *c'est en Asie que les montagnes sont le plus hautes* (=it is in Asia that the mountains are highest).

**Le** is further invariable before **plus, mieux, moins**, when these words are followed by another adverb, or employed by themselves: *c'est elle qui a répondu le plus adroitement* (=it is she who has answered the most skilfully), *c'est la rose que j'aime le mieux* (=it is the rose which I like the best).

**258.** The indefinite article **du, de l', de la, des** is used before all nouns taken in a partitive sense, except when an adjective precedes the noun, or when the sentence is negative (see § 48). Sometimes another preposition comes before *de*: *Charles est venu avec des amis* (=Charles came with some friends).

**259.** The article remains, however, (1) when the adjective follows the noun: *du pain excellent* (=excellent bread); (2) when the noun and adjective form a compound noun: *donnez-moi des petits-pois* (=give me some green peas); (3) when the negative question implies a positive meaning: *n'avez-vous pas des amis?* (=have you not any friends?)

**260.** With nouns expressing things which are not capable of enumeration we must not use *un* or *une*, but *du* or *de la*. Thus we cannot say: *donnez-moi un vin, une viande* (=give me a wine, a meat), as we say: *donnez-moi une cerise ou une pomme* (=give me a cherry or an apple); we must say: *donnez-moi du vin, de la viande* (=give me some wine, some meat).

**Un** must be used after *c'est*: *c'est un Français* (=he is a Frenchman), and **des** after *ce sont*: *ce sont des Anglais* (=they are Englishmen); but it is not expressed after *il est* (=he is): *il est Anglais* (=he is an Englishman).

### QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>1. When is the definite article used in French?</p> <p>2. Enumerate the various cases in which no article is used.</p> <p>3. When is <i>le</i> invariable in connection with the adverbs <i>plus, moins, mieux</i>?</p> | <p>4. When is the article <i>du, de l, de la' des</i> used?</p> <p>5. What article is used with nouns expressing things which are not capable of enumeration?</p> |
|--|---|

### Exercise 43.

1. La fortune est une divinité capricieuse. 2. Le printemps, l'été, l'automne et l'hiver sont les quatre saisons de l'année. 3. Le fromage coûte soixante-dix centimes la livre. 4. La charité est la première des vertus chrétiennes. 5. La Touraine est le jardin de la France. 6. Le bon et le mauvais sont mêlés ensemble dans toute la nature. 7. Donnez-moi du pain et du beurre. 8. Voici d'excellents fruits. 9. Le fer et l'acier sont des métaux utiles. 10. La politesse est souvent le fruit de l'usage, de l'expérience et de l'application. 11. Guillaume Trois monta sur le trône d'Angleterre à la suite d'une révolution. 12. Vous trouverez ce passage dans l'histoire de France d'Anquetil, chapitre cinq, livre trois. 13. Ampère était à la fois philosophe, chimiste et mathématicien. 14. Je reviens de Marseille, ville dont la fondation est attribuée à une colonie de Phocéens. 15. Quel malheur votre ami a éprouvé!

<sup>1</sup> n'importe qui, <sup>2</sup> boiteux, <sup>3</sup> valoir, <sup>4</sup> par, <sup>5</sup> Inde (*f.*), <sup>6</sup> crayon (*m.*), <sup>7</sup> en Espagne, <sup>8</sup> méchant, <sup>9</sup> esprit (*m.*), <sup>10</sup> bien, <sup>11</sup> s'étaient écoulées.

1. Good example is a language which anybody<sup>1</sup> can understand. 2. The horse which you have lent me is lame.<sup>2</sup> 3. Eggs are worth<sup>3</sup> a shilling a dozen. 4. I have passed through<sup>4</sup> Greece in coming from India.<sup>5</sup> 5. Blue is one of the primitive colours.

6. When you go out, buy me some pencils<sup>6</sup> and colours. 7. I found in Spain<sup>7</sup> wretched<sup>8</sup> inns and detestable roads. 8. Italy produces oranges and olives. 9. Book the tenth, section the eighteenth. 10. What an accomplished man! 11. My friend is an officer. 12. I have read *Hernani*, a tragedy by Victor Hugo. 13. Charles II., king of England, had much wit<sup>9</sup> but no prudence. 14. Many<sup>10</sup> years had elapsed<sup>11</sup> since.

## CHAPTER III.

### SYNTAX OF THE ADJECTIVE.

#### SECTION I.

##### AGREEMENT OF THE ADJECTIVE.

**261.** The adjective agrees in gender and number with the noun which it qualifies: *Dieu est clément* (= God is merciful), *le ciel est bleu* (=the sky is blue), *les hommes sont mortels* (=men are mortal).

**262.** An adjective which relates to two or more nouns in the singular is put in the plural and agrees in gender with those nouns; thus: *la fouine et la belette sont également dangereuses* (=the polecat and the weasel are equally dangerous).

If the nouns are of different genders, the adjective generally takes the masculine, thus: *le roi et la reine sont généreux* (=the king and the queen are generous).

**263.** After two nouns separated by the conjunctions *ou* (=or), *ainsi que* (=as well as, like), *de même que* (=as, as well as), etc., the adjective agrees with the latter, provided it really qualifies that noun only: *les colonnes se construisent en bois ou en pierre très-dure* (=the columns are made of wood or of very hard stone).

**264.** When two or more substantives mark a gradation, or form a climax, and we wish to fix the attention particularly upon the last, we give to the

adjective the gender and the number of this last substantive: *Condé montra à Rocroy un courage, un sang-froid, une audace étonnante* (= Condé showed at Rocroy courage, coolness, and wonderful audacity).

**265.** When an adjective is composed of two adjectives (or of an adjective and a participle), united by a hyphen, the two parts agree with the noun: *des poires aigres-douces* (= half-sweet, half-sour pears).

The only exception is the word **mort** (= dead), which never takes the sign of the feminine in compound adjectives: *une brebis mort-née* (= a still-born lamb).

**266.** But if the former of the two adjectives is employed adverbially, it does not vary, being then a real adverb: *l'herbe est très-clair-semée*—that is to say *très-clairement semée* (= the grass is very thinly sown), *ces personnages étaient court-vêtus*—that is to say, *courtement vêtus* (= those persons wore very short clothes). We say, likewise: *une fille nouveau-née* (= a new-born daughter).

**267.** Adjectives employed adverbially can never agree with the substantive, inasmuch as they are really adverbs—that is to say, words which from their nature are invariable: *elle chante faux* (= she sings out of tune), *cette fleur sent bon* (= this flower smells sweet), etc.

**268.** We have seen in § 232 that the substantive *gens* (= people) requires in the feminine the adjectives which precede it: *de sottes gens*; and masculine those which follow it: *des gens sots* (= stupid people).

For the details of this exception and the explanation of its origin, see § 232.

**269. Demi, nu, feu, ci-joint, etc., see §§ 275-278.**

**270. Grand** (= great, large, tall) remains invariable in certain locutions: *grand'mère* (= grandmother), *grand'route* (= high road).

In Old French *grand* and a few other adjectives had the same form for the masculine and the feminine. Later they became variable like *court, courte* (= short), but several expressions in which *grand* did not vary were retained.



**271.** Substantives, employed as adjectives to express certain colours, are invariable: *des étoffes noisette* (=nut-brown stuffs), *des robes olive* (=olive-coloured dresses).

Two adjectives combined for the purpose of expressing a colour remain invariable: *des cheveux châtain-clair* (=light brown hair), *des yeux bleu-foncé* (=dark blue eyes).

<sup>†</sup> In expressions such as *châtain-clair*, *bleu-foncé*, the former word is properly a substantive in the singular number (i.e., *des cheveux d'un châtain*), and the second word, i.e., the adjective, agrees with that substantive.

### Exercise 44.

1. La victoire que César gagna à Pharsale fut désastreuse pour le genre humain. 2. Mirabeau montrait dans tous ses discours un talent, une habileté étonnante. 3. Mon frère et ma sœur sont heureux. 4. Un style uni, simple et naturel est le seul recommandable. 5. Une personne sensible ne peut voir un vieillard ou une femme pauvres et souffrants sans être émue. 6. La grand'-route est bordée d'arbres. 7. Leurs vêtements sont gris-foncé.

<sup>1</sup> porter, <sup>2</sup> nid (*m.*), <sup>3</sup> construire, <sup>4</sup> robe (*f.*), <sup>5</sup> posséder, <sup>6</sup> ardeur (*f.*).

1. Charles and Emily are attentive. 2. He wore<sup>1</sup> black silk stockings. 3. These nests<sup>2</sup> are built<sup>3</sup> with an admirable art and skill. 4. Blue cotton stockings. 5. I do not see very distinctly. 6. Light blue dresses.<sup>4</sup> 7. These oranges have a good smell (translate: smell good). 8. Colbert had<sup>5</sup> profound judgment, indefatigable industry,<sup>6</sup> and a very extensive knowledge of foreign commerce. 9. Robespierre acquired in Paris an absolute power and authority.

## SECTION II.

### OF THE POSITION OF ADJECTIVES.

**272.** GENERAL RULE.—Adjectives are in French generally placed *after* the substantive to which they relate, as :—

<i>un homme riche</i> (=a rich man)	<i>une table ronde</i> (=a round table)
<i>une pensée morale</i> (=a moral thought)	<i>un climat chaud</i> (=a warm climate)
<i>une chambre obscure</i> (=a dark room)	<i>un thème français</i> (=a French exercise).

**273.** Although many adjectives may be placed either before or after the noun at pleasure, as *un homme habile*, or *un habile homme* (=a clever man), the best way to avoid mistakes in writing exercises is to put them *after* the substantive, except the following, which usually precede it :—

<i>beau</i> (=fine)	<i>jeune</i> (=young)	<i>saint</i> (=holy)
<i>bon</i> (=good)	<i>joli</i> (=pretty)	<i>tel</i> (=such)
<i>cher</i> (=dear [denoting affection])	<i>mauvais</i> (=bad)	<i>tout</i> (=all)
<i>digne</i> (=worthy)	<i>meilleur</i> (=better)	<i>vieux</i> (=old)
<i>grand</i> (=great)	<i>moindre</i> (=less)	<i>vilain</i> (=ugly).
	<i>petit</i> (=little)	

N.B.—Past participles used as adjectives follow the noun : *un homme instruit* (=a learned man), *un livre reçu* (=a book which has been received).

**274.** Several adjectives take a different signification according as they are placed before or after the noun. The following are some of them :

<i>une certaine nouvelle</i> ([Lat. <i>quidam</i> ] = certain news).	<i>un mal certain</i> ([Lat. <i>certum</i> ] a positive evil).
<i>mon cher frère</i> (=my dear brother).	<i>un livre cher</i> (=an expensive book).
<i>différentes</i> } <i>choses</i> (=sundry things).	<i>des objets</i> { <i>différents</i> } (=different, various objects).
<i>diverses</i> }	<i>divers</i> }
<i>un nouvel habit</i> (=a fresh coat).	<i>un habit nouveau</i> (=a new-fashioned coat).
<i>un pauvre poète</i> (=an indifferent poet).	<i>un poète pauvre</i> (=a needy poet).
<i>un plaisant conte</i> (=an absurd tale).	<i>un conte plaisant</i> (=an amusing tale).
<i>son propre habit</i> (=his own coat).	<i>un habit propre</i> (=a clean coat).
<i>son seul enfant</i> (=his only child).	<i>un enfant seul</i> (=a child alone).
<i>un vrai coquin</i> (=an arrant [notorious] rogue).	<i>une nouvelle vraie</i> (=true intelligence).
<i>un brave homme</i> (=an honest man).	<i>un homme brave</i> (=a brave man).
<i>un grand homme</i> (=a man of genius).	<i>un homme grand</i> (=a tall man).
<i>de méchants vers</i> (=poor verses).	<i>des vers méchants</i> (=malicious, spiteful verses).
<i>la dernière année</i> (=the last year [of any period]).	<i>l'année dernière</i> (=last year).

**275.** The two adjectives, **nu** (=naked) and **demi** (=half), placed before the noun, are invariable, and are united to the substantive by a hyphen: *nu-pieds* (=bare-footed), *nu-tête* (=bare-headed), *une demi-livre* (=half-a-pound), *une demi-heure* (=half-an-hour); placed after the noun, they agree with it—the former in gender and number: *les pieds nus, la tête nue*; and the latter in gender only: *une livre et demie* (=a pound and a-half), *deux heures et demie* (=two hours and a-half).

REMARK.—When *demi* is used as a substantive, it is masculine when it means *a half* in arithmetic: *deux demis font un entier* (=two halves make a whole); but it is feminine when it applies to hours: *cette pendule sonne les demies* (=this clock strikes the half-hours).

**276.** The adjective **feu** (=late, deceased) is invariable when placed before the article: *feu la reine* (=the late queen); but when placed after it, it agrees with the noun in gender and in number: *la feuve reine*.

**277. Ci-joint, ci-inclus** remain invariable:—

1. At the beginning of a sentence: **ci-joint** *la lettre de votre père* (=annexed is your father's letter), **ci-inclus** *les pièces du contrat* (=enclosed are the documents referring to the deed).

2. In the body of a sentence, when the following noun is used without an article or a determinative adjective: *vous trouverez ci-joint copie de sa lettre* (=you will find a copy of his letter annexed).

In every other case the agreement takes place: *les pièces ci-jointes sont précieuses* (=the annexed documents are valuable), *vous trouverez ci-jointe la copie du traité* (=you will find herewith the copy of the treaty).

**278. Franc**, in the expression *franc de port* (=carriage, or postage paid), is invariable when it precedes the substantive: *vous recevrez, franc de port, la lettre que je vous envoie* (=you will receive the letter I send

you, postage paid). Placed after the substantive, it agrees with it: *cette lettre est franche de port* (=this letter is prepaid).

### Exercise 45.

1. Elle marchait nu-pieds. 2. La feuë reine était très-estimée.  
3. Dans une demi-heure je vous reverrai. 4. Cette caisse est franche de port. 5. Ce sont les propres termes dont il s'est servi.  
6. C'est une vraie histoire que vous me contez là.

<sup>1</sup> montagnard (*m.*), <sup>2</sup> Écosse (*f.*), <sup>3</sup> dans, <sup>4</sup> revenir, <sup>5</sup> de devant, <sup>6</sup> règne (*m.*).

1. The Highlanders<sup>1</sup> of Scotland<sup>2</sup> have their legs bare in<sup>3</sup> all seasons. 2. I send you herewith the documents (which) you require. 3. I shall call again<sup>4</sup> in an hour and a-half. 4. Behind the house there was a large garden, but the front<sup>5</sup> garden was small. 5. It is an expensive hotel. 6. This war began in the last year of Henry's reign.<sup>6</sup> 7. I have bought a new book (*i.e.* lately published).

## SECTION III.

### COMPLEMENT OF THE ADJECTIVE.

**279.** Two adjectives qualifying the same noun must each have the same preposition as a complement. Thus we can say: *ce fils est utile et cher à sa mère* (=that son is useful and dear to his mother), because *être utile à quelqu'un* (=to be useful to some one), *être cher à quelqu'un* (=to be dear to some one) are grammatically correct; but we would not say: *ce fils est utile et chéri de sa mère*, because *être utile de quelqu'un* is wrong; in this case we must lengthen the proposition, and say: *ce fils est utile à sa mère et il en est chéri* (=that son is useful to his mother and he is beloved by her).

**280.** Some adjectives, having a determinate meaning, take no complement; thus *invincible* in the following sentence: *les droits de la conscience sont invincibles* (=the rights of conscience are invincible).

**281.** Adjectives, which signify plenty, scarcity, or want, take the preposition *de* before the word which they govern. Such are the following:—

<i>absent</i> (= absent)	<i>fou</i> (=mad)
<i>affligé</i> (=afflicted)	<i>glorieux</i> (=proud)
<i>avide</i> (=greedy)	<i>honteux</i> (=ashamed)
<i>capable</i> (=capable)	<i>impatient</i> (=impatient)
<i>comblé</i> (=overwhelmed)	<i>incapable</i> (=incapable)
<i>complice</i> (=accessory, privy)	<i>indigne</i> (=unworthy)
<i>content</i> (=content)	<i>jaloux</i> (=jealous)
<i>curieux</i> (=curious)	<i>las</i> (=tired)
<i>désespéré</i> (=disheartened)	<i>lassé</i> (=tired)
<i>désolé</i> (=desolate, very sorry)	<i>mécontent</i> (=dissatisfied)
<i>différent</i> (=different)	<i>plein</i> (=full)
<i>digne</i> (=worthy)	<i>rassasié</i> (=satisfied)
<i>éloigné</i> (=distant)	<i>rempli</i> (=filled)
<i>envieux</i> (=envious)	<i>soigneux</i> (=careful)
<i>esclave</i> (=a slave to)	<i>sûr</i> (=sure)
<i>exempt</i> (=exempt)	<i>tributaire</i> (=tributary)
<i>fatigué</i> (=tired)	<i>victime</i> (=a victim to)
<i>fier</i> (=proud)	

**282.** Adjectives denoting aptness, fitness, inclination, ease, or any habit, take the preposition *à*; such are the following:—

<i>accessible</i> (=accessible)	<i>impénétrable</i> (=impenetrable)
<i>accoutumé</i> (=accustomed)	<i>importun</i> (=importunate)
<i>antérieur</i> (=previous)	<i>invincible</i> (=unconquerable)
<i>ardent</i> (=ardent)	<i>invisible</i> (=invisible)
<i>attentif</i> (=attentive)	<i>nuisible</i> (=injurious)
<i>cher</i> (=dear)	<i>préférable</i> (=preferable)
<i>conforme</i> (=conformable, agreeable)	<i>prompt</i> (=prompt)
<i>contraire</i> (=contrary)	<i>propice</i> (=favourable)
<i>enclin</i> (=disposed, prone to)	<i>propre</i> (=good for)
<i>exact</i> (=punctual)	<i>redoutable</i> (=redoubtable)
<i>favorable</i> (=favourable)	<i>semblable</i> (=similar)
<i>funeste</i> (=baneful)	<i>sujet</i> (=subject)
	<i>visible</i> (=visible)

## SECTION IV.

### DEGREES OF COMPARISON.

**283.** We have seen, § 66, that the comparatives of superiority, inferiority, and equality are formed by means of the words **plus...que**, **moins...que**, **aussi...que**, and **ne...si...que** in negative sentences,

**284.** When a numeral adjective or a substantive comes after the comparative, *que* is changed into *de*: *avez-vous plus de vingt francs dans votre bourse?* (=have you more than twenty francs in your purse?)

**285.** When a verb follows a comparative, *de* is placed after *que*, if the verb is in the infinitive, and *ne*, if it is in the indicative mood: *il est plus grand de vaincre ses passions que de conquérir des royaumes* (=it is greater to overcome one's passions than to conquer kingdoms); *vous vous flattez plus que vous ne le devriez* (=you flatter yourself more than you ought).

EXCEPT: 1. When the first infinitive is preceded by *à*, this preposition is repeated before the second: *il est plus disposé à vous plaindre qu'à vous punir* (=he is more disposed to pity than to punish you).

2. When the verb being in the indicative, a conjunction comes between *que* and the verb: *vous êtes plus enclin à travailler que quand vous étiez au collège* (=you are more inclined to work than when you were at college).

3. When the sentence expresses negation, interrogation, or doubt: *il n'est pas plus heureux qu'il l'était* (=he is not happier than he was).

**286.** When a comparative is repeated, no article should be used in French: **plus on lit, plus on aime à lire** (=the more one reads, the more one likes to read); **plus une chose est difficile, plus il y a de mérite à l'accomplir** (=the more difficult a thing is, the greater merit there is in accomplishing it).

NOTICE that *difficile* and *de mérite* are placed after the verb in French.

**287.** The article *le*, which precedes a superlative, agrees generally with the noun before an adjective, but not before an adverb (see §§ 256, 257): **les plus belles roses** (=the finest roses); *c'est elle qui agit le plus adroitement* (=it is she who acts with the greatest skill).

**238.** The verb which follows a superlative with *que* is generally in the subjunctive mood: *Cet ouvrage est le meilleur que je connaisse* (=this work is the best I know).

### QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

1. State the rule and exceptions for the agreement of one adjective with several substantives.
2. What is the rule for the agreement of compound adjectives?
3. How do adjectives agree with the substantive *gens*?
4. State the rule of agreement (1) for adjectives employed adverbially; (2) for substantives employed as adjectives.
5. Where are adjectives generally placed in French?
6. Write a list of the adjectives which precede the substantive.
7. Name a few adjectives which take a different meaning according as they are placed *before* or *after* the noun.
8. Explain the rule of agreement so far as it affects the adjectives *nu, demi, feu, franc*.
9. What are the ideas expressed by adjectives which govern their complement with (1) the preposition *de*; (2) the preposition *à*.
10. How is *than* expressed in comparative sentences?
11. State the rule for the comparative repeated.
12. How is the verb put in sentences with the superlative?
13. State the rules for the agreement of *le* in sentences where the superlative occurs.
14. When can two adjectives have the same complement?

### Exercise 46.

1. Rien ne me plaît tant que les ouvrages de Raphaël. 2. La déesse Calypso était plus grande qu'Eucharis de toute la tête. 3. Rien n'est plus agréable à l'esprit que la lumière de la vérité. 4. Y a-t-il rien de plus injuste que de punir ce pauvre soldat? 5. L'armée avec laquelle Alexandre-le-Grand décida Darins ne s'élevait pas à plus de quarante mille hommes. 6. Moins vous étudierez, moins vous profiterez. 7. La ville de Troie fut autrefois la plus célèbre de l'Asie Mineure. 8. La probité est une des plus belles qualités qu'un homme puisse posséder. 9. Les hommes les plus savants font quelquefois les fautes les plus grossières.

<sup>1</sup> gagner, <sup>2</sup> dépense (*f.*), <sup>3</sup> faire, <sup>4</sup> goût (*m.*).

1. The public good is preferable to private interest. 2. Why are you dissatisfied with your condition? 3. He is not fit to discharge his duty. 4. I do not like people who are cruel to animals. 5. The Thames is not so rapid as the Rhine. 6. I am older than you by two years. 7. We flatter ourselves more than we should. 8. The more I examine this question, the more difficult I find it. 9. The less money he gets,<sup>1</sup> the less expense<sup>2</sup> he runs into.<sup>3</sup> 10. It is the best work which that author has written. 11. These three young ladies sing well, but Miss Martin is the best singer. 12. It is she who sings most tastefully (translate: with the most of taste<sup>4</sup>).

## CHAPTER IV.

## SYNTAX OF NUMERAL, POSSESSIVE, AND INDEFINITE ADJECTIVES.

## SECTION I.

## I. NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

**289.** The names of cardinal numbers are invariable: **trois** *hommes*, **quatre** *femmes* (=three men, four women), except **un**, **vingt**, **cent** (=one, twenty, and one hundred).

**290.** **Un** (=one) makes **une** in the feminine: *deux coffrets et une boîte* (=two coffers and one box).

**291.** **Vingt** and **cent** do not vary as to gender, but they take **s** when they are preceded by a multiple: **quatre-vingts** *hommes* (=eighty men), **deux cents** *soldats* (=two hundred soldiers).

EXCEPT (1) when they are themselves followed by another number: *quatre-vingt-trois*, *deux cent trente* (=eighty-three, two hundred and thirty); (2) when they are used instead of the ordinal numbers: *page quatre-vingt* (=page eighty, *i.e.* eightieth), *l'an huit cent* (=the year eight hundred, *i.e.*, eight hundredth).

**292.** **Mille** (=thousand), invariable in gender and number, changes its form when it expresses the date of a year, or the date marked on coins; it is then written *mil* (but only in this case): *l'an mil huit cent soixante-seize* (=the year eighteen hundred and seventy-six). Note, further, that this spelling only applies to the years subsequent to the Christian era: *Ce fait arriva chez les Hébreux l'an du monde mille deux cent quarante* (=this happened among the Hebrews in the year of the world two thousand two hundred and forty).

The word *mil* is not, as is commonly supposed, an abbreviation of the French word *mille*, but comes from the Latin singular *mille*, whilst *mille* is derived from the Latin plural *millia*. The O.F. said: *mil hommes* (=one thousand men).



*Mille* (= mile) is a substantive, and, of course, takes the sign of the plural.

**293.** Ordinal adjectives agree in gender and in number with the noun which they determine: *les premières maisons, la seconde ville, la trentième année du règne de Louis XIV* (=the first houses, the second town, the thirtieth year of the reign of Louis XIV.).

**294.** We have seen (§ 80) that the ordinal adjectives indicate order and rank: *le dixième siècle, la vingtième année* (=the tenth century, the twentieth year); but the cardinal numbers are employed exceptionally to point out:—

1. The order of a sovereign in a dynasty: *Charles XII* (=Charles the Twelfth), not *Charles le douzième*; *Napoléon III* (=Napoleon the Third), not *Napoléon le troisième*.

2. The days of the month: *le deux avril, le trois juillet* (=the second of April, the third of July), not *le deuxième avril, le troisième juillet*. (Notice that the preposition *of* is not translated into French.)

3. In quoting paragraphs, pages, etc.: *livre dix* (=book ten); *page deux-cent* (page two hundred). See § 291.

The ordinal *premier* (=first), however, is alone exceptionally used: *Napoléon premier, le premier juillet* (=Napoleon the First, the first of July), and has never been supplanted by *un*.

**295.** Adjectives expressing the dimensions or the size of objects can be translated into French in several ways. Thus: *la nef de cette église a soixante pieds de long*, or *de longueur*: or *la nef de, etc... est longue de soixante pieds* (=the nave of this church is sixty feet long). The same rule applies to *haut...hauteur* (=high, height), and *large...largeur* (=wide, width); but *deep* must be expressed by *de profondeur*, not by *de profond*.

By or and, used when defining length and breadth, is translated by sur. Thus: *les murs de la citadelle*

ont trente-cinq pieds de hauteur sur quinze d'épaisseur\* (=the walls of the citadel are thirty-five feet high and fifteen thick).

**296.** *More, less*, after a numeral, are expressed in French by **de plus, de moins**: *il a deux ans de plus que moi* (=he is two years older than I, *lit.* he has two years more than I).

### Exercise 47.

1. La France est longue d'environ trois cents lieues. 2. Cette maison est haute de vingt mètres. 3. Cela est arrivé en mil huit cent deux. 4. Henri IV est un des meilleurs rois que la France ait eu. 5. C'est la cinquantième année de son règne. 6. Vous trouverez ce passage à la page quatre-vingt cinq. 7. Ce fossé a quatre pieds de large sur trois pieds de profondeur.

<sup>1</sup>retarder de, <sup>2</sup>des Turcs, <sup>3</sup>États-Unis.

1. The room is 40 feet long, by 30 wide, and 15 high. 2. The crusades delayed the Turkish<sup>2</sup> invasion by<sup>1</sup> 300 years. 3. Napoleon the First was proclaimed emperor in 1804. 4. Eighty lords and more than 1200 knights perished at the battle of Crecy. 5. It was on the 4th July, 1776, that the independence of the United States<sup>3</sup> was proclaimed. 6. Have you read page 89? Yes; I am reading page 100. 7. Give him 10 francs more.

## SECTION II.

### II. POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES.

**297.** Possessive adjectives, in French, agree in gender and number with the *object possessed*, and not with the *possessor* as in English:—

<i>son âge</i> (=his, her, or its age)	<i>son frère</i> (=his or her brother)
<i>son mari</i> (=her husband)	<i>sa sœur</i> (=his or her sister)
<i>sa femme</i> (=his wife)	<i>sa mère</i> (his or her mother)

**298.** The possessive adjectives are repeated in French before each substantive, and agree with it in gender and number:—

*mon frère et ma sœur* (=my brother and sister).

\* *Un mur épais de quinze pieds, or de quinze pieds d'épaisseur* (=a wall fifteen feet deep); can be used, but not *un mur de quinze pieds d'épais*.

**299.** Where, in English, a possessive adjective refers to two or more nouns connected by a conjunction, it must be repeated in French: *sa sagesse et sa prudence* (=his wisdom and prudence).

**300.** When two adjectives of dissimilar meaning qualify the same noun, and the noun represents two distinct things, the possessive adjective is placed before each: *notre bonne et notre mauvaise fortune* (=our good and bad fortune).

But when the adjectives are of *similar meaning*, and the same things are signified by the noun, the possessive adjective is only placed before the first: *nos belles et fertiles plaines* (=our beautiful and fertile plains). (Cf. § 254.)

**301.** The name of the object possessed (when it belongs to several persons) is put in the singular, if the object is possessed in common: *le père et la mère attendaient leur voiture* (=the father and the mother were waiting for their carriage); it is put in the plural when there are as many objects possessed as there are possessors: *les ambassadeurs attendaient leurs voitures* (=the ambassadors were waiting for their carriages).

**302.** When the objet possessed belongs to a person (and not to an inanimate being), *son, sa, ses* are used: *j'aime Henri, mais je connais ses défauts* (=I love Henry, but I know his faults).

When speaking of things *en* is generally used, followed by the definite article: *si je vous parle de ces fruits, c'est que j'en connais la saveur* (=if I speak to you of those fruits, it is because I know the flavour of them).

**303.** The possessive adjectives *mon, ton, son*, etc. (=my, thy, his, etc.), are replaced by the article when they refer to something inseparable from the person, and when the sense of the phrase clearly

indicates the possessor: *il s'est cassé le bras* (and not *son bras* [=he has broken his arm]); but we must say: *il a perdu sa fortune* (=he has lost his fortune).

NOTE that the expression *il s'est coupé la jambe* would mean: he has cut his leg off; whilst *il s'est coupé à la jambe* means: he has made an incision in his leg.

**304.** In French *vous* (in speaking of relations of the person addressed) is, out of politeness, often preceded by the words: *Monsieur, Madame, Mademoiselle* (=Mister, ma'am, miss); plural, *Messieurs, Mesdames, Mademoiselles*, which are not expressed in English:—

*monsieur votre père* (=your father)

*mademoiselle votre sœur* (=your sister)

*messieurs vos frères* (=your brothers).

**305.** *Mon, ma, mes* are used in speaking to relatives or friends: *venez, mon enfant* (=come, my child), *bonjour, ma tante* (=good morning, aunt). In the same way soldiers say to their officers: *mon capitaine* (=captain), *mon colonel* (=colonel), instead of: *monsieur le capitaine, monsieur le colonel*, expressions which would be used in society.

## SECTION III.

### INDEFINITE ADJECTIVES.

**306.** Indefinite adjectives do not call for any particular remarks as far as the Syntax is concerned, except in the case of the words *tout* (=all, every), *quelque* (=some), *chaque* (=each, every), *même* (=the same, even), and *maint* (=many, many a).

**307.** The adjective *tout* (=all, every) does not present any difficulty when it is used as an adjective, as it follows the ordinary rules bearing on that part of speech: *tout homme, toute femme* (=any, every man, any, every woman); *j'ai vu tous les hommes* (=I have seen all the men); *je ne puis vous accorder ceci, mais demandez-*

*moi toute autre chose et vous l'obtiendrez* [that is to say, **toute chose autre** que celle que vous me demandez] (=I cannot grant you this, but ask me for anything else, and you will obtain it [that is to say, anything else but what you have asked me for]).

In the same way, in **tout Paris**, **tout Londres** (=all Paris, all London), **tout** agrees with *people* understood: **tout le peuple de Paris** (=all the people of Paris), etc.

**308.** We have seen in §§ 266, 267 that adjectives can be used as adverbs: *parler haut*, *chanter faux*, *voir clair* (=to speak loud, to sing out of tune, to see clearly); in like manner *tout* (=all, every) can be employed adverbially, and it then means *tout-à-fait* (=altogether, quite): *je suis tout surpris* [*je suis tout-à-fait surpris*] (=I am quite surprised).

When used as an adverb *tout* is naturally invariable: *elle est tout heureuse du succès de son fils* (=she is quite happy in the success of her son); *ces mères sont tout heureuses des succès de leurs fils* [that is to say, *tout-à-fait heureuses*] (=those mothers are quite happy in the successes of their sons); *Londres est tout autre chose que Paris* [that is to say, *une chose tout-à-fait autre*] (=London is quite another thing from Paris).

But before *feminine* adjectives, or past participles, beginning with a consonant, such as *surprise* (=surprised), or an *h aspirate*, such as *honteuse* (=ashamed), the adverb *tout* is made to agree with the subject, like a simple adjective, for the purpose of softening the pronunciation: *elle est toute surprise* (=she is quite surprised), *elle est toute honteuse* (=she is quite ashamed).

In the same way, we can say: *ces gens sont tout yeux, tout oreilles* (=these people are all eyes and ears). **Tout** means also *quelque, si* [adverb] (=however): *la valeur, tout héroïque qu'elle est, ne suffit pas à faire des héros* (=valour, however heroic it may be, is not sufficient to make heroes).

**309. Quelque** (=some), used as an adjective, follows the ordinary rules of agreement with the noun to which it refers: **quelques hommes** (=some men), **quelques ennemis que vous ayez, vous triompherez** (=whatever enemies you may have, you will conquer).

But when it is used adverbially, *quelque* remains invariable, and signifies :

1. With substantives, *environ, à peu près* (=about, nearly) : *j'ai rencontré quelque vingt personnes* (=I met about twenty people) ; *il vivait quelque cent ans après Jésus-Christ* (=he lived about one hundred years after Jesus Christ).

2. Joined to adjectives, it means the same as the adverb *si* : (**quelque puissants que soient vos ennemis** [that is to say, *si puissants que soient vos ennemis*] (=however powerful your enemies may be, or powerful as your enemies may be).

**310.** We must not confound **quelque** (used with its corresponding substantive) with another adjectival locution, **quel que**, which is never used except when separated from its substantive (and which is always followed by a verb in the subjunctive, to express doubt about the person or the thing spoken of) : **quel que soit votre bonheur** (=whatever your happiness may be), **quelles qu'aient été vos infortunes** (=whatever your misfortunes may have been).

*Quelque*, written in one word, must not, therefore, be mistaken for the expression *quel que* (formed from *quel, quelle*, and the conjunction *que*) ; this latter word is not at all, as some grammarians believe, the adjective *quelque* divided into two.

**311. Même** (=the same, self, very, even) varies when it is an adjective, and remains invariable when it is an adverb, that is to say, when it has the sense of *de plus, aussi, encore* (=besides, also, again, even). It is an adjective, for instance, in : *les mêmes hommes* (=the same men, the very men), *les dieux eux-mêmes sont étonnés* (=the gods themselves are astonished). It is an adverb in : *le citoyen doit obéir aux lois, même injustes* (=the citizen ought to obey laws, even unjust ones).

**Même** is an adverb when placed after several substantives: *les vieillards, les femmes, les enfants même furent égorgés* (=the old men, women, and even children were slaughtered).

**312. Chaque** (=each, every) being an *adjective*, must never be used except with its corresponding substantive, whilst **chacun, chacune**, being pronouns, are used without a substantive following them: *chaque pays a ses usages* (=every country has its customs), *ces villes ont chacune une citadelle* (=each of these towns has a citadel). We must not say, then: *ces fruits valent un franc chaque*, but *un franc chacun* (=these fruits are worth a franc each).

**313. Maint** (=many a) is used indiscriminately in the singular and in the plural: *j'ai lu dans maint auteur* (=I have read in many an author), *il m'a rendu maints services* (=he has rendered me many services).

#### QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. When do the numbers <i>vingt</i> and <i>cent</i> take the sign of the plural?</li> <li>2. How is <i>mille</i> written in dates of the Christian era?</li> <li>3. When does <i>mille</i> take the sign of the plural?</li> <li>4. What is the rule for the agreement of ordinal numerals?</li> <li>5. When are cardinal numbers used instead of the corresponding ordinal ones?</li> <li>6. Explain the difference between the English and the French, so far as the agreement of possessive adjectives is concerned.</li> </ol> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>7. When are possessive adjectives repeated?</li> <li>8. When is the possessive adjective replaced by the article?</li> <li>9. State the rule and exceptions to the agreement of <i>tout</i>.</li> <li>10. Explain thoroughly the syntax of <i>quelque</i>.</li> <li>11. How does <i>même</i> (adjective) agree?</li> <li>12. When is <i>même</i> used as an adverb?</li> <li>13. Distinguish between <i>chaque</i> and <i>chacun</i>.</li> <li>14. Explain the use of <i>maint</i>.</li> </ol> |
|---|---|

#### Exercise 48.

1. Mon frère a laissé tous ses livres dans sa chambre. 2. J'ai rencontré mademoiselle votre sœur au bal. 3. Nourri dans le sérail, j'en connais les détours. 4. Je me suis fait mal à la jambe. 5. Madame votre mère m'a paru toute surprise de me voir. 6. Ces livres sont tout couverts d'encre. 7. Vous ne pouvez manquer de lui trouver quelque mérite. 8. Quelque adroitement que vous vous y preniez, vous ne réussirez pas. 9. Quelles que soient ses protections, il obtiendra difficilement le poste qu'il souhaite. 10.

Quelques richesses qu'il ait, son avarice est insatiable. 11. Ils se sont trompés eux-mêmes. 12. Leurs vertus et même leurs noms étaient ignorés. 13. On trouve mainte épine où l'on cherchait des roses.

<sup>1</sup>troublée, <sup>2</sup>fouler, <sup>3</sup>laisser tomber.

1. How is your sister to-day? 2. Your brothers have each a good place. 3. This lady is quite confused<sup>1</sup> by your question. 4. Whatever your motives may be, your conduct will be blamed. 5. Whatever services you have done me, I have been thankful for them. 6. I have sprained<sup>2</sup> my wrist. 7. These peaches cost a shilling each. 8. These are the same things I saw this morning. 9. Even the wisest men are liable to make mistakes. 10. Your sister has dropped<sup>3</sup> her pocket-handkerchief. 11. London is a very large city; I know well its parks and its principal monuments. 12. Learned as they are, they could not discover these mistakes. 13. I met one of your clerks at the Stock Exchange. 14. This lady sings beautifully; every one admires her voice. 15. Every age has its pleasures.

## CHAPTER V.

### SYNTAX OF THE PRONOUNS.

#### I. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

##### Conjunctive.

**314.** We have seen (§ 89) that the personal pronouns are divided into *conjunctive*, *disjunctive*, and *reflective*, and that the conjunctive are called so on account of their position immediately *before* or *after* the verb.

**315.** These pronouns are placed *before* the verb:—

1. When used as subject in affirmative sentences: **je parle** (=I speak).

2. When used as direct or indirect object to a verb not in the imperative affirmative: *tu me remercies* (=thou thankest me), *il te l'a donné* (=he has given it to thee), *ne me le dites pas* (=do not tell it me), *l'avez-vous vu?* (=have you seen him); the indirect object coming first when two pronouns are used, except, however, when both are in the third person: *il le lui*



*donné* (= he has given it to him); *ils le leur ont envoyé* (= they have sent it to them).

**316.** They are placed *after* the verb :—

1. When subject of the verb :—

- (a) In interrogative sentences: *est-il heureux?* (= is he happy?)
- (b) In parenthesis: *non, a-t-il dit, ne le faisons pas* (= no, he said, let us not do it);
- (c) Sometimes after the expressions *à peine* (= scarcely, hardly), *aussi* (= and so, accordingly), *peut-être* (= perhaps): *peut-être ne viendra-t-il pas aujourd'hui* (= perhaps he will not come to-day);
- (d) In elliptical sentences when the subjunctive is used without a conjunction: *puissé-je de mes yeux y voir tomber la foudre* (= may I, with my own eyes, see it struck by lightning); *dût-il m'en coûter la vie* (= even if it were to cost me my life).

2. When object of the verb, in the imperative mood used affirmatively: *apportez-le moi demain* (= bring it me to-morrow). The pronoun dative is then changed from conjunctive to disjunctive, *i.e.*, *moi* is used instead of *me*, unless followed by *en*, *y* (see § 324): *vendez-m'en la moitié* (= sell me half of it).

**317.** If the sentence is negative, *ne* is put directly after the subject, before the governed pronoun, as—

*je ne vous donne pas* (= I do not give you)  
*tu ne me connais pas* (= you do not know me)  
*vous ne les avez pas vus* (= you have not seen them)

**318.** *Nous*, *vous* (= we, you), used for *je*, *tu* (= I, thou) govern the verb in the plural, but the past participel or adjective referring to them remains in the singular: *Nous sommes sûr, dit le roi, de votre fidélité* (= we are assured of your loyalty, said the king); *vous êtes enclin à la paresse* (= you are prone to idleness).

**319.** When the pronoun replaces two or more names of persons grammatically different, it is put in the first person, if there is one in the sentence; if not, it is put in the second person; thus: *vous, lui et moi, nous sommes fort âgés* (=you, he, and I are very old); *toi et lui, vous êtes malheureux* (=thou and he are unhappy). (See § 182.) This resuming pronoun is not required after **ni**: *ni vous ni moi ne l'avons vu* (=neither you nor I have seen it).

**320.** When the pronoun **le** represents a word which describes a state, such as *malade* (=ill), or a function, as *reine* (=queen), or a quality, as *mère* (=mother), it is invariable: *Madame, êtes-vous malade?*—*je le suis* (=Madam, are you ill?—I am); *êtes-vous mère?*—*je le suis* (=are you a mother?—I am); *êtes-vous reine?*—*je le suis* (=are you a queen?—I am).

But when **le** represents a word which, instead of describing either a state or a function, stands for the person in that state, or exercising that function, or possessing that quality, it varies in gender and number: *êtes-vous la malade que l'on m'a recommandé?*—*Je la suis* (=are you the invalid who has been recommended to me?—I am); *êtes-vous la dame que nous cherchons?*—*je la suis* (=are you the lady for whom we are looking?—I am); *êtes-vous les soldats qui ont battu l'ennemi hier?*—*oui, nous les sommes* (=are you the soldiers who beat the enemy yesterday?—we are).

*Le* is invariable in the first case and variable in the second, because in the first instance it means *that, what you say*. This *le* is about the only trace of the Latin neuter which still exists in French. In the second instance it is used instead of the noun: *je la suis*, i.e. the lady [you look for].

**321.** Note that **le**, preceded by the negative **ne**, is used in French after a comparative, and is not expressed in English: *vous êtes plus avancé qu'il ne l'est* (=you are more advanced than he is).

**322.** When speaking of animals or things, the pronouns **en** and **y** are used instead of *de lui, d'elle, d'eux*; *à lui, à elle, à eux*, etc.: *cet arbre est grandi, on*

*en* *ferait un mât* (=that tree has grown, one could make a mast of it); *cette chaise est cassée, j'y ferai mettre un pied* (=this chair is broken, I shall have a leg put on to it).

*En, y* are also used with reference to persons, in order to avoid the repetition of a noun or pronoun: *quoique je parle beaucoup de vous, ma fille, j'y pense encore davantage* (=although I speak much of you, my daughter, I think of you still more).

#### Disjunctive.

**323.** We have seen (§§ 93—95) what is meant by *disjunctive* pronouns, and said that these pronouns are used as subject to give greater emphasis to the expression, or as object after the verb *être*, and after prepositions.

**324.** They are used also:—

1. After a comparative: *elle est meilleure que toi* (=she is better than thee).

2. After the imperative affirmative, to express the dative: *parlez-moi* (=speak to me).

But the *conjunctive* pronoun is always used before *en, y*: *donnez-m'en* (=give me some).

Notice that *lui, leur* (=to him, to her, to them) are used both as *conjunctive* and *disjunctive* pronouns, *i. e.* before or after the verb (see §§ 315, 316).

**325.** When there are two imperatives in the same sentence, the *conjunctive* pronoun is sometimes used before the *second* imperative: *battez-moi et me laissez rire* (=beat me and let me laugh); *apportez-moi mes pantouffles et me donnez mon bonnet de nuit* (=bring me my slippers, and give me my night-cap).

#### Reflective.

**326.** *Se* (=one's self) is used for both genders and both numbers as direct or indirect object. It is always placed before the verb (see §§ 159 and 160): *il se fait une loi de lui écrire tous les mois* (=he makes it a duty to write to him every month).

**327. *Soi*** (=one's self) is used instead of *lui* (=him), *elle* (=her):—

1. After indefinite pronouns: *on* (=one), *chacun* (=every one), *personne* (=nobody), etc.: *on ne doit jamais parler de soi* (=one should never speak of one's self); *chacun vit pour soi* (=every one lives for himself).

2. After an impersonal verb, or an infinitive: *il faut penser à soi* (=one must think of one's self); *être toujours content de soi est une sottise* (=to be always satisfied with one's self is foolishness).

3. After a noun in the singular expressing a thing: *cette faute entraîne après soi bien des regrets* (=that fault entails [brings after it] many regrets). But if the noun is in the plural, *soi* cannot be used: *ces fautes entraînent après elles bien des regrets* (=these faults entail [bring after them] many regrets).

REMARK.—*Soi* is even used with a determinate subject, in order to avoid ambiguity: *l'avare qui a un fils prodigue n'amasse ni pour soi ni pour lui* (=the miser who has a prodigal son accumulates neither for himself nor for him).

#### Repetition of the Personal Pronouns.

**328.** Personal pronouns, used as subject, must be repeated in French:—

1. Before every verb, if these verbs are not in the same tense: *j'étudie et j'étudierai toujours* (=I study, and I will always study). But if the verbs are in the same tense, the repetition of the pronoun is optional: *je crains Dieu, et n'ai point d'autre crainte* (=I fear God, and have no other fear).

2. After a conjunction: *il est humble, parce qu'il est pauvre* (=he is humble, because he is poor).

**329.** Personal pronouns, used as object, must be repeated before each verb: *il vous estime et vous honore* (=he esteems and honours you). But when the verbs are in a compound tense, the pronoun need not

be repeated, if the auxiliary is understood: *il les a flattés et loués* (=he has flattered and praised them).

**330.** When we wish to express ourselves with emphasis, the disjunctive pronouns are used as well as the conjunctive (see §§ 94, 95): *cela me frappa, moi et tous ceux qui l'entendirent* (=that struck me and all those who heard it); *il me l'a dit à moi-même* (=he said it to myself).

### QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. When are the conjunctive personal pronouns placed before the verb?</li> <li>2. When are they placed after the verb?</li> <li>3. What pronoun is used after the imperative to express the dative?</li> <li>4. What have you to remark on <i>nous</i> and <i>vous</i> used instead of <i>je, tu</i>?</li> </ol> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>5. When is <i>le</i> invariable? When does it vary?</li> <li>6. Say what <i>en</i> and <i>y</i> are used for.</li> <li>7. Remark on the use and place of the disjunctive personal pronouns.</li> <li>8. Give the rules for the use of <i>se, soi</i>.</li> <li>9. Say when the personal pronouns must be repeated, and in what cases they may be omitted.</li> </ol> |
|---|---|

### Exercise 49.

1. Vous avez beaucoup de pommes, veuillez m'en donner.  
 2. Prêtez-moi votre grammaire; je vous la rendrai demain.  
 3. Chacun agit pour soi. 4. Ma tante est malade, et elle le sera longtemps. 5. Etes-vous la sœur de Monsieur Berthier? Oui, je la suis. 6. Ces enfants ont faim; donnez-leur à manger. 7. Je la vois et je lui parle tous les jours. 8. Il veut, il ne veut pas, il accorde, il refuse. 9. A peine étions-nous arrivés qu'il voulait déjà repartir. 10. Polissez votre ouvrage et le repolissez. 11. Il le lui fera savoir immédiatement. 12. Je veux le voir, le prier, le presser, l'importuner, le fléchir.

<sup>1</sup> rendre, <sup>2</sup> partir, <sup>3</sup> gronder, <sup>4</sup> supplier, <sup>5</sup> sain et sauf.

1. If you have no pens I shall lend you some. 2. There is his grammar; why have you not returned<sup>1</sup> it to him? 3. Virtue is amiable of itself. 4. Are your sisters unwell? Yes, they are. 5. Are you my friend's mother? Yes, I am. 6. I assure you that I shall not do it. 7. He has deceived me, his best friend. 8. You and I shall leave<sup>2</sup> at the same time. 9. I will see her, herself. 10. He has scolded<sup>3</sup> and punished them. 11. We consulted, questioned, and entreated<sup>4</sup> him. 12. He will perhaps do it for me. 13. I wish he may (may be) return safely<sup>5</sup>.

## II. POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

**331.** The possessive pronouns **le mien, le tien, etc.** (=mine, thine, etc.), only refer to a noun already expressed: *j'achète votre maison et je vends la mienne* (=I buy your house, and I sell mine). These pronouns are never used as adjectives, except in a few old expressions: *un mien cousin* (=a cousin of his), *une sienne tante* (=an aunt of his). (See § 101.)

**332.** When used with the verb *être* (=to be), the possessive pronouns *mine, thine, his, hers, ours, yours, and theirs* are generally translated in French by **à moi, à toi, à lui, à elle, à nous, à vous, à eux, or à elles**: *ce chapeau est à moi* (=this hat is mine, or belongs to me).

**333.** *My own, thy own, etc.*, are sometimes translated by **à moi**: *j'ai une maison à moi* (=I have a house of my own); and sometimes by the possessive adjectives **mon, ma, mes, etc.**, followed by the adjective **propre** (=own): *je l'ai vu de mes propres yeux* (=I have seen it with my own eyes).

**334.** The possessive pronouns **le mien, le tien, le sien, etc.**, when used absolutely, express *property* when they are in the singular: *j'ai demandé le mien, rien de plus* (=I asked for my own, nothing more); *le mien et le tien engendrent beaucoup de guerres et de procès* (=mine and thine give rise to many wars and law-suits).

**335.** They express *relations, family, tribe, partisans*, when they are used in the plural: *on n'est jamais trahi que par les siens* (=one is never betrayed but by one's own people); *il est plein d'égards pour moi et pour les miens* (=he is full of attentions for me and mine).

In this case the possessive pronouns are real nouns, as they do not refer to any substantive previously expressed.

**336.** The English expressions: a friend of mine, a book of his, etc. are translated into French by *un de mes amis, un de ses livres, etc.*

## QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. To what do the possessive pronouns refer?</li> <li>2. How are possessive pronouns expressed when connected with the verb <i>to be</i>?</li> <li>3. How are the expressions <i>my own</i>, <i>thy own</i> sometimes rendered in French?</li> </ol> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>4. When do the pronouns <i>le mien</i>, <i>le tien</i> express property? When do they express relations of family, tribe, or friendship?</li> <li>5. When do the possessive pronouns become real nouns?</li> <li>6. Translate into French: <i>he was going towards a house of his</i>.</li> </ol> |
|---|--|

## Exercise 50.

1. Ces chapeaux sont à moi. 2. Vous avez perdu votre place, et j'ai conservé la mienne. 3. J'ai rencontré au musée un mien cousin. 4. Ce tableau est à moi; je l'ai acheté de mes propres deniers. 5. Ne m'accusez pas de convoitise; je ne demande que le mien. 6. Ce général fut lâchement abandonné des siens. 7. Il prit un des livres de son frère. 8. Cette maison n'est pas à lui, elle est à moi en propre; elle me vient des miens.

<sup>1</sup> se retirer, <sup>2</sup> magnifique.

1. Whose is this umbrella? It is mine. 2. You have your pleasures; I have mine. 3. This old man is an uncle of mine. 4. I have retired <sup>1</sup> from business, and I have now a house of my own. 5. He has bought this splendid <sup>2</sup> picture with his own money. 6. That poor widow only claims what belongs to her. 7. I have been betrayed by my own family. 8. He had been using a pen of his brother's.

## III. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS

337. We have seen (§ 99) that **ceci**, **celui-ci**, **celle-ci**, etc., are used when speaking of an object *close to us*, and **cela**, **celui-là**, etc., when we refer to an object *far from us*. We have now to add that **ceci** often refers to what follows: *n'oubliez pas ceci: aide-toi, le ciel t'aidera* (=do not forget this: help thyself, and Heaven will help thee), whilst **cela** applies to what comes before it: *l'orgueil est un grand défaut, retenez bien cela* (=pride is a great defect, remember that well). The same applies to **voici**, **voilà**.

In colloquial and rather familiar language, the contraction **ça** is used instead of **cela**: *ça m'est égal* (=I don't care). **Cela** and **ça**, referring to persons, are mostly used in contempt.

**338. Celui, celle, ceux, celles** cannot determine a simple adjective or participle; thus, instead of saying: *j'ai lu votre lettre et celle destinée à mon frère*, we must add the relative pronoun **qui** or **que** (see § 348) to the demonstrative, and say: *j'ai lu votre lettre et celle qui est destinée à mon frère* (=I have read your letter, and the one which is intended for my brother).

**What**, meaning *that which*, must always be translated in that way, *i.e.*, by **ce qui** or **ce que**.

**339. Ce** is used with the third person singular or plural of *être, pouvoir, devoir*: **ce pourrait être lui** (=it might be he); **ce doit être touchant** (=it must be impressive).

**340.** When **ce** is used before those verbs, it refers either to persons or things, and the verb is always in the singular, unless the pronoun following the verb is in the third person plural: **ce n'est pas vrai** (=it is not true); *si jamais homme en a été capable, ce fut sans doute Alexandre* (=if ever a man could do it, it was doubtless Alexander); **ce sont eux** (=it is they).

**341. Ce** is used instead of *il, elle, eux, elles*, when the verb *être* is followed by an article, a possessive or a demonstrative adjective: **c'est un Français** (=he is a Frenchman); **c'est sa sœur** (=she is his sister); **ce sont vos amis** (=it is your friends); **ce n'étaient pas ces arbres qu'il voulait abattre** (=it was not these trees he wished to fell).

But we must say: **il est Français**, the noun (or rather adjective) being used without any article or adjective.

**342.** If the verb *être* is followed by an adjective, the English word *it* is expressed:—

1. By **ce**, when referring to what precedes: **c'est vrai** (=it is true).
2. By **il**, when *être* is used as an impersonal verb, and *it* refers to what follows: **il est vrai que c'est mon frère qu'il a vu** (=it is true that it is my brother he has seen).



**343.** Ce is used by redundancy:—

1. When être is placed between two infinitives: *laisser un crime impuni, c'est s'en rendre complice* (=to leave a crime unpunished is to make one's self an accomplice of it).

2. When the second part of a sentence begins with the verb être followed by a substantive or an infinitive, the pronoun ce is repeated if it begins the sentence: *ce que j'aime, c'est la vérité* (=what I like is truth); *ce que je désire, c'est de vous voir réussir* (=what I wish is to see you succeed).

**344.** When either part of the sentence can be the predicate of the other, the pronoun ce may be used or not before the second: *boire, manger, dormir était, or c'était, leur seule occupation* (=drinking, eating, sleeping was their only occupation).

**345.** Que de, before an infinitive in the second part of the sentence, when ce begins the first part, gives great force to the expression: *c'est acheter cher un repentir que de se ruiner pour une fantaisie* (=it is buying repentance dear to ruin one's self for a mere fancy).

**346.** In interrogations, certain forms are to be avoided on account of their harsh sound; such are: *furent-ce, doivent-ce*; another way must then be employed, such as *les Romains furent-ils...* (=were the Romans...). (See § 388).

#### QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <p>1. When are <i>celui-ci, celui-là, ceci, cela, voici, voilà</i> used?</p> <p>2. What does <i>ça</i> mean, and when is it used?</p> <p>3. How do you translate: <i>the one which, or that which</i>?</p> <p>4. In what number is the verb put after <i>ce</i>?</p> | <p>5. When is the English word <i>it</i> translated by <i>ce</i>, and when by <i>il</i>?</p> <p>6. State the cases when <i>ce</i> must be expressed in the second part of a sentence.</p> <p>7. What is the effect produced by <i>ce... que de</i> before an infinitive?</p> |
|--|--|

#### Exercise 51.

1. Vous êtes venu de bonne heure, c'est vrai. 2. Comment ça va-t-il chez vous? 3. C'est nous qui avons payé le déjeuner. 4. Voyez-vous ces dames? 5. Ce sont elles que j'ai eu l'honneur

d'accompagner au bal. 6. Ceci me convient mieux que cela. 7. Laplace et Newton furent deux célèbres mathématiciens; celui-là était Français, et celui-ci Anglais. 8. Je ne me soucie pas de ça. 9. C'est remporter la plus belle des victoires que de commander à ses passions. 10. Ce pourraient être vos motifs. 11. Il n'est pas sûr qu'il vienne aujourd'hui. 12. Je vous dis que c'est très-sûr.

\*s'en prendre, \*ça, \*devoir, \*tout à fait.

1. It is a mistake to suppose that he is ill. 2. It is (to) you that I shall call to account.<sup>1</sup> 3. It is they who are making that noise. 4. I like this, but that seems to me very dangerous. 5. How are you this morning? 6. They<sup>2</sup> give themselves (*de*) such airs. 7. French and English are the two languages most generally spoken; the former in Europe, and the latter in the other parts of the world. 8. That is what you know, this is what you are going to learn. 9. They must<sup>3</sup> be the same gentlemen we saw yesterday. 10. He is a man you may trust. 11. It is quite<sup>4</sup> evident. 12. It is certain that in this circumstance he did not do his duty.

#### IV. RELATIVE AND INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

**347.** Relative pronouns agree in gender, number, and person with their antecedent, even when they themselves do not change: *les maisons qui sont dans cette rue sont bien bâties* (=the houses which are in that street are well built). Although **qui** does not change, it agrees in gender, number, and person with *maisons*, and the verb *sont* which agrees with *qui*, is in the third person plural.

**348.** **Qui** in the nominative case, and **que** in the objective (*or* accusative), may be used for *persons* or *things*: *le livre qui est sur la table* (=the book which is on the table); *l'homme qui vient* (=the man who comes); *le livre que vous voyez* (=the book which you see); *l'homme que vous voyez* (=the man whom you see).

**349.** ~~349.~~ Great care must be taken to distinguish between **que** and **qui**, as, owing to the clear sense of those two words, inversions are very frequent in French:—

*L'ours qui tua le chasseur* (=the bear which killed the hunter);

*L'ours que tua le chasseur* (=the bear which was killed by the hunter, or which the hunter killed).

**350.** **Qui** can be used, without an antecedent, either as subject or as complement (or object). In that case, it applies to persons only, and is always masculine: *qui sert bien son pays n'a pas besoin d'aïeux* (=he who serves his country well has no need of ancestors); à *qui venge son père il n'est rien d'impossible* (=there is nothing impossible for the one who avenges his father); *choisis qui tu voudras* (=choose whom you like).

**351.** **Qui**, repeated, is used sometimes in the sense of *ceux-ci, ceux-là*: *chacun y est en action, qui à bâtir, qui à l'agriculture* (=every one there is busy, some in building, others in agriculture).

**352.** **Qui**, preceded by a preposition, applies to persons or things personified: *l'enfant à qui* (not *auquel*) *tout le monde cède est le plus malheureux* (=the child to whom everybody yields, is the most unhappy); *O rochers escarpés! c'est à vous que je me plains, car je n'ai que vous à qui je puisse me plaindre* (=O steep rocks! it is to you that I complain, for I have only you to complain to).

**353.** **Quoi**, as a relative pronoun, is used with a preposition, and is applied to things only; it generally refers to an antecedent having an indefinite meaning: *c'est à quoi l'on pensera* (=that is what we will think about); *la chose à quoi* (or *à laquelle*) *l'on pense le plus est souvent celle dont on parle le moins* (=the thing about which we think most, is often that of which we speak least).

**354.** **De quoi** forms an idiomatic expression which means *enough, the means, money, &c.*: *il y a de quoi se plaindre* (=there is reason to complain); *il n'a pas de quoi payer* (=he has not enough to pay); *il a de quoi vivre* (=he has enough to live upon).

**355. Dont** is used for both genders and numbers, and may apply to all nouns, as :—

*le commis dont vous parlez* (=the clerk of whom you speak)

*les choses dont vous parlez* (=the things of which you speak)

*la nature dont nous ignorons les secrets* (=Nature, whose secrets are unknown to us).

**356.** If the relative pronoun is separated from its antecedent by another substantive, *whose* or *of whom* is translated by **de qui**, and *of which* by **duquel**, **de laquelle**, **desquels**, **desquelles**, according to the gender and number of the antecedent : *c'est un ami à la générosité de qui je puis toujours faire appel* (=he is a friend to whose generosity I can always appeal); *c'est une entreprise à la réussite de laquelle je ne puis croire* (=it is an undertaking in the success of which I cannot believe).

**357.** When **dont** denotes the origin, lineage, descent, it applies to *persons only* : *la famille illustre dont il descend* (=the illustrious family from which he is descended). In every other case *from whom*, *from which* must be translated by **duquel**, **de laquelle**, etc.

With *nouns of things*, **d'où** is employed : *le pays d'où je viens* (=the country from which I come).

**D'où** is used also, instead of *dont*, to announce a conclusion : *c'est un fait d'où je conclus* (=it is a fact from which I conclude).

**358. Où** always refers to *inanimate objects* :—

*le siècle où* (or *dans lequel*) *nous vivons* (=the age in which we live)

*les moyens par où* (or *par lesquels*) *vous réussirez* (=the means by which you will succeed).

**359.** All the above pronouns being used for both numbers and genders, there is sometimes doubt as to which noun is their antecedent. This can be obviated by the use of **lequel**, which agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, as we have seen at § 104.

**360. Lequel** can be used for *persons* and *things* ; *l'homme de qui* (or *duquel*) *vous parlez* (=the man of whom you speak) ; *le cheval sur lequel il était monté* (=the horse on which he was mounted).

**Duquel, de laquelle, etc.,** are used to translate *from whom, from which.*

**361.** Great care must be taken to place the relative pronoun in such a way that there can be no doubt as to what word is its real antecedent; thus: *il y a plusieurs pages dans ces manuscrits qui sont illisibles* is an incorrect sentence, because the relative pronoun **qui** seems to refer to *manuscrits*. The correct way is: *il y a dans ces manuscrits plusieurs pages qui sont illisibles* (=there are in these manuscripts several pages which are illegible).

**362.** Relative pronouns, which are often understood in English, must always be expressed in French:—

*le livre que vous voyez* (=the book you see)

*la leçon qu'il apprend* (=the lesson he learns).

**363.** The *relative pronouns* are also used as **interrogative pronouns**. They have not then quite the same meaning, and are subject to the following rules:—

**Qui** refers to *persons only*: **qui voulez-vous?** (=whom do you want?); **qui parle?** (=who speaks?)

**Que** refers to *things only*: **que voulez-vous?** (=what do you want?)

**Quoi** is used in exclamations, in a simple question, and after a preposition, instead of *que*: **quoi?** (=what?); **quoi de mieux?** (=what is there better?); **avec quoi?** (=with what?)

**Lequel** shows a preference, a choice made of some thing among a number: **lequel de ces tableaux voulez-vous?** (=which of those pictures will you have?)

**Dont** is never used as an interrogative pronoun.

**364.** To these must be added the **interrogative adjective** *quel* (=what, which). It varies in gender and number (*see* § 107), and is always followed by a noun: **quel homme** (=what a man)! **quelles maisons** (=what houses)!

☞ Notice that, in the singular, the English article *a* is not translated into French.

## QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. To what substantives do <i>qui</i> and <i>que</i> apply?</li> <li>2. What is the difference between <i>qui</i> and <i>que</i>?</li> <li>3. How is <i>qui</i> used when it has no antecedent?</li> <li>4. Explain the idiomatic force of <i>qui</i> repeated?</li> <li>5. Explain the use of <i>quoi</i>.</li> <li>6. Remark on <i>dont</i>.—Distinguish between <i>dont</i> and <i>d'où</i>.</li> </ol> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>7. To what class of substantives does <i>où</i> refer?</li> <li>8. When are <i>lequel</i>, <i>laquelle</i>, &amp;c., to be used?</li> <li>9. Where are the relative pronouns to be placed?</li> <li>10. What is the difference between <i>qui</i>, <i>que</i>, <i>quoi</i>, <i>lequel</i> used as interrogative pronouns?</li> </ol> |
|---|---|

## Exercise 52.

1. Les malheurs que son administration déchaîna sur la France. 2. Toi qui sais ta leçon, viens la réciter. 3. Qui sert bien son pays n'a pas besoin d'aïeux. 4. Ils saisirent qui un fusil, qui un pistolet. 5. A qui est ce chapeau? 6. De qui parlez-vous? 7. Ce soldat dont le courage est connu recevra la médaille d'honneur. 8. C'est un soldat au courage de qui je me confie. 9. Le bonheur appartient à qui fait des heureux. 10. La famille dont je sors est une des plus illustres de l'Angleterre. 11. Qui habite la chaumière d'où vous sortez? 12. Par où irez-vous? 13. En quoi consiste la différence? 14. Que pensez-vous de cela?

<sup>1</sup> paletot (*m.*), <sup>2</sup> se plaindre de, <sup>3</sup> en bas, <sup>4</sup> se fier à, <sup>5</sup> dans toute l'Europe, <sup>6</sup> compter, <sup>7</sup> malheureux, <sup>8</sup> intéresser.

1. What has he told you? 2. Which of these two great-coats<sup>1</sup> is mine? 3. What do you complain of<sup>2</sup>? 4. The friend you love so much is downstairs.<sup>3</sup> 5. That is the aim to which he tends. 6. He is a writer on (to) whose good taste you can always rely,<sup>4</sup> and whose genius is known throughout the whole of Europe.<sup>5</sup> 7. With whom did you come? 8. I do not admit the principles from which you derive your system. 9. Death is an evil for which there is no remedy. 10. Where will you go after? 11. On what do you reckon<sup>6</sup>? 12. Which of these books do you like best? 13. What is more unfortunate<sup>7</sup> than his position? 14. I read a story in the book of that author which interests<sup>8</sup> me much.

## V. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

**365.** The pronoun **on** expresses an idea of universality in a vague manner. It only refers to persons, and is only used as subject: **on** mange pour vivre (= one eats to live).

**On** is generally singular, but when it clearly designates a woman or several persons, it becomes either feminine or plural: *à votre âge, ma fille, on est bien curieuse* (=at your age, my daughter, one is very inquisitive); *ici on est égaux* (=here people are equal).

NOTE.—Instead of using the passive voice, the French put, whenever it is possible, the verb in the active, giving to it the pronoun *on* as a nominative: *on a reçu des lettres* (=letters have been received). (See § 149.)

**366.** **L'on** is frequently used instead of *on*, after the conjunctions *et* (=and), *si* (=if), *ou* (=or), and the adverb *où* (=where): *si l'on savait tout* (=if one knew all); *parlez, et l'on écouterà* (=speak, and we shall listen); *sachez où l'on va* (=know where we are going). Before the pronoun *le, la, les*, however, it is better to say *en* to avoid the repetition of the sound of *l*: *qu'il parle, et on l'écouterà* (=let him speak, and we shall listen to him); *si on le savait* (=if people knew it); *sachez où on la conduit* (=knew where she is led).

*On*, in the twelfth century *om*, and earlier *hom*, is simply the Latin word *homo*, and means properly "a man": *on lui amène son destrier* (=a man brings him his war-horse). Thus, *on* was originally a substantive; and this accounts for its being sometimes preceded by the article (*l'on*).

**367.** **On** is used to avoid naming the persons of whom we speak, and, in that case, it generally shows a certain amount of contempt, although not so much as **ça**: *vous, Narcisse, approchez, et vous, qu'on se retire* (=as for you, Narcissus, draw near; and you [*i. e.* the other persons present], withdraw). (See § 337).

**Vous** takes sometimes the place of **on** in colloquial language: *si vous sortez après dix heures, on vous arrête et on vous mène en prison* (=if you go out after ten o'clock, you are arrested, and taken to prison); *vous savez bien quand vous y entrez, mais personne ne peut dire quand vous en sortirez* (=you know when you go in, but no one can tell when you will come out).

**368.** The pronoun **chacun** takes *son, sa, ses* after it:—

1. When it is the subject of the verb: *chacun doit parler à son tour* (=each one must speak in his turn).

2. When it is placed *after the complement of the verb, or when there is no complement*: *remettez ces livres-là chacun à sa place* (=put back these books, each in its place); *les animaux sont vêtus chacun selon ses besoins* (=the animals are clothed, each according to its wants).

369. *Chacun* takes *leur, leurs*, when it is placed *before the direct complement*: *les abeilles bâtissent chacune leur cellule* (=the bees construct each its cell); *les langues ont chacune leurs bizarreries* (=each language has its oddities); *les juges ont donné chacun leur opinion* (=each judge has given his opinion).

370. If *chacun* is preceded by a verb which cannot have a direct object, the use of *son, sa, ses, or leur, leurs* is optional: *ils sont venus, chacun avec ses, or leurs gens* (=they came each with his servants).

371. The locution *l'un l'autre* (=one another, each other) expresses reciprocity, and takes both genders and both numbers; thus: *ils s'aimaient les uns les autres* (=they loved one another); *elles se nuisent les unes aux autres* (=they injure one another).

The locution *l'un et l'autre* (=both) does not express reciprocity, but merely the idea of two or more persons, two or more things; placed before a noun it is an adjective, and agrees in gender with the noun: *j'ai parcouru l'une et l'autre régions* (=I have gone over both regions).

372. *Autrui* (=others, other people) is always used as a substantive, and does not take the plural: *ne parlez jamais mal d'autrui* (=never speak ill of other people).

373. The indeterminate pronouns *whosoever, whoever* are usually expressed:—

1. By *quiconque*, when they mean *all those who*: *quiconque touchera à mon livre sera puni* (=whoever touches my book shall be punished).

2. By *qui que ce soit qui*, or *que* (followed by the verb in the subjunctive mood), when they mean *whatever the person may be who, or whom*: *qui que ce soit qui vienne, dites-lui que je rentrerai dans une demi-*



*heure* (=whosoever may come, tell him that I shall be back in half-an-hour).

**374. *Quoi que ce soit*** (=whatever) is used in like manner for things: ***quoi que ce soit que vous disiez, on vous croira*** (=whatever you may say, you will be believed).

**375. *Rien*** means properly *quelque chose* (=something), and it has still that meaning in interrogative sentences: ***y a-t-il rien de plus beau?*** (=is there anything more beautiful?).

**376.** Used with a negative, it means *nothing*: ***je ne fais rien*** (=I do nothing).

**377. *Rien*** is used in the sense of *nothing*, and without a negative:—

(1) After a comparative: ***il a moins que rien*** (=he has less than nothing);

(2) After a preposition: ***il fait cela avec rien*** (=he does that with [almost] nothing);

(3) in answers: ***que faites-vous? rien*** (=what are you doing? nothing); ***que voyez-vous? rien*** (=what do you see? nothing).

**378. *Rien*** and ***tout*** are placed after the verb in simple tenses, and between the auxiliary and the participle in compound tenses: ***il ne voit rien et vous voyez tout*** (=he sees nothing, and you see everything); ***il n'a rien vu mais vous avez tout vu*** (=he has seen nothing, but you have seen all). With an infinitive, they generally come first: ***vous ne devez rien faire*** (=you must do nothing); ***il faut tout dire*** (=you must say all).

**379. *Personne***, meaning *anybody*, does not take ***ne***:—

(1) in interrogative sentences: ***y a-t-il personne de mieux renseigné?*** (=is there any one better informed?).

(2) In sentences expressing doubt: ***je doute qu'il vienne personne*** (=I doubt whether anybody will come);

(3) In answers: *qui est là?* **personne** (=who is there? no one);

(4) After a comparative: *il le fera mieux que* **personne** (=he will do it better than any one).

**380. Personne**, with a negative sense, is masculine, unless it clearly refers to a woman: **personne** *n'est entièrement bon* (=no one is entirely good); **personne** *n'est plus jolie* (=no one [lady] is prettier). When **personne** is used as a noun, *i.e.*, when preceded by an article or an adjective (demonstrative or possessive), it is feminine: *une* **personne** *de qualité* (=a man [or woman] of title).

For the other pronouns, **tout**, etc., see *Indefinite Adjectives* (§ 306, § 314).

#### QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Explain the various idiomatic uses of <i>on</i>.</li> <li>2. When does the pronoun <i>chacun</i> take <i>son, sa, ses</i> after it?—When does it take <i>leur</i>?</li> <li>3. Distinguish between <i>l'un l'autre</i> and <i>l'un et l'autre</i>.</li> <li>4. When is <i>autrui</i> used?</li> </ol> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>5. How are the pronouns <i>whoever, whatever</i> translated?</li> <li>6. What is the real meaning of <i>rien</i>?</li> <li>7. When are <i>rien</i> and <i>personne</i> followed by <i>ne</i>?—when are they not?</li> <li>8. Where are <i>rien</i> and <i>tout</i> placed?</li> <li>9. When is <i>personne</i> masculine?—when is it feminine?</li> </ol> |
|---|--|

#### Exercise 53.

1. On dit qu'il y a eu un violent incendie à Londres. 2. On est égaux quand on s'aime. 3. Les dix tribus de l'Attique avaient chacune leur président. 4. Ces messieurs ont voté chacun selon ses opinions. 5. Par soi-même on peut juger d'autrui. 6. Qui-conque aura fini son devoir à midi pourra aller jouer. 7. Je n'en parlerai à qui que ce soit. 8. Prêtez-moi un ouvrage quelconque. 9. Ne vous maltraitez pas l'un l'autre. 10. Ils sont toujours à se moquer l'un de l'autre. 11. Je n'aime ni l'un ni l'autre. 12. Quand vous êtes là, vous n'avez plus que quelques pas à faire pour arriver à la gare. 13. On ne peut rien faire de mieux. 14. Personne ne l'a vu.

<sup>1</sup> apporter, <sup>2</sup> s'occuper, <sup>3</sup> place (*ç*), <sup>4</sup> envers, <sup>5</sup> à la maison.

1. News have been brought<sup>1</sup> from Paris. 2. They say that the king is dead. 3. Every one must take care<sup>2</sup> of himself. 4. These two gentlemen have each a good situation.<sup>3</sup> 5. Of whom-

soever you speak, avoid calumny. 6. Whosoever is not ashamed of his faults deserves to be punished. 7. You are guilty of great injustice towards <sup>4</sup> each other. 8. Both suspect him, but neither will say why. 9. Mention this fact to nobody. 10. You should never speak evil of others. 11. We wish to see everything. 12. There is nothing to see. 13. There is nobody at home.<sup>5</sup> 14. This person is very good. 15. What is in that box? nothing.

## CHAPTER VI.

### SYNTAX OF THE VERB.

#### I. AGREEMENT OF THE VERB WITH ONE SIMPLE SUBJECT.

**381.** Every verb agrees with its subject in number and person: *les hommes sont mortels* (=men are mortal); *nous avons le livre* (=we have the book); *le courage est une vertu* (=courage is a virtue).

**382.** When the subject is a collective noun, that is to say, a noun which denotes an assemblage, a collection of objects of the same kind, the verb is put in the singular, if the *collective noun* is taken as the subject: *une nuée de sauterelles obscurcit l'air* (=a swarm of locusts obscured the air).

It is put in the plural, if the *complement* of the collective noun is taken as the subject: *une nuée de barbares désolèrent le pays* (=a swarm of barbarians desolated the country).

Practice will teach when to put the plural and when the singular. The invariable rules, which grammarians pretend to establish on this point, are more than doubtful. It is, in reality, with the most important word, that the verb agrees.

**383.** After *la plupart* (=most part), *le plus grand nombre* (=the greatest number), *une foule de* (=a crowd of), *une infinité de* (=a multitude of), etc., the verb always agrees with the complement of these collective locutions, either expressed or understood: *la plupart des gens ne font réflexion sur rien*

(=most people think of nothing); *la plupart écrivent ce nom de cette manière* (=most people write this name thus).

**334.** After the adverbs of quantity **beaucoup** (=much), **peu** (=little), **moins** (=less), **assez** (=enough), **trop** (=too much), etc., followed by a plural, the verb never agrees with the adverb, but always with the noun: *beaucoup de personnes ignorent la gravité de cette affaire* (=many people are ignorant of the gravity of that affair); *peu de gens supportent la contradiction* (=few people bear contradiction).

**335.** **Plus d'un** requires the verb in the singular, although it calls forth an idea of plurality: *plus d'un brave mord la poussière* (=more than one brave man bites the dust).

But when reciprocity is implied, the verb is put in the plural: *plus d'un avocat qui s'insultent au palais se serrent la main en sortant* (=many barristers, who insult each other in court, shake hands when they go out).

**336.** The verb **être** (=to be), preceded by **ce** (**c'est**, **c'était**, etc.), remains in the singular:—

- (a) When it is followed by one or more nouns, the first of which is singular: *c'est la pluie et le brouillard qui attristent l'Angleterre* (=it is the rain and the fog which make England gloomy); *ce sera le même théâtre et les mêmes décorations* (=it will be the same theatre and the same scenery).
- (b) If the pronoun **ce** recalls the idea of a singular substantive expressed before: *pour lui le bonheur, c'est de grandes richesses* (=as for him, he thinks that happiness consists in being very rich).
- (c) When **être** is followed by a pronoun of the first or second person: *c'est nous qui sommes les vrais coupables* (=it is we who are the real culprits); *c'est vous qui auriez dû le faire* (=it is you who should have done it).

- (d) When the noun coming after **être** is preceded by *de*: **c'est de vos parents que nous parlons** (=it is of your relations we speak).

**387:** But the verb **être** is put in the plural:—

- (a) When the first noun is in the plural: **ce sont les mêmes décorations, le même théâtre** (=it is the same scenery, the same theatre); **ce sont les arbres, le chemin, la maison que j'ai vus autrefois** (=it is the trees, the road, the house, I saw formerly); **ce sont les rois qui sont les chefs des nations** (=it is the kings who are the chiefs of the peoples).
- (b) When the pronoun **ce** recalls the idea of a plural noun expressed before: *il y a dix espèces de mots*: **ce sont l'article, le nom, etc.** (=there are ten kinds of words: they are the article, the noun, etc.).
- (c) When **être** is followed by pronouns of the third person plural: **ce sont eux qui m'ont accusé** (=it is they who have accused me).

**388.** The verb **être**, however, although followed by a pronoun of the third person plural, is put in the singular: (a) in order to avoid expressions disagreeable to the ear, such as *sont-ce, seront-ce, furent-ce*. Thus, we must say: **sera-ce vos amis qui vous tireront d'affaire?** (=will it be your friends who will get you out of difficulty?). \* (b) In the locution **si ce n'est** (=unless it be, if it is [or was] not): **si ce n'est eux, quels hommes eussent osé l'entreprendre?** (=what men, besides them, would have dared to undertake it?).

**389.** Impersonal verbs (or verbs employed as such) remain invariable, even when they are followed by a plural noun: **il tomba des milliers de projectiles sur le champ de bataille** (=thousand of projectiles fell on the battle-field); **il vint plusieurs personnes** (=several persons came).

\* *Et-ce que* may also be used in this case. See § 159.

See § 162 for the particular nature of the word *il*. Impersonal verbs may be used figuratively in the the third person plural: *les traits pleuvent* (=darts are showered); *les canons tonnent* (=the cannons roar).

### Exercise 54.

1. Ces enfants sont très-aimables. 2. Une foule de soldats se précipitèrent dans l'enceinte de l'assemblée. 3. La plupart pensent que la guerre sera bientôt déclarée. 4. Une multitude de saute-relles dévorèrent la récolte. 5. Beaucoup de maisons ont été détruites par l'incendie. 6. A Paris, au collège de France, un très-grand nombre de jeunes gens suivent gratuitement les cours des meilleurs professeurs. 7. Plus d'un philosophe s'y est trompé. 8. Peu de gens savent cette nouvelle, et je vous engage à ne pas l'ébruiter. 9. Ce furent les Phéniciens qui inventèrent l'écriture. 10. C'est des anciens habitants de cette région que je vous parle. 11. Il est venu plus de deux mille personnes à la cérémonie.

<sup>1</sup>enclin, <sup>2</sup>sortir, <sup>3</sup>impasse (*f.*), <sup>4</sup>assistance (*f.*), <sup>5</sup>échapper à.

1. These men are not so rich as we thought. 2. He and I are inclined<sup>1</sup> to do it. 3. Many *people* think this news is false. 4. A crowd of children came out<sup>2</sup> of the court.<sup>3</sup> 5. Half the passengers were so ill that they could not give any help.<sup>4</sup> 6. Few persons put into practice the saying: Time is money. 7. It is the barking of the dogs that I hear. 8. What are the chief towns of France? They are: Paris, Lyons, Marseilles, Bordeaux, Lille, Toulouse, Nantes, Rouen. 9. It is of them (*f. pl.*) they speak. 10. Was it the Phenicians or the Egyptians who invented writing? 11. The multitude of errors which escaped<sup>5</sup> his attention have been corrected since.

## II. AGREEMENT OF THE VERB WITH SEVERAL SUBJECTS.

**390.** A verb which has two or more subjects in the same person of the singular is put in the same person of the plural: *le chien et le chat recherchent le voisinage de l'homme* (=the dog and the cat seek the vicinity of men).

But if the subjects are of different persons, the verb follows the same rule as the pronoun (*see* § 319), that is to say, it is put in the first person plural if there is one *in* the sentence: *vous, lui et moi, nous sommes heureux*

(=you, he and I are happy); and if there is not a first person, it takes the second: *vous et lui, vous êtes coupables* (=you and he are guilty).

**391.** The verb is put in the singular after several subjects:—

1. When the subjects form either an enumeration or a kind of climax: *un regard, une parole, un serrement de main suffit pour relever le courage du malheureux* (=a look, a word, a grasp of the hand is enough to raise the courage of the unhappy man).

2. When the enumeration is summed up by a word, such as *chaacun, tout, rien*, etc.: *un souffle, une ombre, un rien, tout lui donnait la fièvre* (=a breath, a shadow, a trifle, everything gave him a fever).

**392.** When the subjects are connected together by *comme* (=as), *ainsi que* (=as well as), *de même que* (=as well as), *autant que* (=as much as), *plus que* (=more than), *moins que* (=less than), *aussi bien que* (=as well as), the verb agrees with the first only: *la vérité, comme la lumière, est inaltérable* (=truth, as well as light, is unalterable); *l'or autant que les honneurs séduit l'homme* (=gold seduces man as much as honours). In this last example, the verb of the secondary proposition is understood: *l'or séduit l'homme autant que les honneurs le séduisent*.

**393.** After *l'un et l'autre* (=both) the verb takes the plural: *l'un et l'autre sont morts* (=both are dead); *l'un et l'autre guerrier sont de haute taille* (=both warriors are of tall stature);

But *l'un ou l'autre* (=one or the other), *ni l'un ni l'autre* (=neither one nor the other) require the verb in the singular: *l'un ou l'autre a raison, mais lequel des deux?* (=either one or the other is right, but which of the two?); *ni l'un ni l'autre ne remportera la victoire* (=neither one nor the other will gain the victory).

**394.** The conjunctions **ou** and **ni** (=or and nor) also lead to some violations of the rules on the agreement of verbs. **Ni** and **ou** sometimes take the verb in the plural: **ni l'or ni la grandeur ne nous rendent heureux** (=neither gold nor greatness make us happy); **le courage ou le bonheur ont pu faire des héros** (=courage or happiness have been able to make heroes); and sometimes they take the verb in the singular: **ni Jean ni Pierre n'a voulu travailler** (=neither John nor Peter would work); **la peur, ou la misère lui a fait commettre une lâcheté** (=fear or misery made him commit a cowardly act).

Habit will teach how to distinguish between these shades of difference. As a general rule, when **ou, ni** are distributive, the verb is in the singular; when they are collective, the verb is put in the plural.

**395.** When the verb has for its subject the relative pronoun **qui** (=who), it agrees in number and person with that pronoun which agrees itself with its antecedent: *c'est moi qui vous le dis, qui suis votre tuteur* (=it is I who tell you this, I who am your guardian).

### Exercise 55.

1. Les convenances, son intérêt, l'honneur l'exige. 2. Prières, menaces, coups, rien ne peut le corriger. 3. Camille ainsi que Maxime est très-paresseux. 4. La vérité comme la conscience est inaltérable. 5. C'est vous qui avez jeté des pierres dans mon jardin. 6. L'un et l'autre sont parfaitement oubliés. 7. Mon cousin ou son frère aura sa place. 8. Votre sœur ou ma tante viendront ce soir. 9. Le prince avec ses compagnons se cacha dans une caverne. 10. J'espère que ni vous ni lui ne parlerez. 11. Ni l'un ni l'autre n'étaient musiciens. 12. Un seul mot, un soupir, un coup d'œil nous trahit.

<sup>1</sup> Sarrasins, <sup>2</sup> Damiette, <sup>3</sup> réussir à.

1. He and I, we shall go into the country. 2. Fear or want cause all his movements. 3. Our peril or safety is not a thing which interests you. 4. The elephant, like the castor, likes



society. 5. It is a satire, not a useful book, that he has written. 6. Neither of them will come. 7. Neither you nor I are wrong. 8. It was Themistocles and Miltiades who vanquished the Persians. 9. I am Louis, king of France, who repulsed the Saracens<sup>1</sup> at Damietta.<sup>2</sup> 10. Entreaties, threats, harsh measures, nothing succeeded in<sup>3</sup> making him speak. 11. His courage, his perseverance, his endurance astonishes me.

### III. COMPLEMENT OF THE VERB.

**396.** Two or more verbs can have a common complement, but only when these verbs do not require complements of a different nature: *l'enfant doit chérir et respecter ses parents* (=the child ought to love and respect his parents); in this sentence, *parents* may serve as a complement to both verbs *chérir* and *respecter*, because we say *chérir quelqu'un*, *respecter quelqu'un* (=to love a person, to respect a person); but with a verb governing an indirect complement like *obéir* (=to obey), for instance, we could not use *parents* as a common complement; we could not say, for example: *l'enfant doit obéir et respecter ses parents* (=the child ought to obey and respect his parents); it is then necessary to express both complements: *l'enfant doit respecter ses parents et leur obéir*.

**397.** When a verb has two or more complements, these complements ought to be of the same nature; we might say correctly: *il aime à chanter et à dessiner* (=he likes to sing and to draw), or *il aime le chant et le dessin* (=he likes singing and drawing), but we cannot say: *il aime le chant et à dessiner* (=he likes singing and to draw).

**398.** A verb cannot have two indirect complements, when the latter is a mere repetition of the former; thus, we must not say: *c'est à vous à qui je parle*, *c'est de vous dont il s'agit*, but *c'est à vous que je parle* (=it is to you I am speaking), *c'est vous dont il s'agit* (=it is you who are in question); or *c'est vous à qui je parle*, *c'est de vous qu'il s'agit*.

The same remark applies to the adverb *où*; we must not say: *c'est ici où il demeure*, *c'est là où je vais*, but *c'est ici qu'il demeure* (=it is here that he lives), *c'est là que je vais* (=it is there that I am going).

**399.** Some verbs are both transitive and intransitive; such are: *aider* (=to help), *présider* (=to preside), *satisfaire* (=to satisfy), *suppléer* (=to supply or fill up). *Aider quelqu'un* and *aider à quelqu'un* both mean to help a person; *présider une séance* (=to take the chair at a meeting), *présider à une solennité* (=to have the management of a solemnity); *satisfaire* takes *à* before a noun of thing: *j'ai satisfait à mes engagements* (=I have met my liabilities), but *j'ai satisfait mon maître* (=I have satisfied my master); *suppléer quelqu'un* (=to supply a person's place), *suppléer quelque chose* (=to supply a deficiency in some article which is not complete), *suppléer à quelque chose* (=to make up for one thing by another).

**400.** The passive verbs govern their complement with the preposition **de** or **par**; **de** must be used when the action expressed results from an operation of the soul: *il est redouté de tout le monde* (=he is dreaded by everybody); **par** should be used if the action expressed is bodily or mental: *il a été tué par un soldat* (=he has been killed by a soldier); *il a été instruit par son frère aîné* (=he has been taught by his eldest brother).

**401.** **Par**, however, is sometimes used to avoid the repetition of **de**: *la proposition a été approuvée d'une commune voir par tous les membres présents* (=the proposal was accepted unanimously by all the members present).

**402.** NOTICE that any preposition used in English in the sense of *in order to* is generally expressed in French by the preposition **pour**: *il est venu pour faire votre portrait* (=he came to make your portrait). Sometimes the preposition is not expressed: *allez le voir* (=go and see him), *venez me chercher* (=come and fetch me).

**403.** The following verbs take no preposition before their direct object:—

<i>aimer mieux</i> (=to like better)	<i>défendre</i> * † (=to forbid)
<i>apercevoir</i> (=to perceive)	<i>demander</i> * † (=to ask for)
<i>approuver</i> (=to approve)	<i>désirer</i> (=to desire)
<i>assurer</i> * (=to assure)	<i>payer</i> * (=to pay for)
<i>attendre</i> † (=to wait, to expect)	<i>prier</i> (=to beg of)
<i>chercher</i> † (=to look for, to seek)	<i>regarder</i> (=to look on)
<i>compter</i> (=to count, to reckon)	<i>vouloir</i> (=to be willing, to wish).
<i>craindre</i> † (=to fear)	

**404.** The following verbs, which take no preposition in English, must be followed by **à** in French:—

<i>attenter à</i> (=to attempt)	<i>pardonner à</i> * (=to pardon)
<i>convenir à</i> (=to suit)	<i>permettre à</i> † (=to allow)
<i>défendre à</i> † (=to forbid)	<i>plaire à</i> (=to please)
<i>dire à</i> † (=to tell, to say)	<i>promettre à</i> † (=to promise)
<i>se fier à</i> (=to trust)	<i>répondre à</i> (=to answer)
<i>obéir à</i> (=to obey)	<i>succéder à</i> (=to succeed).

**405.** The following verbs are followed by **de** in French:—

<i>abuser de</i>	(=to abuse)
<i>approcher de</i>	(=to approach)
<i>avoir garde de</i>	(=to take care not to, to mind lest)
<i>changer de</i>	(=to change)
<i>convenir de</i>	(=to agree to)
<i>douter de</i>	(=to doubt)
<i>jouir de</i>	(=to enjoy)
<i>manquer de</i>	(=to want)
<i>se moquer de</i>	(=to laugh at)
<i>se servir de</i>	(=to use)
<i>se souvenir de</i>	(=to remember)
<i>user de</i>	(=to use).

### Exercise 56.

1. Elle le regrette et s'en repent. 2. Il obéit à son général et le respecte beaucoup. 3. Est-ce à moi que vous parlez? 4. C'est sur le mont Sinaï que Dieu donna sa loi à Moïse. 5. C'est à lui

* Assurer une chose à quelqu'un	(=to assure some one of a thing)
<i>défendre</i> " "	(=to forbid some one to do a thing)
<i>demander</i> " "	(=to ask some one for a thing)
<i>payer</i> " "	(=to pay some one for a thing)
<i>pardonner</i> " "	(=to pardon some one for a thing).

† Attendre, craindre, défendre, demander, dire, permettre, promettre take the preposition **de** before an infinitive.

‡ Chercher requires the preposition **à** before an infinitive.

que j'écris. 6. M. Bourdet a présidé à la distribution des prix. 7. J'ai satisfait tout le monde. 8. Il touchait au port quand il a fait naufrage. 9. Nous avons loué une salle pour recevoir nos amis ce soir-là. 10. Il a été blessé de votre manière de parler. 11. Son père a été grièvement blessé par la chute d'une poutre.

<sup>1</sup> aller à cheval, <sup>2</sup> aimer, <sup>3</sup> coup de pistolet, <sup>4</sup> malle (*f.*)

1. Charles went out to look for his brother. 2. He assured my father that the letter had been sent. 3. This house does not suit your uncle. 4. You ought not to trust him. 5. Can you agree about the price? 6. He asked his father for the newspaper. 7. I don't think he ever assured any one of a thing of which he was not certain. 8. The letter was written by James. 9. He rode<sup>1</sup> to and returned from Kingston in two hours and a-half. 10. He is very fond of<sup>2</sup> [to] walking and riding. 11. The gamekeeper was wounded by a pistol-shot<sup>3</sup> by the gardener. 12. I had this trunk<sup>4</sup> made to go to America.

#### IV. USE OF THE AUXILIARY VERBS.

**406.** We have seen (§ 153) that some neuter verbs take **avoir** and others **être** in their compound tenses. The former is used to mark the *action*: *il a passé en Australie au mois de mai* (=he went to Australia in the month of May). The auxiliary **être** expresses a *state*; *il est passé en Australie depuis vingt ans* (=he has been in Australia these twenty years); we here express the state of his being a resident in Australia.

**407.** When these verbs can be used in an *active* sense they naturally take the verb **avoir**: *il a monté l'escalier* (=he has gone upstairs); *nous avons descendu nos livres* (=we have taken down our books); *il a passé la rivière* (=he has crossed the river).

**408.** A few neuter verbs change their auxiliary according to the difference of meaning; thus *convenir*, used instead of *plaire* (=to please), takes **avoir**: *cet homme ne m'a pas convenu* (=that man has not pleased me); in the sense of *to make an agreement* it takes **être**: *nous sommes convenus d'agir ainsi* (=we have agreed to act thus).

The verbs *demeurer* (= to remain), *expirer* (= to expire), *rester* (= to stay), the sense of which is susceptible of variation, follow the same rule.

**409.** The following verbs only take the auxiliary **avoir** :—

<i>courir</i>	(= to run)	<i>périr</i>	(= to perish)
<i>dormir</i>	(= to sleep)	<i>succomber</i>	(= to succumb)
<i>languir</i>	(= to languish)	<i>vivre</i>	(= to live)
<i>marcher</i>	(= to walk)	<i>survivre</i>	(= to outlive)
<i>paraître</i>	(= to appear)	<i>triumpher</i>	(= to triumph)

**410.** Twelve neuter verbs, of which a list is given in § 153, take the auxiliary **être** only.

**411.** The English make frequent use of auxiliaries. and such words as *do*, *did*, *shall*, *will*, etc., (1) in answers, (2) to question the truth of a statement, (3) to express surprise: (a) *Has Mr. Smith arrived? Yes, he has*; (b) *Is it Spanish he is reading? Yes, it is*; (c) *Will your brother come to-day? No, he will not*; (d) *He has bought a country house. Has he?*

The French language is less elliptical, and requires the sentence to be complete. The above sentences would be translated thus: (a) *Mr. Smith est-il arrivé? Oui, il est arrivé*; (b) *Est-ce de l'espagnol qu'il lit? Oui, c'en est*; (c) *Votre frère viendra-t-il aujourd'hui? Non, il ne viendra pas*; (d) *Il a acheté une maison de campagne. Vraiment! or en vérité*, or any other exclamation suited to the occasion.

NOTICE, therefore, that the auxiliary is not used alone, but that the principal verb and a noun or pronoun must be expressed; and that in exclamative sentences some suitable exclamation must be used in the shape of an adverb, a verb, or an interjection. (See § 139, and the rules on the position of pronouns.)

#### QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. State the rule for the agreement of the verb with its subject.</li> <li>2. How is the rule affected when the subject is a collective noun?</li> <li>3. In what number is the verb pnt after <i>la plupart</i>?—<i>le plus grand nombre</i>, etc.</li> </ol> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>4. What number does the verb take after <i>beaucoup</i> followed by a noun in the plural?—after <i>plus d'un</i>?</li> <li>5. When does the verb <i>être</i>, preceded by <i>ce</i>, take the singular?—When does it take the plural?</li> </ol> |
|---|---|

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <p>6. State the exception to the rule.</p> <p>7. When <i>impersonal</i> verbs are followed by a plural noun, what number do they take?</p> <p>8. When is the verb, following several subjects, put in the singular?</p> <p>9. In what number should the verb be written after two subjects connected by <i>ni</i>?—by <i>ou</i>?</p> <p>10. When is the verb put in the singular after <i>ou</i> and <i>ni</i>?</p> <p>11. In what number is the verb written after <i>l'un et l'autre</i>?</p> <p>12. State the rule which affects the</p> | <p>verb having as its subject the pronoun <i>qui</i>.</p> <p>13. Can a verb have two complements?</p> <p>14. Correct the fault in the expression <i>c'est à vous à qui je parle</i>.</p> <p>15. What auxiliary do neuter verbs take when they express (a) <i>action</i>, (b) <i>state</i>?</p> <p>16. Give a few neuter verbs conjugated (a) with <i>être</i>, (b) with <i>avoir</i>, (c) with either.</p> <p>17. Explain how certain verbs alter their meaning, according to the auxiliary verb with which they are conjugated.</p> |
|---|--|

### Exercise 57.

1. Est-ce à moi que vous parlez? Oui, c'est à vous. 2. J'ai passé quatre mois à Paris. 3. Mon frère est passé en Russie depuis plusieurs années. 4. Avez-vous descendu ma boîte à ouvrage? Oui, je l'ai descendue. 5. Cette maison lui a convenu. 6. Nous sommes convenus d'aller ensemble. 7. Elle a survécu à toute sa famille. 8. Il est tombé du haut de la maison. 9. Que sont devenus vos cousins? 10. Ils sont parvenus aux postes qu'ils cherchaient à obtenir. 11. Est-ce un roman que vous lisez? Oui, c'en est un. 12. Jacques est arrivé hier d'Afrique. Vraiment! déjà!

<sup>1</sup>revenir, <sup>2</sup>to bring upstairs = monter, <sup>3</sup>descendre, <sup>4</sup>de.

1. You will write to your uncle, will you? Yes, I will. 2. Your brother has not yet returned<sup>1</sup> from America. 3. We agreed to meet at the station at twelve o'clock. 4. James and Henry have brought the table and the chairs upstairs.<sup>2</sup> 5. These books have not yet been taken down.<sup>3</sup> 6. The lease has expired yesterday. 7. He stayed three years in that town. 8. Charles triumphed over<sup>4</sup> all his enemies. 9. Is that your carriage? Yes, it is. 10. Is it an Italian book you are reading? Yes, it is. 11. Do you give these boys translations to do? No, I do not. 12. Should you like to stay there? Yes, indeed, I should. 13. The lease is expired since yesterday.

## CHAPTER VII.

## SYNTAX OF THE PARTICIPLES.

## SECTION I.

## AGREEMENT OF THE PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

412. The present participle is always invariable: *cette personne obligant tous les malheureux est vraiment charitable* (=that person being kind to all the unfortunate is really charitable); *l'orage, nous effrayant tous, redoubla* (=the storm, frightening us all, redoubled in violence).

413. Taken as an adjective, the present participle is called a *verbal adjective*, and, like all other adjectives, follows the rules of agreement. The verbal adjective expresses a *state*: *l'obscurité est effrayante* (=the darkness is alarming); while the present participle expresses an *action*: *l'orage, en effrayant les animaux, dispersa tout le troupeau* (=the storm, in frightening the animals, dispersed the whole flock); we must, therefore, whilst examining a sentence, ascertain whether a *state* or an *action* is expressed.

414. There is action, and, consequently, no agreement:—

1. When the participle *has a direct complement*: *on n'entend plus les marteaux frappant l'enclume* (=the hammers are no longer heard striking the anvil);

2. When the participle is *preceded by the preposition en*: *la mer s'avance en mugissant* (=the sea advances, roaring);

3. When the participle is *followed by an adverb*: *une fille obéissant bien* (=a girl obeying faithfully), *des esprits agissant toujours* (=minds always busy).

**415.** *State is expressed, and, therefore, agreement takes place:—*

1. When the verbal adjective *is accompanied by the verb être*: *cette fleur est charmante* (=this flower is charming);

2. When the verbal adjective is *preceded by an adverb*: *une fille bien obéissante* (=a very obedient girl).

When the form in *-ant* is followed by an indirect or circumstantial complement, the sense alone can show whether there should be agreement or not. Thus we shall write: *voyez-vous ces débris flottant vers la côte?* (=do you see those fragments drifting towards the shore?); but *Calypso vit des cordages flottants sur la côte* (=Calypso saw on the shore floating cables). In the former example, *flottant* is invariable, because it is a participle and implies action; in the latter, *flottants* agrees with the noun, because it is an adjective, and shows the state of the cables which had long been left to the mercy of the waves.

<sup>637</sup> The present participle, so often used in English, must be translated into French by the indicative: *je la vois qui parle avec votre sœur* (= I see her speaking with your sister).

**416.** We have seen (§ 44) that the French language makes up fresh nouns with the help of the present participle: from *croyant*, *tranchant*, *débitant* the present participles of *croire* (=to believe), *trancher* (=to cut), *débiter* (=to retail), it forms *un croyant* (=a believer), *le tranchant* (=the edge [of a knife]), *un débitant* (=a retailer). All these words naturally follow the general rule for the formation of the plural of substantives: *des croyants*, *des tranchants*, *des débitants*.

We must not confound the present participles, such as *négligeant* (=neglecting), *adhérant* (=adhering), *différant* (=differing), *extravagant* (=saying or doing odd things), with the adjectives *négligent* (=negligent), *adhérent* (=adherent), *différent* (=different), *extravagant* (=extravagant). The former are regularly derived from the French verbs *négliger*, *adhérer*, *différer*, *extravaguer*; the latter are real adjectives taken directly from the Latin. These adjectives cannot therefore, in any case, be called the verbal adjectives of *négliger*, *adhérer*, etc.



The following comparative list of present participles and verbal adjectives or nouns will be found useful:—

PRESENT PARTICIPLES.		ADJECTIVES.	
<i>Adhérent</i>	(= adhering)	<i>Adhérent</i>	(= adherent)
<i>affluent</i>	(= abounding)	<i>affluent</i>	(= confluent)
<i>différent</i>	(= differing)	<i>différent</i>	(= different)
<i>excellant</i>	(= excelling)	<i>excellent</i>	(= excellent)
<i>expédiant</i>	(= dispatching)	<i>expédient</i>	(= expedient)
<i>extravagant</i>	(= rambling)	<i>extravagant</i>	(= extravagant)
<i>fabriqueant</i>	(= manufacturing)	<i>fabricant</i>	(= manufacturer)
<i>fatigant</i>	(= fatiguing)	<i>fatigant</i>	(= tiresome)
<i>intriquant</i>	(= plotting)	<i>intriquant</i>	(= intriguing)
<i>négligeant</i>	(= neglecting)	<i>négligent</i>	(= negligent)
<i>précédant</i>	(= preceding)	<i>précédent</i>	(= previous)
<i>présidant</i>	(= presiding)	<i>président</i>	(= president)
<i>résidant</i>	(= residing)	<i>résident</i>	(= resident)
<i>violant</i>	(= violating)	<i>violent</i>	(= violent)

QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

- |  |                                      |   |
|--|--------------------------------------|---|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. What is a <i>participle</i>?</li> <li>2. How is the participle connected with the adjective?—with the verb?</li> <li>3. How many kinds of participles are there?</li> <li>4. Define a <i>verbal adjective</i>.</li> <li>5. What is the difference between a</li> </ol> | <p style="text-align: center;"> </p> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>verbal adjective and a present participle?</li> <li>6. When is an <i>action</i> expressed?</li> <li>7. When is a <i>state</i> expressed?</li> <li>8. What rule does the present participle follow when used as a substantive?</li> <li>9. Remark on the spelling of certain verbal adjectives or nouns.</li> </ol> |
|--|--------------------------------------|---|

Exercise 58.

1. Votre sœur est une charmante personne. 2. Les soldats d'Alexandre oubliant leur patrie ne songeaient qu'au butin. 3. Une dame obligeant ses amis. 4. Une preuve convainquante. 5. Les ennemis surprenant nos troupes n'eurent pas de peine à les vaincre. 6. Les émigrants sont partis de France sous Louis XVI. 7. Les fabricants ont décidé d'élever leurs prix. 8. En expédiant demain, les marchandises arriveront lundi. 9. Cet homme est des plus négligents.

<sup>1</sup> bêler, <sup>2</sup> convaincre, <sup>3</sup> amener, <sup>4</sup> s'efforcer, <sup>5</sup> attendrir, <sup>6</sup> passant, <sup>7</sup> soieries (*s.*), <sup>8</sup> gâter.

1. This delicious music, charming my senses, produces the desired effect. 2. My sister is more obliging than yours. 3. The effects of electricity are surprising. 4. We hear the bleating<sup>1</sup> sheep. 5. Your arguments, convincing<sup>2</sup> the judges, brought about<sup>3</sup> the prisoner's acquittal. 6. Beggars always endeavour<sup>4</sup> to work on the feelings of<sup>5</sup> the passers-by.<sup>6</sup> 7. It is in making silk

goods<sup>7</sup> that the Lyons manufacturers become rich. 8. This is an excellent remedy. 9. The gummed paper adhering to the drawing had entirely spoiled<sup>8</sup> it. 10. He has written to his adherents.

## SECTION II.

### AGREEMENT OF THE PAST PARTICIPLE.

#### 1. General Principles.

§17. When the past participle is joined to the substantive without the help of an auxiliary verb it is treated as an adjective—that is to say, it always agrees with the noun to which it refers in gender and number: *des mérites récompensés* (=merits rewarded), *des bonheurs passés* (=happiness past), *des lettres reçues* (=letters received).

§18. When the past participle is preceded by the auxiliary verb **être** (=to be), it always agrees with the subject in gender and number: **il est venu** (=he is come), **elle est venue** (=she is come), **elles sont venues** (=they are come).

§19. When the past participle is preceded by the auxiliary verb **avoir** (=to have), and is not accompanied by any complement, it is always invariable: **il a chanté** (=he has sung), **elle a chanté** (=she has sung), **ils ont chanté** or **elles ont chanté** (=they have sung).

#### 2. The Past Participle used with the auxiliary verb **être** (=to be).

§20. We have said that the past participle joined to the auxiliary verb **être** (=to be) always agrees with the subject: **la ville est ouverte** (=the town is open), **le port est fermé** (=the port is shut), **ces fleurs sont épanouies** (=these flowers are full-blown).

§21. Consequently, **passive verbs**, being all conjugated with the auxiliary verb **être**, always have their past participle agreeing with the subject: **le roi est aimé** (=the king is loved), **la reine est aimée** (=the queen is loved), **les princes sont aimés** (=the princes are loved).

**422.** A few **neuter verbs** are conjugated with **être** (see § 153) and follow the same rule, such as *aller* (=to go), *venir* (=to come), *partir* (=to set out), *arriver* (=to arrive); conformably with the rule given in § 418, their past participle always agrees with the subject: **il est venu, elle est venue, ils sont venus, elles sont venues** (=he, she, they are come).

**423.** In the case of **impersonal verbs** conjugated with **être**, the participle agrees with the subject *il* (§ 420), and this pronoun being always invariable, it follows that the past participle never changes in verbs of this kind: **il est survenu un orage** (=a storm came on), **il est arrivé des malheurs** (=misfortunes happened).

For **reflexive verbs** see §§ 431-435.

**424.** We have seen (§ 205) that the French language creates new prepositions with the help of certain past participles, such as *excepté* (=except), *attendu* (=considering), *passé* (=past), etc., for instance, *excepté sa mère* (=except his mother), *attendu l'heure* (=considering the hour), *passé l'époque* (=the epoch being past), etc. In these cases the words *excepté*, *attendu*, etc., are always placed *before* the noun; but the same words are participles and agree with the noun when they are put *after* it: *sa mère exceptée, l'heure attendue, l'époque passée*.

### 3. The Past Participle used with the auxiliary **avoir** (=to have).

**425.** While the past participle with **être** depends upon the subject and agrees with it, the past participle united to **avoir** is always independent of the subject, and only agrees with the complement: **j'ai vu le roi, ils ont vu le roi** (=I have seen the king, they have seen the king), **le roi que j'ai vu, les rois que j'ai vus** (=the king whom I have seen, the kings whom I have seen).

**426.** The past participle with **avoir** varies when it is preceded by its direct complement, and it then agrees

with that complement: *les chevaux que j'ai vus* (=the horses that I have seen); *les fleurs que j'ai coupées* (=the flowers that I have cut);

But it always remains invariable when the complement which precedes it is indirect: *de tous ces malheurs j'ai maintes fois gémi* (=I have oftentimes sighed over all these misfortunes); or when the direct complement follows the participle instead of preceding it: *j'ai vu la rose, j'ai vu des roses* (=I have seen the rose, I have seen some roses).

**427. Neuter verbs, never having a direct complement, the past participle of these verbs, conjugated with avoir, is always invariable:** *cette mauvaise action nous a nui* (=that bad action has proved injurious to us); *les mères ont gémi de tous ces malheurs* (=the mothers have groaned over all those misfortunes).

**428.** We have seen (§ 399) that a few verbs are employed sometimes as active, sometimes as neuter verbs. In the former case they follow the rule of the past participle conjugated with *avoir*: *cet homme nous a fidèlement servi* (=this man has served us faithfully, *i.e.*, *a servi nous*).

But when they are employed as neuter verbs, they have no direct complement, and their participle remains invariable: *ces livres nous ont beaucoup servi* (=these books have been of much use to us, *i.e.*, *ont servi à nous*).

#### **429. REMARKS.**

1. The participles *coûté, valu* are invariable when employed in their proper sense—that is to say, when they express the idea of price, of value: *je regrette les dix mille francs que cette maison m'a coûté, parce qu'elle ne les a jamais valu* (=I regret the ten thousand francs which that house has cost me, because it was never worth so much).

These participles vary when employed in a figurative sense—that is to say, with the meaning of *to cause, to procure*: *n'oubliez jamais les peines que vous avez coûtées à votre mère* (=never forget the pangs you have cost your mother); *voilà les chagrins que vous a valu votre paresse* (=such are the sorrows which your idleness has brought upon you).

2. The past participle of the verbs **vivre** (=to live), **dormir** (=to sleep), **régner** (=to reign), is **always invariable**: *les jours qu'on a vécu dans l'oisiveté sont perdus* (=the days spent in idleness are lost); *les heures qu'elle a dormi l'ont reposée* (=the hours she has slept have rested her); just as if the sentences had stood: *pendant lesquels on a vécu...*, *pendant lesquelles elle a reposé...*

**430. Impersonal verbs**, conjugated with *avoir*, having no direct complement, their past participle is always necessarily invariable: *il a neigé* (=it has snowed), *il a plu* (=it has rained). By analogy, this invariableness has been extended to the participle of active verbs employed as impersonal verbs: *les grandes chaleurs qu'il a fait* (=the great heat there has been), although these verbs have a direct complement, exactly like active verbs properly so called.

**431. Reflexive verbs**, as we have seen in § 156, can either be *verbs reflexive by nature* (*s'écrouler*=to fall down), or *active verbs* (*laver*=to wash), or *neuter verbs* (*nuire*=to injure), employed reflexively (*se laver*=to wash one's self, *se nuire*=to injure one's self). According to these three cases, the rule for the syntax of the past participle differs.

**432.** In the case of **verbs reflexive by nature**, like *s'écrouler* (=to fall down), *s'évanouir* (=to faint), *se cabrer* (=to rear), etc., the past participle is always variable, and agrees with the pronoun *se*, which represents the subject: *la jument s'est cabrée* (=the mare has reared); *la malade s'est évanouie* (=the invalid lady has fainted); *la maison s'est écroulée* (=the house has fallen down).

✎ In these verbs the auxiliary *être* is used instead of *avoir*; that is to say: *la jument a cabré elle*, *la malade a évanoui elle*. **Se** is then a direct object, and, as it precedes the participle, there must be agreement. (See § 426.)

REMARKS.—1. The verb **s'arroger** (=to arrogate to one's self) is the only verb reflexive by nature which does not take the preceding pronoun as its direct complement. We must accordingly write: *elles se sont arrogé certains droits qu'elles n'avaient pas* (=they have arrogated to themselves certain rights to which they

had no claim). *Se* here stands for *à soi*, and is the indirect complement. But we shall write: *elles n'avaient pas les droits qu'elles se sont arrogés* (=they had not the rights which they have arrogated to themselves), because *arrogés* agrees with *que*, standing for *droits*, direct complement, and preceding the verb.

2. Under the category of verbs *reflexive by nature* certain verbs are placed, such as *apercevoir* (=to perceive), *attaquer* (=to attack), *attendre* (=to wait), *douter* (=to doubt), *plaindre* (=to pity), *prévaloir* (=to prevail), *se saisir* (=to seize), *taire* (=to keep secret), etc., the meaning of which changes when they become reflexive: *elles se sont prévalués de leur faiblesse* (=they have taken advantage of their weakness); *elles se sont tués* (=they have remained silent).

**433.** For the reason given in § 432, the past participle of **active verbs employed as reflexive** always agree: *je me suis lavée* (=I washed myself); *ils se sont lavés* (=they have washed themselves), that is to say: *ils ont lavé eux*; and the past participle of **neuter verbs used as reflexive** is always invariable, because these verbs cannot have a direct complement: *elles se sont nui*, i.e., *elles ont nui à elles* (=they have injured themselves); *bien des rois se sont succédé sur le trône* (=many kings have occupied the throne in succession); *elles se sont ri de nos menaces* (=they have scorned our threats); *ils se sont plu à mal faire* (=they have delighted in doing evil).

**434.** When the direct complement follows, the past participle of the reflexive verb naturally remains invariable: *elle s'est brûlé le doigt* (=she has burnt her finger); **se** is here an indirect complement (*elle a brûlé le doigt à elle*). We must not confound this case with the former one, where we have seen that the past participle agrees, as in *elle s'est brûlée au doigt*—that is to say, *elle a brûlé elle au doigt*—**se** here being a direct complement.

#### 4. Additional Remarks on the Agreement of the Participles.

**435.** When followed by an infinitive, the past participle agrees with the preceding noun or pronoun, provided that noun or pronoun is its direct complement:

*ces femmes chantent bien ; je les ai entendues chanter* (=those women sing well ; I have heard them sing). Here, *entendues* agrees with the pronoun *les*, standing for *femmes* : *j'ai entendu qui ?* (=I have heard whom ?) *ces femmes chanter* (=those women singing).

But the past participle remains invariable when it has the infinitive for its direct complement : *ces romances sont bien connues ; je les ai entendu chanter à Paris* (=those ballads are well known ; I have heard them sung in Paris). In this case, the past participle remains unchanged, as it is followed by its direct complement (see § 426), the infinitive *chanter*, which, moreover, is naturally invariable : \* *j'ai entendu quoi ?* (=I have heard what ?) *chanter ces ballades* (=those ballads sung in Paris).

NOTE that when the past participle agrees, the infinitive is expressed in English by the present participle, and when the past participle does not agree, the infinitive is translated by the English past participle.

The past participle **fait**, followed by an infinitive, is always invariable : *les maisons qu'il a fait construire* (=the houses which he has had built). The participles **dû**, **pu**, **voulu** are invariable when we can supply a verb after them : *je lui ai rendu tous les services que j'ai pu et que j'ai dû* ([*lui rendre* is understood] =I have rendered him all the services which I could, and which it was my duty to render him) ; *je lui ai lu tous les livres qu'il a voulu* ([*que je lui lusse* is understood] =I have read to him all the books he wished that I should read [to him]). But we must say : *j'ai payé les sommes que j'ai dues* (=I have paid the sums I owed) ; because the past participle *dues* agrees with its direct object *que*, standing for the substantive feminine plural *sommes*.

**436.** When **le**, signifying *cela* (=this, that), precedes the past participle, this latter word is always invariable : *sa tranquillité n'est pas aussi assurée qu'il l'aurait désiré*, (=his tranquillity is not so secure as he would have wished), i.e., *il aurait désiré cela, à savoir, que sa tranquillité fût définitivement assurée* (=he would have

\* Remember that the infinitive is always in the masculine gender, when used as a substantive : **le boire et le manger** (=eating and drinking).

wished that, namely, that his tranquility would have been quite secure).

We have seen (§ 320) that *le* (in the sense of *cela*) is a vestige of the Latin neuter, and that for this reason the invariableness of the participle is easily explained.

**437.** The past participle placed between **que**, relative, and **que**, conjunction, is invariable: *les livres que j'avais présumé que vous liriez* (= the books which I thought you would read); here the relative *que* is the direct complement, not of the past participle, but of the following proposition. Locutions of this kind should be avoided.

**438.** The past participle preceded by **en** is invariable: *tout le monde m'a offert des services, mais personne ne m'en a rendu* (= everyone has offered me services, but no one has rendered me any).

But the agreement takes place when the pronoun **en** is preceded by an adverb of quantity: *plus il a eu de livres, plus il en a lus* (= the more books he has had, the more he has read, *i.e.* *plus de livres il a lus*).

However, there is no agreement if the adverb follows the pronoun **en** instead of preceding it: *j'en ai beaucoup vu* (= I have seen many of them); *j'en ai tant visité* (= I have visited so many of them).

**439.** The past participle preceded by the locution **le peu** varies according to the meaning of that locution.

When **le peu** signifies a small quantity, the participle agrees with the noun: *le peu de nourriture qu'il a prise l'a sauvé* (= the little nourishment he has taken has saved him, *i.e.* the amount of nourishment, however small, has sufficed to save him).

When **le peu** means insufficiency, want, lack, the participle is invariable: *c'est le peu de nourriture qu'il a pris qui a causé sa mort* (= it is the insufficient amount of food he has taken which has caused his death).



**5. Summary.**

**440.** To sum up, the past participle, joined to the auxiliary **être** (=to be), agrees with the subject;

Joined to the auxiliary **avoir** (=to have), it agrees with the direct complement if the complement precedes it, and remains invariable if the direct complement follows it, or if there is no complement at all.

**441.** We have seen successively the application of this general rule to the past participles of *active verbs* (§ 419), *passive* (§ 421), *neuter with être* (§ 422), *impersonal with être* (§ 423), *neuter with avoir* (§ 427), *impersonal with avoir* (§ 430), *reflexive by nature* (§ 432), *reflexive by accident*, either *neuter* (§ 433) or *active* (§ 433); finally, to participles followed by an *infinitive* (§ 435), or accompanied by certain locutions (§§ 436—439).

QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. State the rule of the past participle used as an adjective.</li> <li>2. Explain the rules applicable to the past participle used with (a) <i>avoir</i>, (b) <i>être</i>.</li> <li>3. What is the rule for the past participle of (a) <i>passive verbs</i>, (b) <i>neuter verbs</i>, (c) <i>impersonal verbs</i>?</li> <li>4. Remark on <i>attendu, passé, supposé</i>.</li> <li>5. When does the past participle accompanied by <i>avoir</i> agree?</li> <li>6. When does it remain unchanged?</li> <li>7. State the rule for the <i>neuter</i> past participle accompanied by <i>avoir</i>.</li> <li>8. State the rule which affects <i>couté, valu, écu, dormi</i>, etc.</li> <li>9. What is the rule for the past participle of <i>impersonal verbs</i> conjugated with <i>avoir</i>?</li> </ol> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>10. How do verbs <i>reflexive by nature</i> agree?</li> <li>11. Remark on <i>s'arroger, s'apercevoir, s'attaquer</i>.</li> <li>12. State the rule which affects (1) <i>active verbs</i> used <i>reflexively</i>; (2) <i>neuter verbs</i> used in the same manner.</li> <li>13. Explain the rule for the past participle followed by an infinitive.</li> <li>14. What is the rule for <i>dû, pu, voulu</i>?</li> <li>15. What happens when the participle is (1) placed between two <i>que's</i>, (2) preceded by <i>en</i>, (3) preceded by <i>le</i>?</li> <li>16. When does the participle agree with <i>le peu</i>? When does it agree with the complement of <i>le peu</i>?</li> </ol> |
|---|---|

**Exercise 59.**

1. Que de remparts détruits! Que de villes forcées! 2. Il a quatre maisons, y compris sa maison de campagne. 3. Vous trouverez mes trois lettres ci-incluses. 4. Dieu nous a distingués des autres animaux, surtout par le don de la parole. 5. Didon a fondé sur la côte d'Afrique la superbe ville de Carthage. 6. Les jours qu'il a conversé avec ses enfants. 7. Bossuet a créé une

langue que lui seul a parlée. 8. Elles s'en sont allées sans me voir. 9. Saturne eut trois fils qui se sont partagé le domaine de l'univers. 10. La disette qu'il y a eu pendant l'hiver. 11. Il s'est trouvé dix personnes chez moi. 12. Je l'ai rendue horrible à ses yeux inhumains. 13. Ils se sont percé le corps. 14. Elles se sont tranquillisées peu à peu.

1. The books which I have bought are well bound. 2. His fortune was greater than I had believed it. 3. You have made her laugh. 4. How many hares did you kill? I killed four (of them). 5. We must deduct from life the hours we have slept. 6. He has helped us with his purse. 7. I have helped her to come downstairs. 8. The soldiers whom the general condemned were put to death yesterday. 9. I know the tune to which you allude; I heard it sung last week. 10. We have met, but have not spoken to one another. 11. Great misfortunes have happened to your father. 12. The troops have marched across a barren country. 13. They seemed astonished. 14. She has broken both her arms.

## CHAPTER VIII.

### SYNTAX OF ADVERBS.

**442.** We may give, as a general rule, that the adverb is placed *after the verb* in the simple tenses: *il réussira probablement dans cette entreprise* (=he will probably succeed in this undertaking); and *between the auxiliary and the verb* in the compound tenses: *il l'a entièrement oublié* (=he has entirely forgotten it).

**Bien, mal, fort, beaucoup, peu** always follow this rule.

**443.** NOTE that the adverb is never placed in French, as in English, between the conjunctive pronoun subject and the verb: *vous venez toujours en retard* (=you always come late).

**444.** Adverbs of *time* or *place* are sometimes put at the commencement, and sometimes at the end of the sentence: *il est venu me voir hier avec son frère*, or *hier il est venu me voir avec son frère* (=yesterday he came to see me with his brother).

**445.** The *negative* consists of two parts, one of which is always **ne**, when the two words are to be expressed; the other varies according to the meaning. The principal adverbs of negation are :—

<b>ne...pas</b>	(=not)
<b>ne...point</b>	(=not at all)
<b>ne...rien</b>	(=nothing)
<b>ne...jamais</b>	(=never)
<b>ne...plus</b>	(=no...more)
<b>ne...que</b>	(=only)

**446.** If **pas** or **point** is followed by a noun in the partitive sense, this noun is simply preceded by **de** :—

Affirm. : *j'ai du pain* (=I have some bread)

Negat. : *je n'ai pas de pain* (=I have no bread)

**447.** **Ne** is always placed *before*, and **pas**, **point**, etc. *after the verb* in the simple tenses, and *between the auxiliary and the verb* in the compound tenses : *je ne vois pas* (=I do not see); *je n'ai pas mangé* (=I have not eaten).

**448.** With the *present infinitive* the two parts of the negative are not separated, as :—

**ne pas se venger** (=not to revenge one's self)

**ne plus écrire** (=to write no more).

**449.** If the verb is in the perfect of the infinitive, it is optional to separate them or not, as :—

Nôt to have slept { **ne pas avoir dormi**  
                           { **n'avoir pas dormi**.

**450.** When used without a verb, the negatives stand without **ne**, as :—

**pas à la fois** (=not at once)

**pas beaucoup** (=not much)

**pas tant** (=not so much)

**pas moi** (=not I)

**pas trop** (=not too much)

**pas aujourd'hui** (=not to day).

**451.** **Non plus** (=neither) requires the full negation **ne...pas** before it, as :—

*je ne le veux pas non plus* (=neither will I have it).

**452.** If the words **nor...either** are only connected with a noun or pronoun without a verb, the noun or the pronoun is preceded in French by **ni**, as :—

**ni** Charles **non plus** (= nor Charles either).

**453.** Observe the expression **ne...que** meaning only, as :—

*je n'ai que deux sœurs* (=I have only two sisters).

**454.** **Ne** is used before the second verb :—

1. After words expressing apprehension or fear, such as the verbs **appréhender** (=to apprehend), **avoir peur** (=to dread), **prendre garde** (=to take care), **empêcher** (=to prevent), etc. : *empêchez qu'on ne lui parle* (=prevent any one from speaking to him); *prends garde qu'il ne sorte* (=take care lest he should go out);

2. After the verb **craindre** (=to fear), and the conjunctive locutions **de crainte que**, **de peur que** (=for fear lest...), etc., when the thing expressed by the second proposition is *not* desired (see § 510) : *taisez-vous, de peur qu'on ne vous entende* (=hold your tongue, lest any one should hear you);

3. After a comparative of *inferiority* or *superiority*, and the words **autre, autrement** : *il est plus savant que vous ne pensez* (=he is more learned than you think); *il est moins riche qu'on ne croit* (=he is less rich than people imagine); *il pense autrement qu'il ne parle* (=he thinks differently from what he says);

4. When both propositions are negative : *le singe n'est pas plus de notre espèce que nous ne sommes de la sienne* (=the monkey no more belongs to our species than we belong to his, *i.e.*, we do not belong to his).

5. After **il s'en faut** accompanied by a negative or the negative expressions **peu, presque, rien** : *il ne s'en faut pas de beaucoup que la somme n'y soit* (=it wants little to make up the necessary sum); *peu s'en faut que je n'interrompe mon discours* (=a little more would make me interrupt my speech);

6. After **à moins que**: *il partira demain à moins que vous n'alliez le voir ce soir* (=he will leave to-morrow unless you go and see him this evening).

**455. Ne** is suppressed before the second verb:—

1. After a verb accompanied by a negative: *je ne crains pas qu'il vienne* (=I do not dread his coming);

2. After **défendre** (=to prohibit): *il défendit qu'aucun étranger entrât dans la ville* (=he prohibited all strangers from entering the town);

3. After the locutions **avant que** (=before), **sans que** (=without): *j'irai le voir avant qu'il parte* (=I shall go and see him before his departure); *je ne puis parler sans qu'il m'interrompe* (=I cannot speak without his interrupting me).

**Ne** may be inserted after **empêcher** (=to hinder), **douter** (=to doubt), **nier** (=to deny), **disconvenir** (=to disagree), **contester** (=to contest), used negatively: *on ne peut douter que les pôles ne soient couverts de glace* (=we cannot doubt but that the poles are covered with ice).

**456. Pas** and **point** may be suppressed:

1. After the verbs **pouvoir**, **cesser**, **oser**, and the conjunction **si**, especially in the locutions: *si ce n'est* or *si ce n'était* (=were it not, unless, except); *il ne cesse de parler* (=he does not leave off speaking); *je n'ose l'aborder* (=I dare not approach him); *je ne puis me taire* (=I cannot remain silent); *mon frère me ressemble, si ce n'est qu'il est plus petit* (=my brother resembles me, only he is shorter); *si ce n'était la crainte de vous déplaire* (=were it not for the fear of displeasing you);

2. After **il y a**, **depuis que**, in the compound tenses: *il y a un an que je ne l'ai vu* (=it is a year since I saw him).

3. When **autre...que** is used: *je n'ai d'autre but que de vous être utile* (=I have no other object than to be useful to you);

If *autre* is understood, **pas** or **point** must be suppressed: *il n'a de volonté que la mienne* (=he has no other will but mine).

4. After **prendre garde** (=to avoid): *prenez garde qu'on ne vous trompe* (=take care that they do not deceive you).

**457. Pas and point** must be suppressed:—

1. After **savoir** used instead of *pouvoir*: *je ne saurais vous montrer le chemin* (=I cannot show you the way).

2. After **que** meaning *pourquoi* (=why): *que n'êtes vous arrivé plus tôt?* (=why did you not come sooner)?

3. When two negatives are joined by **ni**: *je ne parle ni n'écris* (=I neither speak nor write).

**458. Point** is more emphatic than **pas**: *je ne l'aime pas* (=I do not like him, her, or it); *je ne l'aime point* (=I do not like him, her, or it at all).

**459. Plus tôt, plutôt. Plus tôt**, in two words, means *avant* (=sooner), and is the opposite of **plus tard** (=later): *il est arrivé plus tôt que vous* (=he arrived sooner than you).

**Plutôt**, in one word, expresses an idea of choice, preference: *plutôt la mort que le déshonneur!* (=death rather than dishonour!).

**460. Auparavant, davantage.** Both these adverbs, being taken absolutely, must never be followed by either *de* or *que*. *Il a davantage de livres que moi* is wrong; we should say: *il a plus de livres que moi* (=he has more books than I). *Auparavant qu'il vienne* is also wrong; we should say: *avant qu'il vienne* (=before he comes).

**461. Si, aussi, tant, autant.**—**Aussi** and **autant** are used *exclusively* in partitive, whilst **tant** and **si** are *generally* used in negative sentences: *j'ai autant de livres que vous* (=I have as many books as you); *il est aussi savant que son ami* (=he is as learned as his friend); *je n'ai pas tant d'argent que vous* (=I have not so much money as you); *il n'est pas*

**si riche que son frère** (=he is not so rich as his brother). **Aussi** and **autant**, however, are sometimes used in negative sentences.

**462. Mal parler, parler mal.** Care should be taken to distinguish between these two expressions; **mal parler** means *to slander, to make use of offensive or insulting language*; **parler mal** means *to speak ungrammatically*.

**463. Oui, si.** **Oui** is used in answer to an affirmative question: *avez-vous de la monnaie?* **oui, monsieur** (=have you any change? yes, sir); **si** is employed when the question is put negatively: *n'avez-vous pas perdu votre bourse?* **si, madame** (=have you not lost your purse? yes, madam).

**464. Aussi, non plus.** These two adverbs, taken in the sense of *likewise, equally*, are used, the former in affirmative, the latter in negative sentences: *j'irai le voir, et moi aussi* (=I shall go and see him; so shall I); *je n'ai pas lu ce livre; ni moi non plus* (=I have not read that book; no more have I).

**465. De suite, tout de suite.** **De suite** means *successively, without interruption*: *il ne travaille pas deux heures de suite* (=he does not work two hours successively); **tout de suite** means *immediately*: *je viens tout de suite* (=I am coming immediately).

**466. Partant, pourtant.** **Partant** means *therefore, accordingly*: *peu courtisan, partant homme de foi* (=little of a courtier, therefore a man to be trusted); **pourtant** means *nevertheless*: *c'est un grand général, et pourtant il a été battu* (=he is a great general, nevertheless, he has been defeated).

#### QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. What is the place of the adverb?</li> <li>2. What is the distinctive sign of negation in French?</li> <li>3. When is <i>ne</i> used?</li> <li>4. When is <i>ne</i> suppressed?</li> <li>5. After what verbs are <i>pas</i> and <i>point</i> left out?</li> </ol> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>6. What is the difference between <i>pas</i> and <i>point</i>?</li> <li>7. Distinguish between <i>plutôt</i> and <i>plus tôt</i>—<i>si, aussi</i> and <i>tant, autant</i>—<i>mal parler</i> and <i>parler mal</i>—<i>out</i> and <i>si—aussi</i> and <i>non plus—de suite</i> and <i>tout de suite</i>—<i>partant</i> and <i>pourtant</i>.</li> </ol> |
|--|--|

## Exercise 60.

1. On se repent rarement de parler peu, mais souvent de parler trop. 2. Ce qui se fait avec plaisir est ordinairement bien fait. 3. Il a plu aujourd'hui. 4. Autrefois on commençait plus tôt ses études, et on les terminait beaucoup plus tard. 5. Nous périrons jusqu'au dernier plutôt que de nous rendre. 6. Quelque méchants que soient les hommes, ils n'oseraient paraître ennemis de la vertu. 7. On se voit d'un autre œil qu'on ne voit son prochain. 8. Vous ne sauriez nier qu'un homme apprend beaucoup de choses en voyageant. 9. Plus on aime une personne, moins on doit la flatter. 10. Plus d'amour, partant plus de joie. 11. Cromwell couchait rarement deux nuits de suite dans la même chambre. 12. Faites votre devoir tout de suite.

1. There are persons who write better than they speak, and others who speak better than they write. 2. He does nothing but play from morning till night. 3. I do not blame him the less for it. 4. My clerk is more punctual than he was. 5. My little girl can scarcely write, and she reads with difficulty. 6. Have you ever been to Paris? 7. He disappeared suddenly. 8. I lost £10,000 at one single stroke. 9. However clever you may be, you should not despise the advice of your friends. 10. Your brother expresses himself incorrectly. 11. Never speak evil of any one. 12. It is now two years since I met with that accident. 13. I tremble lest you should be seen. 14. His wants are small, and therefore he is happy.

## CHAPTER IX.

## SYNTAX OF PRÉPOSITIONS.

**467.** Prepositions are always placed in French *before* the words to which they relate, and never *after*, as is sometimes the case in English, as :—

*de quoi se plaint-il ?* (=what does he complain of?)

**Durant** is the only exception, as we can say : *sa vie durant* (=during his life). (See § 205.)

**468.** The preposition *à* is used for *to*,\* *at*, or *in*,

\* NOTICE that the preposition *to*, when it is used in English as the sign of the infinitive, is not translated into French : *manger trop nuit* (=to eat too much is hurtful).



before proper names of places, such as towns, villages, etc., and the preposition **en** is used for *to* or *in* before names of countries and provinces, as:—

*mon père est à Paris* (=my father is at or in Paris)

*nous allons en Ecosse* (=we are going to Scotland).

If, however, the name of the country requires the article, the preposition **à** is used; as: *il est au Brésil* (=he is in Brazil).

NOTICE the difference between the expressions **à terre** and **par terre**: **à terre** is used when a thing raised above the ground falls; and **par terre** when the accident happens to a thing or person standing on the ground.

**469.** **En** is used with nouns taken in a vague and indeterminate sense, and is not generally followed by the article. **Dans**, on the contrary, is used with nouns taken in a more determinate sense, and requires the article; as: *je demeure en Angleterre, dans le comté de Middlesex* (=I live in England, in the county of Middlesex). **En** is used before a pronoun; as: *mon espoir est en vous* (=my hope is in you).

NOTICE the difference of meaning between **en** and **à** in the following phrases: *le général est à la campagne* (=the general is in the country); *le général est en campagne* (=the general has taken the field); *mon maître est à la ville* (=my master is in town, [by opposition to the country]); *je dîne en ville* (=I dine out).

**470.** *In* is translated by **en** when we speak of the time it takes to do a thing: *on va de Londres à Paris en dix heures* (=it takes ten hours to go from London to Paris).

*In* is translated by **dans** when we point out the time at which a thing is to be begun: *j'irai à Rome dans six mois* (=I shall go to Rome six months hence).

**471.** **Avant** means *before*, with reference to time or order; **devant** is used for *before*, with reference to place: *ne vous tenez pas devant moi* (=don't stand

before me); **avant** *la fin du mois* (=before the end of the month).

**472. Parmi** (=among) is used when the person or thing alluded to is in the midst of others: *je l'ai trouvé parmi mes livres* (=I have found it amongst my books). **Entre** should be used (a) when only two persons or things are mentioned; and (b) when the persons or things alluded to are not connected together: *je suis entre mes amis* (=I am between my [two] friends); *la jalousie entre poètes est chose assez commune* (=jealousy amongst poets is common enough).

**473. Vers** (=towards) is used with reference to nouns which indicate *place* or *time*: **vers** *la porte* (=towards the door), **vers** *le quatorzième siècle* (=towards the fourteenth century). **Envers** means *with regard to*, and is used after words implying *behaviour*: *charitable envers les pauvres* (=charitable to the poor).

**474.** Care must be taken not to confound the prepositions **sur** (=upon), and **sous** (=under) with the corresponding adverbs **dessus** (=above) and **dessous** (=underneath).

**475. Dessus** and **dessous** are used as prepositions when both are used together: *j'ai cherché dessus et dessous le lit* (=I have looked on and under the bed).

**476. Pour** is the word generally used to express *for*: *faites cela pour moi* (=do this for me). **Malgré, nonobstant** mean *for* in the sense of *notwithstanding*: *malgré tout cela, il n'a pas réussi* (=for all that, he did not succeed).

**477. Pendant, durant** refer to *time*: *il a été en Turquie pendant un mois* (=he has been in Turkey for a month).

**478. Depuis** corresponds to *since*: *je n'ai pas vu votre ami depuis six mois* (=I have not seen your friend for [or since] six months)

**479. Vis-à-vis** (=opposite) is construed with **de**: *je me plaçai vis-à-vis de lui* (=I placed myself opposite to him).

In the colloquial style custom sanctions the following phrases: **vis-à-vis** *notre maison*, (=opposite our house) **vis-à-vis** *le palais* (=opposite the palace).

On *vis-à-vis*, see § 206

**480.** The prepositive locution **vis-à-vis** is never used figuratively. We must say *ingrat envers son bienfaiteur*, and not **vis-à-vis de son bienfaiteur** (=ungrateful towards his benefactors).

**481. Au travers** is always followed by the preposition **de**, whilst **à travers** never takes it: *il se fit jour au travers des ennemis* (=he fought his way through the enemies); *il marchait à travers les épines* (=he was walking through the thorns).

**482. Voici** announces what we are about to say; **voilà** recalls what has been said: **voici** *ce que je vous apporte: une histoire, une grammaire, un atlas* (=here is what I bring you: a history, a grammar, an atlas); *la prudence et la sagesse, voilà ce que Salomon demanda à Dieu* (=prudence and wisdom, that is what Solomon asked of God).

**483.** All prepositions in French require the following verb in the infinitive (present or perfect), except **en**, which takes the present participle.

**484.** The prepositions **à**, **de**, and **en** are always repeated before every complement: *il dut la vie à la clémence et à la magnanimité du vainqueur* (=he owed his life to the clemency and the magnanimity of the conqueror).

The other prepositions should also be repeated, unless the various complements are synonyms: **dans** *la paix et dans la guerre* (=in peace and in war); **dans** *le désordre et l'intempérance* (=in disorder and intemperance).

**485. De and à.** In the following sentences the idea of duty is implied :—

*c'est à vous de me suivre* (=it is your duty to follow me).  
*c'est à moi d'obéir* (=it is my duty to obey).

The idea expressed in the following phrases is that of turn, rotation :—

*est-ce à lui à jouer ?* (=is it his turn to play?)  
*c'est à elle à parler* (=it is her turn to speak).

**486.** The use of the preposition **de** often alters entirely the meaning of certain phrases :—

*il ne fait que parler* (=he does nothing but speak).  
*il ne fait que de parler* (=he has only just spoken).

**De** is also used in some particular sentences :—

1. After *quelque chose, rien, quoi, quelqu'un, personne, pas, point*, etc. : *je n'ai rien vu d'étonnant* (=I have not seen anything astonishing).

2. Before a past participle preceded by a noun of number (in this case the use of *de* is optional) : *il y a eu vingt-cinq hommes tués* or *de tués* (=there have been twenty-five men killed).

**487. Chez** (=at the house of) can be preceded by **de** : *je sors de chez vous* (=I come from your house).

**Chez moi, chez soi**, etc., can also be used as substantives : *j'ai un chez moi* (=I have a home).

#### QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. State the rule and exception for the placing of prepositions.</li> <li>2. Explain the difference between <i>à, en, and dans</i>.</li> <li>3. When is <i>devant</i> used? What relation does <i>avant</i> express?</li> <li>4. Distinguish between <i>entre</i> and <i>parmi</i>.</li> <li>5. What are the adverbs corresponding to the prepositions <i>sur</i> and <i>sous</i>?</li> </ol> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>6. State the difference between <i>vis-à-vis</i> and <i>envers</i>, <i>à travers</i> and <i>au travers</i>, <i>voici</i> and <i>voilà</i>?</li> <li>7. What prepositions must always be repeated? When should all prepositions be repeated?</li> <li>8. Show, by examples, in how many ways the English preposition <i>for</i> can be translated into French.</li> <li>9. Remark on certain idiomatic uses of <i>de</i> and <i>à</i>.</li> </ol> |
|--|---|

#### Exercise 61.

1. Il y a une inscription curieuse sur cette médaille. 2. Ils se sont battus pendant deux jours. 3. Il se place toujours devant moi à table. 4. Le bateau à vapeur de Boulogne est arrivé avant

celui de Calais. 5. Les troupes du roi de Prusse sont en campagne. 6. Madame dînera-t-elle en ville aujourd'hui? 7. Le trajet de Paris à Bordeaux se fait en quelques heures. 8. Le général partira dans trois jours. 9. J'ai cinquante volumes à vendre, et il y en a de bien reliés. 10. A qui dois-je m'adresser? 11. La charité ne fait rien sans réflexion ni sans ordre. 12. L'orage a éclaté vers cinq heures. 13. Nous arriverons jeudi prochain. 14. Voici des fleurs que j'ai cueillies pour vous. 15. La droiture du cœur, la vérité, l'innocence, l'empire sur les passions : voilà la véritable grandeur. 16. En essayant de ramasser les livres qui étaient tombés à terre, je suis tombé par terre.

1. Alexander took the field at the head of an army of forty thousand men. 2. Be dutiful to your parents. 3. I never dine out more than once a week. 4. He will arrive on Tuesday, a week before my brother. 5. The elm was planted in front of the house. 6. I shall remain in London for a month. 7. Has the servant looked for my bracelet upon and under the table? Yes, she has. 8. All the plums have fallen down. 9. On arriving at Dover, we went to the hotel. 10. I have not read Homer for several years. 11. You are to play first. 12. It is your business to countersign the minister's letter. 13. There were three new operas performed last season. 14. I walk every day from ten to twelve. 15. It is not far from my house to the river. 16. What do you complain of?

## CHAPTER X.

## SYNTAX OF CONJUNCTIONS.

**488.** Among the simple conjunctions *quoique* (=though or although), with its synonyms *bien que*, *encore que*, is the only one which governs the subjunctive mood:—

*Quoique* (or *bien que*, or *encore que*) *je sois malade* (=though I am ill). See § 491.

**489.** *A moins que* (=unless), *de crainte que* or *de peur que* (=for fear that), require *ne* before the following verb in the subjunctive mood:—

*Il n'ira pas, à moins que vous ne lui demandiez* (=he will not go unless you ask him);  
*Allez-vous-en bien vite, de peur qu'il ne soit trop tard* (=go away quickly, lest it should be too late).

**490. A moins que** (=unless), followed by a verb in the infinitive mood, requires the preposition **de** without the negative; as : *je ne pouvais pas lui parler plus fortement à moins que de le quereller* (=I could not speak to him in stronger terms unless I scolded him). The *que* may be omitted : *à moins de le quereller*.

**491.** When a conjunction governs *several* verbs, it is placed before the first verb only, and *que* is used before the other verbs :—

**Comme il est appliqué et qu'il prend de la peine** (=as he is diligent and takes pains).

**492.** The conjunction **ni** serves to unite :—

1. Two negative propositions : *il ne boit ni ne mange* (=he neither eats nor drinks) ;

2. Two propositions depending on a negative proposition : *je ne crois pas qu'il vienne, ni même qu'il pense à venir* (=I do not believe that he will come, or that he even thinks of coming).

**Ni** is also used instead of **pas** : *il n'est ni bon ni mauvais* (=he is neither good nor bad).

**493. Quand** is a conjunction, and expresses the same idea as *quoique* (=although), and *lorsque* (=when) : *je viendrai quand même il pleurrerait* (=I shall come even if it were to rain) ; *je partirai quand j'aurai fini* (=I shall go when I have done).

**Quant** followed by **à** is a prepositive locution, meaning the same thing as *pour, à l'égard de* (=as for...): **quant à moi, je n'en ferai rien** (=as for me, I shall do nothing of the kind).

**494.** The conjunction **que** is often employed :—

1. Instead of the conjunctive locutions *afin que* (=in order that), *sans que* (=without), *depuis que* (=since), etc. : *venez que je vous le montre* (=come, in order that I may show it to you) ; *je ne puis parler qu'il ne m'interrompe* (=I cannot speak without his interrupting me).

2. In order to avoid the repetition of the conjunctions *comme*, *quand*, and *si*: *comme il était tard et qu'on craignait la chute du jour, on battit la retraite* (=as it was late, and they were afraid of the dusk coming on, they sounded a retreat); *quand on est jeune et qu'on se porte bien, on doit travailler* (=when one is young, and in good health, one must work); *si vous y allez et qu'il vous rende mon livre, envoyez-le-moi* (=if you go, and if he gives you back my book, send it me).

When **que** is used instead of **si**, it requires the subjunctive, but the conjunction *si* is always followed by the indicative, not by the subjunctive, as in English: **si j'allais vous voir** (=if I were going to see you); **s'il venait, le recevriez-vous?** (=if he should come, would you receive him?).

*Que*, at the beginning of a sentence, and before the third person of the subjunctive present, points out that the words *let him, let them, I wish, they should*, etc., are understood before it: **qu'il nous avertisse lorsqu'il sera prêt** (=let him give us notice when he is ready).

**495.** Care must be taken not to confound **parce que** and **par ce que**. **Parce que**, in two words, is a conjunctive locution, which is the same as the phrase *par la raison que* (=for the reason that): *je me tais parce que je crains* (=I am silent, because [for the reason that] I am afraid).

**Par ce que**, in three words, is a locution identical with *par la chose que, d'après la chose que* (=from or by the thing which): *je suis instruit par ce que mon père m'a dit* (=I am informed in consequence of what my father has told me, *i.e.*, *par cela que mon père m'a dit*).

**496.** **Quoique** should not be confounded with **quoi que**. **Quoique**, in one word, is a conjunction corresponding to *bien que* (=although): **quoique paresseux, il réussit assez bien** (=although he is idle, he succeeds tolerably well).

**Quoi que**, in two words, means *quelle que soit la chose que* (=whatever the thing may be): **quoi que**

*vous disiez, il fait la sourde oreille* (= whatever you may say, he turns a deaf ear). See § 374.

For the government of conjunctive locutions see § 508 and following sections.

### QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Which French conjunctions require the subjunctive?</li> <li>2. After what conjunctions is <i>ne</i> used with the verb in the subjunctive?</li> <li>3. Explain the rule for <i>à moins que</i>.</li> </ol> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>4. Enumerate the various idiomatic uses of the conjunction <i>que</i>.</li> <li>5. How is <i>ni</i> used?</li> <li>6. Distinguish between <i>quand</i> and <i>quant</i>—<i>parce que</i> and <i>par ce que</i>—<i>quoique</i> and <i>quoi que</i>.</li> </ol> |
|--|--|

### Exercise 62.

1. Dieu existe, car ce qui pense en moi, je ne le dois point à moi-même. 2. Venez, que je vous dise un fait qui vous intéressera. 3. Il y a un siècle que je ne vous ai vu. 4. Que ne me disiez-vous que vous avez besoin d'argent? 5. Qu'il le veuille ou non, il prendra sa médecine. 6. Si vous rencontrez un sage, et que vous deveniez son ami, estimez-vous heureux. 7. Il ne sait ni le Latin ni le Grec. 8. Je vois, par ce que vous me dites, que j'étais mal informé. 9. Je crois que j'étais mal informé, parce que vous me le dites. 10. Quoi que vous écriviez, évitez la bassesse. 11. Le mérite est souvent négligé parce qu'il est trop modeste. 12. De crainte qu'ils n'entrassent dans le port, il ordonna à ses guerriers de les poursuivre.

<sup>1</sup> il est inutile que je, <sup>2</sup> d'après, <sup>3</sup> à la fois, <sup>4</sup> tandis que, <sup>5</sup> d'une manière profitable.

1. That poor man neither speaks nor hears. 2. Since you do not like the play, it is no use my<sup>1</sup> sending you a ticket. 3. When I am in Paris, and have plenty of spare time, I attend the lectures at the Sorbonne. 4. What is the matter with you that you do not eat? 5. Whatever you may do, you will always succeed. 6. Although he knew I was out, he called upon me. 7. As for that rascal, he shall be sent to prison forthwith. 8. From<sup>2</sup> what I have just heard, I think we shall soon have war. 9. The king was loved, because he was both<sup>3</sup> firm and just. 10. You lose your time, whereas<sup>4</sup> you ought to spend it profitably.<sup>5</sup>



## SECOND PART.

## SYNTAX OF PROPOSITIONS.

## I. Definitions.

**497.** The first part of the Syntax has taught us to join together two or more *words* in order to form a **simple proposition**; the second part will teach us to unite two or more *simple propositions* in order to make a **compound proposition**.

There are only three ways of uniting simple propositions in order to form a compound proposition:—

1. Either simple propositions remain independent of one another, and we merely place them side by side: *je suis venu, j'ai vu, j'ai vaincu* (=I came, I saw, I conquered);

2. Or we join them together by a conjunction: *Dieu est juste et sa bonté est infinie* (=God is just, and His goodness is infinite);

3. Or if we take simple propositions, the one depends upon the other, is subject to it, is its *subordinate*, and we then obtain a compound proposition composed of two simple propositions, the one *principal*, the other *dependent*. Thus, *l'homme sait que l'âme est immortelle* (=man knows that the soul is immortal) is a proposition composed of two simple propositions: *l'homme sait* and *l'âme est immortelle*; but the second *depends* upon the first, which is called the *principal* proposition.

We have seen (§ 224) that every proposition has three terms: the *subject*, the *verb*, the *attribute*.

**498.** Generally speaking there are in a sentence as many propositions as there are verbs: *quand il arriva, son fils se jeta dans ses bras, en pleurant* (=when he arrived, his son fell into his arms, weeping); there are in this sentence three verbs, and, therefore, three propositions.

**499.** But in certain sentences containing only one verb in the subjunctive: *que Dieu vous assiste* (= may God help you); or in the imperative: *allez!* (= go!); or, lastly, in an interrogative form: *qui a dit cela?* (= who has said that?), there is always an indicative understood: **je désire** *que Dieu vous assiste* (= I wish that God may help you); **je veux** *que vous alliez* (= I insist on your going); **je demande** *qui a dit cela* (= I ask who has said that); because in such cases the mind really discovers two propositions.

These sentences are called *elliptical*, because there is in them an *ellipsis* or suppression of words.

**500.** The same thing occurs when, in order to impart greater rapidity to the speech, we suppress one of the verbs of the compound proposition: *je l'aime comme mon frère*, i.e., **comme j'aime mon frère** (= I love him as my brother); or even both verbs: thus, *au feu!* (= fire!) really means **allons au feu!** (= let us go to the fire!), i.e., **il est nécessaire que nous allions au feu** (= it is necessary that we should go to the fire). In this sentence, although no verb is expressed, there are, nevertheless, two propositions.

We have said (§ 497) that propositions are either *principal* or *subordinate*.

**501.** The verb of the principal proposition is always in the indicative mood,\* because the indicative is the *affirming* mood, and every principal proposition conveys some affirmation: *je doute que vous veniez* (= I doubt your coming); *je doute*, being in the indicative, is the principal proposition.

Every verb in another mood than the indicative belongs to a *dependent* or *subordinate* proposition. In

\* *Je ne sache* is the only instance of a verb in the subjunctive appearing in the principal proposition: *des enfants étourdis deviennent des hommes vulgaires*; **je ne sache point d'observation plus générale et plus certaine que celle-là** (=heedless children become vulgar men; I do not know any observation more general and more certain than that).

the following sentence: *je doute que vous veniez*,—**que vous veniez**, being in the subjunctive mood, constitutes the *dependent* proposition.

## II. Of the Subordinate Proposition.

**502.** The *subordinate* or *dependent* proposition is formed, either :—

1. By the help of a **participle**: *je lis en marchant* (=I read whilst walking); *l'homme, poussé par la faim, devient criminel* (=man, driven by hunger, becomes criminal).

2. By the help of an **infinitive**: *j'aime à travailler* (=I like to work).

3. By the aid of a **conjunction**: *je sais que Dieu est bon* (=I know that God is good).

4. By the help of a **relative pronoun**:  *aimez Dieu, qui vous protège* (=love God, who protects you).

**503.** We thus divide dependent or subordinate propositions into *four* classes, calling them respectively, **participial propositions**, **infinitive propositions**, **conjunctive propositions**, and **relative propositions**. Let us now review them briefly :—

**504.** The name of **participial** is given to every dependent proposition of which the verb is in the participle, either present: *je lis en marchant* (=I read whilst walking), or past: *l'homme, poussé par la faim, devient criminel* (=man, driven by hunger, becomes criminal). *En marchant, poussé par la faim* are participial propositions.

**505.** When the **participial proposition** refers to the subject, and when the subject precedes it: *l'enfant, ayant mangé des mets empoisonnés, mourut sur-le-champ* (=the child, having eaten some poisoned food, died at once), the subject must not be repeated before the verb. It would, therefore, be wrong to say: *l'enfant, ayant mangé des mets empoisonnés, il mourut sur-le-champ*.

**506.** Every dependent proposition, of which the verb is in the infinitive, is called an **infinitive proposition**: *il aspire à régner* (=he aspires to reign); *il aime à travailler* (=he likes to work).

**507.** Every dependent proposition, united to the principal one by a conjunction, is called a **conjunctive proposition**: *j'espère que vous viendrez* (=I hope you will come). *Que vous viendrez* is a conjunctive proposition.

For **relative propositions**, see § 519.

### QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <p>1. How many terms does a proposition contain?</p> <p>2. Define a <i>dependent</i> proposition.</p> <p>3. How many propositions are there in a sentence?</p> <p>4. In what mood is the verb of the principal proposition to be put?</p> | <p>5. How many kinds of subordinate propositions are there? How are they distinguished from one another?</p> <p>6. Define a <i>participial</i> proposition.</p> <p>7. What is an <i>infinitive</i> proposition? A <i>conjunctive</i> one?</p> |
|---|---|

### Exercise 63.

*Translate the following sentences into English, and underline the conjunctive propositions:—*

1. Nul ne sait s'il vivra demain; et tous nous faisons des projets, comme si nous devons vivre toujours. 2. Les Romains soumettaient les villages voisins pendant qu'Alexandre conquérait l'Asie. 3. Arrangez votre vie de telle sorte que les envieux n'y reprennent rien. 4. Je doute que les vertus soient plus grandes depuis que les richesses ont augmenté.

### III. Use of the Indicative and of the Subjunctive in Conjunctive Propositions.

**508.** The *seventeen* following conjunctive locutions must always have the **indicative** after them:—

<i>à mesure que</i>	{ (=in proportion as)	<i>durant que</i>	{ (=whilst)
<i>ainsi que</i>	{ (=even as)	<i>non plus que</i>	{ (=no more than)
<i>attendu que</i>	{ (=whereas)	<i>outré que</i>	{ (=besides)
<i>aussi bien que</i>	{ (=as well as)	<i>parce que</i>	{ (=because)
<i>aussitôt que</i>	{ (=as soon as)	<i>pendant que</i>	{ (=whilst, during)
<i>autant que</i>	{ (=as much as)	<i>tandis que</i>	{ (=whilst)
<i>de même que</i>	{ (=the same as)	<i>tant que</i>	{ (=as long as, as much as)
<i>depuis que</i>	{ (=since)	<i>vu que</i>	{ (=considering that)
<i>dès que</i>	{ (=since, as soon as)		

## 509. The six conjunctive locations :—

<i>demanière que</i> (=so that)	<i>si ce n'est que</i> (=were it not)
<i>desorte que, en</i> (=in such a man-	<i>sinon que</i> (=except th it)
<i>sorte que</i> ner that)	<i>tellement que</i> (=so much that)

are sometimes followed by the **indicative**, and sometimes by the **subjunctive** :—

1. They are followed by the indicative when the sentence expresses a fact *positive, certain, absolute* : *cet enfant s'est conduit de telle sorte que tous ses parents ont été contents* (=that child conducted himself in such a manner, that all his relations were pleased with him).

2. They are followed by the subjunctive when the sentence expresses a fact *in the future, and which may not take place at all* : *faites en sorte qu'il vienne* (=act so that he may come) ; *conduisez-vous de telle sorte que tout le monde soit content de vous* (=conduct yourself in such a manner that everyone may be pleased with you).

510. The *seventeen* following conjunctive locations always require the **subjunctive** after them :—

<i>afin que</i> (=in order that)	<i>non que</i> (=not but that)
<i>à moins que</i> (=unless)	<i>pour que</i> (=in order that)
<i>avant que</i> (=before)	<i>pourvu que</i> (=provided that)
<i>en cas que</i> (=in case that)	<i>sans que</i> (=without that)
<i>bien que</i> (=although)	<i>pour peu que</i> { (=for ever so little that)
<i>de peur que, de crainte que</i> } (=for fear lest)	<i>soit que</i> (=whether that)
<i>jusqu'à ce que</i> (=until)	<i>supposé que</i> (=supposing that)
<i>loin que</i> (=far from)	<i>quoique</i> (=although)

*J'irai le voir avant qu'il parte* (=I shall go and see him before he starts) ;

*la terre ne s'épuise jamais, pourvu qu'on sache la cultiver* (=the earth is never exhausted, provided one knows how to cultivate it) ;

*je lirai jusqu'à ce que vous veniez* (=I shall read till you come).

511. When the sentence includes two dependent propositions beginning with *si* (=if) : *ma tristesse serait grande, si Charles venait en France, et s'il passait par Paris sans me voir* (=my sorrow would be great if Charles came to France, and if he passed through Paris

without seeing me), the second **si** may be replaced by **que**; but in this case the verb preceded by **que** is put in the **subjunctive**; *ma tristesse serait grande **si** Charles venait en France et **qu'il passât** par Paris sans me voir.*

### 512. The **subjunctive** is used:

1. After verbs which express *doubt, desire, fear, surprise, supposition, will*: *je doute qu'il sache sa leçon* (=I doubt whether he knows his lesson); *je crains qu'il ne parte* (=I fear lest he should go); *je désire qu'il vienne* (=I wish he may come); *je suis surpris que vous soyez arrivé* (=I am surprised at your having arrived); *je suppose qu'il lise ce livre* (=I suppose that he will read this book); *je veux qu'il sorte* (=I insist upon his going out).

2. After verbs used *interrogatively* or accompanied by a *negative*: *croyez-vous qu'il parte?* (=do you think he will start?); *pensez-vous qu'il vienne?* (=do you suppose he will come?); *je ne présume pas qu'il soit arrivé* (=I do not presume he has arrived).

3. After the *impersonal verbs*: *il faut* (=it is necessary), *il importe* (=it is of consequence), *il convient* (=it is proper), *il est possible* (=it is possible), and, generally speaking, after all those which express *will, supposition, or doubt*: *il faut qu'il vienne* (=he must come); *il importe qu'il soit ici* (=it is of consequence that he should be here); *il convient qu'il sorte* (=it is proper that he should go out); *il est possible qu'il dorme* (=it is possible that he is asleep), etc.

### 513. But the **indicative** is used:—

1. Even after verbs expressing *supposition or will*, when the thing in question is considered as very probable: *je suppose qu'il lit le livre que vous lui avez prêté* (=I suppose that he is reading the book you have lent him); *je prétends qu'il est là* (=I maintain that he is there).

2. In the case of a verb conjugated *interrogatively*, or accompanied by a *negative*, when the thing alluded to is considered as *certain* or *extremely probable*. Thus, we shall say: *croyez-vous que l'âme est immortelle?* (=do you believe that the soul is immortal?), because we consider the immortality of the soul as a *certain* fact; *vous ne dites pas que Paul est mon ami* (=you do not say that Paul is my friend), because, by these words, I *affirm* that Paul is my friend.

3. After *impersonal verbs* such as: *il est clair* (=it is clear), which express *certainty* or *probability*: *il est certain que la terre se meut dans l'espace* (=it is certain that the earth moves in space); *il est clair que deux et deux font quatre* (=it is clear that two and two make four); *il est probable que le ciel s'éclaircira* (=the sky will probably clear up).

But as a negative destroys certainty or probability, the same verbs conjugated *negatively* require the *subjunctive* after them: *n'est-il pas probable que le ciel s'éclaircisse?* (=is it not likely that the sky will clear up)?

**514.** To sum up, if the idea expressed in the subordinate proposition is looked upon as *certain* and *positive*, the verb of that proposition is put in the **indicative**. If the idea expressed is considered as *doubtful* or simply *probable*, the verb is put in the **subjunctive**.

#### QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Which are the <i>conjunctive</i> propositions which require the <i>indicative</i> after them?</li> <li>2. Enumerate those which require sometimes the <i>indicative</i>, sometimes the <i>subjunctive</i>, and state when?</li> <li>3. Which are those which always take the <i>subjunctive</i>?</li> <li>4. When does <i>que</i> require the <i>subjunctive</i>?</li> <li>5. In what mood is the verb of the subordinate proposition put</li> </ol> | <p>(a) after verbs expressing <i>doubt</i>, <i>desire</i>, etc. ?—(b) after verbs employed <i>interrogatively</i> or <i>negatively</i>?—(c) after the verbs <i>il faut</i>, <i>il convient</i>, etc. ?</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>6. When is the <i>indicative</i> used (a) after verbs expressing <i>supposition</i> and <i>will</i>?—(b) after verbs employed <i>interrogatively</i> or <i>negatively</i>?</li> <li>7. When do <i>impersonal</i> verbs require (a) the <i>indicative</i>?—(b) the <i>subjunctive</i>?</li> </ol> |
|--|--|

**Exercise 64.**

*Translate the following sentences, and put in the proper moods the verbs in italics :—*

1. Que de gens se font du tort parce qu'ils *vouloir* parler avant d'avoir appris à écouter. 2. Autant que je le *pouvoir*, j'évite la rencontre des bavards et des importuns. 3. La femelle du rossignol couve ses œufs pendant que le mâle *chanter* sur la branche voisine. 4. Vous marchez de manière que ces enfants ne *pouvoir* vous suivre. 5. Faites en sorte que tout le monde *être* content de vous. 6. Cet enfant a travaillé de telle sorte que tout le monde *être* content de lui. 7. Pour peu qu'on *connaître* le défaut dominant d'un homme, on est assuré de lui plaire. 8. Quoique l'Espagne soit au midi et que la température y *être* plus élevée qu'en France, il y gèle quelquefois. 9. S'il arrive quelque chose, faites en sorte que j'en *être* informé immédiatement. 10. Il importe que les enfants *aller* de bonne heure à l'école. 11. Ignorez-vous que l'hiver *être* l'époque où le soleil est le plus rapproché de nous ?

**IV. Use of the Tenses of the Subjunctive.**

**515.** Having examined the cases in which the verb of the dependent proposition ought to be used in the subjunctive, we have now to point out in which tense of the subjunctive mood this verb ought to be put :—

**516.** The use of the tenses of the subjunctive depends entirely on the idea we wish to express; the only rule to be observed, therefore, is the following one: *see in what tense of the indicative or the conditional you would put the second verb, if the sentence required one of these two moods, and use the corresponding tense of the subjunctive.*

REMARKS.—1. The *present* subjunctive corresponds to the *indicative present* and *future*.

2. The *imperfect* subjunctive corresponds to the *imperfect* of the indicative, and the *present* conditional.

3. The *perfect* subjunctive corresponds to the *past definite*, the *past indefinite*, and the *future anterior*.

4. The *pluperfect* subjunctive corresponds to the *pluperfect* indicative and the *past* conditional.



**517.** In the choice of the tenses of the subjunctive, the verb of the subordinate proposition always depends upon the verb of the principal proposition, and is subject to the two following rules:—

1. If the verb of the principal proposition is in the **present** or the **future** of the **indicative**: *je défends, je défendrai* (=I defend, I will defend); the verb of the dependent proposition is put:—

(a) In the **present** of the **subjunctive**, when the action has still to be performed: *je défends qu'il vienne* (=I forbid him to come), *je défendrai qu'il vienne* (=I will forbid him to come);

(b) In the **perfect subjunctive**, when the action is already performed: *je doute que vous ayez pu le faire* (=I doubt whether you have been able to do it), *je douterai toujours que vous ayez pu le faire* (=I shall always doubt...).

2. If the verb of the principal proposition is in one of the **past** or the **conditional** tenses: *je voulais, je voulus, j'aurais voulu, je voudrais* (=I was wishing, I wished, I had wished, I should wish), the verb of the dependent proposition is put:—

(a) In the **imperfect** of the **subjunctive**, provided the action has still to be performed: *je voulais qu'il vint* (=I wished that he might come), *je voudrais qu'il vint* (=I should wish...), *j'ai voulu qu'il vint* (=I have wished...);

(b) In the **pluperfect** of the **subjunctive**, when the action has already been performed: *je ne savais pas que vous eussiez déjà étudié ce livre si complètement* (=I did not know that you had already studied that book so thoroughly); *je n'aurais pas voulu qu'il eut fait cette déclaration* (=I should not have wished him to make that declaration).

**518.** These rules only admit of two exceptions:—

1. When the sentence expresses the idea of any condition (the principal verb being in the *present* or in the *future* of the **indicative**), the verb of the dependent proposition is placed in the *imperfect* or in the *pluperfect* of the **subjunctive**: *je ne croirai jamais qu'il eût osé le faire, si on le lui avait défendu* (=I will never believe that he would have dared to do it, if he had been forbidden to do so).

2. When the sentence expresses a permanent fact, which reproduces itself or which has existed for a long time, the dependent verb (whatever may be the tense of the principal one) is always put in the *present* of the **subjunctive**: *Dieu a voulu que l'homme éprouve* (and not *éprouvât*) *sa puissance* (=it has been God's will that man should feel His power).

#### QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

- |   |  |  |
|---|--|--|
| 1. State the general rule for the use of the tenses of the <i>subjunctive</i> .       |  | <i>pluperfect</i> subjunctive respectively correspond? |
| 2. To what tenses of the <i>indicative</i> do the <i>present, imperfect, perfect,</i> |  | 3. What are the principal rules?                       |
|   |  | 4. State the exceptions.                               |

#### Exercise 65.

Translate the following sentences into English, and put the verbs in italics in the proper tense:—

1. Ne dites jamais: "je veux que cela *être*;" dites plutôt: "je voudrais que cela *être*." 2. Le petit Saint-Bernard était le passage le plus facile qu'Annibal *pouvoir* trouver pour pénétrer en Italie. 3. Vous ne saviez pas que Louis XI *avoir encouragé* les lettres et les arts. 4. Il a fallu, pour me faire revenir de mes premières idées, qu'un nouveau jour se *faire* dans mon esprit. 5. Les oiseaux de rivage étant destinés à vivre dans la vase, la nature leur a donné de longues jambes pour qu'ils *pouvoir* s'y promener. 6. Il faut que celui qui parle se *mettre* à la portée de ceux qui l'écoutent. 7. Les Romains ne pouvaient voir sans indignation que les Carthaginois *oser* les attaquer. 8. Il faut qu'un homme *être* bien lâche pour persécuter la vertu opprimée. 9. On raconte que Henri IV voulait que chaque paysan *mettre* la poule au pot tous les dimanches. 10. Un philosophe ancien disait que le soleil *être* grand comme le Péloponèse.

## V. Relative Propositions.

**519.** Every dependent proposition, united to the principal one by a relative pronoun, is called a **relative proposition**: *craignons Dieu - qui nous protège* (=let us fear God - who protects us); *j'aime l'enfant - qui est courageux* (=I love the child - who is courageous). *Qui nous protège, qui est courageux* are *relative propositions*.

**520.** After a relative in sentences which express *will, desire, doubt, negation*, the verb of the dependent proposition is put in the **subjunctive**: *je veux un serviteur qui m'obéisse* (=I wish for a servant who will obey me); *je ne connais personne qui soit vraiment heureux* (=I don't know anybody who is really happy).

REMARK.—This rule applies to the case of the adverb *où*: *allez dans une retraite où vous soyez heureux* (=go into a retreat where you may be happy).

**521.** The dependent verb is likewise put in the subjunctive when the relative is preceded by the word *seul* (=only, one), or by a **superlative**: *votre frère est le seul-qui soit habile* (=your brother is the only one who is clever); *il est aussi l'homme le plus adroit-que je connaisse* (=he is also the most skillful man I know).

**522.** The only exception to these two rules is when the verb of the dependent proposition includes an **absolute affirmation**: *j'ai rencontré un ouvrier qui m'a tiré d'embarras* (=I met a workman who extricated me from my difficulties); *achetez tous les meilleurs vins que vous trouverez, et expédiez - les - moi* (=buy all the best wines you find, and send them to me) (see § 513).

## QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <p>1. What is meant by a <i>relative proposition</i>?</p> <p>2. In what mood is the verb of the relative proposition put after (a) verbs expressing <i>doubt</i>?—</p> | <p>(b) the word <i>seul</i>?—(c) the <i>superlative</i>?</p> <p>3. What is the exception to that rule?</p> <p>4. State the rule for <i>où</i>.</p> |
|--|--|

**Exercise 66.**

After having translated the following piece into English, the pupils should

1. Mark out:—

(a) the principal propositions ;

(b) the subordinate propositions ;

(c) the participial, the infinitive, the conjunctive, and the relative propositions ;

2. Write in the proper tenses the verbs printed in italics.

## LE MADRIGAL DE LOUIS XIV.

Il faut que je vous *écrire* une petite historiette, qui est très-vraie et qui vous divertira. Le roi se mêle depuis peu de faire des vers ; MM. de Saint-Aignan et Dangeau lui apprennent comment il faut qu'il s'y *prendre*. Il fit l'autre jour un petit madrigal que lui-même ne trouva pas trop joli. Un matin il dit au maréchal de Grammont : " Monsieur le maréchal, je voudrais que vous *lire* ce petit madrigal, et que vous me *dire* si vous en *avoir* jamais vu un si impertinent : parce qu'on sait que depuis peu j'aime les vers, il n'est pas de jour que je n'en *recevoir* de toutes les façons." Le maréchal, après avoir lu, dit au roi : " Sire, Votre Majesté juge divinement bien de toutes choses : il est vrai que voilà le plus sot et le plus ridicule madrigal que j'*avoir* jamais vu." Le roi se mit à rire, et lui dit : " N'est-il pas vrai que celui qui l'*avoir* fait *être* bien fat ? — Sire, il n'y a pas moyen de lui donner un autre nom. — Eh bien ! dit le roi, je suis ravi que vous m'en *avoir* parlé si bonnement ; c'est moi qui l'ai fait. — Ah ! sire, quelle trahison ! que Votre Majesté me le *rendre* ; je l'ai lu trop brusquement. — Non, monsieur le maréchal ; les premiers sentiments sont toujours les plus naturels." Le roi a fort ri de cette folie, et tout le monde trouve que voilà la plus cruelle petite chose que l'on *pouvoir* faire à un vieux courtisan. Pour moi, qui aime toujours à faire des réflexions, je voudrais que le roi en *faire* là-dessus et qu'il *juger* par là combien il s'en faut qu'il *connaître* jamais la vérité.—

Mme. DE SÉVIGNÉ,

## APPENDIX.

### OF ANALYSIS.

1. There are three kinds of analysis : 1. the *grammatical analysis* ; 2. the *logical analysis* ; 3. the *etymological analysis*.

2. The *grammatical analysis* treats of the nature and form of words, and determines the part they perform in the sentence.

#### Example :

L'écureuil est un joli petit animal qui n'est qu'à demi sauvage, et qui, par sa gentillesse, par sa docilité, par l'innocence même de ses mœurs, mériterait d'être épargné : il n'est ni carnassier ni nuisible, quoiqu'il saisisse quelquefois des oiseaux.

*L'* (for *la*), def. art., masc. sing., referring to *écureuil*.

*écureuil*, common subs., masc. sing., subject of *est*.

*est*, verb subs., 4th conj., ind. pres., 3rd pers. sing.

*un*, indef. art., masc. sing., referring to *animal*.

*joli*, qualif. adj., masc. sing., qualifying *animal*.

*petit*, qualif. adj., masc. sing., qualifying *animal*.

*animal*, common noun, masc. sing., complement of *écureuil*.

*qui*, relative pron., masc. sing., having as its antecedent *animal*, subject of *est*.

*n'* (for *ne*)...*que*, adverbial locution.

*est*, verb substantive, 4th conj., ind. pres., 3rd pers. sing.

*à demi*, adverbial locution.

*sauvage*, qualif. adj., masc. sing., qualifying *qui*.

*et*, conjunction.

*qui*, relative pron., masc. sing., having as its antecedent *animal*, subject of *mériterait*.

*par*, preposition.

*sa*, possess. adj., fem. sing., determining *docilité*.

*docilité*, common noun, fem. sing., indirect complement of *mériterait*.

*par*, preposition.

*sa*, possess. adj., fem. sing., determining *gentillesse*.

*gentillesse*, common noun, fem. sing., indirect complement of *mériterait*.

*par*, preposition.

*l'* (for *la*), def. art., sing. fem., referring to *innocence*.

*innocence*, common noun, fem. sing., indirect complement of *mériterait*.

*même*, indef. adjec., fem. sing., referring to *innocence*.

*de*, preposition.

*ses*, possess. adj., fem. plural, determining *mœurs*.

*mœurs*, common noun, fem. plural, complement of *innocence*.

*mériterait*, active verb, 1st conj., cond. pres., 3rd pers. sing.

*de*, preposition.

*être épargné*, passive verb, 1st conj., infin. pres.

*il*, pers. pron., 3rd pers. sing. masc., subject of *est*.

*n'* (for *ne*), adverb of negation.

*est*, verb substantive, 4th conj., ind. pres., 3rd pers. sing.

*ni*, conjunction.

*carossier*, qualif. adj., masc. sing., qualifying *il*.

*ni*, conjunction.

*nuisible*, qualif. adj., masc. sing., qualifying *il*.

*quoique*, conjunction.

*il*, pers. pron., 3rd pers. sing. masc., subject of *saisisse*.

*saisisse*, verb active, 2nd conj., pres. subj., 3rd pers. sing.

*quelquefois*, adverb of time.

*des*, indef. art., plur. masc., agreeing with *oiseaux*.

*oiseaux*, common noun, masc. plur., direct complement of *saisisse*.

2. The *logical analysis* shows the relation in which propositions, and also words belonging to the same proposition, stand to one another.

We subjoin an example of logical analysis, in which the subordinate propositions have been placed after the principal propositions to which they respectively belong :—

Le lézard gris *aime à recevoir* la chaleur du soleil ; *ayant* besoin d'une température douce, il *cherche* les abris ; et lorsqu'une lumière pure *éclaire* vivement un gazon en pente ou une muraille, on le *voit s'étendre* sur ce mur, ou sur l'herbe nouvelle, avec un plaisir qui se *devine* aisément.

In the above sentence, there are eight propositions, viz., three principal ones :—

1. *le lézard gris aime.*
2. *il cherche les abris.*
3. *on le voit.*

And five dependent propositions :—

1. *à recevoir la chaleur du soleil.*
2. *ayant besoin d'une température douce.*
3. *lorsqu'une lumière pure éclaire vivement un gazon en pente ou une muraille.*
4. *s'étendre sur ce mur, ou sur l'herbe nouvelle, avec un plaisir.*
5. *qui se devine aisément.*

1. *Le lézard gris aime*, principal proposition. Subject : *le lézard gris* ; simple, because there is only one ; complex, because its complement is *gris* ; verb : *est*, attribute : *aimant*, simple and complex, because its complement is the infinitive proposition *à recevoir la chaleur*, etc.

*A recevoir la chaleur du soleil*, dependent infinitive proposition. Subject : *lézard gris*, simple and complex ; verb : *être* ; attribute : *recevant*, simple and complex, because its complement is *la chaleur du soleil*.

2. *Il cherche les abris*, principal proposition. Subject: *il* (placed instead of *lézard*), simple and incomplex, because it has no complement; verb: *est*; attribute: *cherchant*, simple and complex, having as a complement *les abris*.

*Ayant besoin d'une température douce*, dependent *participial* proposition. The subject is *le lézard gris* (understood), simple and complex; verb: *est*; attribute: *ayant*, simple and complex, because it has for its complement *besoin d'une température douce*.

3. *On le voit*, principal proposition. Subject: *on*, simple and incomplex; verb: *est*; attribute: *voyant*, simple and complex, having for its complement *le* (put instead of *lui*).

*Lorsqu'une lumière pure éclaire vivement un gazon en pente ou une muraille*, dependent *conjunctive* proposition. Subject: *une lumière pure*, simple and complex; verb: *est*; attribute: *éclairant*, simple and complex, having as its complement *un gazon en pente*, etc.

*S'étendre sur ce mur, ou sur l'herbe nouvelle, avec un plaisir*, dependent *infinitive* proposition. Subject: *lézard gris* (replaced by *le*), simple and complex; verb: *être*; attribute: *étendant*, simple and complex, having as its direct complement *se*, and as its indirect complement *sur ce mur ou sur*, etc.

*Qui se devine aisément*, relative dependent proposition. Subject: *qui* (= *un plaisir*), simple and incomplex; verb: *est*; attribute: *devinant*, simple and complex, because it has for its complements *se* and *aisément*.

---

3. The *etymological* analysis studies the formation of words, and shows how the derived words are formed from the primitive ones.

#### Example :

Sur le penchant de quelque agréable coteau bien ombragé, je voudrais une petite maisonnette rustique, toute blanche, avec des contrevents verts,



*Sur*, simple preposition, used as a prefix, before adjectives and verbs.

*le*, simple article.

*penchant*, common noun derived from the verb *pencher*, through the *participle present*.

*de*, simple preposition.

*quelque*, adjective composed of *quel* and of the conjunction *que*.

*agréable*, adjective derived from the verb *agréer* with the suffix *able*.

*coteau*, common noun derived from *côte* with the suffix *eau*.

*bien*, adverb employed as prefix before adjectives and verbs.

*ombragé*, adjective derived from the verb *ombrager* through the past participle.

*je*, pronoun.

*souhaiterais*, verb in the cond. pres. derived from the infin. pres. with the imperf. of the verb *avoir*.

*une*, feminine article derived from *un* with the *e* mute, sign of the feminine.

*maisonnette*, common diminutive noun, formed from *maison*, with the suffix *ette*.

*rustique*, adjective, primitive word.

*toute*, feminine adjective formed from *tout* with the *e* mute, sign of the feminine.

*blanche*, feminine adjective formed from *blanc*, by the changing of *c* into *che*.

*avec*, simple preposition.

*des*, article formed from *de les*.

*contrevents*, common noun, derived from *vent* with the prefix *contre*, and *s*, sign of the plural.

*verts*, adjective, primitive word, to which *s*, sign of the plural, is added.

---

The pupils might now be required to give *visá voce*.—

1. A few adjectives or verbs formed with the help of the prefix *sur*, such as *surabondant*, *sur* <sup>naturel</sup> *surpasser*, *surmonter*, *surmener*, etc.

2. Adjectives or verbs formed with the help of the prefix *bien*, such as *bienséant*, *bienveillant*, *bienfaire*.

By taking, also, the *primitive* words in the above exercise, they might be asked to form the derived ones; thus: from *rus*, root of *rustique*, we have *rustre*, *rustaud*, *rusticité*. Again, from *vert* (formerly *verd*), we have *verdâtre*, *verdelet*, *verdeur*, *verdir*, *verdure*, *verdoyer*, etc.

---

# INDEX.

The numbers refer to the paragraphs in the grammar.

- à** and **en**, 468; repeated, 484.  
**à** and **de**, 485.  
**adjective**, agreement, 261-271; after nouns separated by *ou*, *ainsi que*, etc., 263; after a gradation, 264; after a verb having for its subject *nous*, *vous* used instead of *je*, *tu*, 318; compound adjective, 265; adjective used adverbially, 266, 267; adjective used with *gens*, 232; adjectives of colour, 271; position of the adjective, 279-282; degrees of comparison in adjectives, 283-288; how formed, 66; when followed by *de*, 234; by *que de*, 235; comparative repeated, 286; mood of the verb after a superlative, 288. *Numeral* adjectives. *cardinal*, 289-292; used instead of the ordinal, 294; *ordinal*, 293; adjective of dimensions, age, 295. 296. *Possessive*, 297-305; repeated, 298-300; replaced by *en* and the article, 302; replaced by the article, 303; before names of relations, 304, 305. *Indefinite*, 306-313. *Interrogative*, 364.  
**adverb**, adjectives used as adverbs, 266, 267; syntax of adverbs, 442-465; their place, 442-444.  
**aide**, 227.  
**aïeul**, 236, *see* 36.  
**aigle**, 227.  
**amour**, 227.  
**analysis**, in appendix.  
**article**, *definite*, when used, 251, 252; repeated, 253, 254; when not used, 255; before *plus*, *mieux*, *moins*, 256, 257; *indefinite* and *partitive*, 253, 259; article used instead of the possessive adjective, 302, 303.  
**attribute**, 224.  
**auparavant**, 460.  
**aussi**, 461, 464.  
**autant**, 461.  
**autrui**, 372.  
**auxiliary verbs**, 406-411.  
**avant**, **devant**, 471.  
**avoir**, as auxiliary, 406-409.  
**ça**, 337, 367.  
**ce**, followed by a verb in the sing. or plur., 339, 340; instead of *il*, *elle*, etc., 341, 342; used by redundancy, 343, 344; followed by *que de* in the second part of the sentence, 345; used in interrogations, 346, 388; number of the verb *être* after *ce*, 386, 387; before *ce*, 388.  
**cent**, 291.  
**chacun**, followed by *son*, *sa*, *ses*, 368-370; by *leur*, *leurs*. 369-370.  
**chaque**, 312.  
**chez**, 487.  
**chose**, 227.  
**ciel**, 236, *see* 34.  
**ci-inclus**, 277.  
**ci-joint**, 277.

- comparative**, 283; followed by *de, que* or *que de*, 284, 295; repeated, 286.
- comparison**, degrees of, *see adjective* and *comparative*.
- complement**, 225; of substantive, 246-250; of adjective, 279-282; of verbs, 396-405.
- conjunction**, 488-496; require the subjunctive mood, 488.
- coûté**, its agreement, 429.
- de crainte que**, followed by *ne* or *de*, 489, 490.
- crêpe**, 235.
- critique**, 227.
- dans** and **en**, 469, 470.
- davantage**, 460.
- de**, instead of *du*, etc., after *pas point*, 446; repeated, 484; *de* and *à*, 485, 486.
- délice**, 229.
- demi**, 275.
- depuis**, 478.
- dessous, sous**, 474, 475.
- dessus, sur**, 474, 475.
- de suite, tout de suite**, 465.
- devant, avant**, 471.
- do, did**, how translated, 411.
- dont**, 355; *dont, duquel, d'où*, 357.
- dormi**, its agreement, 429.
- dû**, its agreement, 435.
- en** (pronoun), instead of *son, sa, ses*, etc., 302; used for persons and things, 322.
- en** (preposition) and **à**, 468; *en* and *dans*, 469, 470; repeated, 484; what tense it governs, 483.
- entre, parmi**, 472.
- envers, vers**, 473.
- envers, vis-à-vis**, 480.
- être**, as auxiliary, 406-410.
- fait**, its agreement, 430, 435.
- feu**, 276.
- for**, how to translate it, 476, 477, 478.
- foudre**, 227.
- franc de port**, 278.
- gardé**, 227.
- gender of nouns**, 227-235.
- gent, gens**, 232.
- gentilhomme**, its plural, 242.
- grand**, 270.
- hymne**, 233.
- il**, replaced by *ce*, 341, 342.
- impersonal verbs**, their past participle, 423, 430.
- indicative**, after conjunctions, 488; after conjunctive locutions, 508, 509, 513, 514.
- in order to**, translated by *pour*, 402.
- le** (pronoun), 320, 321.
- lequel** and **qui**, 360, 363.
- livre**, 235.
- l'un l'autre**, 371.
- l'un et l'autre**, 371.
- madame**, its plural, 242.
- mademoiselle**, its plural, 242.
- maint**, 313.
- mal parler, parler mal**, 462.
- manche**, 235.
- manœuvre**, 227.
- même**, 311.
- mémoire**, 235.
- mille**, 292.
- mine**, a friend of, 336.
- modo**, 235.
- à moins que**, followed by *ne* or *de*, 489, 490.
- monsieur**, its plural, 242.
- moule**, 235.
- mousse**, 235.
- ne**, its place, 447-449; used before the second verb, 454; suppressed, 450, 455.
- neuter verbs**, their past participle, 422, 427-429.
- ni**, 492.
- non plus**, 464.

**noun**, *see* substantive.

**nu**, 275.

**œil**, 236, *see* 36.

**on**, its gender and number, 355; preceded by the article, 365; used to avoid naming a person, 367.

**orge**, 234.

**orgue**, 229.

**où**, 358; *d'où* and *dont*, 357.

**oui** and **si**, 463.

**own**, 333.

**page**, 235.

**par** and **de** after a passive verb, 400, 401.

**parce que**, **par ce que**, 495.

**parler mal**, **mal parler**, 462.

**parmi**, **entre**, 472.

**partant**, **pourtant**, 466.

**participle**, after a verb having for its subject *nous*, *vous*, used for *je*, *tu*, 318; present participle, 412; distinguished from the adjective, 413-416; past participle, general rules, 417-419, 440; past participle used with *être*, 420-423; with *avoir*, 425-430; past participle of reflexive verbs, 431-435; past participle followed by an infinitive, 435; preceded by *le*, 436; placed between two *que*'s, 437; preceded by *en*, 438; preceded by *le peu*, 439.

**pas**, used without *ne*, 450; suppressed, 457; suppressed or expressed, 456.

**passive verbs**, their past participle, 421; prepositions they govern, 400.

**pendant**, **durant**, 477.

**pendule**, 235.

**période**, 235.

**personne**, 379, 380.

**de peur que**, followed by *ne* or *de*, 489, 490.

**plus tôt**, **plutôt**, 459.

**poêle**, 235.

**point**, stronger than *pas*, 458.

**pour**, 402.

**preposition**, meaning in order to translated by *pour*, 402; syntax, 467-487; place of the preposition, 467; what tense prepositions govern, 483; prepositions repeated, 484.

**pronouns**, *personal*, conjunctive, 314-322; placed before the verb, 315; after the verb, 316; *le* when it agrees, 320; *le* after a negation, 321; *en*, *y*, 322; disjunctive, 323-325; reflexive, 326, 327; personal pronouns repeated, 328-330; *possessive*, 321-336; absolutely in the singular, 334; in the plural, 335; *demonstrative*, 337-346; *relative*, 347-360; always expressed in French, 362, and as near the antecedent as possible, 361; *interrogative*, 363, 364; *indefinite*, 365-370.

**proposition**, 220; simple, 221, 497; compound, 221, 497; number of propositions in a sentence, 498-501; subordinate, 502-507; **relative**, 519-522.

**pu**, its agreement, 435.

**quand**, **quant**, 493.

**que** and **qui**, 348, 349, 363; *que de* after a comparative, 285; after *ce*, 345; *que* used instead of another conjunction, 491-494.

**quel**, 364.

**quelque**, 399.

**qui** and **que**, 348, 349, 363; *qui* relative, without antecedent expressed, 350; repeated, 351; preceded by a preposition, 352; *de qui* and *duquel*, etc., 356; *qui* and *lequel*, 360, 363; *qui* interrogative, 363.

- quiconque**, 373.  
**qui que ce soit**, 373.  
**quoi**, relative pronoun, 353;  
*de quoi*, 354; interrogative  
 pronoun, 363.  
**quoique and quoi que**, 496.  
**quoi que ce soit**, 374.
- reflexive verbs**, their past  
 participle, 431-435.  
**rien**, 375-378.
- shall, will**, how translated,  
 411.  
**si**, 461, 463.  
**somme**, 235.  
**souris**, 235.  
**sous, dessous**, 474, 475.  
**statuaire**, 227.  
**subject**, 224; verb after one  
 subject, 381-389; after several,  
 390-395.  
**subjunctive**, after a super-  
 lative, 288; after a conjunc-  
 tion, 488; after conjunctive  
 locutions, 509, 510; after  
*que* used for *si*, 511; after  
 verbs of doubt, etc., 512, 514,  
 520, 522; after *le seul*, 521;  
 use of tenses of the subjunc-  
 tive, 515-518.  
**substantive**, its agreement,  
 226; gender of substantives,  
 227-235; number of sub-  
 stantive, 236-238; substan-  
 tive used only in the singular,  
 238; in the plural, 238;  
 plural of proper nouns, 239-  
 240; of nouns of foreign  
 origin, 241; of compound  
 nouns, 242-245; complement  
 of the substantive, 246-250.  
**de suite, tout de suite**, 455.  
**superlative**, *see* adjective.  
**sur, dessus**, 474, 475.
- tant**, 461.  
**témoin**, 237.  
**tenses of the subjunctive**,  
 use of, 515-518.
- à terre, par terre**, 468.  
**tour**, 235.  
**tout** (adj.) 307, (adv.) 308,  
 (pronoun) its place, 378.  
**travail**, 236, *see* 36.  
**à travers, au travers**, 431.
- un**, 290.
- valu**, its agreement, 429.  
**vase**, 235.  
**vécu**, its agreement, 429.  
**verb**, 224; agreement with one  
 simple subject, 381; after a  
 collective, 382, 383; after an  
 adverb of quantity, 384, 385;  
*être* after *ce*, 386, 387; b fore  
*ce*, 388; impersonal, 389;  
 agreement with several sub-  
 jects, 390-395; complement,  
 396-405; preposition governed  
 by passive verbs, 400; verbs  
 followed by no preposition,  
 402; by *à*, 404; by *de*, 405;  
 verbs which take *avoir* or  
*être*, and when, 406-410;  
 past participle of passive verbs  
 421; of neuter verbs, 422; of  
 impersonal verbs, 423; of  
 reflexive verbs, 431-435.
- vers, envers**, 472.  
**vingt**, 291.  
**vis-à-vis**, 479, 480.  
**voici, voilà**, 337, 482.  
**voile**, 235.  
**voulu**, its agreement, 435.  
**vcus.** used instead of *tu*, 318;  
 used instead of *on*, 367.
- what**, how to translate it, 338.  
**whatever**, how to translate it,  
 374.  
**whoever, whosoever**, how  
 translated, 373.  
**will, shall**, how translated,  
 411.
- y**, used for persons and things,  
 322.

# FRENCH-ENGLISH VOCABULARY.

## A

abandonner, *v.a.*, to for-  
 sake  
 accessit, *s.m.*, honorable  
 mention  
 accompagner, *v.a.*, to ac-  
 company  
 accorder, *v.a.*, to grant  
 accuser, *v.a.*, to accuse  
 acheter, *v.a.*, (achetant,  
 acheté, j'achète, j'ache-  
 tai, j'achèterai), to buy  
 acier, *s.m.*, steel  
 administration, *s.f.*, ad-  
 ministration  
 adresser, *v.a.*, to address;  
 s'adresser, *v.r.*, to ap-  
 ply  
 adroïtement, *adv.*, clever-  
 ly  
 Afrique, *s.p.* Africa  
 arriver, *v.n.*, to act  
 agréable, *adj.*, agreeable,  
 pleasant  
 aïeul, *s.*, (*plur.*, aïeux),  
 ancestor  
 aïeux, *see* aïeul  
 aimable, *adj.*, lovely  
 aimer, *v.a.*, to love, to  
 like  
 aller, *v.n.* (allant, allé,  
 je vais, j'allai, j'irai),  
 to go  
 ami, *s.m.*, friend  
 amour, *s.m.*, love  
 ancien, *adj.*, old, ancient

Anglais, *adj.*, English  
 Angleterre, *s. prop.*, Eng-  
 land  
 animal, *s.m.*, animal  
 année, *s.f.*, year  
 appartenir, *v.n.* (ap-  
 partenant, appartenu,  
 j'appartiens, j'appar-  
 tins, j'appartiendrai),  
 to belong  
 appartient, *see* appartenir  
 apprendre, *v.a.* (appre-  
 nant, appris, j'ap-  
 prends, j'appris), to  
 learn  
 appris, *see* apprendre  
 arbre, *s.m.*, tree  
 argent, *s.m.*, silver  
 arme, *s.f.*, arm  
 armée, *s.f.*, army  
 arranger, *v.a.*, to arrange,  
 to order  
 arriver, *v.n.*, to arrive  
 Asie, *s. prop.*, Asia  
 assemblée, *s.f.*, assembly  
 assurer, *v.a.*, to assure  
 attaquer, *v.a.*, to attack  
 Attique, *s.p.*, Attica  
 attribuer, *v.a.*, to attri-  
 bute  
 augmenter, *v.a.*, to in-  
 crease  
 aujourd'hui, *adv.*, to-day  
 autant, *adv.*, as much,  
 as many  
 automne, *s.m.*, autumn  
 autrefois, *adv.*, formerly

autrui, *adj.*, others  
 avant, *prep.*, before, pre-  
 vious to  
 avarice, *s.f.*, avarice

## B

bal, *s.m.*, ball (to dance  
 at)  
 bassesse, *s.f.*, meanness  
 bateau, *s.m.*, boat  
 battre, *v.a.*, to beat, to  
 strike; se battre, *v.r.*,  
 to fight  
 bavard, *s.m.*, talker,  
 chatterbox  
 beaucoup, *adv.*, much,  
 many  
 beau-frère, *s.m.*, brother-  
 in-law  
 Bernard (Saint), *s. prop.*,  
 St. Bernard  
 besoin, *s.m.*, want  
 beurre, *s.m.*, butter  
 bibliothèque, *s.f.*, library  
 bienséance, *s.f.*, good  
 manners, propriety  
 bientôt, *adv.*, soon  
 blanc, *adj.*, white  
 blesser, *v.a.*, to wound  
 boîte, *s.f.*, box; boîte à  
 ouvrage, workbox  
 bon, *adj.*, bonne, good  
 bonheur, *s.m.*, happiness  
 bonnement, *adv.*, simply  
 bordé, *adj.*, lined, hem-  
 med, trimmed  
 bouteille, *s.f.*, bottle

branche, *s.f.*, branch  
 brusquement, *adverb*,  
 quickly  
 butin, *s.m.*, booty

## C

ça, *pron.*, that  
 se cacher, *v.r.*, to hide  
 one's self  
 caisse, *s.f.*, case, box  
 campagne, *s.f.*, country;  
 en campagne, *campain*, in the field  
 capricieux, *adj.*, capricious, whimsical  
 carnassier, *adj.*, flesh eating  
 Carthage, *s.p.*, Carthage  
 casser, *v.a.*, to break  
 casse - noisettes, *s.m.*, nut-cracker  
 caverne, *s.f.*, cave  
 cela, *pron. dem.*, that  
 célèbre, *adj.*, celebrated  
 cent, *adj. num.*, hundred  
 centime, *s.m.*, centime  
 cérémonie, *s.f.*, ceremony  
 César, *s. prop.*, Cæsar  
 chacun, *pron.*, each  
 chambre, *s.f.*, room  
 chanter, *v.a.*, to sing  
 chapeau, *s.m.*, hat  
 chapitre, *s.m.*, chapter  
 chaque, *adj.*, each  
 charité, *s.f.*, charity  
 charmant, *adj.*, lively  
 chaumière, *s.f.*, cottage,  
 little thatched house  
 chercher, *v.a.*, to try  
 chez, *prep.*, at the house  
 of; chez moi, at my  
 house  
 chimiste, *s.m.*, chemist  
 chœur, *s.m.*, choir  
 chose, *s.f.*, thing  
 chrétien, *adj.*, christian  
 chute, *s.f.*, fall  
 cinq, *adj. num.*, five  
 cinquante, *adj. num.*,  
 fifty

cinquantième, *adj. num.*,  
 fiftieth  
 citoyen, *s.m.*, citizen  
 cœur, *s.m.*, heart  
 colonie, *s.f.*, colony  
 commander, *v.a.*, to command  
 comme, *prep.*, like, as  
 commencer, *v.a.*, to begin  
 comment, *adv.*, how  
 compagnon, *s.m.*, companion  
 comprendre, *v.a.* (com-  
 prenant, compris, je  
 comprends, je com-  
 pris), to understand,  
 to include  
 compris, *see* comprendre  
 connaître, *v.a.* (connais-  
 sant, connu, je connais,  
 je connais), to know  
 se confier, *v.r.*, to trust  
 one's self  
 connu, *see* connaître  
 conquérir, *v.a.* (conquér-  
 rant, conquis, je con-  
 quiers, je conquis), to  
 conquer  
 conscience, *s.f.*, con-  
 science  
 conserver, *v.a.*, to keep,  
 to preserve  
 consister, *v.a.*, to consist  
 constitution, *s.f.*, consti-  
 tution  
 content, *adj.*, satisfied  
 conter, *v.a.*, to relate, to  
 tell  
 contrevent, *s.m.*, shutter  
 convainquant, *adj.*, con-  
 vincing  
 convenance, *s.f.*, propriety  
 convenir, *v.n.* (convenant,  
 convenu, je conviens,  
 je convins, je convien-  
 drai), to suit, to agree  
 convenu, *see* convenir  
 converser, *v.n.*, to con-  
 verse, to talk

corps, *s.m.*, body  
 corriger, *v.a.*, to correct  
 côte, *s.f.*, coast  
 côté, *s.m.*, side  
 coteau, *s.m.*, hill, hillock  
 coucher, *v.a.* and *n.*, to  
 lie down, to sleep  
 coup, *s.m.*, knock, blow  
 coup d'œil, *s.m.*, glance  
 courage, *s.m.*, courage  
 cours, *s.m.*, course of  
 lectures  
 courtisan, *s.m.*, courtier  
 cousin, *s.m.*, cousin  
 coûter, *v.a.*, to cost  
 couvrir, *v.a.*, to hatch, to  
 sit (for hatching)  
 couvert, *adj.*, covered  
 de crainte que, *conj.*, for  
 fear that  
 créer, *v.a.*, to create, to  
 establish  
 critique, *s.m.*, critic  
 critique, *s.f.*, criticism  
 cruel, *adj.*, cruel  
 cueillir, *v.a.* (cueillant  
 cueilli, je cueille, je  
 cueillis, je cueillerai)  
 to gather  
 curieux, *adj.*, curious  
 strange

## D

dame, *s.f.*, lady  
 dans, *prep.*, in, into  
 déchaîner, *v.a.*, to let  
 loose, to bring on  
 décider, *v.a.*, to decide  
 déclarer, *v.a.*, to declare  
 déesse, *s.f.*, goddess  
 défaire, *v.a.* (défaisant  
 défait, je défais, je  
 défais), to defeat, to und  
 défait, *s.m.*, fault, defect  
 défait, *see* défaire  
 déjà, *adv.*, already  
 déjeuner, *s.m.*, breakfast  
 délice, *s.m.* or *f.*, delight  
 demain, *adv.*, to-morro



demander, *v.a.*, to ask,  
to demand  
demi, *adj.*, half  
depuis, *prep.*, since  
dernier, *adj.*, last  
désastrenx, *adj.*, disas-  
trous  
descendre, *v.a.*, to descend  
destiner, *v.a.*, to destine  
détour, *s.m.*, turn, ways  
détruire, *v.a.* (détruisant,  
détruit, je détruis, je  
détruisis), to destroy  
deux, *adj.num.*, two  
devant, *prep.*, before, in  
front of  
devenir, *v.a.* and *n.* (de-  
venant, devenu, je de-  
viens, je devins), to  
become  
devenir, *see* devenir  
devoir, *s.m.*, exercise,  
duty  
devoir, *v.a.* (devant, dû,  
je dois, je dus, je de-  
vrai), to owe  
dévorer, *v.a.*, to devour,  
to eat up  
diamant, *s.m.*, diamond  
Dieu, *s.m.*, God  
différence, *s.f.*, difference  
difficilement, *adv.*, with  
difficulty  
dimanche, *s.m.*, Sunday  
dîner, *v.n.*, to dine  
dire, *v.a.* (disant, dit, je  
dis, je dis), to say, to  
tell  
discours, *s.m.*, discourse,  
speech  
disette, *s.f.*, scarcity,  
dearth  
distinguer, *v.a.*, to dis-  
tinguish  
distribution, *s.f.*, distri-  
bution  
dit, *see* dire  
divertir, *v.a.*, to divert  
divinité, *s.f.*, deity, god,  
goddess

dix, *adj.num.*, ten  
docilité, *s.f.*, docility  
doit, *see* devoir  
domaine, *s.m.*, dominion  
domestique, *s.m.* or *f.*,  
servant  
dominant, *adj.*, chief,  
ruling  
don, *s.m.*, gift, present  
dont, *pron.*, of which  
douter, *v.n.*, to doubt  
droiture, *s.f.*, straight-  
forwardness, upright-  
ness

## E

ébruiter, *v.a.*, to spread  
about  
éclater, *v.n.*, to burst  
école, *s.f.*, school  
écouter, *v.a.*, to listen  
écriviez, *see* écrire  
écrire, *v.a.* (écrivant,  
écrit, j'écris, j'écrivis),  
to write  
écriture, *s.f.*, writing  
écureuil, *s.m.*, squirrel  
édifice, *s.m.*, building  
égal, *adj.*, equal  
eh bien! *int.*, well!  
élever, *v.a.*, to raise,  
l'armée s'élevait, the  
army numbered  
émigrant, *s.m.*, emigrant  
empire, *s.m.*, empire,  
command  
ému, *adj.*, moved  
en, *pron.*, of it, of that,  
of him, of her, of them  
en, *prep.*, in, into  
enceinte, *s.f.*, enclosure  
encourager, *v.a.*, to en-  
courage  
encre, *s.f.*, ink  
enfant, *s.m.*, child  
engager, *v.a.*, to advise,  
to engage  
ennemi, *s.m.*, enemy  
ensemble, *adv.*, together

envieux, *s.m.*, envious  
people  
environ, *adv.*, about  
épine, *s.f.*, thorn  
épargner, *v.a.*, to spare,  
to save  
époque, *s.f.*, epoch, time  
éprouver, *v.a.*, to prove,  
to experience  
Espagne, *s. prop.*, Spain  
espérer, *v.a.*, to hope  
esprit, *s.m.*, wit, mind  
essayer, *v.a.*, to try  
estimer, *v.a.*, to esteem  
été, *s.m.*, summer  
étonnant, *adj.*, astonish-  
ing, surprising  
étude, *s.f.*, study  
étudier, *v.a.*, to study  
éviter, *v.a.*, to avoid  
exiger, *v.a.*, to exact  
exister, *v.n.*, to exist  
expédier, *v.a.*, to send

## F

fabricant, *s.m.*, maker  
facile, *adj.*, easy  
façon, *s.f.*, fashion, man-  
ner, kind  
faim, *s.f.*, hunger  
fait, *s.m.*, fact  
faire, *v.a.* (faisant, fait,  
je fais, je fis, je ferai),  
to do, to make  
falloir, *v.n.unip.* (fallu, il  
faut, il fallut, il faut-  
dra), to be necessary  
fallu, *see* falloir  
famille, *s.f.*, family  
fat, *adj.*, foppish  
faute, *s.f.*, mistake  
femelle, *s.f.*, female  
femme, *s.f.*, woman  
fer, *s.m.*, iron  
fera, *see* faire  
feu, *s.m.*, fire  
feu, *adj.*, deceased  
finir, *v.a.*, to finish  
flatter, *v.a.*, to flatter

fêcher, *v.a.*, to make to yield  
 fois, *s.f.*, time ; à la fois, at the same time  
 folie, *s.f.*, folly  
 fondation, *s.f.*, foundation  
 fonder, *v.a.*, to build, to erect  
 font, *see* faire  
 forcer, *v.a.*, to break open  
 fortune, *s.f.*, fortune  
 fossé, *s.m.*, ditch  
 foudre, *s.f.*, thunderbolt  
 foule, *s.f.*, multitude, crowd  
 franc, *adj.*, frank, free, open  
 français, *adj.*, French  
 frère, *s.m.*, brother  
 fromage, *s.m.*, cheese  
 fruit, *s.m.*, fruit  
 fusil, *s.m.*, gun

## G

gage, *s.m.*, wages, pledge  
 gagner, *v.a.*, to win  
 gare, *s.f.*, station, terminus  
 geler, *v.a.*, to freeze  
 général, *s.m.*, general  
 genre, *s.m.*, gender, kind ; genre humain, mankind  
 gens, *s.m.* or *f.*, people ; gens de lettres, *s.m.pl.*, men of letters  
 gentillesse, *s.f.*, gentleness  
 grammaire, *s.f.*, grammar  
 grand, *adj.*, tall, great, large  
 grandeur, *s.f.*, greatness  
 grand route, *s.f.*, high road  
 gratuitement, *adv.*, gratuitously  
 grec, *s.m.*, Greek  
 grièvement, *adv.*, seriously

gris-foncé, *adj.*, dark grey  
 grossier, *adj.*, coarse, great  
 guerre, *s.f.*, war  
 guerrier, *s.m.*, warrior  
 Guillaume, *s.prop.*, William

## H

habileté, *s.f.*, cleverness  
 habitant, *s.m.*, inhabitant  
 habiter, *v.a.*, to live, to dwell  
 haïr, *v.a.*, to hate  
 haut, *adj.*, high  
 Henri, *s.prop.*, Henry  
 heure, *s.f.*, hour ; de bonne heure, early  
 heureux, *adj.*, happy  
 hier, *adv.*, yesterday  
 histoire, *s.f.*, history, story  
 historiette, *s.f.*, little story  
 hiver, *s.m.*, winter  
 homme, *s.m.*, man  
 honnête, *adj.*, honest  
 honnêteté, *s.f.*, honesty  
 honneur, *s.m.*, honour  
 horrible, *adj.*, horrible  
 huit, *adj.num.*, eight  
 humain, *adj.*, humane, human  
 hymne, *s.m.* or *f.*, hymn

## I

ignorer, *v.a.*, to ignore  
 illustre, *adj.*, illustrious  
 il y a, there is, there are  
 immédiatement, *adv.*, immediately, at once  
 impertinent, *adj.*, impertinent  
 importer, *v.unip.*, to be important  
 importun, *s.m.*, importunate person, troublesome person  
 importuner, *v.a.*, to importune, to trouble  
 inaltérable, *adj.*, unchangeable

incendie, *s.m.*, fire  
 inclure, *v.a.*, to include  
 indignation, *s.f.*, indignation  
 inhumain, *adj.*, inhuman  
 informer, *v.a.*, to inform  
 injuste, *adj.*, unjust  
 innocence, *s.f.*, innocence  
 insatiable, *adj.*, unsatisfiable, unquenchable  
 inscription, *s.f.*, inscription  
 intéresser, *v.a.*, to interest  
 intérêt, *s.m.*, interest  
 inventer, *v.a.*, to invent  
 irez, *see* aller  
 Italie, *s.p.*, Italy

## J

jamais, *adv.*, never  
 jambe, *s.f.*, leg  
 jardin, *s.m.*, garden  
 jeter, *v.a.*, to throw  
 jeudi, *s.m.*, Thursday  
 jeune, *adj.*, young  
 joie, *s.f.*, joy  
 joli, *adj.*, pretty  
 jouer, *v.a.* and *n.*, to play  
 jour, *s.m.*, day, light  
 juger, *v.a.*, to judge

## L

lâche, *adj.*, coward  
 lâchement, *adj.*, cowardly  
 laisser, *v.a.*, to let, to leave  
 lait, *s.m.*, milk  
 large, *adj.*, wide  
 latin, *s.m.*, Latin  
 leçon, *s.f.*, lesson  
 lettre, *s.f.*, letter  
 leur, *adj.*, their  
 lieue, *s.f.*, league  
 lire, *v.a.* (lisant, lu, jolis, je lus), to read  
 lisez, *see* read  
 livre, *s.f.*, pound (sterling), pound (weight)  
 livre, *s.m.*, book  
 loi, *s.f.*, law  
 Londres, *s.p.*, London

long, *adj.*, long  
 longtemps, *adv.*, a long  
 time  
 louer, *v.a.*, to let, to hire,  
 to praise  
 lui, *pron.*, him, to him,  
 to her, to it  
 lumière, *s.f.*, light  
 lundi, *s.m.*, Monday

## M

mademoiselle, *s.f.*, miss  
 madrigal, *s.m.*, madrigal  
 maint, *adj.*, many  
 mais, *conj.*, but  
 maison, *s.f.*, house  
 maisonnette, *s.f.*, little  
 house  
 majesté, *s.f.*, majesty  
 mal, *adv.*, ill  
 mal, *s.m.*, evil, hurt, in-  
 jury, harm, pain  
 malade, *adj.*, ill  
 mâle, *s.m.*, male  
 malheur, *s.m.*, misfortune  
 maltraiter, *v.a.*, to ill treat  
 manger, *v.a.*, to eat  
 manière, *s.f.*, manner;  
 de manière que, so that  
 manquer, *v.a.*, to fail  
 marchandise, *s.f.*, goods,  
 merchandise  
 marcher, *v.n.*, to walk  
 maréchal, *s.m.*, marshal  
 Marseille, *s.prop.*, Mar-  
 seilles  
 mathématicien, *s.m.*,  
 mathematician  
 matin, *s.m.*, morning  
 mauvais, *adj.*, bad  
 méchant, *adj.*, naughty,  
 evil  
 médaille, *s.f.*, medal  
 médecine, *s.f.*, medicine  
 meilleur, *adj.*, better, best  
 mêler, *v.a.*, to mix  
 menace, *s.f.*, threat  
 mère, *s.f.*, mother  
 mérite, *s.m.*, merit  
 messieurs, *see* monsieur

métal, *s.m.*, metal  
 mètre, *s.m.*, metre  
 midi, *s.m.*, south  
 midi, *adv.*, noon  
 mien, *pron.*, mine  
 mieux, *adv.*, better  
 mil, *see* mille  
 mille, *adj.num.*, thousand  
 mine, *s.f.*, mine  
 mineur, *adj.*, minor,  
 lesser, under age  
 modeste, *adj.*, modest  
 mœurs, *s.f. pl.*, manners  
 moi, *pron.*, me  
 moins, *adv.*, less  
 mois, *s.m.*, month  
 monde, *s.m.*, world; tout  
 le monde, every one,  
 everybody  
 monsieur, *s.m.*, gentle-  
 man, sir, Mr.  
 mont, *s.m.*, mount,  
 mountain  
 monter, *v.a.* and *n.*, to  
 ascend  
 montrer, *v.a.*, to show  
 se moquer, *v.r.*, to joke  
 motif, *s.m.*, motive  
 moule, *s.m.*, mould,  
 shape  
 moule, *s.f.*, mussel  
 moyen, *s.m.*, means  
 musée, *s.m.*, museum  
 musicien, *s.m.*, musician  
 naître, *v.* (naissant, né  
 je nais, je naquis, je  
 naîtrai), to be born

## N

nature, *s.f.*, nature  
 naturel, *adj.*, natural  
 naufrage, *s.m.*, shipwreck  
 naufrage, *s.m.*, wreck;  
 faire naufrage, to be  
 wrecked  
 né, *see* naître  
 négligent, *adj.*, negligent  
 nier, *v.a.*, to deny  
 nom, *s.m.*, name, noun  
 nombre, *s.m.*, number

nombreux, *adj.*, num-  
 rous  
 nourri, *see* nourrir  
 nourrir, *v.a.*, to feed,  
 nourish  
 nouvelle, *s.f.*, news  
 noyau, *s.m.*, stone  
 nu-pieds, *adj.*, bare-  
 footed  
 nuisible, *adj.*, hurtful  
 nul, *adj.*, no one

## O

obéir, *v.n.*, to obey  
 obéissance, *s.f.*, obe-  
 dience  
 obliger, *v.a.*, to oblige  
 obtenir, *v.* (obtenant,  
 obtenu, j'obtiens, j'ob-  
 tins, j'obtiens, j'ob-  
 tains, j'obtiens, j'ob-  
 tains, j'obtiens, j'ob-  
 tains)  
 œuf, *s.m.*, egg  
 œil, *s.m.* (*pl.*, yeux), eye  
 oiseau, *s.m.*, bird  
 ombrager, *v.a.*, to shade  
 opinion, *s.f.*, opinion  
 opprimer, *v.a.*, to oppress  
 or, *s.m.*, gold  
 orage, *s.m.*, storm  
 ordonner, *v.a.*, to order  
 ordre, *s.m.*, order  
 orgue, *s.m.* or *f.*, organ  
 oser, *v.a.*, to dare  
 ou, *conj.*, or  
 où, *adv.*, where  
 oublier, *v.a.*, to forget  
 oui, *adv.*, yes  
 ouvrage, *s.m.*, work

## P

page, *s.f.*, page  
 pain, *s.m.*, bread  
 paraître, *v.n.* (paraissant,  
 paru, je parais, je  
 parus), to appear  
 parler, *v.n.*, to speak  
 paratonnerre, *s.m.*, light-  
 ning rod  
 parce que, *conj.*, because  
 paresseux, *adj.*, idle

parfaitement, *adj.*, perfectly  
 parole, *s.f.*, word, language  
 partager, *v.a.*, to divide  
 partant, *adv.*, therefore  
 partir, *v.n.* (partant, parti, je pars, je partis), to go, to depart, to leave  
 paru, *see* paraître  
 parvenir, *v.n.* (parvenant, parvenu, je parviens, je parvins, je parviendrai), to attain  
 parvenu, *see* parvenir  
 pas, *s.m.*, step  
 passage, *s.m.*, passage  
 passer, *v.a.*, to live, to pass  
 passion, *s.f.*, passion  
 patrie, *s.f.*, country  
 pauvre, *adj.*, poor  
 payer, *v.a.*, to pay  
 pays, *s.m.*, country  
 paysan, *s.m.*, peasant  
 pêche, *s.f.*, peach, fishing  
 peine, *s.f.*, trouble, difficulty; à peine, hardly  
 Péloponnèse, *s.p.m.*, Peloponnesus  
 penchant, *s.m.*, slope  
 pendant, *prep.*, for, during  
 pénétrer, *v.a.*, to enter  
 penser, *v.a.*, to think, to believe  
 pepin, *s.m.*, pip [break  
 percer, *v.a.*, to pierce, to  
 perdre, *v.a.*, to lose  
 perdu, *see* perdre  
 périr, *v.n.*, to perish  
 permettre, *v.a.* (permettant, permis, je permets, je permis, je permettrai), to permit, to allow  
 Pérou, *s.pr.*, Peru  
 persécuter, *v.a.*, to persecute

personne, *s.f.*, person  
 petit, *adj.*, little  
 peu, *adv.*, little  
 peut, *see* pouvoir  
 Pharsale, *s.prop.*, Pharsalia  
 philosophe, *s.m.*, philosopher  
 phocéen, *s.pr.*, Phocœan  
 pied, *s.m.*, foot  
 pierre, *s.f.*, stone  
 pistolet, *s.m.*, pistol  
 place, *s.f.*, place, situation  
 placer, *v.a.*, to place  
 plaie, *v.n.* (plaisant, plu, je plais, je plus), to please  
 plaisir, *s.m.*, pleasure  
 plait, *see*, plaie  
 pleuvoir, *v.imp.* (pleuvant, plu, il pleut, il plut, il pleuvra), to rain  
 plu, *see* pleuvoir and plaie  
 la plupart, *adv.*, most  
 plus, *adv.*, more  
 plusieurs, *adj.*, many  
 plutôt...que, *loc. conj.*, rather...than  
 poêle, *s.m.*, stove  
 poêle, *s.f.*, frying-pan  
 polir, *v.a.*, to polish  
 politesse, *s.f.*, politeness  
 pomme, *s.f.*, apple  
 port, *s.m.*, carriage, port  
 porte-clefs, *s.m.*, turn-key  
 portée, *s.f.*, reach  
 poste, *s.f.*, post (for letters)  
 poste, *s.m.*, place, office  
 pot, *s.m.*, jug; pot au lait, milk-jug  
 poule, *s.f.*, hen  
 poursuivre, *v.a.* (poursuivant, poursuivi, je poursuis, je poursuivis, je poursuivrai), to pursue  
 poutre, *s.f.*, beam

pouvoir, *v.a.* (pouvant, pu, je peux, je pus, je pourrai), to be able  
 se précipiter, *v.r.*, to rush  
 prendre, *v.a.* (prenant, pris, je prends, je pris), to take  
 prends, *see* prendre  
 premier, *adj.num.*, first  
 prenez, *see* prendre  
 présenter, *v.a.*, to present, to introduce  
 préserver, *v.a.*, to keep, to preserve  
 président, *n.m.*, president  
 présider, *v.a.* and *n.*, to preside  
 presser, *v.a.*, to press  
 prêter, *v.a.*, to lend  
 preuve, *s.f.*, proof  
 prier, *v.a.*, to pray, to beg  
 prière, *s.f.*, prayer  
 prince, *s.m.*, prince  
 printemps, *s.m.*, spring  
 prix, *s.m.*, prize  
 probité, *s.f.*, honesty  
 prochain, *adj.*, next  
 professeur, *s.m.*, teacher, professor  
 profiter, *v.a.*, to profit  
 profondeur, *s.f.*, depth  
 projet, *s.m.*, project  
 se promener, *v.r.*, to walk  
 propre, *adj.*, proper, own  
 cleu  
 protection, *s.f.*, protection  
 Prusse, *s.prop.*, Prussia  
 puisse, *see* pouvoir  
 punir, *v.a.*, to punish

## Q

qualité, *s.f.*, quality  
 quand, *conj.*, when  
 quarante, *adj.num.*, forty  
 quatre, *adj.num.*, four  
 que, *adv.*, how; que de, how much, how many

que, *conj.*, that; ne...  
que, only  
quel, *adj.*, what, which  
quelque, *adj.*, some  
quelque, *adv.*, however  
quelquefois, *adv.*, some-  
times  
quiconque, *adj.*, whoever

## B

rabattre, *v.a.*, to beat  
down (a price), to take  
off (money)  
raconter, *v.a.*, to relate  
raisin, *s.m.*, grapes, raisin  
raison, *s.f.*, reason  
ramasser, *v.a.*, to pick up  
rapprocher, *v.a.*, to bring  
near  
rarement, *adv.*, rarely,  
unfrequently  
ravi, *adj.*, delighted  
recevoir, *v.a.*, to receive  
recevra, *see* recevoir  
réciter, *v.a.*, to recite  
récolte, *s.f.*, harvest  
recommandable, *adj.*,  
commendable  
réflexion, *s.f.*, reflexion  
refuser, *v.a.*, to refuse  
région, *s.f.*, region  
règle, *s.f.*, rule  
regretter, *v.a.*, to regret  
reine, *s.f.*, queen  
relier, *v.a.*, to bind (a  
book)  
règne, *s.m.*, reign  
rempart, *s.m.*, rampart,  
bulwark  
remporter, *v.a.*, to carry  
away, to win, to obtain,  
to gain  
rencontre, *s.f.*, meeting  
rencontrer, *v.a.*, to meet  
rendre, *v.a.*, to make, to  
render, to give back  
rendu, *see* rendre  
repartir, *v.a.*, to set out  
again (*see* partir)

se repentir, *v.r.*, to  
repent  
repolir, *v.a.*, to polish  
again  
respecter, *v.a.*, to respect  
revenir, *v.n.* (revenant,  
revenu, je reviens, je  
revins, je reviendrai),  
to come back, to re-  
turn, to reconsider, to  
retract  
reverrai, *see* revoir  
revoir, *v.a.* (revoyant,  
revu, je revois, je revis,  
je reverrai), to see again  
réussir, *v.a.* and *n.*, to  
succeed  
richesse, *s.f.*, wealth,  
riches  
ridicule, *adj.*, ridiculous  
rien, *adv.*, nothing  
rire, *v.n.*, to laugh  
rivage, *s.m.*, coast  
roi, *s.m.*, king  
roman, *s.m.*, novel  
Romain, *s.m.*, Roman  
rose, *s.f.*, rose  
rossignol, *s.m.*, nightin-  
gale  
Russie, *s.p.*, Russia  
rustique, *adj.*, rustic

## S

sage, *s.m.*, sage, wise man  
Saint-Bernard, *s.p.*, St.  
Bernard  
sais, *see* savoir  
saisir, *v.a.*, to take hold of  
saison, *s.f.*, season  
salle, *s.f.*, hall, room  
sans, *prep.*, without  
satisfaire, *v.a.* (satisfai-  
sant, satisfait, je satis-  
fais, je satisfis, je  
satisferai), to satisfy  
savant, *adj.*, learned  
savoir, *v.a.* (sachant, su,  
je sais, je sus, je sau-  
rai, que je sache, que je  
sasse) to know

sauterelle, *s.f.*, grass-  
hopper  
sauvage, *adj.*, savage,  
wild  
selon, *prep.*, according to  
sensible, *adj.*, sensitive,  
kind hearted  
sentiment, *s.m.*, senti-  
ment  
sérail, *s.m.*, seraglio  
sert, *see* servir  
servir, *v.* (servant, servi,  
je sers, je servis), to use  
seul, *adj.*, only, only one,  
alone  
si, *conj.*, if  
siècle, *s.m.*, century  
sire, *s.m.*, sire  
sœur, *s.f.*, sister  
soi-même, *adj.*, himself,  
herself, itself  
soi, *pron.*, one's self  
soir, *s.m.*, evening  
soixante, *adj.num.*, sixty  
soldat, *s.m.*, soldier  
soleil, *s.m.*, sun  
songer, *v.a.*, to think, to  
believe  
sors, *see* sortir  
en sorte que, *conj.*, so that  
sortir, *v.a.* and *n.* (je sors,  
je sortis, sortant, sorti)  
to go out, to come out  
sot, *adj.*, stupid  
se soucier, *v.r.*, to care  
souffrant, *adj.*, suffering  
souhaiter, *v.a.*, to wish  
soumettre, *v.a.* (soumet-  
tant, soumis, je sou-  
mets, je soumis), to  
submit  
soupir, *s.m.*, sigh  
souvent, *adv.*, often  
style, *s.m.*, style  
suite, *s.f.*, sequence, fol-  
lowing; à la suite de,  
after  
suivre, *v.a.* (suivant,  
suivi, je suis, je sui-  
vis), to follow

superbe, *adj.*, superb, splendid  
 sur, *prep.*, on  
 sûr, *adj.*, certain  
 surprenant, *see* surprendre  
 surprendre, *v.a.* (surprenant, surpris, je surprends, je surpris) overtake, surprise  
 surpris, *adj.*, surprised  
 surtout, *adv.*, especially, above all  
 survécu, *see* survivre  
 survivre, *v.n.* (survivant, survécus, je survécus), to outlive

## T

tableau, *s.m.*, picture  
 talent, *s.m.*, talent  
 tant, *adv.*, so much  
 tante, *s.f.*, aunt  
 tard, *adv.*, late  
 témoin, *s.m.*, witness  
 température, *s.f.*, temperature  
 terme, *s.m.*, term, word  
 terminer, *v.a.*, to terminate, to finish  
 terre, *s.f.*, earth, land, ground  
 tête, *s.f.*, head  
 tomber, *v.n.*, to fall  
 tort, *s.m.*, wrong  
 toucher, *v.a.*, to touch, to be close to  
 toujours, *adv.*, always  
 Touraine, *s.m.*, Touraine (the country in the neighbourhood of Tours)

tous, *see* tout  
 tout, *adj.* (toute, tous, toutes), all  
 tout le monde, *pron.*, every body  
 tout de suite, *loc.adv.*, directly  
 trahir, *v.a.*, to betray  
 trahison, *s.f.*, treason  
 trajet, *s.m.*, journey, distance  
 tranquilliser, *v.a.*, to quiet  
 travailler, *v.n.*, to work  
 très, *adv.*, very  
 tribu, *s.f.*, tribe  
 trois, *adj.num.*, three  
 tromper, *v.a.*, to deceive  
 se tromper, *v.r.*, to mistake, to deceive one's self  
 trône, *s.m.*, throne  
 trop, *adv.*, too, too much  
 troupe, *s.f.*, troop  
 trouver, *v.a.*, to find

## U

un, *adj.num.*, one  
 uni, *adj.*, smooth  
 univers, *s.m.*, universe  
 usage, *s.m.*, custom  
 utile, *adj.*, useful

## V

vaincre, *v.a.*, to conquer  
 vapeur, *s.f.*, vapour, steam  
 vase, *s.f.*, mud  
 vendre, *v.a.*, to sell  
 venir, *v.n.* (venant, venu, je viens, je vins, je viendrai), to come

venu, *see* venir  
 véritable, *adj.*, true  
 vérité, *s.f.*, truth  
 verre, *s.m.*, glass  
 vers, *s.m.*, verse  
 vers, *prep.*, towards, about  
 vert, *adj.*, green  
 vertu, *s.f.*, virtue  
 vêtement, *s.m.*, clothing  
 veuillez, *from* vouloir, please  
 veux, *see* vouloir  
 victoire, *s.f.*, victory  
 vieillard, *s.m.*, old man  
 viens, *see* venir  
 village, *s.m.*, village  
 ville, *s.f.*, town  
 vin, *s.m.*, wine  
 vingt, *adj.num.*, twenty  
 violent, *adj.*, violent  
 vivre, *v.n.*, to live  
 voici, *adv.*, here is, here are  
 voir, *v.a.* (voyant, vu, je vois, je vis, je verrai), to see  
 voisin, *adj.*, neighbouring  
 volume, *s.m.*, volume  
 voter, *v.a.*, to vote  
 vouloir, *v.a.*, to will, to wish  
 voyager, *v.n.*, to travel  
 vrai, *adj.*, true, mere, downright  
 vraiment, *adv.*, truly, indeed  
 vu, *see* voir

## Y

y, *adv.*, there  
 y, *pron.*, to it

# ENGLISH-FRENCH VOCABULARY.

## A

About, *prep.*, pour, à propos de  
 accident, *s.*, accident (*m.*)  
 accomplished, *adj.*, accompli  
 acquittal, *s.*, acquittement (*m.*)  
 action, *s.*, action, acte  
 adhering, *adj.*, adhérent  
 admit, *v.*, admettre *irr.*  
 admire, *v.*, admirer  
 advice, *s.*, avis (*m.*), conseil (*m.*)  
 after, *prep.*, après  
 age, *s.*, âge (*m.*)  
 agree, *v.*, s'accorder, tomber d'accord  
 aim, *s.*, but (*m.*)  
 air, *s.*, air (*m.*)  
 all, *adj.*, tout  
 allude, *v.*, faire allusion  
 although, *conj.*, quoique  
 America, *s.*, Amérique (*f.*)  
 amiable, *adj.*, aimable  
 animal, *s.*, animal (*m.*)  
 anybody, *pron.*, qui que ce soit, n'importe qui  
 author, *s.*, auteur (*m.*)  
 argument, *s.*, argument (*m.*)  
 arm, *s.*, bras (*m.*)  
 army, *s.*, armée (*f.*)  
 as *conj.*, comme, que  
 as . . . as, aussi . . . que

as, *conj.*, comme; as much, as many, autant de  
 ashamed, *adj.*, honteux  
 assistant, *s.*, aide  
 assure, *v.*, assurer  
 astonish, *v.*, étonner  
 at home, *adj.*, à la maison, chez moi, chez toi, chez lui, etc.  
 attend, *v.*, suivre  
 attention, *s.*, attention (*f.*)  
 avoid, *v.*, éviter

## B

bare, *adj.*, nu  
 barking, *s.*, aboiement (*m.*)  
 battle, *s.*, bataille (*f.*)  
 beautiful, *adj.*, beau, bel  
 become, *v.*, devenir *irr.*  
 bed-room, *s.*, chambre à coucher  
 beer, *s.*, bière (*f.*)  
 beggar, *s.*, mendiant (*m.*)  
 begin, *v.*, commencer  
 behind, *prep.* and *adv.*, derrière  
 believe, *v.*, croire, *irr.*  
 belong, *v.*, appartenir, *irr.*, être à . . .  
 betray, *v.*, trahir  
 bind, *v.*, lier, relier  
 blame, *v.*, blâmer [(*m.*)  
 bleating, *s.*, bêlement  
 blue, *adj.*, bleu  
 bonnet, *s.*, bonnet (*m.*), chapeau (*m.*)

book, *s.*, livre (*m.*)  
 boot-jack, *s.*, tire-bottes  
 both, *pron.*, l'un et l'autre; both, *adv.*, à fois  
 bottle, *s.*, bouteille (*f.*)  
 box, *s.*, boîte (*f.*)  
 boy, *s.*, garçon (*m.*), enfant (*m.*)  
 bracelet, *s.*, bracelet (*m.*)  
 break, *v.*, casser  
 bring, *v.*, apporter; bring down, descendre; bring about, amener  
 brother, *s.*, frère (*m.*)  
 business, *s.*, affaire (*f.*) (trade) affaires (*f.pl.*)  
 but, *prep.*, mais  
 buy, *v.*, acheter  
 by, *prep.*, par, de

## C

caddy, *s.*, boîte; teacaddy, boîte à thé  
 call, *v.*, appeler; call on, passer chez; call at, passer à; call again, revenir, *irr.*  
 call to account, s'excuser, prendre à  
 calumny, *s.*, calomnie (*f.*)  
 can, *v.*, pouvoir, *irr.*  
 carriage, *s.*, voiture (*f.*)  
 castor, *s.*, castor (*m.*)  
 certain, *adj.*, certain  
 chair, *s.*, chaise (*f.*)  
 Charles, *s.*, Charles

charm, *v.*, charmer  
 chief, *adj.*, principal  
 child, *s.*, enfant (*m.*)  
 circumstance, *s.*, circon-  
 stance (*f.*)  
 city, *s.*, ville (*f.*), cité (*f.*)  
 claim, *v.*, demander  
 clerk, *s.*, commis (*m.*)  
 colour, *s.*, couleur (*f.*)  
 come, *v.*, venir, *irr.*;  
 come out, sortir. *irr.*  
 complain, *v.*, se plain-  
 dre  
 condemn, *v.*, condamner  
 condition, *s.*, condition  
 (*f.*)  
 confused, *adj.*, troublé  
 conqueror, *s.*, conquérant  
 (*m.*)  
 consult, *v.*, consulter  
 convince, *v.*, convaincre,  
*irr.*  
 correct, *v.*, corriger  
 cost, *v.*, coûter  
 countersign, *v.*, contre-  
 signer  
 country, *s.*, campagne (*f.*)  
 courage, *s.*, courage (*f.*)  
 court, *s.*, cour, impasse  
 (*f.*)  
 cover, *s.*, couverture, (*f.*)  
 couvercle (*m.*)  
 crowd, *s.*, foule (*f.*)  
 Crecy, *s.*, Crécy  
 crusade, *s.*, croisade (*f.*)  
 curfew, *s.*, couvre-feu (*m.*)

## D

Damietta, *s.*, Damiette  
 dangerous, *adj.*, dange-  
 reux  
 dead, *adj.*, mort  
 death, *s.*, mort (*f.*)  
 deceive, *v.*, tromper  
 decency, *s.*, décence (*f.*)  
 deceptive, *adj.*, trompeur  
 deduct, *v.*, déduire, *irr.*  
 delay, *v.*, retarder  
 delicious, *adj.*, délicieux  
 derive, *v.*, dériver, tirer

deserve, *v.*, mériter  
 desire, *v.*, désirer  
 despise, *v.*, mépriser  
 detestable, *adj.*, détes-  
 table  
 difficult, *adj.*, difficile  
 difficulty, *s.*, difficulté (*f.*)  
 dine, *v.*, dîner  
 disappear, *v.*, dispa-  
 raître, *irr.*  
 discharge, *v.*, décharger,  
 s'acquitter de  
 discover, *v.*, découvrir,  
 dissatisfied, *adj.*, mécon-  
 tent  
 do, *v.*, faire; to do a  
 service, rendre service  
 document, *s.*, document  
 (*m.*)  
 dog, *s.*, chien  
 Dover, *s.*, Douvres  
 downstairs, *adv.*, en bas  
 dozen, *s.*, douzaine (*f.*)  
 drawing, *s.*, dessin (*m.*)  
 drop, *v.*, laisser tomber  
 duty, *s.*, devoir  
 dutiful, *adj.*, respectueux

## E

each, *pron.*, chacun  
 each other, l'un l'autre  
 eagle, *s.*, aigle  
 endeavour, *v.*, s'efforcer  
 endurance, *s.*, patience  
 (*f.*)  
 effect, *s.*, effet (*m.*)  
 egg, *s.*, œuf (*m.*)  
 Egyptian, *s.*, Egyptien  
 eighteen, *adj.*, dix-huit  
 eighteenth, *adj.*, dix-hui-  
 tième  
 eighty, *adj.*, quatre-vingts  
 elapse, *v.*, s'écouler  
 electricity, *s.*, électricité  
 (*f.*)  
 elephant, *s.*, éléphant (*m.*)  
 elm, *s.*, orme (*m.*)  
 emperor, *s.*, empereur  
 (*m.*)  
 enemy, *s.*, ennemi (*m.*)

England, *s.*, Angleterre  
 (*f.*)  
 English, *adj.* and *s.*,  
 Anglais  
 entirely, *adv.*, entière-  
 ment  
 entreat, *v.*, supplier  
 entreaty, *s.*, supplication  
 (*f.*)  
 error, *s.*, erreur (*f.*)  
 escape, *v.*, échapper à  
 even, *adv.*, même  
 ever, *adv.*, jamais, tou-  
 jours  
 every one, *pron.*, chacun  
 everything, tout  
 evident, *adj.*, évident  
 evil, *s.*, mal (*m.*)  
 Europe, *s.*, Europe (*f.*)  
 examine, *v.*, examiner  
 example, *s.*, exemple (*m.*)  
 expense, *s.*, dépense (*f.*)  
 expensive, *adj.*, cher  
 expire, *v.*, expirer  
 express, *v.*, exprimer,  
 parler

## F

fact, *s.*, fait (*m.*)  
 fall, *v.*, tomber  
 false, *adj.*, faux  
 family, *s.*, famille (*f.*)  
 far, *adv.*, loin  
 father, *s.*, père (*m.*)  
 fault, *s.*, faute  
 fear, *s.*, crainte (*f.*)  
 feeling, *s.*, sentiment (*m.*)  
 few, *adv.*, peu  
 fifteen, *adj.*, quinze  
 find, *v.*, trouver  
 firm, *adj.*, ferme  
 first, *adj.*, premier  
 fit, *adj.*, capable, conve-  
 nable, to be fit for or to,  
 être capable de  
 flatter, *v.*, flatter, se flat-  
 ter  
 fond, *adj.*, fou; to be  
 fond of, aimer à  
 forest, *s.*, forêt (*f.*)



forthwith, *adv.*, tout de suite, immédiatement  
 forty, *adj.*, quarante  
 foot, *s.*, pied (*m.*)  
 four, *adj.*, quatre  
 fox, *s.*, renard (*m.*)  
 franc, *s.*, franc (*m.*)  
 French, *adj.* and *s.*, Français  
 friend, *s.*, ami (*m.*)  
 from, *prep.*, de  
 front, *s.*, devant (*m.*)  
 front, *adj.*, de devant  
 fruit, *s.*, fruit (*m.*)

## G

game-keeper, *s.*, garde-chasse (*m.*)  
 garden, *s.*, jardin (*m.*)  
 gardener, *s.*, jardinier (*m.*)  
 general, *s.*, général (*m.*)  
 genius, *s.*, génie (*m.*)  
 gentleman, *s.*, monsieur ; gentlemen, messieurs  
 get, *v.*, gagner, obtenir  
 girl, *s.*, fille (*f.*)  
 give, *v.*, donner  
 glass, *s.*, verre (*m.*)  
 go, *v.*, aller (*irr.*) ; go out, sortir (*irr.*)  
 good, *s.*, bien (*m.*)  
 goods, *s.*, marchandises (*f.*)  
 grammar, *s.*, grammaire (*f.*)  
 grand, *adj.*, grand ; grand piano, piano à queue  
 great, *adj.*, grand  
 great-coat, *s.*, paletot (*m.*)  
 green, *adj.*, vert  
 guilty, *adj.*, coupable  
 gummed, *adj.*, gommé

## H

half, *s.*, moitié, demi ; half, *adj.*, demi  
 hall, *s.*, salle  
 happen, *v.*, arriver  
 hare, *s.*, lièvre (*m.*)  
 harsh, *adj.*, dur, sévère

have, *v.*, avoir (*irr.*) ; to have just, venir de  
 head, *s.*, tête (*f.*)  
 hear, *v.*, entendre  
 help, *v.*, aider  
 help, *s.*, aide (*f.*), assistance (*f.*)  
 Henry, *s.*, Henri  
 herewith, *adv.*, ci-inclus  
 hide, *v.*, cacher  
 high, *adj.*, haut  
 highlander, *s.*, montagnard (*m.*)  
 Homer, *s.*, Homère  
 horse, *s.*, cheval (*m.*)  
 hotel, *s.*, hôtel (*m.*)  
 hour, *s.*, heure (*f.*)  
 house, *s.*, maison (*f.*)  
 how, *adv.*, comment  
 hundred, *adj.*, cent  
 hymn, *s.*, hymne

## I

if, *conj.*, si  
 ill, *adj.*, malade  
 in, *prep.*, dans, en, à  
 inclined, *adj.*, enclin, disposé  
 incorrectly, *adv.*, ne...correctement  
 indeed, *adv.*, vraiment  
 independence, *s.*, indépendance (*f.*)  
 India, *s.*, Inde (*f.*), les Indes  
 injustice, *s.*, injustice (*f.*)  
 inn, *s.*, auberge (*f.*)  
 interest, *s.*, intérêt (*m.*)  
 into, *prep.*, dans  
 introduce, *v.*, introduire ; invasion, *s.*, invasion (*f.*)  
 invent, *v.*, inventer  
 it, *pron.*, le, la  
 Italian, *adj.*, italien  
 Italy, *s.*, Italie (*f.*)  
 ivory, *s.*, ivoire (*m.*)

## J

James, *s.*, Jacques  
 judge, *s.*, juge (*m.*)

July, *s.*, juillet (*m.*)  
 just, *adj.*, juste

## K

keep, *v.*, garder, conserver, préserver  
 kill, *v.*, tuer  
 kind, *adj.*, bon  
 king, *s.*, roi  
 Kingston, *s.*, Kingston  
 knight, *s.*, chevalier (*m.*)  
 know, *v.*, savoir (*irr.*), connaître (*irr.*)

## L

lady, *s.*, dame (*f.*), young lady (*f.*), demoiselle (*f.*)  
 lame, *adj.*, boiteux  
 language, *s.*, langue (*f.*), langage (*m.*)  
 large, *adj.*, large, grand  
 last, *adj.*, dernier  
 laugh, *v.*, rire  
 learn, *v.*, apprendre (*irr.*)  
 learned, *adj.*, instruit, savant  
 lease, *s.*, bail (*m.*)  
 leave, *v.*, laisser, abandonner  
 lecture, *s.*, cours (*m.*), conférence (*f.*)  
 leg, *s.*, jambe (*f.*)  
 lend, *v.*, prêter  
 less, *adv.*, moins de  
 lest, *conj.*, de peur que  
 letter, *s.*, lettre (*f.*)  
 liable, *adj.*, sujet, exposé  
 lieutenant, *s.*, lieutenant (*m.*)  
 life, *s.*, vie (*f.*)  
 lightning, *s.*, foudre (*f.*), éclair (*m.*)  
 like, *v.*, aimer  
 look, *v.*, regarder ; look for, chercher  
 London, *s.*, Londres  
 long, *adj.*, long  
 lord, *s.*, lord (*m.*), seigneur (*m.*)

lose, *v.*, perdre  
love, *v.*, aimer  
Lyons, *s.*, Lyon

## M

make, *v.*, faire (*irr.*)  
man, *s.*, homme (*m.*)  
manœuvre, *s.*, manœuvre  
manner, *s.*, manière (*f.*)  
manufacturer, *s.*, fabricant (*m.*)  
many, *adv.*, beaucoup de  
Marseilles *s.*, Marseille  
master-key, *s.*, passe-partout (*m.*)  
matter, *s.*, matière (*f.*);  
What is the matter with you? qu'avez-vous?

me, *pron.*, moi, me  
measure, *s.*, mesure (*f.*)  
meet, *v.*, rencontrer  
mention, *v.*, mentionner  
Milton, *s. prop.*, Milton  
mine, *pron.*, à moi  
minister, *s.*, ministre (*m.*)  
misfortune, *s.*, infortune (*f.*), malheur (*m.*)  
miss, mademoiselle (*f.*)  
mistake, *s.*, erreur (*f.*), faute (*f.*)

money, *s.*, argent (*m.*)  
monk, *s.*, moine  
month, *s.*, mois (*m.*)  
monument, *s.*, monument (*m.*)  
morning, *s.*, matin (*m.*)  
mother, *s.*, mère  
movement, *s.*, mouvement (*m.*)  
multitude, *s.*, foule (*f.*)  
music, *s.*, musique (*f.*)  
must, *v.*, devoir

## N

Napoleon, *s.*, Napoléon  
neither, *conj.*, ni l'un, ni l'autre  
Nero, *s. prop.*, Néron  
never, *adv.*, jamais

news, *s.*, nouvelle (*f.*)  
night, *s.*, nuit (*f.*)  
nine, *adj.*, neuf  
no, *adj.*, aucun, ne... pas de  
nobody, *pron.*, personne  
noise, *s.*, bruit (*m.*)  
nothing, *pron.*, rien  
now, *adv.*, maintenant  
new, *adj.*, nouveau, nouvel, neuf  
newspaper, *s.*, journal (*m.*)

## O

oblige, *v.*, obliger  
o'clock, *adv.*, heure (*f.*)  
of, *prep.*, de  
officer, *s.*, officier  
old, *adj.*, vieux, vieil  
on, *prep.*, sur  
once, *adv.*, une fois  
olive, *s.*, olive (*f.*)  
only, *adv.*, seulement, ne... que  
opera, *s.*, opéra (*m.*)  
orange, *s.*, orange (*f.*)  
other, *pron.*, a. tre  
ought, *v.*, devoir  
ourselves, *pron.*, nous-mêmes  
out, *prep.*, hors; dîne out, dîner en ville  
own, *adj.*, propre, à moi, à toi, etc.

## P

page, *s.*, page (*f.*), page (*m.*)  
pair, *s.*, paire (*f.*)  
paper, *s.*, papier (*m.*)  
park, *s.*, parc (*m.*)  
part, *s.*, part (*f.*), partie (*f.*)  
pass, *v.*, passer  
passenger, *s.*, passager (*m.*)  
passer-by, *s.*, passant (*m.*)  
peach, *s.*, pêche (*f.*)  
pencil, *s.*, crayon (*m.*)  
pen, *s.*, plume (*f.*)  
penholder, *s.*, porte-plume  
people, *s. pl.*, gens

perform, *v.*, jouer  
perhaps, *adv.*, peut être  
peril, *s.*, péril (*m.*)  
perish, *v.*, périr  
perseverance, *s.*, persévérance (*f.*)  
Persian, *s.*, Perse  
person, *s.*, personne (*f.*)  
Phenician, *s.*, Phénicien  
pip, *s.*, pepin (*m.*)  
pistol, *s.*, pistolet (*m.*);  
pistol-shot, coup de pistolet  
place, *v.*, placer, poser  
plant, *v.*, planter  
play, *v.*, jouer  
play, *s.*, jeu (*m.*), comédie (*f.*)  
pleasure, *s.*, plaisir (*m.*)  
plenty, *adv.*, beaucoup  
plum, *s.*, prune (*f.*)  
pocket-handkerchief, *s.*, mouchoir (*m.*)  
poor, *adj.*, pauvre  
position, *s.*, position (*f.*)  
poultry-yard, *s.*, basse-cour (*f.*)  
practice, *s.*, pratique (*f.*)  
preferable, *adj.*, préférable  
price, *s.*, prix (*m.*)  
primitive, *adj.*, primitif  
principal, *adj.*, principal  
principle, *s.*, principe (*m.*)  
prison, *s.*, prison (*f.*)  
prisoner, *s.*, prisonnier (*m.*)  
private, *adj.*, privé  
proclaim, *v.*, proclamer  
produce, *v.*, produire, *irr.*  
profitably, *adv.*, d'une manière profitable  
prudence, *s.*, prudence (*f.*)  
public, *adj.*, public  
punctual, *adj.*, ponctuel, exact  
punish, *v.*, punir  
purse, *s.*, bourse (*f.*)  
put, *v.*, mettre, *irr.*

## Q

question, *v.*, questionner  
quite, *adv.*, tout à fait

## R

rainbow, *s.*, arc-en-ciel  
(*m.*)  
rapid, *adj.*, rapide  
rare, *adj.*, rare  
rascal, *s.*, coquin (*m.*)  
read, *v.*, lire, *irr.*  
reckon, *v.*, compter  
reign, *s.*, règne (*m.*)  
Rhine, *s.*, Rhin (*m.*)  
rely on, *v.*, se fier à  
remain, *v.*, rester  
remedy, *s.*, remède (*m.*)  
repulse, *v.*, repousser  
requisite, *v.*, demander,  
avoir besoin de  
retire, *v.*, retirer, se re-  
tirer  
return, *v.*, retourner, re-  
venir, rendre  
rich, *adj.*, riche  
ride, *v.*, aller à cheval  
road, *s.*, chemin (*m.*)  
route (*f.*)  
room, *s.*, chambre (*f.*)  
rule, *s.*, règle (*f.*)  
run, *v.*, courir, *irr.*

## S

safely, *adv.*, en sûreté,  
sain et sauf  
same, *adj.*, même  
sarsaparilla, *s.*, sarrasin  
satin, *s.*, satin (*m.*)  
satire, *s.*, satire (*f.*)  
say, *v.*, dire, *irr.*  
sayings, *s.*, maxime (*f.*)  
scarcely, *adv.*, à peine  
scold, *v.*, gronder  
Scotland, *s.*, Ecosse (*f.*)  
season, *s.*, saison (*f.*)  
section, *s.*, section (*f.*)  
see, *v.*, voir, *irr.*  
seem, *v.*, sembler  
send, *v.*, envoyer

sense, *s.*, sens (*m.*)  
servant, *s.*, domestique (*m.*  
and *f.*)  
service, *s.*, service (*m.*)  
several, *adj.*, plusieurs  
seventy, *adj.*, soixante-  
dix  
shall, *v.*, devoir (not to  
be mistaken for *shall*  
which indicates the  
future)  
sheep, *s.*, mouton (*m.*)  
shilling, *s.*, shilling (*m.*)  
shoe, *s.*, soulier (*m.*)  
should, *see shall*  
silk, *s.*, soie (*f.*); silk  
goods, soieries  
since, *prep.* and *adv.*, de-  
puis  
since, *conj.*, puisque  
sing, *v.*, chanter  
singer, *s.*, chanteur  
sister, *s.*, sœur (*f.*)  
situation, *s.*, situation,  
place  
six, *adj.*, six  
small, *adj.*, petit, modéré  
society, *s.*, société (*f.*)  
soldier, *s.*, soldat (*m.*)  
some, *adj.*, du, des, quelque  
something, *s.*, quelque  
chose  
so much, *adv.*, tant  
soon, *adv.*, bientôt  
Spain, *s.*, Espagne (*f.*)  
spare, *adj.*, de reste  
speak, *v.*, parler; speak  
evil, mal parler (used  
only in the pres. inf.  
and comp. tenses)  
spend, *v.*, dépenser;  
spend time, passer le  
temps  
spoil, *v.*, gâter  
sprain, *v.*, fouler  
station, *v.*, station (*f.*)  
stay, *v.*, rester  
stock exchange, *s.*, bourse  
(*f.*)  
stone, *s.*, pierre (*f.*)

stone-fruit, *s.*, fruit à  
noyau  
story, *s.*, histoire (*f.*)  
strike, *v.*, frapper  
sub-lieutenant, *s.*, sous-  
lieutenant (*m.*)  
succeed, *v.*, réussir  
such, *adj.*, tel  
suddenly, *adv.*, tout à  
coup  
suit, *v.*, convenir, *irr.*  
suppose, *v.*, supposer  
surgeon, *s.*, chirurgien  
surprised, *adj.*, surpris  
suspect, *v.*, soupçonner  
system, *s.*, système (*m.*)

## T

table, *s.*, table (*f.*)  
take, *v.*, prendre, *irr.*;  
take care of, s'occuper  
de; take down, des-  
cendre; take the field,  
entrer en campagne  
taste, *s.*, goût (*m.*)  
tastefully, *adv.*, avec goût  
tea, *s.*, thé (*m.*)  
tell, *v.*, dire, *irr.*  
ten, *adj.*, dix  
tend, *v.*, tendre  
tenth, *adj.*, dixième  
Thames, *s.*, Tamise (*f.*)  
than, *conj.*, que  
thankful, *adj.*, reconnais-  
sant  
that, *adj.*, ce, cet  
that, *pron.*, cela, celui-là  
that, *conj.*, que  
their, *adj.*, leur  
them, *pron.*, eux; for  
them, pour eux, en  
Themistocles, *s.*, Thés-  
témocle  
therefore, *adv.*, donc, par  
conséquent, c'est pour-  
quoi, aussi  
thing, *s.*, chose (*f.*)  
think, *v.*, penser, croire,  
[*irr.*]  
thirty, *adj.*, trente

this, *adj.*, ce, cet  
 this, *pron.*, ceci, celui-ci  
 thousand, *adj.*, mille, mil  
 threat, *s.*, menace (*f.*)  
 three, *adj.*, trois  
 through, *prep.*, à travers  
 throughout, *prep.*, dans,  
 à travers de  
 ticket, *s.*, billet (*m.*)  
 till, *conj.*, jusqu'à  
 time, *s.*, temps (*m.*); at  
 the same time, en  
 même temps

to, *prep.*, à, pour, envers  
 to-day, *adv.*, aujourd'hui  
 tooth-pick, *s.*, cure-dents  
 towards, *prep.*, vers, envers  
 towel, *s.*, essuie-mains  
 (*m.*), serviette (*f.*)  
 town, *s.*, ville (*f.*)  
 tragedy, *s.*, tragédie (*f.*)  
 translation, *s.*, traduction  
 (*f.*)

tree, *s.*, arbre (*m.*)  
 tremble, *v.*, trembler  
 triumph, *v.*, triompher  
 trunk, *s.*, malle (*f.*)  
 trust, *v.*, avoir confiance  
 en  
 Tuesday, *s.*, mardi (*m.*)  
 tune, *s.*, air (*m.*)  
 Turkish, *adj.*, ture, des  
 Turcs

twelve, *adj.*, douze  
 two, *adj.num.*, deux

## U

umbrella, *s.*, parapluie  
 uncle, *s.*, oncle (*m.*) (*m.*)  
 understand, *v.*, compren-  
 dre, *irr.*

unfortunate, *adj.*, mal-  
 heureux  
 United-States, *s.*, Etats-  
 Unis  
 unwell, *adj.*, indisposé  
 upstairs, *adv.*, en haut  
 use, *s.*, usage (*m.*); it is  
 no use, il est inutile  
 use, *v.*, se servir de, *irr.*;  
 employer  
 useful, *adj.*, utile

## V

vanquish, *v.*, vaincre, *irr.*  
 very, *adv.*, très  
 vice-admiral, *s.*, vice-  
 amiral  
 virtue, *s.*, vertu (*f.*)  
 visit, *v.*, visiter, faire  
 visite  
 voice, *s.*, voix (*f.*)

## W

walk, *v.*, marcher, faire  
 une promenade à pied,  
 aller à pied  
 walnut, *s.*, noix (*f.*)  
 walnut-wood, *s.*, noyer (*m.*)  
 want, *s.*, besoin (*m.*) désir  
 war, *s.*, guerre (*f.*)  
 watch, *s.*, garde, montre  
 (*m.*)  
 week, *s.*, semaine (*f.*)  
 well, *adv.*, bien  
 what, *adj.*, quel  
 what, *pron.*, ce qui, ce que  
 whatever, *adv.*, quelque  
 when, *conj.*, quand  
 whereas, *conj.*, tandis que  
 which, *pron.*, qui, que, le  
 quel

who, *pron.*, qui  
 whole, *s.*, tout (*adj.*)  
 whose, *pron.*, à qui  
 whosoever, *pron.*, quiconque  
 why, *adv.*, pourquoi  
 wide, *adj.*, large  
 will, *v.*, vouloir, *irr.* (not  
 to be mistaken for *will*  
 which indicates the  
 future)  
 William, *s.*, Guillaume  
 widow, *s.*, veuve (*f.*)  
 wine, *s.*, vin (*m.*)  
 wise, *adj.*, sage  
 wish, *v.*, vouloir, *irr.*  
 wit, *s.*, esprit (*m.*)  
 with, *prep.*, avec  
 work, *s.*, ouvrage, travail  
 work, *v.*, travailler  
 world, *s.*, monde (*m.*)  
 worth, *s.*, valeur; to be  
 worth, valoir, *irr.*

would, *see will*  
 wound, *s.*, blesser  
 wretched, *adj.*, méchant,  
 mauvais  
 wrist, *s.*, poignet  
 write, *v.*, écrire, *irr.*  
 writer, *s.*, écrivain (*m.*)  
 writing, *s.*, écriture (*f.*)  
 wrong, *adj.*, mauvais; to  
 be wrong, avoir tort

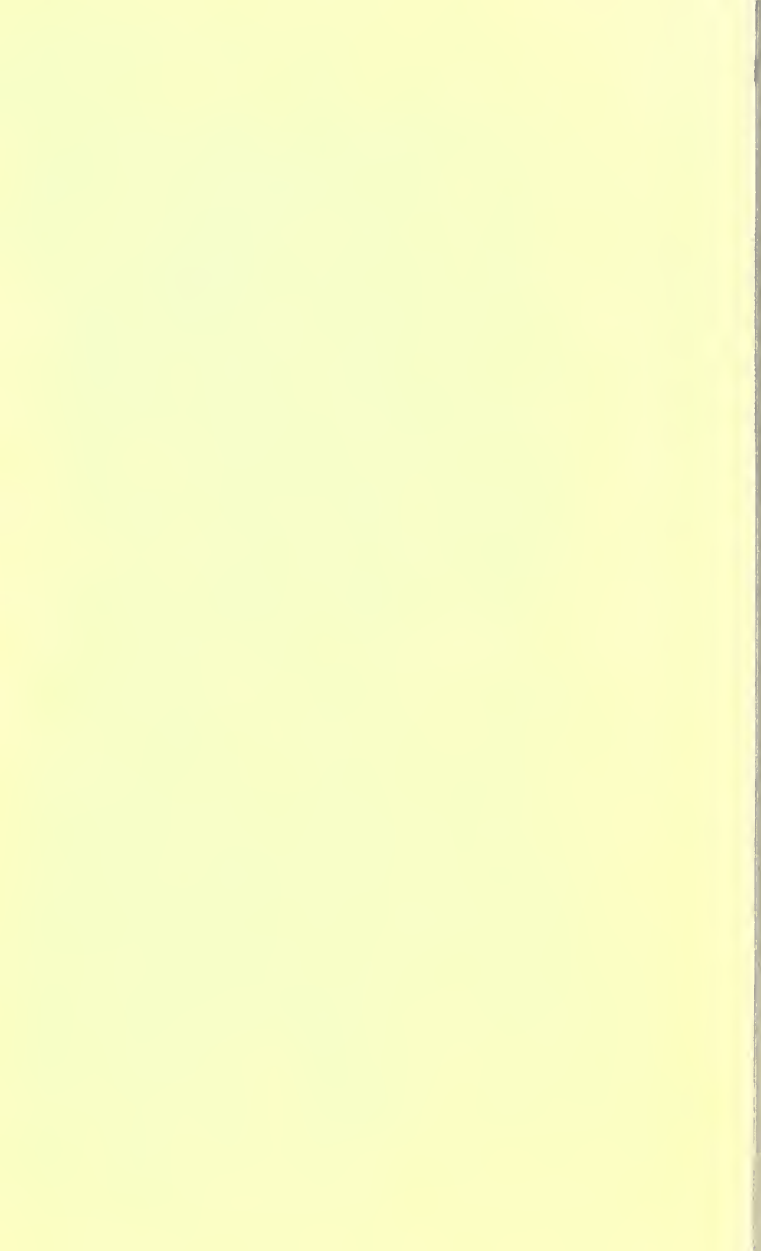
## Y

year, *s.*, an (*m.*); anno  
 (*f.*)  
 yes, *adv.*, oui  
 yesterday, *adv.*, hier  
 yours, *pron.*, le vôtre











FC                    Brachet, Auguste  
2111                    The public school  
B753                    elementary French grammar  
1878

PLEASE DO NOT REMOVE  
CARDS OR SLIPS FROM THIS POCKET

---

UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO LIBRARY

---

